NTT DoCoMo

DCMX

Manual for

FOMA® N902iS '06.5



Quick Search/ Contents/Safety Precautions
Getting Started
Making/Receiving Phone Calls
Making/Receiving Videophone Calls
Push-to-Talk
Using the Phonebook
Tone/Display/Lighting Settings
Security Settings
Camera
i-mode/i-motion
Mail
i-αppli
i-channel
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa
Full Browser
Display/Edit/ Organization/ Music Playback
Other Useful Functions
Network Services
Data Communication
Entering Text
Traveling with N902iS
Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting
Index/ Quick Manual

MODE

DoCoMo
W-CDMA System

Thank you for choosing the FOMA N902iS.

Please read this manual and users guides that came with the battery pack and other devices carefully before and during use so that you can use your FOMA terminal correctly. If you have any inquiries regarding this manual, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.
FOMA N902iS is your efficient partner. Please use it carefully and habitually.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA network operates using radio waves. In a place where the reception is very poor, such as in a tunnel, in a building and under the ground, or out of range, you cannot make a phone call. You may also have difficulty making a phone call from upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. And even if the reception is good (i.e. the signal strength indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during a call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, take care not to disturb people around you.
- Since the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always a risk that your call is wiretapped by a third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports the tapping prevention for all calls. Even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where the reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what it actually is.
- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of use of TLS/SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of TLS/SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of TLS/SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust.net Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and DoCoMo's roaming area.

For the first-time user of the FOMA terminal

If you have never used any of the FOMA models, read this manual in the following steps. Doing so will help you understand the preparation and basic operations for using the FOMA terminal.

1. Attach and charge the battery pack (p.40)
2. Turn on the FOMA terminal, make the initial settings, and check your own number (p.44)
3. Check the functions of the phone keys (p.24)
4. Check the meanings of icons appearing on the screen (p.28)
5. Check how to use the menus (p.31)
6. Check how to make/receive a call (p.49)

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.
●To download "Manual for FOMA N902iS (PDF file)", access the following:
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html
* The URL and the contents of the site are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual

To look up a function in this manual

This manual offers you the following methods to find a page describing the function or service you want to know.



See the next page for more details.

Looking up in the Index p.498

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

Looking up in the Quick Search p.4

The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

Looking up in the Cover Index Cover

Use the Cover Index to flip over the page.

Looking up in the Table of Contents p.6

Refer to the Table of Contents categorizing the functions.

Looking up in the Features p.8

Refer to the Features to find new or useful functions.

Looking up in the Menu Function List p.450

The pages list the menu functions displayed in the menus of the FOMA terminal.

Looking up in the Quick Manual p.507

The Quick Manual offers brief descriptions of the basic functions. You can tear it out and take it with you.

- In this manual for FOMA N902iS, the FOMA N902iS is described as the FOMA terminal.
- This manual describes functions that use a miniSD memory card. To use these functions, the miniSD memory card is required. miniSD Memory Card→p.353
- It is prohibited to reprint the whole or part of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual (continued from the previous page)

This page takes for example how to look up the “Display setting” function.

Looking up in the Index

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

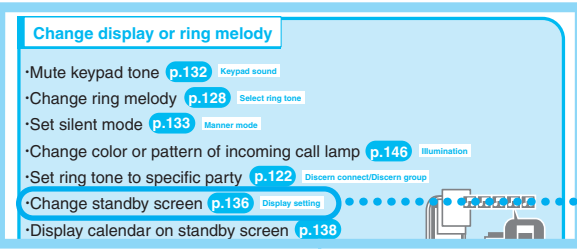
→Find “Display setting”

Certificate host 234
Chaku-moji 55
Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta® 209
Chance capture 196
Change CHR code 215
change window 438
changing voice call/videophone call 52, 85
Character input set 427
  Mode 1(5-touch) 427
  Mode 2(2-touch) 428
  Mode 3(T9 input) 428
Character stamp 337
Chara-den 88, 346
  action 347
  control 347
  delete 348
  display 346
  download 226
  guide to the Chara-den list 347
create/edit/delete folders
  bookmark 220
  data box 363
  mail 268
  miniSD 363
  ToruCa 311
D
data box 324
data communication 421
data link software 472
Data Security Center 175
Data Security Service 175
  image 330
  log check 126
  mail 273
  phonebook 125
data transfer software 380
DC adapter 42
Deactivate
changing the menu display 142
Clock 147
Color background 142
Display setting 136
Guide 28
Image display 140
image (My picture) 325
Own number 48
phonebook image 139
Style mode 152
website 316
Display design 142
Display home 214
Display setting 91, 136
display software info 292
displaying
  Mail 261
  ToruCa 261
Disp. PH-book image 139

Looking up in the Quick Search

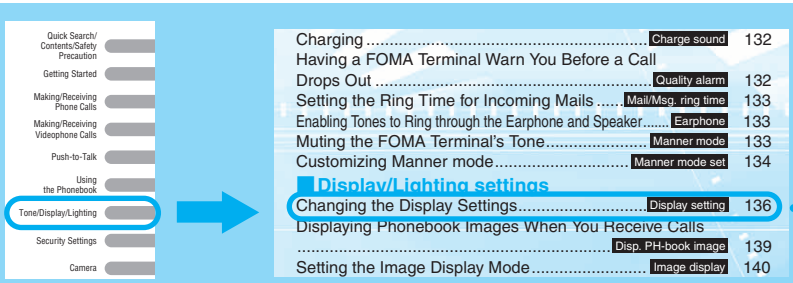
The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

→Find “Change standby screen”

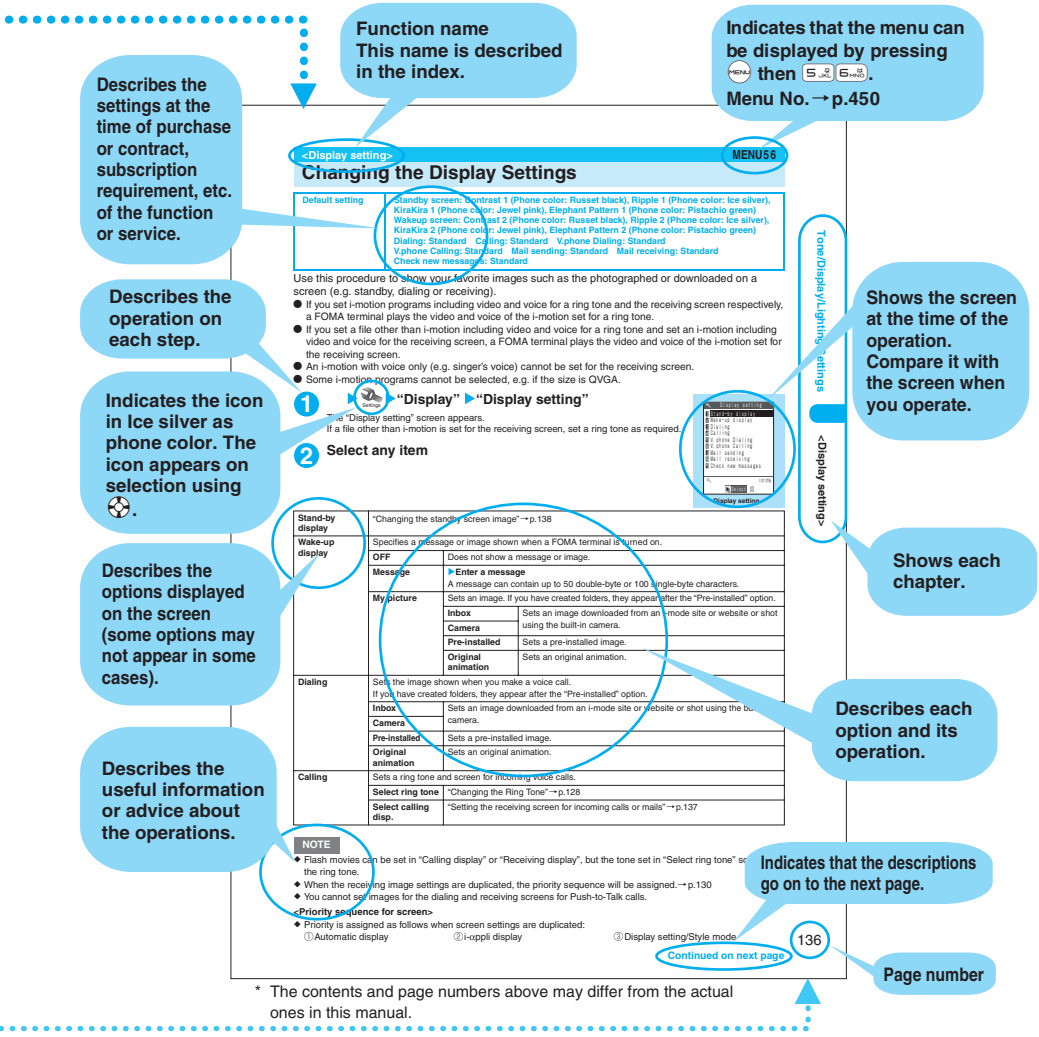


Looking up in the Cover Index

Find the page describing the function in the order “Cover” → “Chapter page (first page of the chapter)” → “Description page”. The chapter page describes the detailed table of contents.



This manual uses illustrations or marks to explain how to operate the function so that you can use the FOMA terminal correctly.



* The contents and page numbers above may differ from the actual ones in this manual.

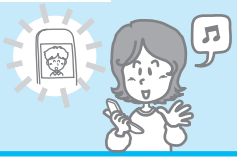
- In this manual, "OFF" is set to the "Stand-by display" in order to make the screens clear. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- Main menu, Pointer and Image display are described in Ice silver (default) as phone color.
- This manual mainly explains the operations with the default settings. If you change the settings, the contents displayed on your FOMA terminal may differ from those on this manual.
- The screens inserted in this manual are only the images, which may look different from the actual screens.
- This manual describes "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli supporting IC Card function" as "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli".

Quick Search

● Go to the page when you want to learn how to operate the function.

Useful functions for talking

·Do/do not notify your party of your caller ID p.47 Caller ID Notification
·Adjust the volume during a call p.69 Volume
·Hold the current call p.51 Holding
·Switch voice call to videophone call p.52



When you cannot answer incoming call

·Have your party record voice message p.75 Record message
·Set voice mail p.410
·Hold incoming call p.70 Answer hold



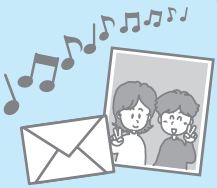
Change display or ring melody

·Mute keypad tone p.132 Keypad sound
·Change ring melody p.128 Select ring tone
·Set silent mode p.133 Manner mode
·Change color or pattern of incoming call lamp p.146 Illumination
·Set ring tone to specific party p.122 Discern connect/Discern group
·Change standby screen p.136 Display setting
·Display calendar on standby screen p.138
·Set clock p.46 Set time
·Change font or thickness p.147 Font



Master mail

·Send Deco-mail p.247 Deco-mail
·Send image or melody p.252 Attach Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion/ToruCa
·Learn emotion-expressing mail p.256



* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Master camera



- Change the size of image to shoot p.183
- Change shutter sound p.186, 193
- Use zoom or light p.197, 198
- Save image to miniSD memory card p.334
- Display the shot p.325 My picture
- Print the shot p.375 PictBridge print

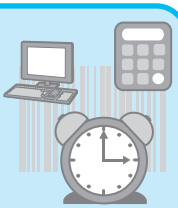
Use your phone without worries



- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook data p.161 Secret mode/Secret data only mode
- Reject unidentified call p.173 Call setting w/o ID
- Reject call if the party is not stored in phonebook p.174 Reject unknown
- Lock key operation when folded p.169 External keys guard
- Lock your FOMA terminal that is not in your hand p.159 Omakase Lock
- Save data such as phonebook in case of loss of the data p.175 Data Security Service*

*: Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe to this service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand.)

Miscellaneous



- Easily access the functions you often use p.35 Original menu
- Save battery life p.141 Backlight (Power saver mode)
- Use as calculator p.401 Calculator
- Read QR code or bar code p.198 Bar code reader
- Communicate with PC or another FOMA terminal p.364 Infrared data exchange/OBEX
- Use as alarm clock p.389 Alarm clock
- Use miniSD memory card p.353
- Update software p.487 Software Update
- Update security p.491 Scanning function
- Use your FOMA terminal overseas p.440

For more information about other operation guides, see “How to Use This Manual”. →p.1
Also, “Quick Manual” instructs you how to operate the often-used functions. →p.507

Contents

How to use this manual 1
Quick Search 4
Contents 6
Features of the FOMA N902iS 8
Mastering the FOMA N902iS! 10
Safety Precautions 12
Handling with Care 18
Intellectual Property Right 20
Main Components and Optional Equipment 22

Getting Started 23
- Component Names and Functions
- Icons on the Display and Image Display
- Main menu · Using menus
- Launcher mode on the main menu
- Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack
- Charging a FOMA Terminal
- Turning a FOMA terminal on/off
- Initial setting · Set time
- Caller ID Notification etc.

Making/Receiving Phone Calls 49
- Making/Receiving a Calls
- Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call
- WORLD CALL · Chaku-moji · Redial
- Pause dials · Hands-free
- In-car Hands-free · Received calls
- Volume · Answer hold
- Public mode(Driving mode/Power OFF)
- Record message, etc.

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls 79
- Making/Receiving a Videophone Call
- Using Chara-den · Remote monitoring, etc.

Push-to-Talk 97
- What is Push-to-Talk?
- Making/Receiving a Push-to-Talk Call
- PushTalk phonebook · PushTalk setting, etc.

Using the Phonebook 109
- Adding phonebook entries
- Group setting · Search phonebook
- Copy a phonebook · Discern connect, etc.

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings 127
- Select ring tone · Vibrator · Keypad sound
- Charge sound · Mail/Msg. ring time
- Manner mode · Display setting · Backlight
- Menu display set · Neuropointer
- Illumination/Illumination in talk
- Desktop icon · 3D display setting
- Style mode, etc.

Security Settings 155
- Security codes · PIN Code · Lock all
- Omakase Lock · Secret mode · Secret folder
- PIM lock · Keypad dial lock · Mail security
- Restrictions · Reject unknown
- Data Security Service, etc.

Camera 177
- Photo mode · Continuous mode
- Framed photography · Movie mode
- Bar code reader · Access reader, etc.

i-mode/i-motion 207
- What is i-mode? · i-mode menu · View site
- My Menu · i-mode password
- Internet access · Bookmark
- Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions
- Message service · What is i-motion?
- Downloading i-motion, etc.

Mail 237
- What is i-mode Mail?
- Composing and sending i-mode message
- Deco-mail · Emotion-expressing mail
- Receive option · Check new messages
- i-motion mail · Chat mail
- SMS (Short Message), etc.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

i-αppli 289
- What is an i-αppli? · Downloading i-αppli
- i-αppli standby screen
- Upgrading an i-αppli, etc.

i-channel 303
- What is i-channel?
- Displaying Channel list
- i-Channel setting, etc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa 307
- What is Osaifu-Keitai?
- Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli
- What is ToruCa? · Acquiring ToruCa
- Viewing ToruCa
- IC card lock · Face authentication, etc.

Full Browser 315
- Displaying Website Designed for PC
- Full Browser screen
- Full Browser settings, etc.

Display/Edit/Organization/ Music Playback 323
- Displaying images · Playing Movies/i-motion
- Edit Images · Edit movie
- Recording Chara-den · Play melody
- miniSD memory card
- Infrared data exchange function
- Displaying PDF document
- Printing images · Music player, etc.

Other Useful Functions 383
- Multi Access · Multitask · Assist key
- Alarm setting · Alarm clock · Schedule
- To Do list · Own number · Call data
- Calculator · Text memo · Auto dial setting
- Reset settings · Initialize, etc.

Network Services 409
- Voice Mail service · Call Waiting
- Call Forwarding · Nuisance Call Blocking
- Caller ID Request · Dual Network Service
- Multi Number, etc.

Data Communication 421

Entering Text 425
- Switching character input method
- Enter kanji/hiragana/katakana/alphabetic or numeric character
- Enter text in 2-touch input mode
- Enter text in T9 input mode
- Common phrases · Own dictionary
- Download dictionary, etc.

Traveling with N902iS 439
- International roaming (WORLD WING) outline
- Available overseas service
- Checking before using overseas
- Making/Receiving a Call from your staying area
- Network search mode, etc.

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting 449
- Menu function list
- Data Stored at the Time of Purchase
- Symbols, special characters and pictographs
- Smiley face symbols · Kuten Codes
- Options and accessories
- Data link software or movie playing software
- Troubleshooting · Error Message
- Software Update · Scanning function
- Main specifications
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of mobile phones
- Export Administration Regulations, etc.

Index/Quick Manual 497
- Index
- Quick Manual
- Quick Manual (Overseas)

Features of the FOMA N902iS

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode

i-mode is an online service that allows you to use i-mode menu site (program) or i-mode compatible site or to send and receive mail by using the i-mode terminal display.

● i-mode is a pay service you need to apply for.

- i-mode →p.208
- i-mode mail →p.238
- i-motion →p.234
- i-motion mail →p.260
- i-αppli →p.290
- i-shot →p.241
- Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta®* →p.209

*: Chaku-Uta® is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

p.207

Push-to-Talk

Just select the parties from the PushTalk phonebook and then press the push-to-talk key. You can talk with one party or more (up to five people including yourself) at the same time. It is useful when you want to make contact with group members or to relay a short message.

p.97

ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an ad, restaurant card, coupon, etc. ToruCa can be acquired by a reader/writer or downloaded from a site, and can be easily exchanged via mail, infrared data exchange or external memory.

p.309

Osaifu-Keitai

Downloading Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli enables you to transmit electronic cash into the IC Card of your FOMA terminal, to check the account balance or transaction history, or to use your FOMA terminal as an airline ticket or as a point card. The FOMA terminal can be used as "Osaifu-Keitai", which makes your life more convenient.

p.308

PDF Viewer

Enables you to view a PDF data. You can check a PDF containing a map, catalog, time table, etc. on i-mode terminal as if you carried a piece of paper.

p.370

Videophone/Chara-den

You can talk to the other party imaging his/her face or switch to the rear camera to show your surroundings to the other party. The FOMA terminal supports Chara-den that can display a character substituting for the image of yourself. You can also switch voice call to videophone call without cutting the call. The other party's voice comes out of the speaker according to the settings at the time of purchase, which means that you can start talking immediately.

p.79

i-channel

You can receive graphical information such as news or weather report. The FOMA terminal periodically receives the latest information and displays it as telop on the standby screen, or displays a list of channels available when you press the i-channel key.
Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information. If you have not subscribed to i-channel, you can try the service for a given period without any charge.

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

p.303

Chaku-moji

While in calling someone on the phone, you can make a message (Chaku-moji) visible on the calling screen and inform the business or urgency. By checking this message, the callee can tell what business or how urgent it is before answering a call.

p.55

Data Security Service

This is a data backup service that you store your data such as the phonebook, images and messages on the Data Security Center and if your FOMA terminal happens to be lost, the Center will help you retrieve the stored data to a mobile phone. Moreover you can edit or manage those stored data using PC and reflect the edited data to your mobile phone.
For details of the data security service, see "i-mode User's Manual". For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

p.175

Omakase Lock

If you lost your FOMA terminal, you can lock it or release the lock condition on your request. For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.

p.159

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Wide variety of network services

- Voice Mail service
- Call Waiting
- Call Forwarding service
- Nuisance Call Blocking
- Caller ID Request service
- Dual Network service
- English Guidance
- Multi Number

p.409

Deco-mail

You can compose and send expressive mail by changing the font color, size, or the background color for the message, or by inserting a Deco-mail picture or a photo shot with the built-in camera. The FOMA terminal supports templates, which means that you can compose Deco-mail easily by using the format of the received Deco-mail or the downloaded format.

p.247

Large-sized i-αppli, i-αppli DX

Download i-αppli from the site, and you can enjoy the game or automatically update the stock price or weather report. The 3D×3D compatible contents, thanks to the multiplier effect of 3D graphics and 3D sound, allow you to enjoy the i-αppli such as car racing game as if you were actually participating. i-αppli DX can be linked to the information such as the phonebook or mail stored in i-mode terminal.

p.289

Camera

The 6-axis-capable digital shake correction function allows you to shoot a clear, crisp still image or movie with the rear camera.
A camera shake is automatically corrected when you shoot a still image in a dark place. This is true of shooting a movie that is easily shaken.
The rear camera is equipped with Super CCD Honeycomb having the auto focus function of four million pixels (effective two million pixels), and allows you to shoot a large image of 2,304 × 1,728 dots. Still images or movies you shot appear clearly on the large, high-quality LCD screen. The still images or movies can be attached to i-mode mail.

p.177

Full Browser

Full Browser displays the website for PC, which provides you with more information than i-mode site does.

p.315

2.5 inch screen

260,000-color “Mobile Shine View EX LCD” allows you to enjoy beautiful colors. The 2.5-inch large screen allows you to view larger fonts or images, and makes i-αppli more enjoyable.

Bar code reader

You can read the bar code or QR code using the camera function and use the information to store it into the phonebook and compose i-mode mail, etc. You can also read the QR code of images and melodies.

p.198

Infrared communication/Infrared remote control

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals using infrared communication. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.

p.364, 369

Multi access

Multi access function allows you to use a call, packet communication and SMS at the same time, which means that you can talk on the phone during i-mode communication or send/receive mail during the talk.

p.384

miniSD memory card available

miniSD memory card enables you to exchange data such as phonebook, bookmark, mail or image with PC or another FOMA terminal. Save a movie or music data created on an external device to the miniSD memory card, and you can play it on the FOMA terminal (some data may not be played).
Data such as downloaded i-motion can be copied to the miniSD memory card (Cannot be copied if not permitted by the provider).

p.353, 377

Security settings

Protect your privacy using a security code or password. You can also use the security settings such as Lock/security function, which locks your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using when you have lost it.

p.155

International roaming

Enjoy voice calls, videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail and SMS in the DoCoMo roaming area overseas. Useful network services such as Voice Mail and Call Forwarding are also available.

p.440

Ring tone

The ring tone supports 67-harmony ADPCM based on FM + WaveTable and sound effects such as voice.

p.128

Mastering the FOMA N902iS!

Enjoy a talk with your fellows "Push-to-Talk"

●Push-to-Talk→p.97

Press the PTT key ([F]) to open the PushTalk phonebook. You can talk with one party or more (up to five people including yourself) simply by selecting the parties and then pressing the PTT key ([F]).



Tell an incoming call or message with animation "Chaku-moji/3D display"

●Chaku-moji→p.55

When you receive a call, a message (Chaku-moji) is poped-up with animated character. When making a call, you can send Chaku-moji to the callee while in calling and tell business before answering.

●3D display setting→p.150

When you select the desktop icon for New mail, 3D animation is poped-up showing an icon for the emotion-expressing mail or a pictograph in the subject field.





Talk over faces "Videophone"

●Making/Receiving Videophone Calls→p.79

Videophone system brings you a real-time video transmission while chatting and it makes your videophone life more enjoyable. You can transfer scenery around you using the rear camera, or the remote monitoring function supports security confirmation of your indoor pet calling from outside.



Image at the other side

Image at your side

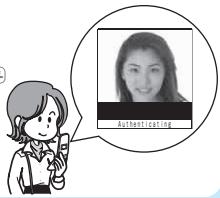
Osaifu-Keitai more safely "IC card lock/ Face authentication"

●IC card lock→p.312, Face authentication→p.313

Lock your phone to prevent others from using IC card functions.
Face authentication is available for releasing the lock.

●SimpleLock →p.313

Press and hold [3] for 1 second or longer, and you can simply lock or release the IC card lock setting.



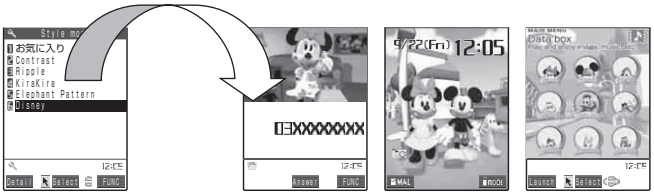
* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Set various settings with only one action

“Style mode”

Style mode→p.152

Using the pre-installed style mode with one action is possible to change the various settings for the standby screen, the ring tone, and such. You can create your own style mode (お気に入り).



Shake correction evolves

“4M pixel camera”

Shake correction function→p.195

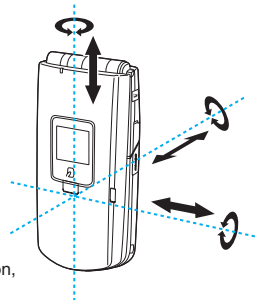
The shake correction function evolves furthermore and prevents from being shaken in all directions while shooting of images or movies.

Shoot folded→p.188

While the FOMA terminal is folded, only pressing and holding (●) (📷) for 1 second or longer displays the video shot viewing on the rear camera on the image display. You do not miss the shutter chance to take a quick shot.

Image correction “PictMagic II”

PictMagic is upgraded. The “Correct backlight” and “Refresh skin tone” effect is added as well as the original auto-correction function. For person, “Exposure adjust” and “favor fresh color” are available for adjustment.

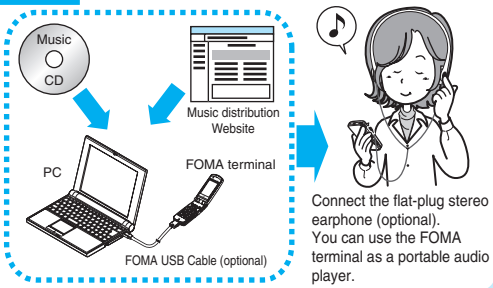


SD-Audio compatible! Closer to full-scale music

“Music player”

Music player→p.377

Music data downloaded from the music delivery service or songs from the music CD, save them to the miniSD memory card, and play them on the FOMA terminal. Playlist and random playback are also supported.



Connect the flat-plug stereo earphone (optional). You can use the FOMA terminal as a portable audio player.

Safety Precautions ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

■ To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read the Safety Precautions Safety Precautions carefully before use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.

■ The safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injuries or damage to the property.

■ The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.

⚠ DANGER	Indicates that improper use may directly and immediately result in death or serious bodily injury.
⚠ WARNING	Indicates that improper use may result in death or serious bodily injury.
⚠ CAUTION	Indicates that improper use may result in bodily injury and/or damage to the property.

■ The following symbols indicate specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
 No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
 No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near water, which means that you must not get it wet.
 Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
 Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power code from the outlet.

■ Safety Precautions Safety Precautions are categorized into the following:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common) ····· 13
2. Handling the FOMA terminal ····· 14
3. Handling the Battery Pack ····· 15
4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger) ····· 16
5. Handling the FOMA card ····· 17
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment ····· 17

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common)

⚠DANGER

Do

Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for the FOMA terminal.

Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

Battery Pack N11
Desktop Holder N10
FOMA AC Adapter 01
FOMA DC Adapter 01
Data Communications Adapter N01
FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01
FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

For information on other compatible products, contact the DoCoMo service counter.



Do not get the devices wet.

Exposure of the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.



Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel the FOMA terminal or other devices, and do not solder them.

Doing so may cause fire, injury or electric shock.

Also, doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal or other devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near fire, near a heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to be deformed or malfunction, lower the performance or shorten the life. Also, doing so may cause part of the case to become hot and possibly cause burns.

⚠WARNING



Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters or FOMA card (UIM) in a cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or in a pressure cooker.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.



Do not subject the FOMA terminal or other devices to strong impacts or throw them.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.

Do

Be sure to turn off the mobile phone before entering a place where flammable gas could generate such as gas station. Also, do not charge the phone. Gas could ignite.

Turn off the mobile phone when using Osaifu-Keitai in a certain area including the gas station. (If setting the IC card lock, unlock it before turning the power off.)



Keep conductive foreign objects (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert such objects inside.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in short-circuits causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.

Do

If you notice something unusual about the FOMA terminal or other devices, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately:

1. Unplug the power code from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the devices may cause overheat, explosion or ignition, or cause the battery pack to leak.

⚠CAUTION

Do

If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.

Improper usage may cause injury.



Do not keep the devices in a humid, dusty or hot place.

Doing so may cause malfunction.

Do

Using repeatedly or for a long time by charging, shooting/playing a movie, talking on a videophone call or using i-mode/i-αppli may increase the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (including the charger).

Exposure of your skin directly to the high-temperature part for a long time may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema.

Take great care especially when using the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including the charger) continuously for a long time.

Continued on next page



Do not leave the devices on a slope or unstable surface.

The devices may fall to cause injury or malfunction.



Keep the devices out of young children's reach.

A young child may mistakenly swallow a device or suffer from the injury.



When you attach the earphone/microphone to the FOMA terminal to play games or music, do not make the volume too loud.

Excessive high volume may damage your hearing. Also it may prevent you from hearing the ambient sounds and cause an accident.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal

⚠WARNING



Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Since November 1st, 2004, using a mobile phone while driving is a legal offense. Even if you are using a hands-free kit, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. While driving, set Public mode (Driving mode) or use the Voice Mail service.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where you are not allowed to use a mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.

Using the FOMA terminal in such a place may affect electronic or medical equipment. If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.

Follow the instructions of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.

If you use a phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.



If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration/speaker volume settings.

Your heart may be adversely affected.



Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes when using infrared data exchange.

Doing so may cause eye injury. Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as doing so may cause the device to malfunction.



Keep the FOMA terminal turned off near electronic equipment using high-precision control or weak signals.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

* Take great care on the following electronic devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.



If you are wearing a medical electronic device, do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast pocket or inner pocket.

Using the FOMA terminal near medical electronic devices may cause them to malfunction.



Hold the FOMA terminal away from your ear and keep it at a reasonable distance when you talk in hands-free mode with the speaker.

Failure to do so may adversely affect your hearing.



If you hear thunder while using your FOMA terminal outdoors, turn it off and move to a safe place immediately.

Failure to do so may expose you to lightning or electric shock.



Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.

Doing so may prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.



Keep the display light away from a person's eyes.

The light may affect eyesight. Also, this may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.



Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as doing so may cause problems in the event of air bag inflation.

Air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.

⚠CAUTION



In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.

Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal may impair safe driving.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353



Do not swing the FOMA terminal by the hand strap or another part.

Doing so may cause bodily injury and malfunction or breakage.



Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the miniSD memory card slot.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Take care when attaching or removing the miniSD memory card.

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card slot on the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Do not place magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal or clamp them in the fold of the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data on cash cards (ATM cards, bank cards), credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass.

The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.



Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.

The condensing action of the lens may cause fire or malfunction.



Do not turn the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to a person's eyes. Take care not to bring the light close to a person's eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit.

Doing so may cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect his/her eyes. Also, doing so may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.



Do not use the light for use other than shooting with the built-in cameras.

The light will be turned off if you do not operate at all for approximately 30 seconds. If you use it for purposes other than shooting with the built-in camera (e.g. using it as an electronic torch), the light is suddenly turned off, which may cause an accident.



Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.

The metal is used in the following locations:

*Location:Material

<Common to all colors>

Multi-function keys, Neuropointer

: Aluminum coated with alumite



Take care not to pinch your finger or the strap when opening or folding the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause injury or damage.



If the display is broken and the liquid crystal then leaks, do not lick or inhale the liquid or get the liquid on your skin.

If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.

If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap.

The liquid may cause loss of eyesight or skin problems.

3. Handling the Battery Pack

■ **Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack.**

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

⚠DANGER



Do not throw the battery pack into fire.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do not let wire or other metals come close to the terminal. Also, do not carry or store the battery with metallic items such as a necklace.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not apply excessive force. Check the battery's orientation before inserting it.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Continued on next page



If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse them immediately with clean water and consult a doctor as soon as possible.

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



Do not puncture the battery pack, hammer it or step on it.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

⚠WARNING



If charging the battery is not completed within the appropriate charging time, stop charging.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, rinse immediately with clean water.

Failure to do so may cause skin problems.



If the battery is leaking or smells strange, immediately move it away from any heat sources.

Leaking fluid may ignite and cause fire or explosion.

⚠CAUTION



Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Doing so may cause fire or environmental destruction. Tape over the charger terminals and take the battery to a DoCoMo Shop or follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger)

⚠WARNING



Use the specified socket and voltage.

Using a charging device with a non-specified socket or voltage may cause fire or malfunction. If you use the FOMA terminal overseas, take the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 with you.

AC Adapter: AC100V

FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use:

AC100V to 240V (Plug only into home AC outlet)

DC Adapter:

DC12/24 V (only for cars with negative ground)



The DC Adapter is only for cars with negative ground. Do not use it in cars with positive ground.

Doing so may cause fire.



Use only the specified fuse to replace the fuse of the DC Adapter.

Using it with non-specified fuses may cause fire or malfunction.

Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



If the power cord becomes damaged, stop using it.

Continuing to use it may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not touch a charging device, power cord, or AC socket with wet hands.

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Do not short-circuit the charging terminals or connector terminals while a charging device is connected to an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket. Also, do not touch the charger or connector terminals with any part of your body.

Doing so may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or bodily injury.



Do not use the AC Adapter or Desktop Holder in a very humid place.

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Wipe any dust off the plug.

Failure to do so may cause fire.



If you hear thunder, do not touch the devices.

Doing so may expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet if it will be left unused for a long period.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



If fluids such as water seep into the device, immediately unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Do not apply excessive force when the cord cannot be unplugged.

Doing so may damage the cord and cause electric shock or malfunction.



Do not plug too many devices at the same time as doing so may cause the limit of the outlet or wire socket to be exceeded.

Tangling electric cords may cause overheating or fire.



Do not place a charging device in an unstable place while charging. Do not cover or wrap the charging device with cloth or a futon.

Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall off, overheat, catch fire or malfunction.



When plugging the AC Adapter into an electric socket, do not allow it to touch metal, and be sure to plug the charger securely.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

⚠CAUTION



Before cleaning the device, always unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Do not place heavy objects on the power cord.

Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.



When unplugging a charger from an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the power cord itself but grasp the plug.

Pulling the cord itself may damage the cord and cause fire or electric shock.

5. Handling the FOMA card

⚠CAUTION



Be careful when dismounting the FOMA card (IC part).

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do not throw the FOMA card into fire.

Doing so may cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, data loss or malfunction.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones:

⚠WARNING



If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22cm away.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Observe the following inside hospitals and health care facilities.

- Do not take the FOMA terminal into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU), or coronary care units (CCU).
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital wards.
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital waiting rooms or wards, as there may be electronic medical devices in your vicinity.
- Follow the rules of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.
- If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.



Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Radio waves may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

Handling with Care

General Notes

- **Do not allow the devices to become wet.**
  The FOMA terminal, battery, adapters (including the charger) and FOMA card are not waterproof. Do not use them in very humid places or in the rain. When carrying the FOMA terminal in your shirt pocket, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Failure caused by the equipment becoming wet is not covered by the warranty and the equipment may not be repairable. Even if repair is possible, you will be charged for the repair.
- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**
  - The special coating may be applied on the FOMA display in order to clear the color LCD. Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and wipe it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Leaving the surface exposed to moisture or soil for a long period may peel off or stain the LCD coating.
  - Wiping with alcohol, thinner, benzene or liquid soap may cause decals to fade or other discoloration.
- **Clean connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab occasionally.**
  Dirty connectors may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Also, as dirty connectors may prevent proper charging, clean the connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab when they are soiled.
- **Do not place the FOMA terminal near the airflow of an air-conditioner.**
  Sudden temperature changes may cause condensation and corrode internal parts.
- **Do not keep the FOMA terminal in a place where extreme force may be applied to it.**
  Placing the FOMA terminal in a bag with many other items, or sitting down with the handset in your pocket may damage the display or internal circuit boards and cause malfunction. Such damage is not covered by the warranty.
- **Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapter and charger carefully.**

Handling the FOMA Terminal

- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  The operating temperature range is from 5 to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- **The FOMA terminal may become warm while being used or charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **If you use the FOMA terminal near a landline, TV or radio, the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of these devices. Use the FOMA terminal as far as possible from these devices.**
- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal.**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **Do not sit down with the FOMA terminal in your back pocket. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not fold the FOMA terminal with an object such as the hand strap inserted between the keypad and display.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction or breakage.
- **Usually keep the headset connector cover, external connector covers and miniSD memory card slot cover closed.**
  Failure to do so may cause dust or water to seep in and cause malfunction.
- **Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.**
  Doing so may discolor or burn the element.
- **Do not put a sticker, etc. on the display or keypads.**
  Doing so may cause you to wrongly press a key when the FOMA terminal is folded, or may damage the FOMA terminal.
- **Slip your hand through the strap to hold the FOMA terminal.**
  Failure to do so may cause you to drop the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.
- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal, etc.**
  Doing so may damage the display.
- **FOMA N902iS supports Omakase Lock (p.159).**
  Omakase Lock is a service where a subscriber asks to lock the FOMA terminal. Even if someone else uses the terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.

Handling the Battery Pack

- **The battery pack is a consumable item.**
  If the battery pack does not work after it is fully charged, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a new battery pack with the same specifications.
- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

- **Make sure to charge the battery the first time you use the FOMA terminal or if you have not used it for a long period.**
- **The available operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions under which you use it and the condition of the battery pack itself.**
- **The battery pack may swell slightly as the life comes close to the end and it causes no problem.**
- **Leaving the metallic part (connector) soiled may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Wipe off the dirt with a dry cloth or cotton swab before use.**
- **Do not store or leave the battery pack with no battery left.**
  Failure to observe this instruction may lower the performance or shorten the life of the battery pack.
  If you leave it for a long period, remove it from the FOMA terminal, and store it in a cool, dry place. Also, charge the battery at least once in half a year.
- **Keep the battery pack in a cool and dry place away from direct sunlight.**
  If you do not use the battery pack for a long period, use up the battery, remove the pack from the FOMA terminal, and keep it in a vinyl case.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Do not charge the battery:**
  - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
  - Near your landline phone, TV or radio
- **The adapter or charger may become warm while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **Do not use the DC Adapter while the engine is not running.**
  Doing so may drain the car battery.
- **If you use an outlet that provides pull-out prevention, follow the instructions of the outlet manual.**
- **Do not subject the adapter or charger to strong impacts. Do not deform the charging terminal or terminal guide.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.

Handling the FOMA card

- **When inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, do not apply unnecessary force.**
- **The FOMA card may become warm while being used or while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC Card reader/writer. It is your responsibility.**
- **Always keep the IC part clean.**
- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**
- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on the FOMA card.**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **To preserve the environment, take the used FOMA card to a DoCoMo shop.**
- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  The operating temperature range is from 5 to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- **Do not scratch, touch or short-circuit the IC carelessly.**
  Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not drop the FOMA card or subject it to strong impacts.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend the FOMA card or put something heavy on it.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **When removing the FOMA card, do not apply unnecessary force.**

Handling the miniSD Memory Card

Do not remove the miniSD memory card or turn off the FOMA terminal while using the miniSD memory card.
Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Handling the In-Car Holder

Be sure to attach the in-car holder to the arm rest, etc. Firmly place the FOMA terminal into the in-car holder.

Handling the Camera

If you break the law while using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under applicable laws and regulations (such as the Public Nuisance Laws).

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit contents such as text, images, music or software that were photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from an Internet website, which are under third-party copyright, without the permission of the copyright holder, although it is permitted under copyright law to duplicate or quote the contents for personal use.
It may be prohibited to shoot or record a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.
Shooting a photo of someone with the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot with the FOMA terminal on a web page without his or her permission may be a breach of portrait right.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

All brand names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- “FOMA”, “mova”, “i-mode”, “i-channel”, “i-αppli”, “i-αppli DX”, “WORLD CALL”, “WORLD WING”, “Public mode”, “i-melody”, “i-area”, “QUICKCAST”, “i-motion”, “mopera”, “mopera U”, “i-motion mail”, “Chaku-motion”, “Deco-mail”, “Charaden”, “i-anime”, “i-αppli search”, “i-shot”, “sigmarion”, “musea”, “DoPa”, “Short mail”, “Dual network”, “FirstPass”, “V-live”, “visualnet”, “Security Scan”, “ToruCa”, “PushTalk”, “PushTalkPlus”, “トクだねニュース便”, “My DoCoMo”, “iD” and “DCMX” and “FOMA”, “i-mode”, “i-αppli”, “ToruCa” and “DCMX” logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- miniSD™ is a trademark of SD Association.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- LCフォント/LC FONT®, エルシーフォント® and LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- T9 Text Input® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications.
- T9 Text Input is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
- キャッチホン (Call Waiting) is registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- QRコード is registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
- “Edy” is the brand name of the pre-paid electronic money service offered by bitWallet, Inc.
- Handset 3D, Game 3D and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sonaptic LTD. of the U.K.
- Facestamps use the N-Vision Virtual Accessory engine.
- Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- NetFront and NetFront are registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- IrFront® is a registered trademark or trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.

- ©Disney
- Gガイド, G-GUIDE, Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE MOBILE and G-GUIDE-related logs are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in the United State and its affiliates in Japan.
- McAfee® and マカフィー® are registered trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.
- Apple, Apple logo and QuickTime are registered trademarks of Apple Computer Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- QuickTime logo is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc.
- “スーパーCCDハニカム” is a registered trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co., Ltd.
- The service name and logo mark for FreeDial is a trademark of NTT Communications Company.
- ©2006 ARMOR PROJECT／BIRD STUDIO／SQUARE ENIX All Rights Reserved.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
  JBlend and all JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and/or other countries.
  Powered by JBlend™ Technology.
  JBlend and JBlend logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation.
- ©2006 ParityBit
- “カメラでケンサク！ERサーチ” and the logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of BANDAI NETWORKS CO., LTD.
- ©2006 ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. All Rights Reserved.
- The other company names and brand names described in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Others

- This product is equipped with Macromedia® Flash® Player technology by Macromedia, Inc.
  Copyright© 1995-2006 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and it is permitted to use for personal purpose and for nonprofit purpose only when you:
  - Record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - Play MPEG-4 Video recorded by consumers engaged in personal and nonprofit activities
  - Play MPEG-4 Video provided by a provider licensed by MPEG-LA

  When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product is equipped with Adobe Reader by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Copyright 2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.
  Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Adobe and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
  4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773
  5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073
  5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
  5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754
  5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
  5,710,784 5,778,338
- This product is equipped with NetFront for the Internet by ACCESS CO., LTD. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
  Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
  This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is equipped with IrFront® for OBEX and infrared data exchange.
  IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- The software in this product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see “readme.txt” in the “GPL・LGPL等について” folder on the bundled CD-ROM. (“readme.txt” is only available in Japanese version.)
- This product is antibacterial.
  The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and that the quality control and information disclosure for this product follows the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).

  Antibacterial: Phone body (excluding the display, keys/buttons and terminals)

Description of Windows

- Windows® 98 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE stands for Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows® Me stands for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- This manual describes Windows® 98 and Windows® 98SE as Windows 98.
- This manual describes Windows® Millennium Edition as Windows Me.
- This manual describes Windows® 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.
- This manual describes Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition as Windows XP.

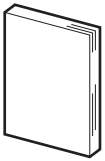
Main Components and Optional Equipment

<Main Components>

FOMA N902iS
(Including the warranty and Back Cover N13)

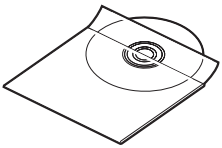


Manual for FOMA N902iS
(This manual)



*The Quick Manual starts on p.506.

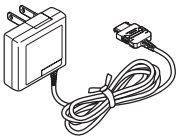
FOMA N902iS CD-ROM



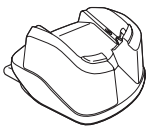
*This CD-ROM contains “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF).

<Optional Equipment>

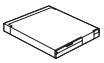
FOMA AC Adapter 01
(Including warranty and manual)



Desktop Holder N10
(Including manual)



Battery Pack N11
(Including manual)



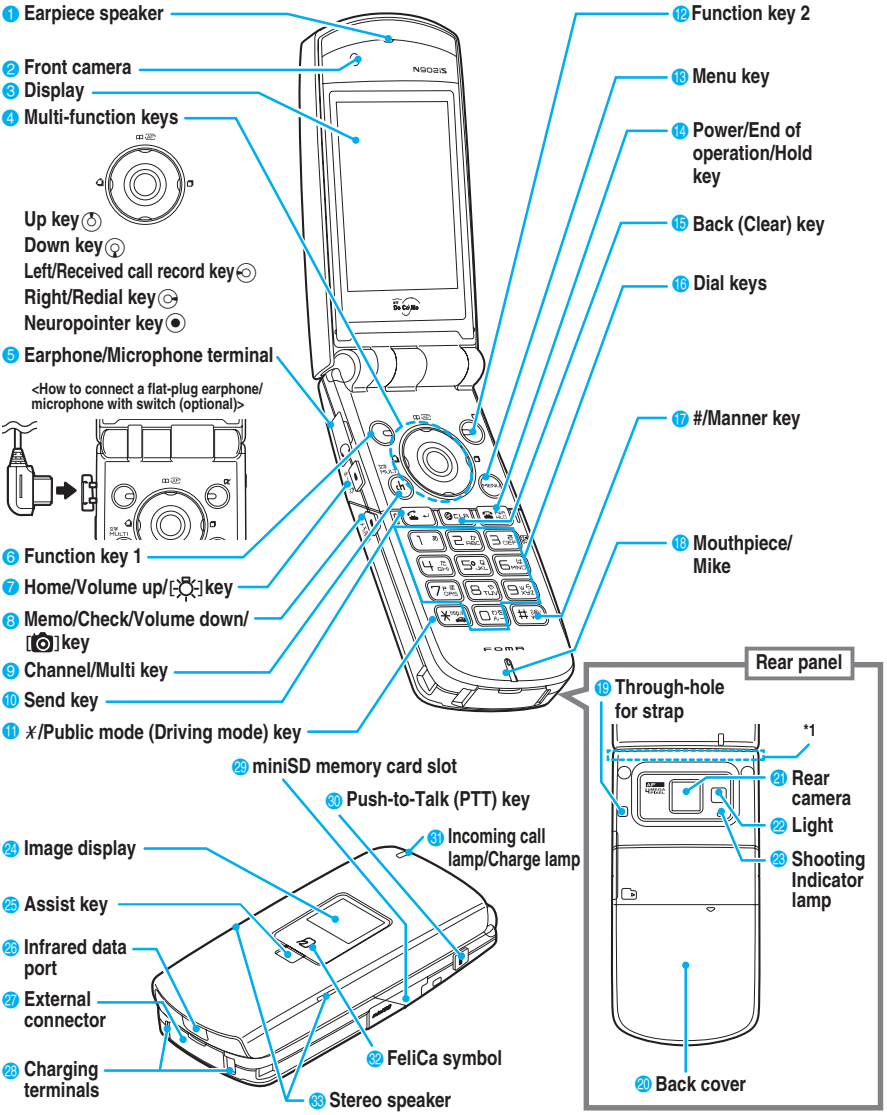
Other options and accessories→p.471

Getting Started

Component Names and Functions 24
Icons on the Display and Image Display 28
Guide to Image Display (Rear Panel Display) 30
Main Menu 31
Using Menus 32
Using the FOMA Card (UIM) 37
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack 40
Charging a FOMA Terminal 42
Checking the Battery Level 44
Turning a FOMA Terminal On/Off 44
Switching Language Mode ..... Select language 45
Performing Initial Settings ..... Initial setting 46
Setting Date and Time ..... Set time 46
Setting the World Clock ..... World watch 47
Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party
..... Caller ID Notification 47
Checking Your Phone Number ..... Own number 48

Component Names and Functions

The following are the names and functions of the keys on the N902iS FOMA terminal:



Size (mm)*2	Width 51 × Height 104 × Depth 23
Mass (g)*3	Approx. 114

*1 : This model is equipped with an internal antenna. For better phone call, do not cover the section around the antenna.
*2 : Height and depth are for the FOMA terminal when folded.
*3 : When the battery pack is attached.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

■ Functions

1. Earpiece speaker
   - Allows you to hear the other party's voice.
2. Front camera
   - Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends your image to the other party during videophone calls.
3. Display
4. Multi-function keys

   Up key
   - Moves the cursor or highlight upward.
   - Scrolls up a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
   - Opens the phonebook list screen.
   - Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

   Down key
   - Moves the cursor or highlight downward.
   - Scrolls down a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
   - Opens the search phonebook screen.
   - Moves the cursor into the operation guidance area when the predictive candidates of the entered characters are listed.

   Left/Received call record key
   - Moves the cursor to the left.
   - Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.
   - Shows the Received calls record. →p.66

   Right/Redial key
   - Moves the cursor to the right.
   - Scrolls to the next screens by page.
   - Shows the Redial record. →p.58

   Neuropointer key
   - Neuropointer →p.27
5. Earphone/Microphone terminal
   - You can use your FOMA terminal in hands-free mode when plugging in a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). A conventional earphone/microphone with switch is also available by using an earphone jack conversion adapter P001 (optional).
6. Function key 1
   - Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-left of a screen. →p.26
7. Home/Volume up/(☼) key
   - Checks for missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.30
   - Connects to the site set in "Home URL" (p.228) easily using i-mode.
   - Lights the backlight of the image display when pressed with a FOMA terminal folded.
   - Turns up the earpiece volume during a call. →p.69
   - Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key during character entry. →p.426
   - Turns the light on when using the camera.
   - Hides the i-channel telop text shown on the image display.
   - Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.
8. Memo/Check/Volume down/(📷) key
   - Activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. →p.77
   - Plays recorded messages. →p.77
   - Turns down the earpiece volume during a call. →p.69
   - Lights the backlight of the image display and reads out the current time when pressed with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.75
   - Shoots still images with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.188
   - Hides the i-channel telop text shown on the image display.
   - Scrolls to the next screens by page.
9. Channel/Multi-key
   - Shows the channel list on the standby screen. →p.305
   - Opens the task change screen. →p.385
   - Switches the input mode on the character entry screen. →p.427
10. Send key
    - Makes voice calls. →p.50
    - Answers voice calls. →p.64
    - Answers videophone calls. →p.86
    - Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. →p.431
11. ✱/Public mode (Driving mode) key
    - Enters "✱", "http://" or other character strings. →p.460
12. Function key 2
    - Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-right of a screen. →p.26
13. Menu key
    - Opens the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher). →p.32
14. Power/End of operation/Hold key
    - Turns on the power when pressed for 1 second or longer. →p.44
    - Turns off the power when pressed for 2 seconds or longer. →p.45
    - Ends a call. →p.50
    - Puts an incoming call on hold. →p.70
15. Back (Clear) key
    - Goes back to one step before.
    - Puts a call on hold. →p.51
    - Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. →p.51, 433
    - Runs the software set for the i-αppli standby screen. →p.301
16. Dial keys to
    - Enter phone numbers. →p.50
    - Enters characters and numerals. →p.430
17. #/Manner key
    - Enters "#" or symbols. →p.460
    - Sets "Manner mode" and activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. →p.77
18. Mouthpiece/Mike
    - Conveys your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
    - Works as the microphone when you shoot movies using the camera or record voice using "Picture voice".
19. Through-hole for strap
20. Back cover
21. Rear camera
    - Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends images such as a landscape to the other party during videophone calls.
22. Light
    - Provides light when pictures are taken with the camera.
23. Shooting Indicator lamp
    - Lights up while shooting with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.188
24. Image display
    - Shows the FOMA terminal condition using messages, icons and animations.
25. Assist key
    - Checks for missed calls, new mails, etc. with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.74
    - Reads out received mails or the alarm information of "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list". →p.386
    - Performs the music player operations. →p.380

    (The three keys of ☼, 📷 and ▭ are collectively called external keys in this manual.)
26. Infrared data port
    - Window used for sending or receiving infrared rays. →p.364
27. External connector
    - Used to connect an optional external device to a FOMA terminal.
28. Charging terminals
29. miniSD memory card slot
    - Slot for inserting the miniSD memory card. →p.353
30. Push-to-Talk key
    - Used to make or during a Push-to-Talk call. →p.99
    - Shows the PushTalk phonebook on the standby screen.
31. Incoming call lamp/Charge lamp
    - Flashes when you receive a voice call, videophone call, mail, MessageR or MessageF. Lights in red while charging.
32. FeliCa symbol
    - The IC card is built-in. Pass the FeliCa symbol over a reader/writer unit to use the IC card function. This IC card cannot be removed.
33. Stereo speaker
    - Emits sounds such as a ring tone or voice of the other party in hands-free mode.

Operations performed by a long press of a key

The operations performed by pressing a key for 1 second or longer are as follows:

Key	Operation	Refer to	Key	Operation	Refer to
	Opens the received address list.	p.275		Adjusts the earpiece volume. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.69
	Opens the sent address list.	p.275	(Memo/ Check)	Records voice memos. (during a call)	p.397
	Sets IC card lock. (when "SimpleLock" is enabled and on the standby screen)	p.313		Opens the Photo mode screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.185
	Turns the backlight on/off.	p.141	(Home)	Mutes the microphone. (during a videophone call)	p.80
	Enters "+". (while on the standby screen or phone number entry screen)	p.53			
	Sets Manner mode. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.133		Check new messages (while on the standby screen)	pp.231, 258
(MULTI)	Opens the switching task screen. (while tasks are activated)	p.386		Opens the i-αppli software list screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.292
	Opens the standby screen. (during Multitask)	p.385		Switches the main screen display. (during a videophone call)	pp.80, 82
	Sets the external keys. (while on the main menu)	p.169	(Assist key)	Activates/quits the music player. (while on the standby screen, etc.)	p.380
	Sets Public mode (Driving mode). (while on the standby screen)	p.71			
	Enters a pause (p). (while editing pause dial data)	p.60			

Software key

On a screen, operational icons (software keys) corresponding to the function keys (, ,) and directional icons corresponding to the Multi-function keys () appear.

■ **To run a command corresponding to the software key ❶**

Press to run the command indicated on the software key ❶.

❶ includes (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), (ON), etc.

■ **To run a command corresponding to the software key ❷**

Press to run the command indicated on the software key ❷.

❷ includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

■ **To run a command corresponding to the software key ❸**

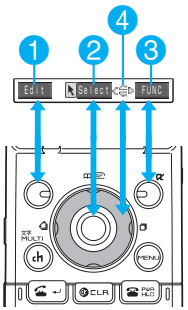
Press to run the command indicated on the software key ❸.

❸ includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press while (FUNC) appears to open the function menu. →p.35

■ **To move/scroll in the directions shown in ❹**

Use to move or scroll in the directions shown in ❹.

The icons show in which directions you can move or scroll.



Neuropointer

Sliding the Neuropointer to move the pointer enables you to quickly select icons or items. When a list or function menu consists of multiple pages, you can switch the pages with the Neuropointer.

- When appears at the bottom of the standby or other screen, slide the Neuropointer to show the pointer ((Ripple)).
- The design of the pointer can be changed.→p.145

Switching pages with the Neuropointer

1 Slide ● to show ▶Move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range

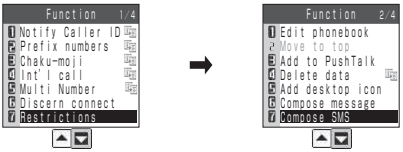
The pointer changes to .

■ When moving the pointer to the top

The pointer changes to .

2 Press ●

The next page appears.



■ To show the previous page

▶Slide ● leftward to change to ▶Press ●

Scrolling a screen with the Neuropointer

You can scroll using the Neuropointer on the PDF data screen or site screen in i-mode or full browser. When Scroll mode is set on an i-mode site or website in Full Browser mode, changes to and an icon such as appears, which allow you to scroll.

Scrolling in i-mode→p.216
Scrolling in full browser→p.318, 319
Scrolling in PDF data screen→p.372

NOTE

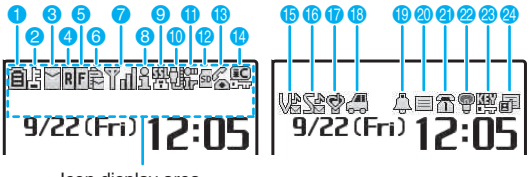
◆ Neuropointer may be unavailable for selecting the menu screens of some Flash movies.

Icons on the Display and Image Display

The symbols (such as , , , etc.) shown on the display and image display are referred to as icons.

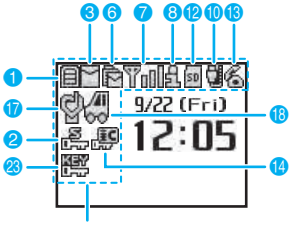
● A calendar, etc. can be set on the display.→p.138

■ Display



Icon display area

■ Image display



Icon display area

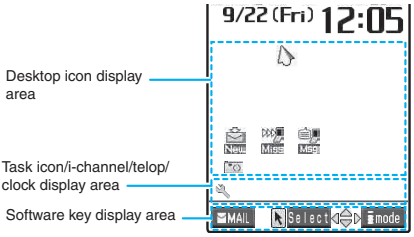
Icon display area

● The following table shows the icon images for the display. Some icons on the image display may differ from them.

	Icon	Description
❶		Battery level→p.44
❷		Lock all set→p.159
		Secret mode or Secret data only mode set →p.161
		PIM lock set→p.165
		Keypad dial lock set→p.169
		Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set→p.161, 169
		Keypad dial lock and PIM lock set →p.165, 169
		PIM lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set→p.161, 165
		Keypad dial lock and PIM lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set →p.161, 165, 169
❸	(white)	Unread mail→p.255
	(red)	Inbox is full→p.255
		FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full →p.288
	(white)	Unread mail/FOMA card memory for SMS is full→p.288
	(red)	Inbox is full/FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full→p.255, 288
❹	(white)	Unread MessageR→p.229
	(red)	Memory for MessageR is full→p.229
❺	(white)	Unread MessageF→p.229
	(red)	Memory for MessageF is full→p.229
❻	(white)	Mail kept at the i-mode Center→p.258
	(red)	Memory for your mail at the i-mode Center is full→p.258
		Mail kept at the i-mode Center when “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”→p.257
	(white)	MessageR kept at the i-mode Center→p.231
	(red)	Memory for your MessageR at the i-mode Center is full→p.231
	(white)	MessageF kept at the i-mode Center→p.231
	(red)	Memory for your MessageF at the i-mode Center is full→p.231
❼		Signal strength→p.45
		Out of service area or a radio wave does not reach→p.45
	self	Self mode set→p.175
❽		i-mode in progress→p.213
		i-mode communication in progress→p.213
		Packet communication in progress→p.422
		Packet communication in progress (outgoing) →p.422
		Packet communication in progress (incoming) →p.422
		Packet communication in progress (sending data)→p.422
		Packet communication in progress (receiving data)→p.422
		Push-to-Talk call in progress→p.99
❾		SSL-compatible page shown→p.215
❿		Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected→p.362
		Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected→p.362

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected→p.63, 362	⑫	miniSD memory card inserted→p.354
	Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected→p.63, 362		Disabled miniSD memory card inserted →p.354
	miniSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected→p.362		miniSD reader/writer operated→p.361
	miniSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.362	⑬	Voice call in progress→p.50
	miniSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected →p.63, 362		64K data communication in progress→p.422
	miniSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected →p.63, 362		Communication speed during a videophone call→p.81
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.362		Call mode is being changed between voice call and videophone call→p.52, 85
	Print mode set, printer recognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected→p.362	⑭	IC card lock set→p.312
	Print mode set, printer recognized and hands-free compatible device connected→p.63, 362	⑮	Vibrator set→p.131
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device connected →p.63, 362	⑯	Ring volume set to “Silent”→p.69 Mail/Msg. ring time set to “OFF”→p.133
⑪	Infrared data exchange in progress→p.364	⑰	Manner mode set→p.133
	Infrared remote control operated→p.369		Remote monitoring set→p.94
		⑱	Public mode (Driving mode) set→p.71
		⑲	Alarm set→p.387
		⑳	Record message set→p.75
		㉑	Voice Mail message→p.411
		㉒	Backlight set to “OFF”→p.141
		㉓	External keys guard set to “ON”→p.169
		㉔	Record message (Record VP message) set →p.75



Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Desktop icons that give notice→p.149
etc.	Added desktop icons→p.148

Task icon/i-channel telop/clock display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Task icons→p.385
i-channel telop	Telop text running on the standby screen→p.305
Clock	Date and time shown on the standby screen→p.147 (Time appears on other screens regardless of the “Clock display” setting.)

NOTE

- The display of a FOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up due to its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.
- Press (メール) (3 def) (5 mode) to check the name of the icon shown on the screen.

Guide to Image Display (Rear Panel Display)

The image display indicates an incoming call/mail or alarm in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening a FOMA terminal.

- “Setting the Image Display Mode”→p.140
- You can view the i-channel information on the image display if “i-Channel setting” (p.306) is set.

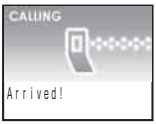
Sample images



Clock display (Digital)



Alarm clock ringing



Chaku-moji



Receiving call



Camera (shot closed (with frame))



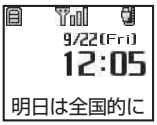
Emotion-expressing mail



Notice designate calls



Switching voice/videophone calls



Telop text of the i-channel (twice)

Checking a caller or sender

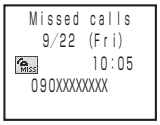
Press ● (Home) to check a caller or sender.

- When performing the tool group operation (p.31), you cannot check missed calls on the image display.

■ Missed call

You can only check the latest missed call.



(Home)


(Home)


The clock reappears.

■ New mail

When receiving several mails at the same time, you can only check the latest one.



(Home)


When “Mail” is set to “ON” in “Image display”, the sender, sent date and title appear.
(Home)


The clock reappears.

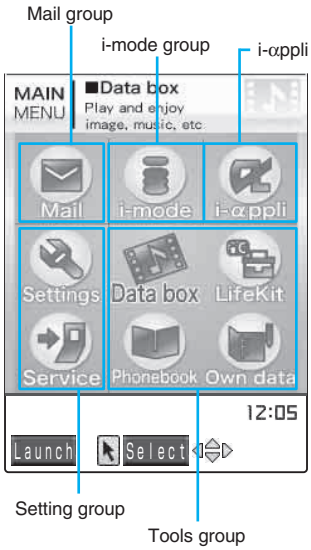
NOTE

- Press ● (Home) with a FOMA terminal folded to light up the display light.
- In power save mode, the image display is blank. Press ● (Home) to reactivate the image display.

Main Menu

To set or check various functions with a FOMA terminal, access each function from the main menu. Press (MENU) to open the main menu. The main menu consists of the following groups:

* Main menu is indicated in Ice silver as phone color.



<Mail group>

●Mail
Read sent/received mails, compose and send new mail.

<i-mode group>

●i-mode
Use i-mode service to access website, etc.

<i-αppli group>

●i-αppli
Find useful applications.

<Settings group>

●Settings
Change the settings to customize your FOMA terminal.

●Service
Specify and confirm the settings of network service.

<Tools group>

●Data box
Enjoy picture, music, etc.

●LifeKit
Find useful functions such as camera, alarm and data exchange.

●Phonebook
Add data to phonebook, search data in phonebook, or change the settings.

●Own data
Manage and check your personal data and history.

“Multitask” →p.385
The FOMA terminal supports “Multitask” that enables you to use multiple functions at the same time, up to three functions from each main menu group. While in a Multitask operation, the active menu groups are enclosed with a box.



In-use groups are enclosed with a box.

Using Menus

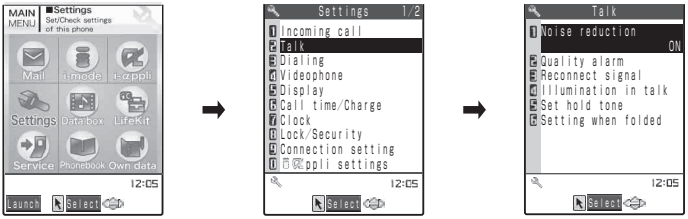
Open a screen from the main menu or original menu to set or check functions.

- You have two ways of accessing functions after pressing the MENU key: accessing a function from the main menu and accessing a function by entering the menu number (p.450). This "Manual for FOMA N902iS" describes focusing on the procedures to access functions from the main menu.
- To cancel a menu operation, press PWR. It will cancel the operation in the middle of the setting to return to the standby screen or previous screen. However, a message asking whether to discard the entered or selected items may appear depending on the menu. In this case, pressing CLR goes back to the operation screen shown before a message appears.
- The frequently used menu such as Mail (p.242) or i-mode (p.213) can be accessed easily from the standby screen. On the standby screen, press (MAIL) to access the Mail menu or (i-mode) to access the i-mode menu.

Selecting functions from the main menu

<Example: Setting flashing color in "Illumination in talk">

1 MENU ▶Use ◎ to highlight Settings (Settings) and then press ● ▶Use ◎ to highlight "Talk" and then press ●

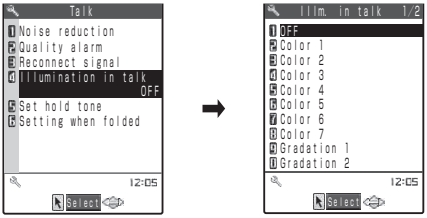


■ **To scroll continuously**
▶Keep holding ◎

■ **To use the Neuropointer**
"Neuropointer"→p.27

■ **If you do not press any keys for 15 seconds while the main menu appears**
The main menu is closed and the previous screen reappears.

2 Use ◎ to highlight "Illumination in talk" and press ●



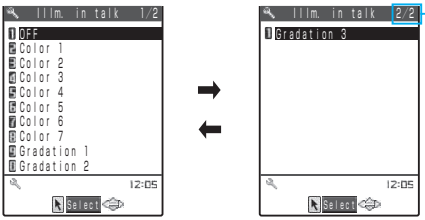
NOTE

◆ The icon you selected the last time is highlighted when the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher) is opened (Last one function). This function is only available when "ON" is set for "Memory focus" in "Menu display set".

To select items that span multiple pages

1 Use ◉ to select the items you want to set

Press ◉ (or ▯ (Home)) to scroll to the previous page or ◉ (or ▯ (Memo/Check)) to the next page.



2 Press ●

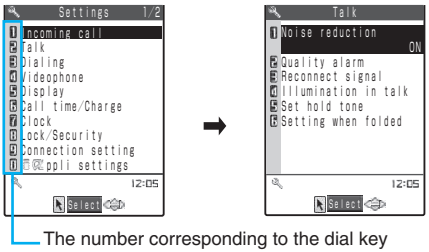
The selected items are set.

3 Press ☎ PWR CLR after the operation

The menu operation ends and the standby screen reappears. While Multitask is being performed, the other active screen appears.

Using the dial keys to select items

1 Press □ わ゛ to 9 wxyz to select items



Selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF"

1 Use ◉ to select "YES" (or "ON") or "NO" (or "OFF") and press ●

The selected item is set.



Entering the security code

Some functions may open the security code entry screen before the detail screen appears. To open the detail screen, enter your security code. →p.156

1 Enter your 4- to 8-digit security code, and press ●

The entered security code appears as "_".
The detail screen of a function appears after the correct security code is entered.



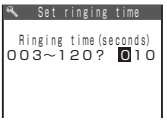
■ If the entered security code is incorrect

A message notifying that the security code is incorrect appears. Re-enter the security code.

Entering numbers

1 Press 0 to 9 to enter numbers

To enter a 1-digit number or 2-digit number on a 3-digit number entry screen, press 0 twice or once before entering the number.



■ **To enter "3"**

▶0, 0, 3

■ **To enter "12"**

▶0, 1, 2

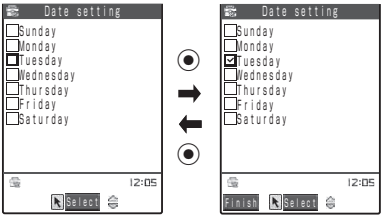
Marking checkboxes (selecting multiple items)

1 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) to mark and press ●

The checkbox changes from ☐ to ☑. This indicates a selected checkbox. Press ● to toggle ☐ and ☑.

When "Finish" appears as a software key, pressing (Finish) sets the item selected.

When "FUNC" appears as a software key, pressing (FUNC) allows you to use functions such as "Select all" or "Release all".

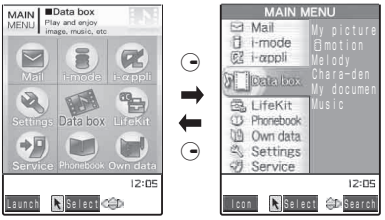


Launcher mode on the main menu

Changing the standard main menu to launcher mode enables you to reference the sub menus under the selected menu.

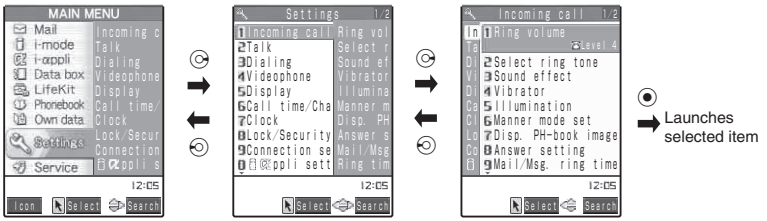
1 MENU ▶ (Launch)

Press (Icon) to return to the main menu.



2 Select a menu item

Use ◈ to select an item and press ●. The sub menus under the selected menu are shown at the right pane.



Layer 1 Layer 2 Layer 3

● Launches selected item

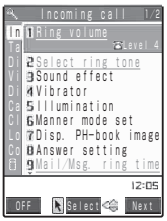
Searching menu items

1 (MENU)▶(−)(Launch)▶(−)(Search)▶Enter a keyword▶(●)

The search result appears with the searched item selected.
Press (−) (OFF) to end search.

■ If multiple search results come out

Press (−) (Next) to show the next search result.



Searched "RING"

NOTE

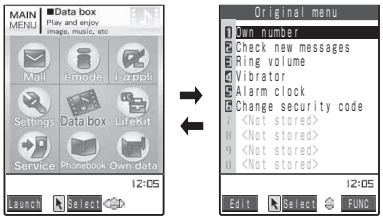
◆ If you used Sliding Menu (Launcher) to select a menu item last time, pressing (MENU) opens Sliding Menu (Launcher). However, if "OFF" is set for "Memory focus" in "Menu display set", pressing (MENU) always opens the main menu.

Selecting a function from your original menu

- Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (−) (Edit) to edit the original menu.
- The original menu appears in "List".
- Adding items to the original menu →p.144

1 (MENU)▶**Press** (MENU)

Pressing (MENU) switches between the main menu and original menu.



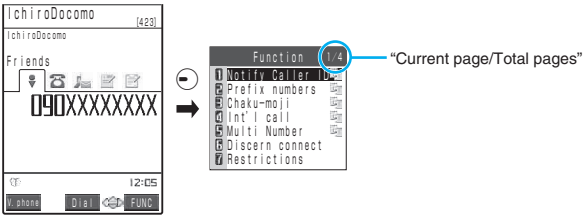
NOTE

◆ When you return to the standby screen or access a function from the original menu and press (MENU), the main menu appears.

◆ If no function is stored in the original menu, a message asking whether to add functions to the original menu appears.

Function menu

When you are using a function that enables you to store, edit or delete data, "FUNC" appears as a software key. Press (−) (FUNC) to open the function menu. Use (○) to highlight an item to perform and press (●) to select it.



- When items span multiple pages, "Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the function menu screen. Press (○) while the top item of the function menu is selected to show the previous page. Press (○) while the bottom item is selected to show the next page. Press (○) (or (Home)) to scroll to the previous page or (○) (or (Memo/Check)) to the next page.
- "▶" appears on the right of an option if there are further menus under the option.
- The shown function menu differs depending on the active operation or setting.
- You may not be able to select some items in a function menu due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable items in a function menu are grayed out.

Continued on next page

Notation for menu operations

In this manual, procedures for menu operations are described as shown below.
The procedure (extract) for selecting “Remote monitoring” from “Videophone” in “Settings” is taken as an example.

Notation for this manual:

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“Videophone”▶“Remote monitoring” ▶Enter your security code▶“Other ID”**

2 **Select “<Not recorded>”**

⋮

Actual operations:

1 **Press MENU on the standby screen**

2 **Use ◉ on the main menu to highlight Settings and press ●**

3 **Use ◉ on the “Settings” menu to highlight “Videophone” and press ●**

4 **Use ◉ on the “Videophone” menu to highlight “Remote monitoring” and press ●**

5 **Enter your security code and press ●**

6 **Highlight “Other ID” on the “Remote monitoring” menu and press ●**

❶Operation for 1

7 **Use ◉ on the “Other ID” menu to highlight “<Not recorded>” and press ●**

❷Operation for 2

⋮

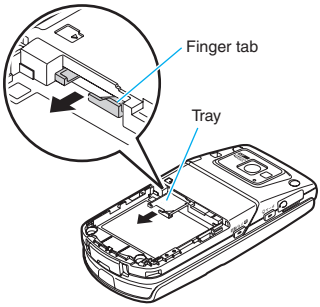
Using the FOMA Card (UIM)

The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that contains your private information such as the phone number. Before inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM), turn off the FOMA terminal and remove the battery. Hold the FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

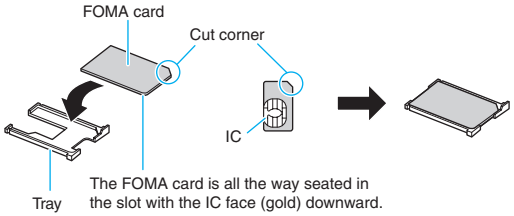
● Inserting/Removing the FOMA card (UIM)

Use a dedicated tray for inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM). Do not insert the card without the tray.
Insert the FOMA card (UIM) as illustrated below.

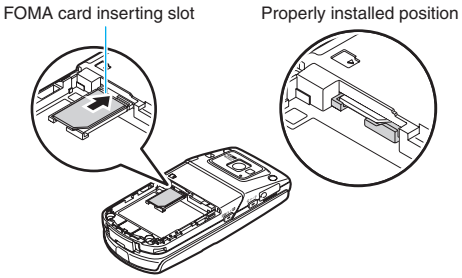
1 Pull the tray tab to pull out the tray



2 Put the FOMA card (UIM) on the tray with the IC face downward (as shown below)
To remove the FOMA card (UIM), remove it from the tray.



3 Fully insert the tray to the FOMA card slot to secure the tray.



NOTE

- Note that using excessive force to insert or remove the FOMA card (UIM) may damage the card.
- Take care not to lose the FOMA card (UIM) and tray after removing them from a FOMA terminal.
- Take care not to touch or scratch on the IC part of the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) incorrectly or the card has a problem, error messages (p.479) appear.

PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes for the FOMA card (UIM).→p.157
PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit code to be entered every time a FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use by third parties.
PIN2 code is a 4-to-8-digit number that is required as personal authentication for access to online services such as Internet connection and site access or for resetting total call charges.

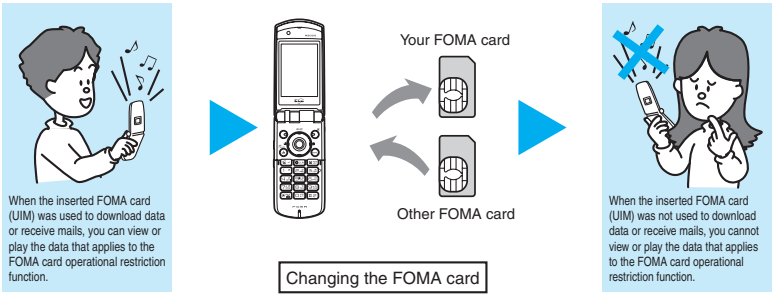
- The default setting for the PIN1 and PIN2 codes is “0000”.
- You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes.→p.158
- When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can still use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have used for the FOMA card (UIM).

FOMA card operational restriction function

Your FOMA terminal incorporates the FOMA card operational restriction function to protect your data and files.

- When you download files or data from sites or receive files attached to i-mode mails, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set for the files or data.
- Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or file is inserted.
- The data and files subject to the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
  - i-αppli programs, melodies, images, Chara-den characters, PDF data and DL dictionaries/templates including images, which are downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
  - i-motion programs downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
  - Screen memos including melodies, images, i-motion programs, Chara-den characters, DL dictionaries, templates
  - Images that were downloaded from the Data Security Center
  - Files (melody/image) attached to i-mode mails in Inbox or pasted melodies
  - Files (melody/image/i-motion, except for images or i-motion programs shot using a FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode mails in Outbox/Draft
  - MessageR/MessageF with attached files (melody/image)
  - Images inserted into the messages of Deco-mails
  - Record VP messages
  - Images for ToruCa (detail)

The FOMA card (UIM) that was inserted when you downloaded or received data or files is referred to as “your FOMA card (UIM)” and other FOMA cards as “another FOMA card (UIM)” hereinafter.



Changing the FOMA card

NOTE

- If you replace your FOMA card (UIM) with another one, the “ ” mark is attached to data and files for which this function is set. You can no longer set them in “Display setting” or “Select ring tone”.
- If data or a file with this function set is selected for “Display setting” or “Select ring tone” and your FOMA card (UIM) is removed or replaced with another one, these settings are reset to default. To restore the settings performed by you, insert your FOMA card (UIM) again.
- You can move or delete data or files with this function set even when another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
- Replacing your FOMA card (UIM) with another one deletes the contents such as a news received through the i-channel service.
- Data stored via the Infrared data exchange function, data transmission (OBEX) function, a miniSD memory card or Bar code reader, edited images and pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not subject to this function.
- Pre-installed i-αppli programs are subject to this function if they were upgraded or re-downloaded from sites after had been deleted.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

◆ If the FOMA card operational restriction function is set, you cannot select items such as highlighted text on the i-mode mail detail screen to launch an i-αppli.
◆ If you insert your FOMA card (UIM) to another i-channel-compatible terminal, telop text does not appear on the terminal. In addition, the contents may not be automatically updated. To receive the latest information, press ⓓ to show the channel list. The telop text will automatically appear in this case.

When exchanging the FOMA cards (UIM)

When the FOMA card (UIM) inserted into a FOMA terminal is replaced with another one, the following settings are changed:
● To use the FOMA card (UIM), enter the security code.

Setting	When another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted
“Select language” (p.45)	The settings stored on the newly inserted FOMA card (UIM) are applied.
“SMS center selection” (p.287)	
“SMS validity period” (p.276)	
“PIN setting” (p.157)	
“Host selection” under “Connection setting” (p.228)	
“Caller ID setting” for Push-to-Talk (p.106)	“OFF” is set regardless of the previous settings.
“Telop display setting” for i-channel (p.306)	“ON” is set regardless of the previous settings.
“Access setting” for Full Browser (p.320)	“No” is set regardless of the previous settings.
“Cookie settings” for Full Browser (p.321)	“Invalid” is set regardless of the previous settings (Cookie information remains undeleted).

FOMA card (UIM) functional differences

There are 2 types of the FOMA card (UIM). There are the following functional differences between those FOMA cards (UIM) when they are used on a FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)
Max number of digits for a phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits max.	26 digits max.
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available
WORLD WING	Unavailable	Available
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available

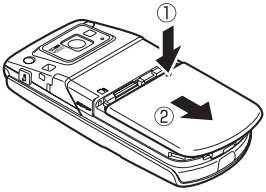
WORLD WING
WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that allows you to use the same mobile phone number in overseas countries to make and receive calls by using the FOMA card (green) and a terminal compatible with this service.
N902iS is only available in a DoCoMo 3G roaming service area. In a GSM service area, use a terminal compatible with the GSM service.

You do not need to subscribe to WORLD WING to use it.
* If you subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but have not subscribed to WORLD WING, you need to subscribe to WORLD WING to use it.
* This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

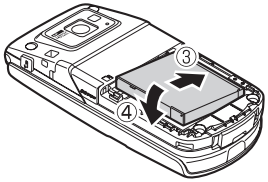
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack

● Turn a FOMA terminal off before inserting or removing the battery pack. Hold a FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

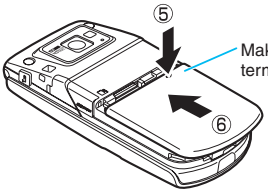
● Inserting



Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② to remove it.



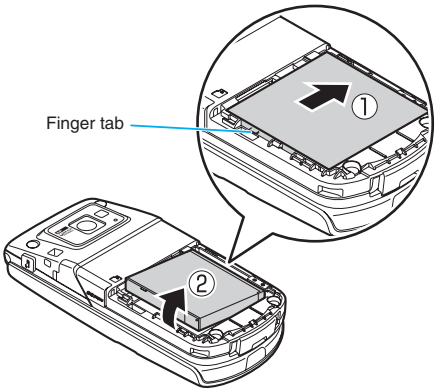
With the product name on the battery pack facing upwards, attach the battery pack in direction ③. Make sure that the metallic contacts on the battery pack and the FOMA terminal (Phone) touch, and then press the battery down in direction ④.



Make sure the back cover and the FOMA terminal (Phone) are securely attached.

Lift the back cover about 2 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑤ and slide the back cover in direction ⑥. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.

● Removing



Remove the back cover.
Press the tab of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ②.

NOTE

◆ Note that using excessive force to insert the battery pack may damage the charging terminals on a FOMA terminal that connect to the battery pack.
◆ For details, refer to the Battery Pack N11 instructions.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Getting the best out of your battery pack

Use the approved Battery Pack N11 for a FOMA terminal.
If you use a FOMA terminal overseas, take the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 with you. Before using the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01, check the voltage available in a country or area you will stay.→p.442

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as when it was new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. It may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.



To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

■ Charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- Attach the battery pack to a FOMA terminal to charge the battery.
- You can receive calls while charging if a FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during calls and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if “Charging” in “Backlight” is set to “All time ON”.
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply excessive force.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with a FOMA terminal turned on.

- If you charge the battery pack for a long period of time with a FOMA terminal turned on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short period of time and the low voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect a FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then attach it again for recharging.

■ Battery duration (The battery duration varies depending on the charging time or deterioration of the battery.)

Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
Voice call: Approx. 160 min. Videophone call: Approx. 120 min.	Stationary: Approx. 540 hours Moving: Approx. 420 hours

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while a FOMA terminal can normally send and receive radio waves.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated standby time when a folded FOMA terminal can normally receive radio waves. Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk or use i-mode, creating i-mode mails, starting up downloaded i-αppli programs and the i-αppli standby screen or playing music will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.
- The standby time (stationary) is an average standby time when a folded FOMA terminal keeps still while radio waves can be normally received.
- The standby time (moving) is an average standby time all including “stationary”, “moving” and “out of service area” when a FOMA terminal is folded and radio waves can be normally received.
- Inserting the miniSD memory card, performing data communication or multi access or using the camera or light will also shorten the talk (communication) and standby times.

NOTE

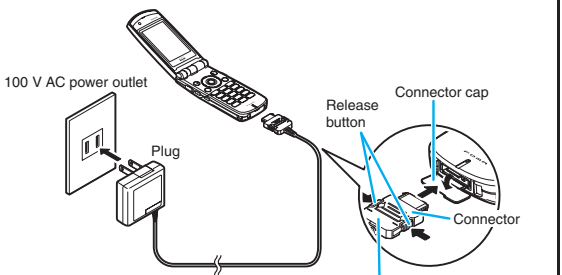
◆ If the battery pack is out of charge or removed, you cannot save images or movies.

Charging a FOMA Terminal

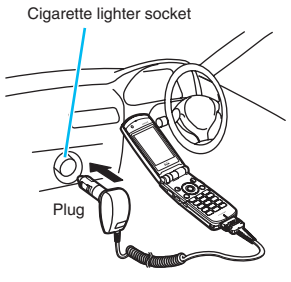
● You can charge a FOMA terminal using the AC or DC adapter (optional). You can also charge the terminal by connecting the optional AC adapter and desktop holder. For more information on charging, refer to the user's manual provided with the AC adapter or DC adapter.

Charging with the AC adapter or DC adapter

■AC adapter



■DC adapter



1 Open the external connector cap on a FOMA terminal

2 Plug the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally into the external connector on the FOMA terminal

3 Plug the AC adapter into the outlet
Plug the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in a car

Charging starts.

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 After charging is completed, remove the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release button

5 Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet
Unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in a car

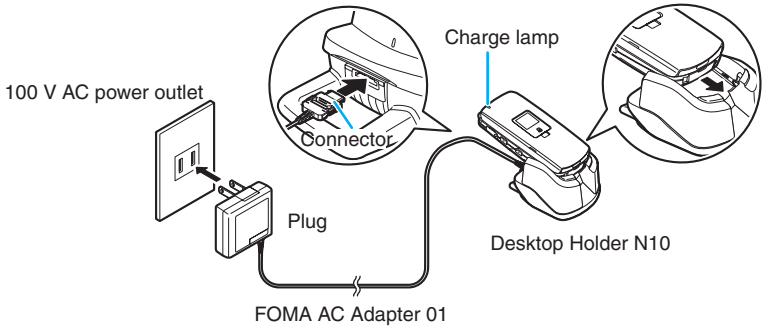
6 Close the external connector cap on the FOMA terminal

NOTE

◆ When the charge lamp on a FOMA terminal (Phone) turns off, "" on the display disappears and the message "Charge unusual Stop charge" appears, disconnect a FOMA terminal from the AC adaptor or DC adaptor and remove the battery pack. Then set them again for recharging. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adaptor or DC adaptor. Contact a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.

◆ Keep pressing the release button of the AC adapter connector when pulling it out of the external connector on a FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cord may cause malfunction.

Charging with the desktop holder



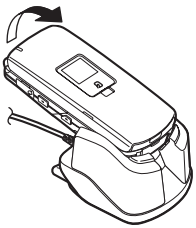
1 Plug the AC adapter connector into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder in the direction as shown above

2 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet

3 Place a FOMA terminal securely in the desktop holder as shown above

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 After charging is completed, lift the FOMA terminal up in the direction of the arrow holding down the desktop holder



NOTE

- Set a FOMA terminal securely in the desktop holder. Take care not to trap the strap.
- The charge lamp lights in red while charging. The charge lamp lights red during charging. If a FOMA terminal is turned on, "" flashes while charging and "" lights when charging ends.
- If a FOMA terminal is turned on, the terminal emits the "Charge sound" when charging starts or ends. However, while "Manner mode" or "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set or when "Charge sound" is set to "OFF", the "Charge sound" does not sound.
- The AC adapter 01 is only suitable for use with 100 V AC power supplies.
- The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is loaded in a FOMA terminal.
- If the battery runs out or the FOMA terminal is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charge lamp may not light right away, but charging has already started.
- The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground DC 12V or 24V. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.
- The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

Checking the Battery Level

The indicated battery level is reference only.

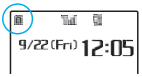
Checking with a battery level icon

When a FOMA terminal is turned on, an icon indicating the battery level automatically appears.

(white): Full charge

(white): Partial charge

(red): Low charge



Checking with sound and animation

MENU 71

The current battery level is informed by sound and animation.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Battery level”

The check screen appears and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about three seconds.

“3 short beeps”: Full charge
“2 short beeps”: Partial charge
“1 short beep”: Low charge

NOTE

◆ The beeps do not sound when “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF” or in Manner mode.

When the battery runs out

The screen as shown on the right flashes and the low voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop this alarm, press any keys other than (Home), (Memo/Check), (Assist key) or .



NOTE

◆ During a call, the Recharge battery screen above appears and 3 short beeps sound. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power will turn off in about one minute.

◆ While “Manner mode” is set and “Manner mode” or “Super silent” is selected for the performance in Manner mode, while “LVA tone” is set to “OFF” in “Original” or while “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set the low voltage alarm does not sound.

Turning a FOMA Terminal On/Off

● Before using a FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period of time), charge the battery. Be sure to use the approved AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) for charging.

Turning a FOMA terminal on

● Before turning a FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card is inserted correctly.

● When you turn on the power for the first time after purchase, “” appears on the upper right of a screen.

1 (1 second or longer)

The standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just loaded the battery pack or turn a FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, the “Wait a minute” message may appear for a short period of time.

■ **When “ ” appears**

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. “” appears. The reception levels appear as follows:

Good ⟷ Poor



■ **When PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON”**

The PIN1 code entry screen appears.→p.157

■ **When Auto reset total cost is set to “ON”**

The PIN2 code entry screen appears.

■ **If the initial settings screen appears**

Perform the initial settings.→ p.46

NOTE

◆ After replacing the FOMA card and turning the FOMA terminal on, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code. Entering the correct security code shows the standby screen. If incorrect security codes are entered five times in a row, the FOMA terminal will be turned off. (Turn the terminal on again for retry.)

Turning a FOMA terminal off

1 (PWR HOLD) **(2 seconds or longer)**

The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

NOTE

◆ Signal strength is not stable when you talk on your FOMA terminal while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that “” is shown when using the FOMA terminal.

◆ After turning a FOMA terminal off, wait a few minutes before turning the FOMA terminal back on.

<Select language> MENU15

Switching Language Mode

Default setting: Japanese

You can switch language mode between Japanese and English that is used for showing function names or messages on the display or image display.

1 (MENU)▶(各種設定)▶“ディスプレイ”▶“バイリンガル”▶“English”

■ **To change from Japanese to English**

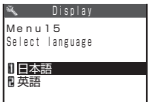
▶“English”



Japanese

■ **To change from English to Japanese**

▶“日本語”



English

NOTE

◆ When the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the Select language setting saved in the FOMA card (UIM) is applied.

◆ Selecting “English” for “Select language” gives you two options “ON” and “OFF” for “Display” under “Clock display” and for “Info notice setting”.

For some guidance messages played for callers, you can switch the language mode between Japanese and English. →p.415

<Initial setting>

Performing Initial Settings

After turning a FOMA terminal on, set “Set time”, “Change security code”, “Keypad sound”, “Neuropointer” (“Simple” only) and “PushTalk Caller ID” as initial settings.

- If you have set any of the functions, the function’s setting screen does not appear.
- After Steps 1 to 6 are performed, the initial setting screen no longer appears. Even if you perform “Reset settings” after those initial settings are completed, the initial setting screens do not appear.
- When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code entry screen appears after you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter the correct PIN1 code to show the initial setting screens.→p.158



Initial setting

1 Initial setting screen▶“YES”

2 Set time

Date and time are not set by default. Setting time→p.46

3 Change the security code

The default setting is “0000”. “Changing Your Security Code”→p.157

4 Set the keypad sound

Keypad sound→p.132

5 Set the speed of the Neuropointer

Only the “Simple” settings in “Neuropointer” can be performed. Neuropointer→p.145

6 Set whether to show your PushTalk caller ID

PushTalk Caller ID→p.106

7 Update software

A message asking whether to update software appears. Software Update→p.487

NOTE

- Even if the operation of initial settings is interrupted because a call arrives or you press [☎] or [C], the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- You can also perform initial settings separately for each function.
- The confirmation screen to prompt software update appears even when initial settings are canceled.
- If you set PushTalk Caller ID to “ON” and then make a PTT call, all participants phone numbers are shown to all participants. Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when showing them.

<Set time> MENU31

Setting Date and Time

Set the date and time on your FOMA terminal manually or the automatic correction of the date and time.

- The set date and time appear on the standby screen or image display, which allows you to use functions managing the date and time (e.g. “Alarm clock” and “Schedule”).
- To set the date and time in “Initial setting” (p.46), start with step 2.
- You can set the date and time between 00:00 on January 1, 2004 and 23:59 on December 31, 2037. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

1 [MENU]▶[Settings]▶“Clock”▶“Set time”

2 Select any item

Auto time set ON (default)	Sets the date and time automatically. Selecting “Auto time set ON” receives the time information and sets the date and time automatically.
Auto time set OFF	Sets the date and time manually. Selecting this option allows you to set a time different from the actual time.

■ **When “Auto time set OFF” is selected**

Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format).
<Example: Setting September 22, 2006, 12:05>
Use [●] to move the highlight, and then enter numbers with the dial keys.
In this example, press [2], [0], [0], [6], [0], [9], [2], [2], [1], [2], [0] and [5].



NOTE

- Enter the date and time in the correct format when you manually set them.
- The built-in backup battery retains the date and time you set, which means that they are not reset even when the battery pack is exchanged. However, they may be erased if the battery pack is removed for about two weeks or longer. If you want to set “Auto time set OFF” with the battery pack which has been removed for long period of time, charge it first and then set the date and time. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

<Auto time set>

- The time is corrected in the situations below using the time information acquired from network. The time may not be automatically corrected due to poor signal reception.
  - A FOMA terminal is turned on.
  - Charging starts when the standby screen appears and another function is not running.
  - “Auto time set ON” is set.
- The time is not corrected if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted or when “ ” appears.
- If the “i-αppli standby” screen is set, the time may not be corrected depending on the set i-αppli.
- A several-second difference may occur.

<World watch>

Setting the World Clock

Default setting	Time zone: GMT+00 (City: London) Summer time: OFF

You can show the time of a city in the world instead of the Japan date and time set in “Set time”. You can also set summer time, if necessary.

● Setting the world clock on the standby screen→p.147

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“Clock”▶“World watch”▶Select any item**

Time zone	**▶Select the time zone** Press ⊖ (Change) to change the city shown in the time zone. (You cannot change the city name in some time zones.)
Summer time	**▶“ON” or “OFF”** If “ON” is set, the time which is one hour ahead of “World watch” time appears.

<Caller ID Notification> MENU17

Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting: OFF	Subscription: Unnecessary	Monthly charge: Free

You can show your phone number to the other party when making a call. Since your phone number is important information, be careful when showing it to others.

- You cannot perform the Caller ID Notification setting when “ ” appears.
- This function is only available when the other party’s phone is capable of displaying caller IDs.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set this function to “ON” and make a call again.

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ **“Caller ID Notification”▶Select any item**

Activate/Deactivate	Network security code→p.156	
	ON	**▶Enter your network security code**
	OFF	**▶Enter your network security code**
Check setting	**▶Check the Caller ID Notification setting and press ●**	

NOTE

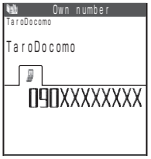
- You can also set whether to show your caller ID when dialing a phone number or selecting a phone number from “Phonebook”, “Redial” or “Received calls”.→p.51
- To make a Push-to-Talk call, this function is not available. A FOMA terminal works following “Caller ID setting” under “PushTalk setting”.→p.106

<Own number> MENU0

Checking Your Phone Number

You can check your phone number (own number) stored in the FOMA card (UIM).

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶“Own number”



NOTE

- By default, only your own number is shown.
- Your personal information (name, home phone number, home address, mail address, etc.) can also be stored. Storing and showing your personal data→p.396
- You can check your i-mode mail address by the following operation: i-mode menu ▶“ Menu”▶“ENGLISH”▶“Options”▶“Mail Settings”▶“Confirm Mail Address”

Making/Receiving Phone Calls

Making phone calls

Making a Call 50
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call 52
Making International Calls ..... WORLD CALL 53
Using Chaku-moji ..... Chaku-moji 55
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number ..... Redial/Dialed calls 58
Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls 186/184 60
Sending Push Signals Quickly ..... Pause dial 60
Setting Prefix Numbers ..... Prefix setting 61
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls ... Sub-address setting 62
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection ..... Reconnect signal 62
Blocking Out Ambient Noise ..... Noise reduction 62
Switching to Hands-free Operation ..... Hands-free 63
Making Hands-free Calls in a Car ..... In-car Hands-free 63

Receiving phone calls

Receiving a Call 64
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call (the Other Party) 65
Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls ..... Answer setting 65
Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls ..... Setting when folded 66
Using the Received Calls Record ..... Received calls 66
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume ..... Volume 69
Adjusting the Ring Volume ..... Ring volume 69

Settings for when you cannot take calls

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately ..... Answer hold 70
Setting the Hold Tone ..... Set hold tone 71
Using Public Mode (Driving Mode) ..... Public mode (Driving mode) 71
Using Public Mode (Power off) ..... Public mode (power off) 73
Checking Missed Calls ..... Info notice setting 74
Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video... Record message 75
Recording the Caller's Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call ..... Quick message 77
Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos 77
Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages ..... VP message 78

Making a Call

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code



Phone number entry

Function menu➡p.51

The "phone number entry" screen appears.
Always start with the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code − Local code − Phone number

A number of up to 80 digits can be entered for making a call although the numbers disappear from the display one by one from the beginning after the number exceeds 26 digits.

■ To call a mobile phone

090 − ×××× − ××××
or
080 − ×××× − ××××

■ To call a PHS phone

070 − ×××× − ××××

2 [☎↵]



In-call

Function menu➡p.51

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed.
The "" icon blinks during dialing and remains lit during the call.
The "in-call" screen appears.

■ To switch to a videophone call during a voice call

"Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call"→p.52

■ If you hear the busy tone

The line is busy. Press [☎PWR], and call again after a while.

■ If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not switched on or is out of signal range. Press [☎PWR], and call again after a while.

■ If you hear a message requesting your caller ID

The other party has the Caller ID Request service switched to "Activate". Call again with your caller ID shown.

3 To end the call, press [☎PWR HLD]

NOTE

- You can make calls while in i-mode or sending or receiving mails.
- A Chaku-moji message up to 10 characters (including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters) can be attached to calls to be made. The Chaku-moji message is shown as an animation on the screen of the other party's phone.→p.55
- You cannot make calls during 64K data communication, Push-to-Talk calls or videophone calls. However, if the other party uses a FOMA terminal that can change the call mode, you can change a videophone call to a voice call by selecting "Change to voice" from the function menu. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)→p.85
- If you open a screen other than the in-call during a call, press [CLR] to return to the in-call screen.
- You can also send photographs taken with the built-in camera to the other party during a call (Speed photo mail) →p.246
- While you are dialing to a person of which name and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the name and icon selected for the phonebook entry appear. However, a still image does not appear even if it is stored in a phonebook entry.
- You can talk in hands-free mode during a call.→p.63
- You can make calls using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).→p.404

Function menu (phone number entry screen)

Notify Caller ID	Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■**To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting** ▶**"Cancel prefix"** When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) setting is applied.
Prefix numbers	▶**Select a prefix name to add** "Setting Prefix Numbers"→p.61
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message"→p.56
Int'l call	■**When "+" is prefixed (a country code is added)*** ▶**Select an IDD prefix code** "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■**When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)** ▶**Select a country code**▶**Select an IDD prefix code** The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls →p.54
Multi Number	"Multi Number"→p.417
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook"→p.111 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook"→p.112
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call.→p.89 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den".

*："Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

Function menu (in-call screen)

Speed photo mail	"Sending the still image shot in talking"→p.246
Disp photo mail	Shows the received speed photo mail.
Check new messages	Checks for new i-mode messages.→p.231, 258

If you entered a wrong number

■ To insert a number

Use ⊙ and move the cursor to the number to the left of the position where you want to insert the number.

■ To delete a number

Use ⊙ and move the cursor to the number you want to delete. Then press CLR.
Press CLR for 1 second or longer to delete all the numbers to the left of the cursor and the number in the cursor position.

■ To reenter a number

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and press CLR for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

Putting an ongoing call on hold <Holding>

1 During a call▶CLR

The other party hears the on-hold tone.



■ To end the held call

▶PWR

■ If the held party hangs up

The call ends.

2 Press CLR, ☎ or ● to resume the call

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- Use “Set hold tone” to select the tone that sounds while a call is on hold.
- A hold tone also sounds on your FOMA terminal while a call is on hold. However, the hold tone does not sound when “Phone” in “Ring volume” is set to “Silent” or Manner mode is set. (The tone sounds if you have selected the “Original” manner mode in which the “Phone vol.” setting is not “Silent”.)

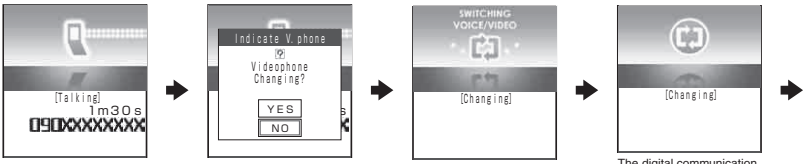
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call

You can change the call mode during a voice call you dialed.

- If the other party uses a FOMA terminal that can change the call mode, “V. phone” appears during a voice call and you can switch the call mode between voice and videophone. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
- You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change the call mode, the other party must set his or her terminal to show you “Indicate V.phone” beforehand.→p.92

1 In-call screen▶● (V. phone) ▶“YES”

While a voice call is being changed to videophone call, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.
Select “NO” on the “Indicate V.phone” message screen to return to the in-call screen.



The digital communication fee is charged after the appearance of this screen.



NOTE

- You can repeatedly change the call mode between voice and videophone.
- You can change a videophone call to a voice call.→p.85
- It takes about 5 seconds to change a call. Signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- You cannot change the call mode between videophone and voice while talking in the following cases:
  - “Call Waiting” is running.
  - The other party is holding a call.
  - The other party has activated Record message.
- The call time shown is reset to 0 second each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call.
- If you try to change the call mode, the message appears on the other party’s videophone screen asking to select an image to send, camera image or substitute image.→p.65
- If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls record. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- If the caller is using packet communication (including i-mode), the packet communication is canceled to change to a videophone call.
- If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message “No switch” meaning you cannot change the call mode. The voice call continues.
- Depending on the other party’s communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change the call mode and the call may be canceled.
- You are not charged while “SWITCHING VOICE/VIDEO” appears.
- If you have changed the call mode, the call charge shown in “Call data” may differ from the one you will pay.
- The hands-free operation is activated or deactivated according to the “Hands-free switch” setting when the call mode is changed, regardless of the hands-free status before the change.→p.90

<WORLD CALL>

Making International Calls

Subscription: Not required
Monthly charge: Free

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to "WORLD CALL" (excluding those who indicated that they did not require the service).
* This service is unavailable with some billing plans.

- WORLD CALL is available for calls to around 220 countries and regions worldwide.
- The WORLD CALL is included in the bill for your monthly call charges.
- In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding "+" or selecting "Int'l call" or "Prefix numbers" from the function menu on the phone number entry, Redial/Dialed calls, Received calls or phonebook detail screen.

Changes to the international dialing procedure

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the "MYLINE" service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. However, with the introduction of the "MYLINE" service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phone has changed. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (the one described below with "010" removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back cover of this manual.

"International videophone calls" can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing (V. phone) to make the call after following the dialing procedure below.

- See the DoCoMo website for information on accessible countries and carriers.
- Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, the other party's image shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international videophone call or the connection may fail.

Dialing to make international calls

1 Dial a number in the following order: 009130→010→(country code)→(area code)→(the other party's phone number)

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

2 ☎

An international call is made.

3 To end the call, press PWR HOLD

Using "+" to make an international call

Using the "+" prefix allows you to make international calls without having to dial the international access code (e.g. 009130-010).

- "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial settings" is set to "Auto" at the time of purchase so that a FOMA terminal automatically dials the IDD prefix code.

1 On the standby screen, dial the following: + (0 (1 second or longer))→(country code)→(area code)→(other party's phone number)

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

2 ☎ ▶"Dial"

An international call is made.

■ **To make a call without converting "+" into the IDD prefix code**
▶"Original phone No."
*: This function is unavailable for your FOMA terminal.

■ **To cancel a call**
▶"Cancel"

Making an international call with an easy operation <Int'l dial settings>

Default setting	Auto assist setting: Auto IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010) Country Code setting: 日本 (Country code: 81)

You can change the settings for dialing international calls or store new country codes. You can set the following:

Setting	Description
Auto assist setting	When you make an international call from Japan, the entered "+" is automatically replaced with the IDD prefix code set in this function.
IDD Prefix setting	Stores the international access names and IDD prefix codes used when you make international calls.
Country Code setting	Stores the country names and country codes used when you make international calls.

● Adding "+" automatically

Set this function to add "+" automatically when making international calls.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶"Dialing"▶"Int'l dial settings"

2 **"Auto assist setting"▶"Auto"**

■ **To not add "+"**
▶"OFF"

3 **Select a country name**

4 **Select an international access name**

● Storing the IDD prefix code

You can store up to 3 IDD prefix codes, each of 10 digits max.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶"Dialing"▶"Int'l dial settings"

2 **"IDD Prefix setting"**
The "IDD Prefix setting" screen appears.

3 **Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit)**

■ **To edit a stored item**
▶Highlight an item to edit and press (Edit)

4 **Enter an international access name**

5 **Enter the IDD prefix code**



IDD Prefix setting

Function menu➡p.54

Function menu (IDD Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits the IDD prefix code.
Delete this	Deletes the IDD prefix code.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the stored IDD prefix codes.

NOTE

◆ You cannot delete the IDD prefix code selected in "Auto assist setting". When "Auto" is set in "Auto assist setting", you cannot perform "Delete all".

● Storing a country code

You can store up to 3 country codes, each of 5 digits max.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶"Dialing"▶"Int'l dial settings"

2 **"Country Code setting"**

The "Country Code setting" screen appears.

3 **Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press ●(Edit)**

■ **To edit a stored item**

▶Highlight an item to edit and press ● (Edit)

4 **Enter a country name**

5 **Enter the country code**

See the DoCoMo website for information on country codes.



Country Code setting

Function menu➡p.55

Function menu (Country Code setting screen)

Edit	Edits a country code.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted country code setting.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the stored country code settings.

NOTE

◆ You cannot delete the country code set in "Auto assist setting". When "Auto" is set in "Auto assist setting", you cannot perform "Delete all".

<Chaku-moji>

Using Chaku-moji

Default setting | **MSG display settings: Calls with Caller ID 3D message display: ON**

When making a voice or videophone call, you can send a message (Chaku-moji) that will be shown on the other party's phone while it is ringing, enabling you to show the other party the summary of the call, etc. beforehand.

- A Chaku-moji message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, face symbols, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
- Charges apply to sending of Chaku-moji messages. They are not applied to the receiver.
- This function is supported by the 902iS series.
- Push-to-Talk function does not support Chaku-moji.

Editing or setting Chaku-moji messages

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶**"Chaku-moji"**▶**Select any item**

Create message	"Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently"→p.56	
MSG display settings	Sets the type of Chaku-moji message to be displayed when it arrives.	
	Display all messages	Displays all Chaku-moji messages.
	Only number in PH-book	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders stored in the phonebook.
	Calls with Caller ID	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders showing the caller ID.
	Hide all messages	Hides all Chaku-moji messages.
3D message display	Sets whether to use 3D animations to show pictographs that are included in Chaku-moji messages.	

NOTE

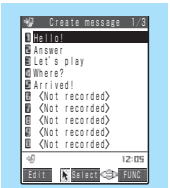
◆ The "MSG display settings" setting affects the displays on the image display. However, setting "OFF" for "Called" in "Image display" does not show Chaku-moji messages on the image display.

◆ 3D animations are not used for the image display even if "3D message display" is set to "ON".

● Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently

Adding Chaku-moji messages to be used frequently enables you to easily attach them to calls to make.
● 5 messages are pre-installed and you can edit them.
● Up to 30 messages (including 5 pre-installed) can be added.

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ **“Chaku-moji”▶“Create message”**
The “Create message” screen appears.



Create message

2 **Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)**

■ **To edit a stored Chaku-moji message**
▶Highlight an item to edit and press (Edit)

3 **Enter a Chaku-moji message**

Function menu➡p.56

NOTE
◆ Highlighting “<Not recorded>” and press on the Create message screen also allows you to add a Chaku-moji message.

Function menu (Create message screen)

Edit	Edits a Chaku-moji message.	
Delete	**Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted Chaku-moji message.
	Delete selected	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple Chaku-moji messages.
	Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all Chaku-moji messages.

NOTE
◆ If (Set) is pressed without any changes on the screen for editing a pre-installed message, the pre-installed one will remain.
◆ Pre-installed Chaku-moji messages cannot be deleted. If a pre-installed message is edited and deleted, it will be restored to the pre-installed one.

Making a call with a Chaku-moji message

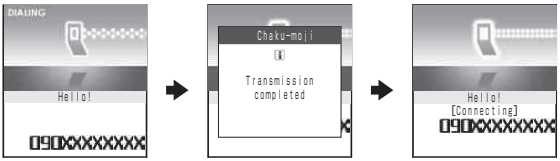
Chaku-moji messages can be added to voice calls or videophone calls that are made by dialing or using “Phonebook” entries, “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” or “Redial” record.

<Example: Adding a Chaku-moji message on the phone number entry screen to make a call>

1 **Phone number entry screen (p.50)▶ (FUNC) ▶“Chaku-moji” ▶Select any item**

Create message	Enters a Chaku-moji message. A message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
Select message	Selects a stored Chaku-moji message. To edit the Chaku-moji message, press (Edit) on the Select message screen.
Sent messages	Selects a sent Chaku-moji message. To edit the Chaku-moji message, press (Edit) on the Sent messages screen.

2
When the other party’s terminal receives a Chaku-moji message, “Transmission completed” appears on your terminal, resulting in charges to the sending.



■ **To make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message**

▶(V. phone)

■ **To delete the entered Chaku-moji message (to make a call without the message)**

▶(FUNC) ▶"Chaku-moji"▶"Create message"▶Delete all the entered Chaku-moji characters and press ●

NOTE

- Up to 30 sent messages can be stored in the Sent messages record. If the same message is sent twice or more, the latest one is stored. When the number of sent messages exceeds the maximum, they are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- If the callee's phone is under conditions such as the following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, "Transmission failed" appears and no charges apply to the sending. (The Chaku-moji messages are not logged in the Received calls record of the callee's phone.)
  - The phone does not support Chaku-moji.
  - The phone is set to hide Chaku-moji messages by "MSG display settings".
- If the callee's phone is under conditions such as the following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, no sending result appears and no charges apply to the sending.
  - Public mode (Driving mode) is set.
  - The ring time for Record message is set to 0 seconds.
  - The phone is out of service area or turned off.
- Depending on the signal status, no sending result appears even if a Chaku-moji message reaches the callee's phone. If this is the case, charges apply to the sending.
- If "Auto redial as voice" (p.88) is set to "ON" and you cannot make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message, the phone automatically redials the call with the message after switching the call mode to voice.
- If you edit a Chaku-moji message by using "Select message", the edited message is available only once. The message is not listed in the "Create message" screen.

● If a voice or videophone call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

The receiving screen shows the Chaku-moji message. When you answer the call, the message disappears.

- 3D animations are used to display pictographs if they are included in the Chaku-moji message.
- Chaku-moji messages are shown on the image display when a FOMA terminal is folded.



Example: Voice call

NOTE

- 3D animations may be unavailable for some pictographs.
- Even if a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives, the message may not appear depending on the status of caller's or callee's phone. When this happens, the message is not logged in the Received calls record.
- If you receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the time specified in "Set mute seconds" in "Ring time(sec.)", the Chaku-moji message attached to the call appears. The message is logged in the Received calls record and the charges apply to the caller.

● Displaying Chaku-moji messages in the Received calls record

Chaku-moji messages are stored in the Received calls record.

1 Received calls screen (list) (p.67)▶Select an entry with "✎"

The "Received calls (details)" screen appears, allowing you to check the Chaku-moji message.

NOTE

- If you use the Received calls record to make a call, the Chaku-moji message stored in the record entry is not sent.

<Redial/Dialed calls>

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

Information such as phone number, date and time you called is recorded as the Redial/Dialed calls record.

- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice calls, videophone calls and Push-to-Talk calls entries. The Dialed calls record can hold up to 30 voice call, videophone call and Push-to-Talk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication entries.
- If you dial to the same phone number twice or more, only the latest call is recorded in the Redial record while all the calls are recorded in the Dialed calls record.
- When the number of Redial/Dialed calls record entries exceeds the maximum, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Redial/Dialed calls record during videophone calls.
- Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of Push-to-Talk calls→p.100

1 On the standby screen▶○

The “Redial (list)” screen appears.

■ To view the Dialed calls record

▶On the standby screen▶MENU▶Own data▶“Dialed calls”

The “Dialed calls (list)” screen appears.



Example: Redial (list)

Function menu➡p.59

2 Select a Redial or Dialed calls record entry to check

The “Redial (details)” screen or “Dialed calls (details)” screen appears.
In the top right corner of the screen, the “Current/Total entries” is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number was called.

■ To check the earlier or later Redial/Dialed call record entries

Use ⊙ to move to the previous (more recent) number or ⊙ to move to the next (older) number.

■ For a phone number stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.



Example: Redial (details)

Function menu➡p.59

3 ☎ or ●

■ To make a videophone call

▶○(V.phone)

■ To make a Push-to-Talk call

▶P

4 To end the call, press PWR

NOTE

- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Redial or Dialed calls record entries. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have called, delete the respective entries of the Redial or Dialed calls record, or set “Redial/Dialed calls” in “Record display set” to “OFF”.
- Press ☎ and ○ on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Redial record entry.
- Selecting “Multi Number” from the function menu to make a call shows the item selected when making the call (“Basic Number” or register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) on the Redial (detail) screen or Dialed calls record (detail) screen.
- Setting “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” erases all the Redial or Dialed calls record entries. The calls made subsequently are logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.
- Phone numbers you have called are also stored in the “Dialed calls” record. Even when twice or more calls are made to the same number, history is recorded as a separate entry in the “Dialed calls” record.
- The Redial record of Push-to-Talk calls (group) is updated only if you select the same members from the Redial/Dialed calls record to make a call. If at least one member is changed, the call is logged as another record entry.

Function menu (Redial/Dialed calls screen)

● The function menus of Redial/Dialed calls screen are the same between the list and the details.

Notify Caller ID[*1]	Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■**To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting** ▶**"Cancel prefix"** When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) setting is applied.	
Prefix numbers[*1]	▶**Select a prefix name to add** "Setting Prefix Numbers"→p.61	
Chaku-moji[*1]	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message"→p.56	
Int'l call[*1]	■**When "+" is prefixed (a country code is added)**[*2] ▶**Select an IDD prefix code** "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■**When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)** ▶**Select a country code**▶**Select an IDD prefix code** The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls→p.54	
Multi Number[*1]	"Multi Number"→p.417	
Select PushTalk	Selects members from the Redial/Dialed calls record of Push-to-Talk (group) calls to make a Push-to-Talk call.→p.100	
Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records"→p.113	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.148	
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243	
Compose SMS	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)"→p.285	
Sent address	Shows the sent address list.	
Delete	Deletes the Redial or Dialed calls record entries.	
	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Redial or Dialed Calls record entry.
	Delete selected	▶**Use ⓘ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶**⊖(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes the multiple Redial or Dialed calls record entries.
	Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the Redial and Dialed calls records entries.
Connection speed[*1]	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".	
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call.→p.89 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "My side" or "Chara-den".	

*1 : Only available for the details screen.
*2 : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

◆ Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with the mail address stored in the phonebook with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook entry, the first address is specified as the address.

◆ Performing "Delete all" deletes all the entries logged in the both Redial and Dialed calls records. Note that performing "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for the Redial record entries does not delete any entry of the Dialed calls record. To delete the Dialed calls record entries, use the function menu on the Dialed calls screen.

■ Redial/Dialed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Voice call		International videophone call
	International call		Packet communication call
	Videophone call		64K data communications call
	Push-to-Talk (one-to-one) call		Push-to-Talk (group) call

<186/184>

Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can show your phone number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice or videophone call. Since your caller ID is important information, be careful when disclosing it.

- "PushTalk setting" is available for setting whether to show your caller ID when making Push-to-Talk calls. →p.106

Function	Description	Refer to
Caller ID Notification	Sets whether to show your caller ID when making a call.	p.47
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.60
Notify Caller ID	Accesses the function menu to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.51

Adding the 186/184 prefix to the other party's phone number

To show your caller ID each time you make a call, add the "186" prefix to the phone number to dial. To hide your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.

- Dialing with the "186" or "184" prefix is disabled for international calls. To make them, select "Notify Caller ID" from the function menu.→p.51

■ To show your phone number

Voice calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - [Call]
Videophone calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - [Left soft key] (V.phone)

■ To hide your phone number

Voice calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - [Call]
Videophone calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - [Left soft key] (V.phone)

NOTE

- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, dial the number again using the "186" prefix.
- If you make a call with "186" or "184", the phone number including this prefix is logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.

<Pause dial> MENU84

Sending Push Signals Quickly

Sending push signals from your FOMA terminal enables you to send messages to QUICKCAST* or to use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

Storing dialing data in Pause dial

You can store dialing data to send as push signals beforehand into Pause dial. Inserting a pause (p) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where a pause lies.

- You can store one dialing data entry, consisting of up to 128 characters.
- Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, the # and ✱ symbols, and pauses (p).
- You cannot enter pauses (p) in succession or at the beginning of the dialing data.

1 [MENU] ▶ [Settings] ▶ "Dialing" ▶ "Pause dial"

The "Pause dial" screen appears.

■ If there is dialing data already stored

The stored dialing data appears.

2 [Left soft key] (Edit) ▶ Enter the dialing data

Press [0] to [9], [#] and [✱] to enter dialing data.

■ To enter a pause (p)

▶ [✱] (1 second or longer)



Pause dial

Function menu➡p.61

Function menu (Pause dial screen)

Edit	▶**Edit the dialing data**
Send pause dial	▶**Enter the destination phone number**▶ or ● Each time you press or ●, the dialing data up to a pause (p) is transmitted.
Delete	Deletes the stored dialing data.

Transmitting dialing data as pause dial

1 MENU▶ Settings▶**“Dialing”▶“Pause dial”**

2 ●▶**Dial the destination phone number**

■ **To enter a phone number by searching the phonebook using part of the number**
▶Dial a part of the phone number▶ to search the phonebook

■ **To enter a phone number by searching the phonebook using a search mode other than the phone number**
▶ ▶Select a search mode on the search phonebook screen

■ **To enter a number by searching the Received calls/Redial record**
▶ ▶Search the number from the Received calls record or press to search from the Redial record

3 or ●

The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and shows the dialing data up to the first pause (p) while the dialed phone is ringing. The pause (p) is not shown.



4 or ●

Each time you press or ●, the dialing data up to a pause (p) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

■ **To transmit all the dialing data at once**
▶ (1 second or longer)▶“Send at one time”
It may not be possible to send all data at once to some recipients.

NOTE

- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- Open the Pause dial screen during a voice call to transmit the dialing data to the other party.
- You cannot send push signals during a videophone call.

<Prefix setting>

Setting Prefix Numbers

Default setting
WORLD CALL (009130010)

Set prefixes to use frequently in advance. You can then add a preset prefix to the beginning of a phone number when making a call by dialing, using the phonebook, “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” or “Redial” record. For example, it is useful to set “186” or “184” prefix.

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset prefixes can include numbers from 0 to 9, #, ✱ and +.

1 MENU▶ Settings▶**“Dialing”▶“Prefix setting”**

The “Prefix setting” screen appears.



Prefix setting

Function menu➡p.62

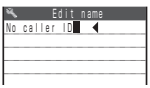
2 **Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)**

■ **To edit a stored prefix**
▶Highlight an item to edit and press (Edit)

■ **To check a stored prefix**
▶Select an item to check

3 **Enter a name**

A name can consist of up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.

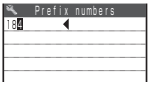


* DoCoMo’s Pocket Bell services were restyled as QUICKCAST services in January, 2001.

Continued on next page

4 Enter the numbers (prefix)

Numbers can consist of up to 10 digits.



Function menu (Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits a prefix.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted prefix.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all prefixes.

<Sub-address setting>

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting: ON

This function enables you to set "✗" contained in a phone number as a separator so that numbers following "✗" are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are available in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communication devices or to select contents in "V-live".

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Dialing"▶"Sub-address setting"▶"ON"**

■ **To cancel the sub-address setting**

▶"OFF"

NOTE

◆ In the following cases, "✗" does not function as a sub-address separator. A number including "✗" is recognized as an ordinary phone number.
- "✗" is at the beginning of a phone number.
- "186/184" is followed by "✗" at the beginning of a phone number.
- "✗" follows the number entered in "Prefix numbers".
- "✗590#/✗591#/✗592#" is included in a phone number.

<Reconnect signal> MENU77

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

Default setting: High tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call to the extent that the call drops out, the FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. This function allows you to set the type of alarm given when a call is being reconnected.

● The time needed for reconnection varies depending on communication conditions such as manipulation or signal quality. It may roughly take about 10 seconds.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Talk"▶"Reconnect signal"▶"No tone", "High tone" or "Low tone"**

NOTE

◆ A call may drop out without an alarm if signal quality worsens very quickly.
◆ Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.
◆ The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

<Noise reduction> MENU76

Blocking Out Ambient Noise

Default setting: ON

Noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Talk"▶"Noise reduction"▶"ON"**

■ **To not use the noise reduction**

▶"OFF"

<Hands-free>

Switching to Hands-free Operation

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call enables you to hear the other party's voice through a speaker.

1 **In-call screen (p.50) ▶ ●(ON)**

When a voice or Push-to-Talk call arrives, press ● (ON) while a FOMA terminal is ringing to switch to the hands-free operation.

"" appears and you can hear other party's voice through a speaker during a hands-free call.



Example: Voice call

■ To cancel the hands-free operation

▶Press ● (Off) during a hands-free call

The hands-free operation ends, and "" disappears during a voice or Push-to-Talk call or "" changes to "" during a videophone call.

● Notes on using the hands-free operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30cm from a FOMA terminal during a hands-free call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

NOTE

- The other party's voice may be heard by those around you during a hands-free call. Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a hands-free call.
- Ending a call cancels the hands-free setting.

<In-car Hands-free>

Making Hands-free Calls in a Car

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a hands-free device such as "In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01" (optional) or car navigation system, you can make or receive voice calls, etc. with the hands-free device.

For information on how to use a hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device. Note that FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) must be used with In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

NOTE

- To operate from a hands-free device, set USB mode setting to "Communication mode".→p.362
- The display and ring tones for incoming calls and mails work according to the FOMA terminal settings.
- If a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that the sound is emitted from the hands-free device, the ring tone still sounds through the hands-free device for incoming mails or voice, videophone and Push-to-Talk calls even when Manner mode is set or the ring volume is set to "Silent".
- When Public mode (Driving mode) is set, the FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and messages as specified in the "Public mode (Driving mode)" settings.
- When Record message is set, the FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and mails as specified in the "Record message" settings.
- If you make a videophone call from a hands-free device using the phonebook or Redial record, the connection speed set in the hands-free device is applied. If no connection speed is set, "64K" is used.
- While a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, "Setting when folded" is applied to the operation performed when the FOMA terminal is folded. If the hands-free device is set to emit sound and the FOMA terminal is folded, the call condition does not change regardless of "Setting when folded".

Receiving a Call

1 When a call arrives, press [↩] or [●]

When a call arrives, a FOMA terminal rings, the incoming call lamp flashes and the "ringing" screen appears.
Unless "Phone" under "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal also vibrates to notify you of the call.
The image display also notifies you of the call by displaying the caller's name.→p.30

■ If a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

A Chaku-moji animation appears on the screen. You may know the contents beforehand.→p.55



Ringing



Ringing (with Chaku-moji)

Function menu➡p.64

2 To end the call, press [PWR HOLD]

Function menu (ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends a call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards a call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call Forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate". "Call Forwarding Service"→p.413
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the Voice Mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice Mail" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate". "Voice Mail Service"→p.410
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when Multi Number (Additional Number 1 or 2) and Call Forwarding are activated for receiving calls. "Multi Number"→p.417

NOTE

- Besides [↩] and [●], you can set up your FOMA terminal so that you can also answer calls by pressing any of [0 R] to [9 WXYZ], [* ー], [CLR], [▲], [▼], [ ] (Home) or [ ] (Assist key) (Any key answer). However, pressing [ ] (Home) or [ ] (Assist key) while the FOMA terminal is folded puts the call on hold. A hold tone sounds when "Setting when folded" is set to "Tone on" and does not sound when it is set to "No tone" or "End the call". You can also set a FOMA terminal so that pressing a key stops only the ring tone (Quick silent).
- Pressing [# 非] or [ ] (Memo/Check) while a FOMA terminal is ringing activates Record message to record the other party's message. (Pressing [# 非] also sets Manner mode.)→p.77
- When a call with the caller ID shown arrives from a caller stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal shows the caller's phone number and name. If there is an image stored in the phonebook entry, the image also appears. However, if the caller's entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are hidden and only the phone number is shown. If a caller does not show the caller ID, the reason for not showing the ID is displayed (caller ID hidden).
- If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears.→p.116
- Up to 30 received calls can be stored in the "Received calls" record. If a caller shows the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears. If a caller who shows the caller ID is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number appear.
- Enabling "Set in-call arrival" and setting "In-call arrival act" to "Answer" allow a FOMA terminal to make a short double-beep ("bibip") when an incoming call arrives while you are on a call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
  - If you have subscribed to the "Voice Mail" service, you can forward the new call to the Voice Mail service center.
  - If you have subscribed to the "Call Forwarding" service, you can forward the new call to the call forwarding number.

  Furthermore, if you subscribe to the "Call Waiting", set "In-call arrival act" to "Answer" and then activate "Call Waiting", you can put the current call on hold and answer a new call. See p.412 for details.
- When "PushTalk arrival act" (p.106) is set to "Answer", you can receive calls while talking on a Push-to-Talk call.
- A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- You can reject calls from numbers not stored in your phonebook.→p.174
- You can specify the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing for calls from numbers not stored in the phonebook.→p.174

◆ You cannot receive calls from phone numbers for which “Call rejection” is set in the phonebook. When setting “Call acceptation” for a phone number in the phonebook, you can only receive calls from the number.→p.171
◆ You can talk in hands-free mode during a call.→p.63

Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call (the Other Party)

A voice call you received is changed to a videophone call if the call mode is changed on the other party’s phone.

● You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you receive a call, you cannot change the call mode. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
● To enable a caller to change the call mode, “Indicate V.phone” must be set to “Indication ON” on the caller’s phone beforehand.→p.92

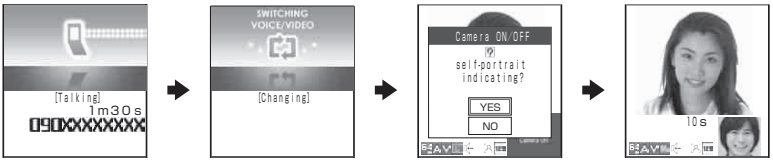
1 In-call screen (p.50)▶The other party changes the call mode ▶“YES”

While a voice call is being changed to videophone call, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.
The call changes to the videophone call and camera image is sent to the caller.

■ To send the substitute image to the caller

▶“NO”

The specified substitute image is sent to the caller.



NOTE

◆ Whether to activate the hands-free operation when the call mode is changed depends on the “Hands-free switch” setting, regardless of the hands-free status before the mode change.→p.90

<Answer setting> MENU58

Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls

Default setting: Any key answer

This setting enables you to quickly turn off a ring tone or answer the call when you receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call. This is useful when you receive a call in a place where a ring tone may disturb people around you.

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Incoming call”▶“Answer setting”▶Select any item

Any key answer	When a voice call arrives, pressing not only ☎ or ● but also any of 0 to 9, *, #, CLR, ▲▼◀▶, ▮ (Home) and ▭ (Assist key) enables you to answer the call quickly. Pressing ▮ (Home) or ▭ (Assist key) with the FOMA terminal folded puts the call on hold.* This does not apply for videophone calls. When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, pressing not only ▮, ☎ or ● but also any of 0 to 9, *, CLR, ▶, ▮ (Home) and ▭ (Assist key) enables you to answer the call quickly.
Quick silent	When a voice or videophone call arrives, pressing any of 0 to 9, *, CLR, ▲▼◀▶, ▮ (Home) and ▭ (Assist key) or opening the FOMA terminal stops the ring tone or vibrator. When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. When a voice call arrives, pressing ▶ also stops the ring tone and vibrator. Pressing ☎ or ● enables you to answer a voice call. For a videophone call, press ▶ (V. phone) or ☎ to answer with the camera image, or press ● to answer with the substitute image. When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, pressing any of 0 to 9, *, CLR, ▲▼◀▶, ▮ (Home) and ▭ (Assist key) or opening the FOMA terminal stops the ring tone or vibrator. When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. Pressing any of ▮, ☎ and ● enables you to answer the call.

Continued on next page

OFF	When a voice call arrives, pressing [C] or [●] only enables you to answer the call. When a videophone call arrives, pressing any of [→]([V.phone]), [C] and [●] only enables you to answer the call. (Pressing [●] enables you to answer the call with the substitute image.) When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, pressing any of [▯], [C] and [●] only enables you to answer the call.

* : A hold tone sounds when “Setting when folded” is set to “Tone on” and does not sound when it is set to “No tone” or “End the call”.

NOTE

- Even when “Quick silent” is set, it works as “Any key answer” while in “Manner mode”.
- Even when “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” is set, pressing [5 JKL] for 1 second or longer turns on or off the display light and “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” does not work.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, you can accept voice calls, videophone calls (with the camera image) or Push-to-Talk calls by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch regardless of the “Answer setting” setting.
- While “External keys guard” is set to “ON” or a FOMA terminal is folded, “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” does not work even when [i] (Home) or [▭] (Assist key) is pressed.
- Pressing [i] (Memo/Check) or [# ※] while a FOMA terminal is ringing enables you to activate Record message to record the caller’s message or video.→p.77

<Setting when folded> MENU18

Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting: End the call

You can set how your FOMA terminal works when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

1 [MENU] ▶ [Settings] ▶ **“Talk”** ▶ **“Setting when folded”** ▶ **Select any item**

No tone	Mutes sound for voice calls. For videophone calls, sound is muted and the substitute image is sent to the caller. No hold tone is given. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
Tone on	Puts the call on hold (Holding). You can also select whether to play the hold tone through the speaker on your FOMA terminal. If the FOMA terminal is folded during a voice call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone”. While in a videophone call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone” and see a hold image.→p.71 When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
	Speaker ON	The hold tone is sent to the other party and played through the speaker.
	Speaker OFF	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing [☎ NO].	

* : If you fold a FOMA terminal holding a voice call and re-open the terminal, the call resumes. If the held call is a videophone call, it remains on hold.

NOTE

- While Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if “Speaker ON” is set.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call condition. However, during a videophone call using the camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches the image to the substitute image.
- Even if “Tone on” is set, folding a FOMA terminal leads to the “No tone” operation while “Call Waiting” is activated.
- This setting is disabled for Push-to-Talk calls. The “Setting when folded” under “PushTalk setting” will apply.→p.106

<Received calls> MENU24

Using the Received Calls Record

Information on received calls, including the caller’s phone numbers and the dates and times are logged in the Received calls record.

- The Received calls record stores up to 30 voice call, videophone call and Push-to-Talk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication call entries.
- If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Received calls record during videophone calls.
- If you change the call mode between voice and videophone, the first received number is logged in the Received calls record.
- Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of Push-to-Talk calls→p.100

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶ “Received calls” ▶ Select any item

All calls (number)	Shows all the call record entries.
Missed calls (number)	Shows only the missed calls record entries.

Unknown calls: Shows the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

2 Check the list of Received calls record

The “Received calls (list)” screen appears.



Received calls (list)

Function menu➡p.68

3 Select a Received call record entry to check

The “Received calls (details)” screen appears.
In the top right corner of the screen, “Current/Total entries” is shown. The lower the number, the more recent the call from that phone number.



Received calls (details)

Function menu➡p.68

■ **To check the earlier or later Received call record entries**
Use ◉ to move to the previous (more recent) entry or ◉ to move to the next (older) entry.

■ **For a phone number stored in the phonebook**
The name stored in the phonebook also appears.

4 ☎ or ●

■ **To make a videophone call**
▶ ◉ (V. phone)

■ **To make a Push-to-Talk call**
▶ PTT

5 To end the call, press PWR

NOTE

- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Received calls record. If you want to prevent others from seeing the received phone numbers, delete the Received calls record entries or set “Received calls” in “Record display set” to “OFF”.
- When you set “Missed calls display” in the “Ring time(sec.)” to “Not display” and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in “Set mute seconds”, the call does not appear in the Received calls record. →p.174
- Pressing ◉ on the standby screen also accesses the Received calls record.
- Press ☎ and ◉ on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Received calls record entry.
- Receiving a call with Multi Number (Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) will display the register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2 on the Received calls record (detail) screen.
- Setting “Keypad dial lock” deletes all the Received calls record entries stored until the lock is set. Calls received subsequently are stored in the Received calls record.
- If a caller uses “Dial-in”, a number other than the “Dial-in” may be displayed.
- If a phone number shown by a caller is stored in the phonebook, the caller’s name and phone number will be recorded in the Received calls record. If the phone number is not shown, the reason for hiding the number (p.173) will be shown in the Received calls record. Even if the shown phone number is stored in the phonebook, while “Restrict dialing” is set, the name and phone number will appear only if the phone number is specified in “Restrict dialing”. Only the phone number will appear for the phone number not specified in “Restrict dialing”.
- If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears in the Received calls record. →p.116

Continued on next page

■ Received calls/Missed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed voice calls		Received remote monitoring calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international voice calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international videophone calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed videophone calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed packet communication calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed Push-to-Talk (one-to-one) calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed 64K data communication calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed Push-to-Talk (group) calls		Packet communication or 64K data communication calls that are received without an external unit connected
	Voice record message/videophone message recorded		Calls with Chaku-moji message

Function menu (Received calls screen)

● The function menus of Received calls screen are the same between the list and the details.

Notify Caller ID[*1]	Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from “ON” or “OFF”. **■To cancel “ON” or “OFF” in the “Notify Caller ID” setting** **▶“Cancel prefix”** When “Cancel prefix” is set, the “Caller ID Notification” (p.47) setting is applied.	
Prefix numbers[*1]	**▶Select a prefix name to add** “Setting Prefix Numbers”→p.61	
Chaku-moji[*1]	“Making a call with a Chaku-moji message”→p.56	
Int’l call[*1]	**■When “+” is prefixed (a country code is added)**[*2] **▶Select an IDD prefix code** “+” is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. **■When “+” is not prefixed (no country code is added)** **▶Select a country code▶Select an IDD prefix code** The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls→p.54	
Multi Number[*1]	“Multi Number”→p.417	
Select PushTalk	Selects members from the Push-to-Talk (group) calls record to make a Push-to-Talk call. →p.100	
Ring time	Shows the Missed call record entries with the ring times. This setting is available only when the Received calls (list) screen appears.	
Add to phonebook	“Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records”→p.113	
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.148	
Compose message	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243	
Compose SMS	“Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)”→p.285	
Received address	Shows the Received address list.	
Delete	Deletes the Received call record entries.	
	Delete this	Deletes the selected Received call record entry.
	Delete selected	**▶Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (□) ▶⊙ (Finish) ▶“YES”** Deletes the multiple Received calls record entries.
	Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all the Received calls record entries.
Connection speed[*1]	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from “64K” or “32K”.	
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call.→p.89 Selecting “Release settings” cancels the setting of “My side” or “Chara-den”.	

*1 : Only available for the details screen
*2 : “Int’l call” is unavailable when “+81” is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

◆ Received calls through packet and 64K data communications cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose a new mail.

<Volume>

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the earpiece volume to between “Level 1” (quietest) and “Level 6” (loudest) during a call.

● If you adjust the volume during a call or while a FOMA terminal is in standby, the adjusted setting is retained after you end the call.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

<Example: During a voice call>

1 During a call▶Use (Home) or (Memo/Check) to adjust the volume



You can adjust the volume in the same way by pressing ⓘ or ⓞ for 1 second or longer. You can adjust the volume in succession by pressing (Home) or (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer during the earpiece volume adjustment.
If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the in-call screen.

NOTE

◆ You can also adjust the earpiece volume when talking on a videophone, Push-to-Talk or hands-free call.
◆ Press ⓘ or ⓞ to adjust the volume during a videophone call. Even if pressing (Home) or (Memo/Check) during the earpiece volume adjustment, you cannot adjust the volume in succession.
◆ Press (Home) or (Memo/Check) to adjust the earpiece volume during a Push-to-Talk call. You cannot adjust the volume by pressing ⓘ or ⓞ.

Adjusting the earpiece volume in standby mode

1 On the standby screen▶ⓘ or ⓞ (1 second or longer)▶Use ⓘ or ⓞ to adjust the volume

You can adjust the volume in succession by pressing ⓘ or ⓞ for 1 second or longer.
If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the standby screen.

<Ring volume>

MENU50

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the volume of the ring tones given when you receive a voice call, videophone call, Push-to-Talk call, mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF. There are six volume settings for each type of call and mail. You can also set a silent ring tone or set it to gradually get louder (step).

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Incoming call”▶“Ring volume”▶Select any item

Phone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
Videophone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Adjusts the ring tone volume for Push-to-Talk calls.
Mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for i-mode mails, SMS or packet communication.
Chat mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for chat mails.
MessageR	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageR.
MessageF	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageF.

Continued on next page

2 ● or ●

■ **To set step tones (getting a ring tone louder gradually)**

▶In “Level 6”, press ●

When you receive a call with “Step” set, there is no ring tone for 3 seconds, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at “Level 1” and increasing to “Level 6”.

■ **To set a silent ring tone**

▶In “Level 1”, press ●

When the silent ring tone is set, a FOMA terminal emits no ring tone.
An icon appears on the standby screen to show that the “Silent” ring tone is set.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “Phone”, “Videophone” and “PushTalk” calls.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF”.

: Appears when both “” and “” are set.

NOTE

◆ The ring volume specified in “Phone” in this function is also applied to “Select ring tone” for voice calls and the alarm tones for “Schedule” and “To Do list”.

<Answer hold>

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When a FOMA terminal rings for a voice or videophone call and you cannot answer it right away, use this procedure to put the call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

1 You are receiving a call▶Push to talk



The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the call on hold.
The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.
You can set the message played while a call is held in “Set hold tone”.

■ **To hang up while a call is on hold**

▶Push to talk

■ **If a caller hangs up while on hold**

The call ends.

2 Press ● or ● to resume the call

When “Answer setting” is set to “Any key answer”, you can also answer the call by pressing 0 to 9, *, C, ●, ●, ● (Home) or ● (Assist key). Furthermore, pressing ● (Memo/Check), # or ● also enables you to answer the call.

For videophone calls→p.86

NOTE

◆ Call charges apply to a caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.
◆ If “Phone” or “Videophone” in “Ring volume” is set to “Silent” or a FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not make the three short beeps when you activate answer hold. However, the beeps do sound when “Manner mode set” is set to “Original” in which “Phone vol.” is not “Silent”.
◆ If you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service, selecting “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” from the function menu when you are receiving a call either forwards the call to the Voice Mail service center or forwarding number.
◆ If you fold a FOMA terminal while a call is on answer hold, the image display shows the call is held.

<Set hold tone>

Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting	On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody 1

Set the message given to the other party when you put a voice or videophone call on answer hold or put an ongoing call on hold.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Set hold tone” ▶ Select any item

On hold tone	Sets the message given when a call is put on hold.	
	Tone 1	The following message is given in Japanese: “I can’t answer the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later.”
	Tone 2	The following message is given in Japanese: “I can’t answer the phone just now. Please call again later.”
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using “Voice announce”. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” →p.398
	Voice announce 2*	
Holding tone	Sets the hold tone given during a call.	
	Melody 1	“Fur Elise” is played.
	Melody 2	“Mary Had A Little Lamb” is played.
	Melody 3	“Symphony No.25 in G minor” is played.
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using “Voice announce”. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” →p.398
	Voice announce 2*	

* : Not displayed if no Voice announce message has been recorded.

NOTE

- You can check the selected message by pressing (Play) on the message selection screen.
- Even if you set “English” in “Select language”, the messages of “Tone 1” and “Tone 2” are given in Japanese.

<Public mode (Driving mode)>

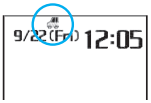
Using Public Mode (Driving Mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. When a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode, it sends callers a message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place (train, bus, theater, etc.) where you should refrain from talking on a phone, and then ends the call.

- Public mode can only be set or cancelled from the standby screen. (It can also be set or cancelled when the “ ” icon appears.)
- You can still make calls when Public mode is set.
- This function is unavailable during data communication.
- While the Caller ID Request is set to “Activate”, receiving a call from an unidentified number gives the caller the Caller ID Request announcement (not the Public mode announcement).

1 **On the standby screen ▶ (1 second or longer)**

Public mode is set and “ ” appears.
When a call is received, the message (in Japanese) saying “I can’t answer the call because I’m driving or in a place where I should refrain from using a mobile phone. Please call back later” is sent to the caller.



■ To cancel Public mode (Driving mode)

Press for 1 second or longer on the standby screen while Public mode is set.
Public mode is canceled and “ ” disappears from the screen.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Even if “Record message” is set to “ON”, Public mode (Driving mode) takes priority and the “Record message” setting is ignored.
- When “Manner mode” is set, received calls are handled according to the Public mode setting.
- If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while Public mode is set, the Public mode is canceled.
- The following tones do not sound in Public mode:
  - Ring tone for voice/videophone/Push-to-Talk calls
  - Ring tone for MessageR/MessageF
  - Alarm clock tone
  - To Do list alarm tone
  - Low-voltage alarm tone
  - Sound of i-αppli programs
  - Mail ring tone
  - Chat mail ring tone
  - Schedule alarm tone
  - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls
  - Charge sound
  - Packet communication/64K data communication ring tone

If Public mode (Driving mode) is set

In Public mode (Driving mode), your FOMA terminal does not ring when receiving a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as “Missed calls” and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

- A voice caller hears the announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you should refrain from using a mobile phone, and the call then ends.
- The videophone caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, no answer is given and “Connection failed” appears on the screen. If the number of the call members is 3 or more, a message showing you are driving appears on the member’s phones.

NOTE

- Even while Public mode is set, when the power is turned off or when “” appears on the screen, the announcement to be played is not the one for Public mode but for “”. To Push-to-Talk call members, a “Disconnected” response will be made.
- When a mail is received, the “New mail” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Driving mode) are set

If a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode announcement.*1	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode movie announcement.*2
Call Forwarding	• Forwards the call after playing the Public mode announcement.*3 • Whether to play the Public mode announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting.	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode movie announcement.*4
Call Waiting	Ends the call after playing the Public mode announcement.	Ends the call after playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Nuisance Call Blocking	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends.	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	• If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends.	• If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1 : If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.

*2 : As of May 2006, the call is disconnected without being connected to the service center.

*3 : If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.
*4 : Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Public mode (power off)>

Using Public Mode (Power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. If you set Public mode (power off) and then receive a call with the power turned off, the caller will hear an announcement that you are in a place where the power needs to be turned off (hospital, airplane, near a priority seat, etc.) and cannot answer the call, and then the call will end.

1 On the standby screen▶ ✱ 2 5 2 5 1 ▶

The Public mode (power off) is set (no change is made on the standby screen).
If Public mode (power off) is set, the power is turned off and a call arrives, the caller will hear an announcement that “I am now in a place where I need to turn off my phone, and cannot answer your call. Please call again later on.”

■ To cancel Public mode (power off)

▶On the standby screen▶ ✱ 2 5 2 5 0 ▶
Public mode (power off) is canceled.

■ To check the Public mode (power off) setting

▶On the standby screen▶ ✱ 2 5 2 5 9 ▶
You can check the Public mode (power off) setting.

● If Public mode (power off) is set

The setting remains unchanged until you dial “✗25250” to cancel Public mode (power off). Turning a FOMA terminal on does not cancel the setting.
The caller will hear the Public mode (power off) announcement when you are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

- The voice caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are in a place where you need to turn off the power, and the call then ends.
- The videophone caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, no answer is given and “Connection failed” appears on the screen. If the number of the call members is 3 or more, a message showing you are absent appears on the member’s phones.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (power off) are set

If a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode (power off) while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement.	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement.*1
Call Forwarding	• Forwards the call after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement. • Whether to play the Public mode (power off) announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting.	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement.*2
Nuisance Call Blocking	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends.	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	• If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends.	• If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.

Continued on next page

*1 : As of May 2006, the call is disconnected without being connected to the service center.
*2 : Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Info notice setting> MENU65

Checking Missed Calls

Default setting: ON

Pressing ▭ (Assist key) with a FOMA terminal folded enables you to check missed calls, new mails, new chat mails, recorded messages or Voice Mail messages with tones, vibration or the incoming call lamp.

● This function informs you of those calls, mails or messages when the “Missed calls”, “New mail”, “Chat mail”, “Record message” or “Voice Mail” desktop icon appears. →p.149

Setting the notification method for the Info notice function

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Incoming call”▶“Info notice setting”▶Select any item

ON	Uses “Bibip, bibip” electronic tone for notification.
OFF	Makes no notification.

NOTE

◆ If the reading of caller or sender’s name is not stored in the phonebook or the name stored in the phonebook is not displayed, the FOMA terminal does not read out the name even if “ON” is set under “ボイス” (voice).

Checking for missed calls, new mails or new chat mails

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mails or new chat mails		When you have no missed call, new mail or new chat mail	
	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color
ON	“Bibip, bibip” tone and 1-second vibration *1	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in the respective colors set in “Phone”, “Mail” and “Chat mail” in “Illumination”. When you have a missed call, new mail or new chat mail, the lamp flashes for 1 second in the respective color.*2	“Bibibip” tone and 0.2-second vibration *1	The incoming call lamp flashes for about 5 seconds in “Color 12”.

*1 : A FOMA terminal vibrates when “Phone” in “Vibrator” is set to other than “OFF”.
*2 : If the flashing color is set to “Gradation” in “Illumination”, the incoming call lamp flashes in “Color 5” for missed calls, “Color 1” for new mails and “Color 3” for new chat mails.

NOTE

◆ When External keys guard is set to “ON”, you cannot missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded even by pressing ▭ (Assist key).
◆ To activate the assist key to have a FOMA terminal read out mails, set “確認機能設定” (Info notice setting) in Japanese mode. When “電子音” (electronic tone) or “ボイス” (voice) is set, press the assist key again during or after the notification of new mails or chat mails to have the terminal read out the mails. When “OFF” is set, pressing the assist key once enables the terminal to read out mails.
The voice notification “This mail is from ***” is given in Japanese before reading out of mail even when “OFF” is set in “ボイス” (voice) under “確認機能設定” (Info notice setting).
Reading out mail messages →p.386
◆ This function is unavailable to check missed calls or mails while music is played with the music player.
◆ The “OFF” volume is determined in the “Phone” under “Ring volume”. When “Silent” or “Step” is set, “Level 2” is applied.
◆ In Manner mode, a FOMA terminal uses vibration instead of tones to notify you of calls, mails or messages. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if you have selected “Original” manner mode and “Phone vol.” is not set to “Silent”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
◆ This function is unavailable to check new mails kept at the i-mode Center.
◆ Opening a FOMA terminal during notification stops the notification.

Having a FOMA terminal read out the current time <Voice clock>

● When “確認機能設定” (Info notice setting) is set to “ボイス” (voice) and (Memo/Check) is pressed with a FOMA terminal folded, the FOMA terminal reads out the current time in Japanese.

<Record message> MENU55

Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video

Default setting	Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ring time: 8 sec.

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal. For videophone messages, the camera image of the other party’s phone is also recorded.

● You can record up to 5 voice messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
● You can record up to 2 videophone messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
● The differences between Record message and Voice Mail are as follows:

Item	Record message	Voice Mail service
Recording time and No. of messages	• Voice call: up to 20 seconds each, 5 messages • Videophone call: up to 20 seconds each, 2 messages	• Voice call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages • Videophone call*: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages
Retention period	No limit	Up to 72 hours
Where to store	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail service center
Condition for playback	Anywhere	Only inside the service area
Condition for recording	• Messages can be recorded if the receiving phone is turned on inside the service area. • Setting “Record message” to “ON”	• Messages can be recorded even if the receiving phone is turned off inside/outside the service area. • Activating the Voice Mail service (p.410)

*： As of May 2006, this service is not provided.

Setting Record message

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ ▶“Incoming call”▶“Record message”▶Select any item

ON	Selects the type of answer message.	
	Japanese 1	“I can’t answer the phone just now. Please leave your message within 20 seconds after the beep.” is played in Japanese.
	Japanese 2	“Thank you for your call, but I can’t take your call right now. Leave me a message after the beep.” is played in Japanese.
	English	“I can’t take your call now. Please leave the message. Thank you.” is played.
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using “Voice announce”. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones”→p.398
	Voice announce 2*	
OFF	Cancels the “Record message” setting.	

*： Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

2 **Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ring time**

Entering a 3-digit time automatically sets Record message and “ ” and “ ” appear on the standby screen.

■ **To set the displayed time**

▶Without entering a time, press ●

NOTE

◆ If the numbers of recorded voice messages and VP messages have already reached the respective maximum numbers, Record message cannot be set to “ON”.
◆ You can check the selected answer message by pressing (Play) on the answer message selection screen.
◆ If “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” is set for the answer message of Record message and the corresponding Voice announce is deleted in “Voice announce” setting, “Japanese 1” is set for the answer message.
◆ To give priority to “Record message” when “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is set at the same time, set a shorter ring time than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.

Continued on next page

◆ If the mute time set in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the ring time set for Record message, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have a ring tone sound before a message is recorded, make sure that the ring time for Record message is longer than the mute time.
◆ You can use “Discern connect” to set an answer message for each phone number and “Discern group” for each group.→p.122

When a call arrives when “Record message” is set to “ON”

Reaching the specified time activates Record message.
● When a voice call arrives, the answer message is given and recording starts.
● When a videophone call arrives, the “Preparing” image is sent and the answer message is given. The “Recording” image is then sent and recording starts.

■ When message recording begins

● The recording screen appears. The caller's voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.
● Regardless of the duration, a started recording is counted in the number of recordings.



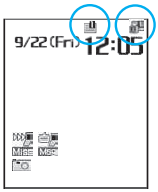
Example: Voice Call

■ To answer a voice call during recording
▶ or ●

■ To answer a videophone call during recording
▶To answer the call with the camera image, press or ( ). To answer with the substitute image, press ●.

■ When message recording ends

● The original screen reappears and the “Missed calls” and “Record message” desktop icons appear on the standby screen. Select the icons to check the details. →p.149
● When one voice message is recorded, “ ” changes to “ ”. “ ” appears for two messages, “ ” for three messages, and corresponding icons for the subsequent numbers of messages. When one video message is recorded, “ ” changes to “ ”. “ ” appears for two video messages.



NOTE

◆ When “ ” appears, Record message is unavailable.
◆ Once the number of recorded messages has reached the maximum, a FOMA terminal cannot use Record message to record the next message.
◆ If Manner mode is set, you cannot hear the caller's voice during recording.
◆ You cannot receive other calls while a message or video is being recorded. The other callers hear a busy tone.

■ Important
● It is recommended to take notes of the contents of recorded messages.
● Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Quick message>

Recording the Caller's Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call

Even when "Record message" is not set to "ON", this function allows you to begin message recording during an incoming voice or videophone call simply by pressing one key.

1 You are receiving a call▶ (Memo/Check)

The Record message recording starts.
Pressing # instead of (Memo/Check) sets Manner Mode simultaneously with the activation of Record message.

NOTE

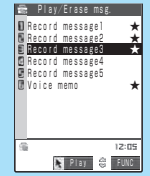
- You can only record a message of the caller for which you started recording. You cannot set "Record message" to "ON" using this function.
- This function is enabled even when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" and "Record msg." is "OFF" in the "Original" setting.
- If you receive a voice or videophone call when there are already 5 voice messages (2 messages for videophone message), Record message is not activated and a FOMA terminal keeps ringing. (Pressing # allows the FOMA terminal to keep ringing under the condition set in "Manner mode set".)

Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

● "★" appears on the "Play/Erase msg." screen if a voice record message or voice memo is recorded.

1 MENU▶ LifeKit▶"Play/Erase msg."

The "Play/Erase msg." screen appears.



Play/Erase msg.
Function menu➡p.77

2 Select an item to play

A FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the playback ends, a FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.

■ To play the next message

▶ (Memo/Check)

Each time you press (Memo/Check), the next most recent message is played. Voice memos are played last.

■ To stop playback

▶● or CLR

■ To make a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to the phone number displayed during playback

▶, or

Pressing makes a voice call, makes a videophone call or makes a Push-to-Talk call.
Available Push-to-Talk call type is one-to-one.

■ To erase a message being played

▶ (FUNC) ▶"Erase"▶"YES"

NOTE

- When a recorded message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- Pressing (Memo/Check) on the standby screen also plays memos.

Function menu (Play/Erase msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted message.
Delete rec. msg.	Erases all the messages.
Delete all	Erases all the record messages and voice memos.

Continued on next page

Important
- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the voice messages and voice memos.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<VP message>

Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages

- "★" appears on the "Play/Erase VP msg." screen if a videophone record message is recorded.

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ "Play/Erase VP msg."

The "Play/Erase VP msg." screen appears.



Play/Erase VP msg.

Function menu➡p.78

2 Select an item to play

The "VP msg. playback" screen appears.



To play the previous or next message

▶ ◁ or ▷

Each time you press ◁ or ▷, the previous or next message is played.

To stop playback

▶ ●

To make a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to the phone number displayed during playback

▶ ↩, ▷ or ✉

Pressing ↩ makes a voice call, ▷ makes a videophone call or ✉ makes a Push-to-Talk call.
Available Push-to-Talk call type is one-to-one.

To erase a message being played

▶ ▷ (FUNC) ▶"Erase"▶"YES"

To turn on/off the speaker during playback

▶ ▷ (FUNC) ▶"Speaker ON" or "Speaker OFF"

NOTE

- When a recorded videophone message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- During playback, you can adjust the volume by pressing ⊙ (Home)) or ⊙ (Memo/Check)).

Function menu (Play/Erase VP msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted videophone message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted videophone message.
Delete all	Erases all the videophone messages.

Important
- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the videophone messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

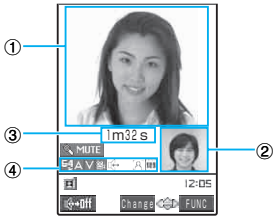
What is Videophone?..... 80
Making a Videophone Call..... 81
Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call..... 85
Receiving a Videophone Call..... 86
Using Chara-den..... 88
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party..... 88
Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls ..... Hands-free switch 90
Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call..... 91
Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call
..... Indicate V.phone 92
Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode
..... V-phone while packet 92
Connecting to an External Device to Make and Receive Videophone Calls..... 93
Viewing Distant Locations Using FOMA Terminal
..... Remote monitoring 94

What is Videophone?

You can use the videophone call function between terminals that support the DoCoMo videophone system.

- DoCoMo videophone conforms to the 3G-324M*2 standard set down in the international 3GPP*1 standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from the DoCoMo videophone.
  - *1：3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
    A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).
  - *2：3G-324M
    An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.
- Videophone calls are conducted at connection speeds of 64K or 32K.
  - 64K: Data is communicated at a rate of 64kbps.
  - 32K: Data is communicated at a rate of 32kbps.

Videophone screen



① Main screen. By default, this shows the camera image from the other party's phone.
② Sub-screen. By default, this shows the camera image from your phone.
③ Shows the call duration.
④ Shows the videophone function settings.

- : 64K videophone call in progress
- : 32K videophone call in progress
- : Sending/receiving voice
- : Voice transmission error
- : Sending/receiving video
- : Video transmission error
- : Sending camera image
- : Sending the substitute image selected in "Select image"
- : Hands-free OFF
- : Hands-free ON
- MUTE : Microphone mute in progress
- : Photo mode (Portrait)
- : Photo mode (Scenery)
- : Photo mode (Close-up)
- : Key operation/DTMF mode*
  - *: DTMF→p.83
- : Key operation/Whole action mode
- : Key operation/Parts action mode
- : Sending Chara-den
- : State where the motion of a face can be followed
- : State where the motion of a face cannot be followed
- : Visual check in progress

Control keys	Videophone operation
●	Switches between front and rear cameras
●(1 second or longer)	Switches the main screen→p.82
○(▮(Home))、○(▮(Memo/Check))	Adjusts volume
○	Adjusts zoom ratio
○	Switches on/off hands-free
○	Displays function menu
▮(Memo/Check)(1 second or longer)	Records other party's voice during a call
CLR	Puts a call on hold
▮(Home)(1 second or longer)	Microphone mute

Making a Videophone Call

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The "Videophone number entry" screen appears.
Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code − Local code − Phone number

■ **To call a mobile phone**
090−××××−××××
or
080−××××−××××

■ **To call a PHS phone**
070−××××−××××



Videophone number entry

Function menu➡p.82

2 ●(V. phone)

The "videophone in-call" screen appears.
You can talk hearing the other party's voice through the speaker.
"Switching to Hands-free Operation"→p.63



You are charged for the digital communication from this screen.



Videophone in-call

Function menu➡p.82

■ **To switch to a voice call during a videophone call**
"Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call"→p.85

■ **To switch between camera image and substitute image during a videophone call**
▶Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.

■ **To send video from the rear camera during a videophone call**
▶●
Each time you press ● during a videophone call, the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).

■ **To put a videophone call in progress on hold**
▶CLR
The hold tone sounds and the "保留 Holding" image appears on the caller's videophone screen.
Press ●(V. phone) or ↩ to answer a videophone call on hold using the camera image, or ● to answer the call using the substitute image. Press CLR to answer a videophone call in condition before holding.

■ **To mute voice sent during a videophone call (microphone mute)**
▶(Home)(1 second or longer)
The "MUTE" icon appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is.
Pressing and holding (Home) again for 1 second or longer cancels the mute.

■ **When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)**
You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ **If a videophone call is not connected→p.84**

3 Press PWR HOLD when the call ends

NOTE

- The "64" icon flashes while you are dialing a videophone call and is displayed continuously during the call. If a call is connected at the "32K" dialing speed, "32" flashes and is displayed continuously during the call.
- The "32K" connection speed allows you to use videophones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at "64K" due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at "64K" and the called party is in a "32K" area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that "32K" videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as "64K" videophone calls.
- You can transmit up to 10 characters of message (Chaku-moji) together with a videophone call regardless of pictographs/symbols/double-byte characters/single-byte characters. A Chaku-moji animation appears on the ringing screen of the callee.→p.55
- International videophone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo "WORLD CALL" international dialing service. →p.53

Continued on next page

◆ A FOMA terminal sends the camera image when making a call unless Chara-den is set in “Select image” in the function menu of the videophone number entry screen. →p.82
◆ It may take a few seconds to switch from a camera image to substitute image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den.
◆ When you are talking on a videophone call using the rear camera while charging, the message notifying that the camera will be turned off might appear and the camera might be automatically turned off, depending on the temperature of the FOMA terminal.

Function menu (videophone number entry screen)

Notify Caller ID	Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from “ON” or “OFF”. ■**To cancel “ON” or “OFF” in the “Notify Caller ID” setting** ▶**“Cancel prefix”** When “Cancel prefix” is set, the “Caller ID Notification” (p.47) setting is applied.
Prefix	▶**Select a prefix name to add** “Setting Prefix Numbers” →p.61
Chaku-moji	“Making a call with a Chaku-moji message” →p.56
Int’l call	■**When “+” is prefixed (country code is added)*** ▶**Select an IDD prefix code** “+” is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■**When “+” is not prefixed (no country code is added)** ▶**Select a country code**▶**Select an IDD prefix code** The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls →p.54
Multi Number	“Multi Number” →p.417
Add to phonebook	“Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” →p.111 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” →p.112
Compose message	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” →p.243
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from “64K” or “32K”.
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call. →p.89 Selecting “Release settings” cancels the setting of “Me” or “Chara-den”.

*：“Int’l call” is unavailable when “+81” is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

◆ The “Connection speed” setting only applies to one (dialed) call and is not stored in the Redial or Dialed calls record. Furthermore, if you make a voice call after specifying the “Connection speed” setting, the setting is ignored.

Function menu (videophone in-call screen)

Petit message	“Sending a message during a videophone call (sending of camera image)” →p.91
Decoration	“Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in videophone calls” →p.91
Off decoration	Erases the displayed message or stamp.
Substitute image, My side	Switches between a camera image and substitute image.
Rear camera, Front camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera. This setting is only retained during a call.
Change main disp.	Changes the image displayed on the main screen. The screen changes in the order of “Displaying the image from the other party’s camera on your main screen”→“Displaying the image from your own camera on your main screen”→“Displaying only the image from the other party’s camera”→“Displaying only the image from your own camera”.
Visual check, Visual check off	“Checking your appearance during a videophone call” →p.90

V.phone settings	Sets the screen for videophone call.		
	Visual prefer.	Sets the image sent to and received from the other party. This setting is only retained during a call.	
		Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
		Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
		Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
	Brightness	▶**Use ◎ to adjust the brightness** Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from -2 to ±0 to +2.	
	White balance	Sets image color tones. The settings are also applied to the equivalent camera functions. →p.193	
		Auto (default)	Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.
		Fine	Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.
		Cloudy	Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.
		Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
		Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.
	Color mode set	Sets image effects. This setting is only retained during a call.	
		Normal (default)	Sets a normal image.
		Sepia	Sets a sepia-tone image.
		Monochrome	Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.
	Photo mode	Sets a mode suited to the scene being shot. Cannot be changed when using the front camera.	
		Portrait (default)	Is the shooting mode for people.
		Scenery	The best mode for shooting scenery.
		Close-up	Is the shooting mode for close-up.
Chara-den Set.	Sets Chara-den. Chara-den →p.88 Cannot be set for camera images.		
	Switch Chara-den	▶**Select a character** Selects a character to be displayed.	
	Action List	▶**Check the actions and keys** Checks the available actions and corresponding keys. You can also view the action list by pressing ✱.	
	Change Action	Changes the action mode.	
	Switch image	Displays your original image on the other party's display. →p.89	
Display light	Sets lighting of display light.		
	All time ON (default)	Turns the display light on.	
	15 seconds ON	Turns the display light on for 15 seconds only.	
FrontCamera Rev.	Sets the type of camera image displayed on your FOMA terminal during a call.		
	ON (default)	Displayed in mirror image.	
	OFF	Displayed in normal image.	
Call time disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to display the call time during a call.		
Own number	Displays your phone number during a videophone call.		
Send DTMF tone, DTMF tone OFF	Sets/cancels push signal transmission mode while using Chara-den. Except for Chara-den, videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.		

Continued on next page

Change to voice	“Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call”→p.85

● If a videophone call is not connected

If a videophone call was not connected, a message giving the reason for the connection failure appears. However, in some circumstances, an explanatory message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the callee and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the callee’s actual status.

Message	Reason
Check number then redial	The dialed phone number is currently not used.
Busy*1	Line is busy.
Packet communication	i-mode communication or packet communication is in progress on the callee.
Out of service area/power off	The callee’s phone is out of service or the power is turned off.
Public mode	Public mode (Driving mode) or Public mode (power off) is set on the callee.
Set caller ID to ON	Displayed when you connected without notifying your caller ID (when dialing into V-live or visualnet).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded (into a videophone call if the forwarding party has a videophone set to comply with 3G-324M).
Redial using voice call*2	The forwarded party is non-videophone-terminal.
Notify your Caller ID	The Caller ID Request service is set on the callee.
The other party does not want to answer your call	The called party has set the Bar Nuisance Calls service.
Connection failed	Set “Caller ID Notification” to “ON” and then try again. • This message may also be displayed in other situations.

*1 : This message may also appear during packet communication depending on the type of other party’s terminal.
*2 : As of May 2006, this message may also appear when Voice Mail service is set on the callee as well.

NOTE

- If you make a videophone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from a FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support videophone call, or if the callee’s phone supports videophone call but is out of signal range or switched off, no connection can be established. If you called a phone that does not support videophone call and “Auto redial as voice” (p.88) is set to “ON”, the call is cut off by the called party before the videophone connection is established and is then automatically redialed as a voice call. However, this operation is not carried out if you dial a wrong number or if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that does not conform to the 3G-324M standard (as of May 2006). Note that the call charge may apply in some cases.
- The “32K” connection speed allows you to use videophones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at “64K” due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at “64K” and the called party is in a “32K” area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that “32K” videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as “64K” videophone calls.
- If “Auto redial as voice” (p.88) is set to “ON” and a videophone call is not connected, the call is automatically changed to a voice call. The relations between the set connection speed and “Auto redial as voice” setting are listed below.

	Dialing speed set to “64K”	Dialing speed set to “32K”
“Auto redial as voice” set to ON	The connection speed automatically changes to “32K”. If the videophone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice-call mode.	Switches to voice call mode.
“Auto redial as voice” set to OFF	The connection speed automatically changes to “32K”. If the videophone call still fails to connect, the videophone call ends.	Ends the videophone call.

- You cannot receive i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. Mails you cannot receive are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using “Check new messages” after a videophone call ends.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.

◆ If the “Recharge battery” low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the “Camera Off” message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
◆ Digital call charges still apply when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.

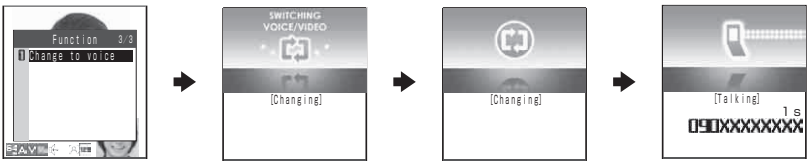
Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call

The caller can change the videophone call to a voice call during a videophone call (communication speed 64K).

● If the handset of your party is a FOMA terminal supporting the call change, “Change to voice” can be selected from the function menu during a videophone call and you can switch between videophone and voice calls. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
● You can change a videophone call only when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
● To change the call mode, the other party must set his or her terminal to show you “Indicate V.phone” beforehand. →p.92

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81) ▶ (-) (FUNC) ▶ “Change to voice”

While a videophone call is changed to voice call, the screen is displayed showing that the calls are being changed, and a voice guidance is played.



NOTE

◆ You can change between a voice call and a videophone call repeatedly.
◆ You can change to videophone call during a voice call. →p.52
◆ It takes about 5 seconds to change a call. Note that signal quality may affect how long it takes.
◆ You cannot change a call in the following cases:
  • The other party is holding a call.
  • The other party has activated Record message.
◆ The call time shown is reset to 0 second each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call.
◆ Depending on the other party’s communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change a call and the call may be canceled.
◆ If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls record. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
◆ You are not charged while “SWITCHING VOICE/VIDEO” appears.
◆ If you have changed the call mode, the call charge shown in “Call data” may differ from the one you will pay.
◆ When changing to a voice call, the hands-free is set to OFF.

Receiving a Videophone Call

Use this procedure to receive an incoming videophone call. If you cannot answer a videophone call with your camera image, you can receive the call showing the caller a substitute image instead of your camera image.

1 When you receive a videophone call, press (V. phone) or

The "videophone in-call" screen (p.81) appears.
You can talk hearing the other party's voice through the speaker.
"Switching to Hands-free Operation"→p.63



Videophone ringing



Videophone ringing (with Chaku-moji)

Function menu➡p.87

■ If a Chaku-moji message is also coming in

A Chaku-moji animation appears on the videophone ringing screen. You may know the contents beforehand. →p.55

■ To answer using a substitute image

▶●

A substitute image appears on the caller's display.
After sending a substitute image, you can still change it to a camera image by selecting "My side" from the function menu.

■ When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

▶Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch

You can answer using your own image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically answers a call using the substitute image once the specified ringing time has elapsed.
You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ To put a videophone call on answer hold while a FOMA terminal is ringing

▶

The "応答保留中 On hold" image appears on the caller's videophone display and the message is played.
Press (V. phone) or to answer a videophone call on answer hold using the camera image, or ● to answer the call using the substitute image.

■ To switch between camera image and substitute image during a videophone call

▶Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.

■ To send video from the rear camera during a videophone call

▶●

Each time you press ● during a videophone call, the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).

■ To put a videophone call in progress on hold

▶CLR

The hold tone sounds and the "保留 Holding" image appears on the caller's videophone screen.
Press (V. phone) or to answer a videophone call on hold using the camera image, or ● to answer the call using the substitute image. Press CLR to answer a videophone call in condition before holding.

■ To mute voice sent during a videophone call (microphone mute)

▶(Home)(1 second or longer)

The "MUTE" icon appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is.
Pressing and holding (Home) again for 1 second or longer cancels the mute.

2 Press when the call ends

Function menu (videophone ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends a call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards a call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Call Forwarding Service”→p.413
Voice Mail*	Connects the caller to the Voice Mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Voice Mail Service”→p.410
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when Multi Number (Additional Number 1 or 2) and Call Forwarding are activated for receiving calls. “Multi Number”→p.417

*：This service is not supported as of May 2006.

NOTE

- Digital call charges still apply to a caller when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.
- Even if “Call Forwarding” is set to “Activate”, a received videophone call can only be forwarded if the forwarding number is a 3G-324M-compatible (p.80) videophone. Check the forwarding destination phone before setting up call forwarding.
- If you receive a videophone call from a caller who is barred in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the caller sees a movie announcement that the call has been rejected, and then the call ends.
- Press (#非) or (Memo/Check) during an incoming videophone call, then “Record message” starts and the message can be recorded. (Pressing (#非) sets the manner mode at the same time.) →p.77
- Incoming call operations for a videophone call during i-mode communication follows “V-phone while packet”. →p.92
- You cannot receive i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. Mails you cannot receive are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using “Check new messages” after a videophone call ends.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- When you have subscribed to the “Call Waiting”, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service and a videophone call arrives while you are talking on another videophone call, end the call in progress to answer the call that has newly arrived.
- If the “Recharge battery” low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the “カメラオフ Camera Off” message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- Depending on the settings used by a caller, you may receive a substitute image instead of a camera image.

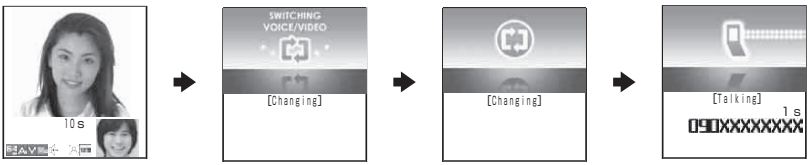
Changing videophone call to voice call (the other party)

Your received videophone call is changed to voice call by changing the call mode on the other party’s phone.

- You can change a videophone call only when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change a call on the dialing phone, “Indicate V.phone” must be set to “Indication ON” on the receiving phone beforehand.→p.92

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81)▶Change the call mode on the dialing phone

While a videophone call is changed to voice call, the screen is displayed showing that the calls are being changed, and a voice guidance is played.



NOTE

- When changing to a voice call, the hands-free is set to OFF.

Using Chara-den

This function enables you to send a cartoon character instead of your camera image during a videophone call.

- You can pre-check the actions available for Chara-den, or shoot Chara-den as a image or video and enjoy it.→p.346
- To use Chara-den, you must first set the following functions. Specifying Chara-den in the phonebook or "Discern connect" also allows you to use Chara-den.
  - Setting "Chara-den" in "Substitute image" in "Select image".→p.89

<Example: When you receive a videophone call from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook>

1 When you receive a videophone call, press ●

2 Control your character by pressing dial keys

Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.



Chara-den

■ To change the action mode

You can switch between "Whole" and "Parts" using "Chara-den set." from the function menu.→p.83
"Whole" action mode gives you full control over the character's movements and expressions of emotion, etc. Press 1 to 9 or # 1 to # 9 to express Chara-den.
"Parts" action mode gives you partial control over the character's movements (face, hands and feet, etc.). Press 1 1 to 9 9 to express Chara-den.

■ To check an action

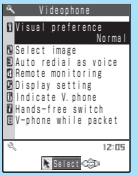
You can view the action list by pressing *.
Use ◉ to select the action to run it.



Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Videophone"

The "Videophone settings" screen appears.



Videophone settings

2 Select any item

Visual preference	Sets the image quality for videophone call.	
	Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Select image	"Setting an image to send during a videophone call"→p.89	
Auto redial as voice	Sets the operation performed when a videophone call cannot be connected.	
	ON	If a videophone call cannot be connected, it is automatically switched to a voice call.
	OFF (default)	A message notifying that the videophone call could not be connected appears and the standby screen reappears.

Remote monitoring	“Viewing Distant Locations Using FOMA Terminal”→p.94
Display setting	“Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call”→p.91
Indicate V.phone	“Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call”→p.92
Hands-free switch	“Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls”→p.90
V-phone while packet	“Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode” →p.92

● Setting an image to send during a videophone call

Default setting	**On hold, Holding: Pre-installed Substitute image: Chara-den (“ブンブン(Dimo)”) Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed**

Use this procedure to select an image sent in place of a camera image.

- This function is available for setting a JPEG or GIF image that is 100K bytes or smaller and also 640 dots wide × 640 dots high or smaller.
- The setting of this function is still retained after a videophone call ends.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.88)▶“Select image”▶Select any item

On hold	Sets an image to send for a call on answer hold.
Holding	Sets an image to send when a call is on hold.
Substitute image	Sets an image to send as a substitute image.
Record message	Sets an image to send while recording a videophone message.
Preparing	Sets an image to send while preparing a videophone message.
Voice memo	Sets an image to send while recording a voice memo.

2 Select an image to send

Pre-installed	Sends only a message.
Original	Sends an image and message. **■To change the setting** **▶(FUNC)▶“Change setting”▶Select the image**
Chara-den	This option appears only when “Substitutive image” is selected. Sends the Chara-den character selected in “Substitutive image”. “Function menu (Chara-den list screen)”→p.347 Priority sequence for Chara-den setting→p.112 **■To change the setting** **▶(FUNC)▶“Change setting”▶Select the image**

■ Messages to be sent

The messages to be sent are as follows:

For answer hold: “応答保留中 On Hold”
For holding: “保留 Holding”
For sending the substitute image: “カメラオフ Camera Off”
For recording videophone message: “伝言メモ録画中 Recording Voice only”
For preparing videophone message: “伝言メモ準備中 Preparing”
For recording voice memo: “音声メモ録音中 Recording Voice only”

NOTE

<Visual preference>

- ◆ You can change this setting using the function menu during a videophone call. However, the setting reverts to the original value when the videophone call ends.
- ◆ If signal quality deteriorates during a videophone call, an image may become grainy or patchy regardless of the “Visual preference” setting.

Continued on next page

<Select image>

- Some GIF images may not be set in “Original”.
- You can switch between a camera image and a substitute image during a videophone call.
- To check an image, select an item you want to check and press (Play).
- Changing the setting from “Original” to “Pre-installed” or “Chara-den” does not delete the stored image.
- The set still image is displayed both on your FOMA terminal and the other party’s terminal. However, the answering message for a recorded message is only sent to the other party’s terminal.
- You cannot delete the “Original” setting. Setting “Set as display” (p.328) in My picture also allows you to change the “Original” setting. If the original image to be pasted is deleted, the “pre-installed” message is shown on (sent to) the callee’s terminal.
- When the Chara-den character set as the substitute image is deleted and the “Chara-den” substitute image cannot be displayed, the “Dimo” stored at default is sent. If you have already deleted “Dimo”, a preinstalled still image is transmitted as an alternative image.

<Auto redial as voice>

- When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges do not apply.
- When a call is redialed, only the voice call is logged in the “Redial” or “Dialed calls” record.
- Even if “Auto redial as voice” is set to “ON”, it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party, such as busy.

Checking your appearance during a videophone call <Visual check>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81)▶(FUNC)▶“Visual check”

You can use the image from the built-in camera to check your appearance.

“ ” is displayed during a visual check.

A substitute image is sent to the other party.

2 (FUNC)▶“Visual check off”

Visual check ends. The screen returns to the state before the visual check.

Enlarging the image to be sent

During a videophone call, you can enlarge your camera image that is sent to the other party.

- If you are sending an image captured by the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by up to 9 (in 16 steps). An image shot using the front camera can be enlarged by up to 2 (in 2 steps).
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a videophone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When the videophone call ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge an image while sending a substitute image.

1 During a videophone call▶▶Zoom in or out



<Hands-free switch>

Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls

Default setting: ON

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically switch to the hands-free mode when a videophone call starts.

1 Videophone setting screen (p.88)▶“Hands-free switch”▶“ON” or “OFF”

NOTE

- Even if “Hands-free switch” is set to “ON”, you can cancel the hand-free operation by pressing “ Off” during a call.

◆ Even if “Hands-free switch” is set to “ON”, the FOMA terminal does not automatically switch to the hands-free mode in the following situations:
- Manner mode is set.
- A flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected. (However, the microphone works in according to the “Select microphone” setting.)
- The Answer hold or Record message function is activated during an incoming call.

Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call

Setting the image to be displayed on the main screen and how to display the camera image <Display setting>

Default setting	Main display: Other side Front camera Reverse: ON

1 Videophone settings screen (p.88)▶“Display setting”▶Select any item

Main display	Sets the main image for videophone calls.	
	Other side	Displays an image from the other party’s camera on your main screen.
	My side	Displays an image from your own camera on your main screen.
Front camera Reverse	Sets the type of camera image displayed on your FOMA terminal during a call.	
	ON	Displayed in mirror image.
	OFF	Displayed in normal image.

Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in videophone calls <Decoration>

You can decorate the videophone call screen (image from your own camera) by adding frames or stamps. You can even paste in stamps that follow facial movements.

● The FOMA terminal comes with stamps stored at default that trace facial movements, but you can also download additional stamps of the same type from the “みんなNらんど” site. “みんなNらんど”→p.214

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81)▶(FUNC)▶“Decoration”▶Select any item

Frame	▶**Select a frame** Places a frame around the videophone screen.
Stamp	▶**Select a stamp**▶**Use to decide the location**▶ Places a stamp on the videophone screen.
Facestamp	▶**Select a face stamp** Places a stamp that follows facial movements on the videophone screen. If a stamp can follow facial movements, “ ” appears. If not, “ ” appears.

■ To remove a frame or stamp

“Off decoration” in the “Videophone in-call function menu”→ p.82

NOTE

◆ Pressing (Play) on each selection screen allows you to check the selected frame, stamp or facestamp.
◆ When “FrontCamera Rev.” (p.83) is set to “OFF”, an image from your camera is displayed in normal image, enabling you to read stamps such as characters correctly.

Sending a message during a videophone call (sending of camera image) <Petit message>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81)▶(FUNC)▶“Petit message”▶Enter a message

A message can contain up to 16 full-pitch characters.

■ To cancel message entry

▶Erase the entire message▶CLR

Continued on next page

2 ●

The message appears. The message automatically disappears after 15 seconds.

■ **To erase a message manually**

▶CLR (1 second or longer)

You can also erase a message by selecting “Off decoration” from the function menu.

NOTE

◆ When “FrontCamera Rev.” (p.83) is set to “OFF”, an image from your camera is displayed in normal image, enabling you to read characters correctly.

<Indicate V.phone>

Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call

Default setting
Indication ON

You can notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change between voice call and videophone call.

● When you receive a call with this function set to “Indication ON”, your FOMA terminal notifies the other party that your terminal supports the switching function so that the other party can switch the call.

● You cannot set this function during a call or while “ ” appears.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.88) ▶Indicate V.phone▶Select any item

Indication ON	Notifies the other party that your FOMA terminal can change between a voice call and videophone call.
Indication OFF	Does not notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change between a voice call and videophone call.
Check Indication	Displays the item set in “Indicate V.phone”.

<V-phone while packet>

Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode

Default setting | V-phone priority

● A videophone is not equipped with a multi access function and an incoming videophone call is followed by “V-phone while packet” during i-mode communication or mail transmission. →p.469

1 Videophone settings screen (p.88)▶“V-phone while packet”▶Select any item

V-phone priority	Moves to the incoming videophone call screen. Answering the videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.
Packet downld priority	Rejects an incoming videophone call.
V-phone answerphone*	Connects an incoming videohpone call to the Voice Mail service center if you have subscribed to the service. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.
Call forwarding	Forwards an incoming videophone call to the forwarded number set at the Call Forwarding service if subscribing. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.

* : This service is not supported as of May 2006.

NOTE

◆ Even if setting to “V-phone priority”, you cannot answer an incoming videophone call when using the multi access function such as i-mode communication in voice calling.

◆ If setting to “Packet downld priority”, “V-phone answerphone” or “Call forwarding”, an incoming videophone call is recorded as “Missed calls” in “Received calls”.

◆ Even if setting to “V-phone answerphone” or “Call forwarding”, the “Packet downld priority” is performed when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is not subscribed or the forwarded phone number is not set.

◆ Even if “V-phone priority” or “Packet downld priority”, the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is enabled when the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds.

Receiving a Videophone Call during i-mode communication

Setting “V-phone while packet” to “V-phone priority” beforehand allows you to receive a videophone call during i-mode communication or mail transmission.

1 When receiving a videophone call during i-mode communication, press (V. phone) or

■ **To answer using a substitute image**

▶●

i-mode communication is disconnected, and the Connected to videophone screen appears.

2 Press when the call ends

■ **To continue i-mode communication**

Even when “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, you can continue using i-mode communication by selecting “Call Rejection”, “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail”* from the function menu of the videophone ringing screen.

Videophone ringing function menu →p.87

* : As of May 2006, this service is not supported.

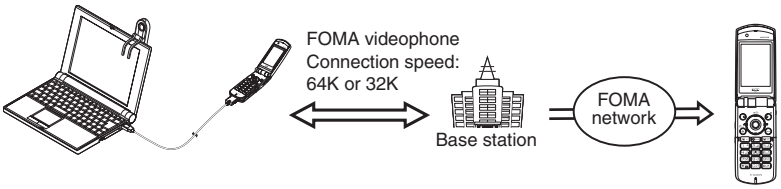
Connecting to an External Device to Make and Receive Videophone Calls

You can make and receive videophone calls using an external device such as PC by connecting it to the FOMA terminal with the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

To enable this function, install a videophone application in a PC or other exclusive device and prepare equipment such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible Web camera (marketed) that will be connected to the PC.

- Set USB mode setting to “Communication mode”. No setting is required for connecting to an external device.
- For information about the operating environment, setting and operation of a videophone application, see the instructions provided with an external device.
- “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005” (DoCoMo Videophone Software 2005) is available as an application for this function. This application can be downloaded on the following site: (for details about using in PC, check the support page on the website.

http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/



NOTE

- You cannot make a videophone call using an external device during a voice call.
- If you subscribe to the “Call Waiting” service and receive a videophone call from an external device during a voice call, you can answer the videophone call after ending the voice call. For a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication call received from an external device during a videophone call, the FOMA terminal acts in the same way.

<Remote monitoring>

Viewing Distant Locations Using FOMA Terminal

Default setting	Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 sec. Set: OFF

Remote monitoring is only available between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with the 3G-324M-compatible videophone function. Your FOMA terminal can be used as either of a dialing or receiving phone for remote monitoring.

- Remote monitoring can only be carried out when the phone number of the monitoring phone is stored beforehand in the phone receiving the remote monitoring and Remote monitoring is set to “ON”.

Preparing the receiving phone

Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and delay until the remote monitoring begins (Ringing time) on the phone receiving the remote monitoring.

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.88)▶“Remote monitoring”▶Enter your security code▶“Other ID”

The “Other ID” screen appears.



Other ID

Function menu➡p.95

2 Select “<Not recorded>”

■ **To change a previously recorded ID**

▶Select an ID you want to change

3 Enter the phone number of the other phone▶●

After storing an ID, press CLR on Other ID screen to return to the remote monitoring screen.

4 “Ringing time“▶Enter the ringing time (003-120 seconds)

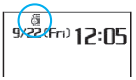
Enter the time as a 3-digit number. Entering a 3-digit number sets the ringing time.

■ **To set the displayed time**

▶Without entering a time, press ●

5 “Set”▶“ON”

Remote monitoring is set and “ ” appears on the standby screen.



■ **To turn remote monitoring off**

▶“OFF”

6 Position a FOMA terminal

In remote monitoring, an image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.
Put the receiving FOMA terminal in the monitoring position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.
If the FOMA terminal is left folded, voice and a substitute image overlapped with “カメラオフ Camera off” are sent instead of camera images.



NOTE

- The ringing time set for remote monitoring cannot be the same as that set for “Record message” or “Automatic answer”.
- If the ringing time set for “Call Forwarding” on the receiving phone is shorter than the time set for remote monitoring, “Call Forwarding” takes priority. To give priority to remote monitoring, set a shorter ringing time than the “Call Forwarding” setting.

Function menu (Other ID screen)

Look-up address	Sets the phone number of other party.	
	Phonebook	Stores a phone number stored in the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116
	Dialed calls	Stores a phone number stored in the Dialed calls record. "Dialing a Previously Dialed Number"→p.58
	Received calls	Stores a phone number stored in the Received calls record. "Using the Received Calls Record"→p.66
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted ID record.	
Delete all	Deletes all IDs. "Set" is set to "OFF" when all IDs are deleted.	

Performing remote monitoring

- To perform remote monitoring, you should always make a videophone call with caller ID (phone number) notification provided from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the receiving phone.
- When your FOMA terminal is used to receive remote monitoring calls, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

1 Make a videophone call to the receiving phone

After the ringing time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote monitoring begins. Video images from the receiving phone are displayed on the dialing phone and sound is played through the speaker. By using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), you can listen to the sound from the receiving phone through the earphone.



Dialing phone

■ To answer a videophone call (with camera image) on the receiving phone without triggering remote monitoring

▶Answer by pressing (V. phone) or before the ringing time has elapsed

To return to the list screen, press .

NOTE

- A remote-monitoring call from a phone number stored in the Remote monitoring setting can be received even when "Lock all" or "Omakase Lock" is set.
- If the caller ID is not notified, the call is received as a normal videophone call instead of a remote monitoring call.
- Remote monitoring cannot be performed if any of the following functions is set at the same time:
  - Public mode (Driving mode) • Manner mode • Call rejection/Accept* • Reject unknown*
  - * When "Call acceptation" is set in a phone number other than the "Other ID" number, when "Call rejection" is set for the "Other ID" phone number on the receiving phone or when the "Other ID" number is not stored in the phonebook and "Reject unknown" is set.
- If Remote monitoring and Record message or Automatic answer are set at the same time, the ring time set in Record message or Automatic answer is shorter than the one for Remote monitoring and a call arrives from the phone number stored in the Remote monitoring setting, Remote monitoring takes priority.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, received sound is played through the speaker regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- The ring tone specifically set for remote monitoring is used and it cannot be changed.
- The ring tone is played at the volume set in "Videophone" in "Ring volume". However, if the ring volume is set to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the volume for remote monitoring call is set to "Level 2".
- When a remote monitoring call is received, the incoming call lamp flashes in "Gradation" color and "Standard" pattern, regardless of the "Illumination" setting.
- You cannot set Answer hold during an incoming remote monitoring call. Press to end the call.
- If Remote monitoring is set to "ON" on the receiving phone, a videophone call received from a phone number stored in "Other ID" is logged in the Received calls record as a remote monitoring call. If remote monitoring was not triggered by the call, it is logged as a missed videophone call in the Received calls record.
- The receiving phone cannot receive a voice or videophone call during remote monitoring. Voice calls or videophone calls made to the receiving phone during remote monitoring are logged as missed calls in the Received calls record, and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- When the FOMA terminal is folded during remote monitoring, the terminal operates as specified in "Setting when folded". However, when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, the "Setting when folded" specification is ignored and a substitute image is sent to the other party when the FOMA terminal is folded.
- The cameras cannot be switched on the receiving phone during remote monitoring.

Ending remote monitoring

1 PWR HOLD

The call duration appears and the remote monitoring ends.

You can also end remote monitoring by pressing PWR HOLD on the receiving phone.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. If you inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be punished by respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

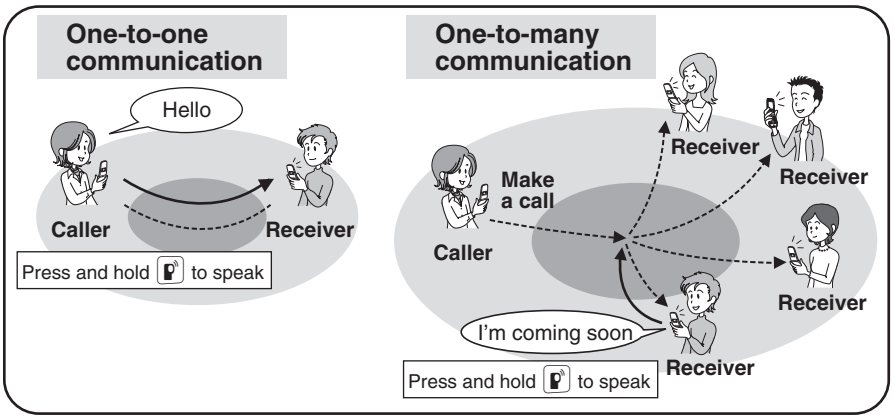
Push-to-Talk

What is Push-to-Talk? 98
Making a Push-to-Talk Call ..... Make PushTalk 99
Receiving a Push-to-Talk Call ..... Receive PushTalk 100
Ending a Push-to-Talk Call ..... End PushTalk 101
Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook .... Add to PushTalk 102
Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PTT Call 103
Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook
..... Delete PushTalk 105
Making the Push-to-Talk Settings ..... PushTalk setting 106

What is Push-to-Talk?

Press the Push-to-Talk (hereinafter referred to as PTT) key ( ) to open the PushTalk phonebook. You can talk with one or more parties (up to five people including yourself) simply by selecting the parties and then pressing . The PushTalk charge will apply each time you press . The speaker can keep speaking while pressing and holding , and the other members only listen while he/she is speaking. The screen displays the status of the members, e.g. who is speaking now.

- This feature is useful when you want to contact group members or relay a short message.
- The compatible models are 902i, 902iS series and P702i.

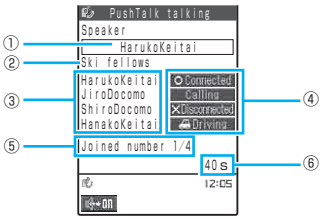


PushTalkPlus

PushTalkPlus allows a call among up to 20 people including yourself, using the pre-registered network phonebook. This service makes the Push-to-Talk more useful, e.g. you can check the status of members. The PushTalkPlus requires a separate subscription.

- For more details about how to use the PushTalkPlus, etc., see the guide you receive at the time of subscription.

Guide to the PushTalk talking screen



① Current speaker's name*1
("Myself" appears when you are speaking, or "?" when the speaker is unknown.)
② Group name specified at the time of dialing
(It is left blank if a group is not specified)
③ Participants' names (excluding yourself)*1
④ Status of members*2
Calling: Calling the party.
Connected: The party is participating.
Disconnected: There is no response from the party, or the party hung up. Otherwise, the party's terminal is out of range or turned off.
Driving: The party's terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode).
⑤ Number of participants (excluding yourself)
⑥ Time elapsed after starting the PTT call

*1 : If the caller sets "Caller ID setting" (p.106) or "Set Caller ID" (p.104) to "ON", the names stored in the phonebook appear. If the participant is not stored in the phonebook, the phone number appears. If the caller sets "Caller ID setting" or "Set Caller ID" to "OFF", "User unset" appears on the receivers.

*2 : "Calling", "Driving" and "Disconnected" appear only if three or more people are talking.

NOTE

◆ If the caller sets "Caller ID setting" (p.106) or "Set Caller ID" (p.104) to "ON" and then makes a PTT call, the participants' phone numbers are notified to all the other participants. Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when disclosing them.

<Make PushTalk>

Making a Push-to-Talk Call

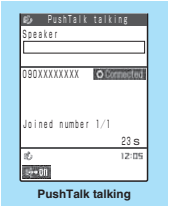
● Dialing makes a one-to-one call between you and the other party. To make a group call, use the PushTalk phonebook and dial. →p.103

1 Enter the other party's phone number

2

When the other party answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the "PushTalk talking" screen appears.





PushTalk talking

■ To switch to hands-free

▶Press (ON) while making a PTT call or during the PTT call

Hands-free →p.63

3 To end the call, press PWR

Ending a PTT call →p.101

NOTE

- You cannot make a PTT call during a voice call, videophone call or data communication.
- Making a PTT call during i-mode communication disconnects the i-mode communication. Making a PTT call while running an i-αppli causes the i-αppli to be exited.
- When a voice call is received during a PTT call, the operation follows the "PushTalk arrival act" settings. →p.106
- When receiving a videophone call, PTT call or 64K data communication during a PTT call, the missed record will be registered and the current PTT call will continue.
- The PTT call is unavailable for an emergency call (110, 118, 119).

● Speaking during a PTT call

1 During a PTT call▶Keep holding

The start tone sounds indicating that you have the right to speak now.
An error tone sounds if you cannot get the right to speak, e.g. while another member is speaking.

2 Keep holding to speak

Keep holding after you start holding in Step 1 until you finish speaking.
Releasing ends your speech, which means that another participant can speak now.

NOTE

- The other participants hear your voice only while you press and hold to have the right to speak. Releasing releases the right to speak, and the release tone sounds.
- The speaker's name appears on the screen during the speech.
- The time is limited for speaking each time you have the right. When the time has elapsed, a confirmation tone sounds and then the right expires.
- If nobody gets the right to speak for a given time, the PTT call ends.
- During a PTT call, press (Home) or (Memo/Check) to adjust the volume (6 levels).
- Even if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, press and hold to speak.
- When a participant presses and a confirmation tone sounds, the speaker is charged for the PushTalk charge (each time he/she has the right to speak).

● Other ways to make a call

The following are also available for making a PTT call:

Use the PushTalk phonebook	If members are registered to the PushTalk phonebook, you can select and dial up to four members. →p.103
Select a group	Selecting a group stored in the PushTalk phonebook allows you to make a call to all the members of the group. →p.104

Continued on next page

Use the phonebook*	Select a phone number stored in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) or of the FOMA card (UIM). **▶Phonebook list screen (p.115)/Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶Select a phone number then press**
Use Redial/Dialed calls/ Received calls	"Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls"→p.100
Use the Phone To function*	"Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions"→p.226

*：Only one-to-one calls can be made to other parties.

Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls

- The Push-to-Talk records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls are registered separately for one-to-one calls and for group calls.
- A group call is saved as one record to the Redial, Dialed calls or Received calls.
- The following are the functions that can be launched from each record: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Item	One-to-one call record (, MISS, etc.)	Group call record (, MISS, etc.)
Make a one-to-one PTT call	A	A*3
Make a group PTT call*1*2	U	A
Make a voice call/videophone call	A	U
Add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	A	A

*1：You can make a call to the same members, or select members in the group.
*2：Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can use the Received calls to join the call if other members keep talking.→p.101
*3：Selecting "Select PushTalk" from the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls function menu and then selecting only one member will result in a one-to-one call.

<Receive PushTalk>

Receiving a Push-to-Talk Call

Answer and join an incoming PTT call.

- Receiving a PTT call rings a tone, flashes the incoming call lamp and displays the "PushTalk call" screen.
- The "PushTalk call" screen displays the names of the caller and other members (in case of group call).

1 A PTT call incoming▶



and are also available to answer the call.
Answering the call sounds the participation tone.
Speaking during a PTT call→p.99

■ To reject the call (To make a "Disconnected" response)

▶Press while receiving a call
Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can join the call later on if other members keep talking.→p.101

■ To switch to hands-free

▶Press ( ) during a PTT call
Hands-free→p.63

2 To end the call, press

Ending a PTT call→p.101

NOTE

- While "Any key answer" is set, the following keys are also available to answer the call: , to , , , , , (Home), (Assist key)
- Pressing (Memo/Check) or disconnects an incoming call ("quick message" is unavailable). Pressing sets the manner mode. Doing so causes a "Disconnected" response.
- A "Disconnected" response can also be made by launching the function menu while receiving a PTT call and then selecting "Call rejection".
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when the Public mode (Driving mode) is set. If the call is one-to-many, "Driving" appears on the other members' screens indicating that you are driving.

◆ When the FOMA terminal is folded, you answer an incoming call in hands-free mode.
◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, pressing the switch also allows you to answer a call.
◆ When receiving a PTT call, pressing [☎] does not allow “On hold”. Doing so causes a “Disconnected” response.
◆ A “Disconnected” response will be made to a call from a phone number specified in “Call rejection” or “Reject unknown”.
◆ You cannot answer a PTT call incoming during a voice call, videophone call, PTT call or data communication. If the current call is a voice call or PTT call, the missed call record is registered.
◆ If a PTT call is received during i-mode communication, the operation follows the “Set i-mode arrival act” settings.
→p.106

● Automatically answering an incoming PTT call <Auto answer setting>

Default setting: OFF

You can set to automatically answer an incoming PTT call in hands-free mode.
● Setting the Auto answer setting to “ON” sets the hands-free ON when answering automatically no matter whether the FOMA terminal is folded, causing the voices to come out of the speaker.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.103)▶(−)(FUNC)▶“PushTalk setting”▶“Auto answer setting”

Select “ON” or “OFF”.

NOTE

◆ The “ON” setting is unavailable in manner mode.
◆ While the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, you cannot answer an incoming call regardless of the “Auto answer setting”, but the participants will know that you are driving.
◆ The “Auto answer setting” set to “ON” has priority over the settings of “Automatic answer” or “Ring time setting” (p.106) under the PushTalk setting.

● Joining a PTT call in progress

Follow the step below to join a PTT call in progress later on if you make a “Disconnected” response while receiving the PTT call or if you miss the call while the Public mode (Driving mode) is set:

1 Received calls screen (p.67)▶Use ◎ to select a PTT call, then press [P]

The “PushTalk talking” screen (p.98) appears.

NOTE

◆ If other members continue a PTT call after you leave the call, follow the step above to join (rejoin) the call in progress.
◆ You cannot join a call in progress if it is one-to-one or if it is already finished. In this case, you make a PTT call (p.99) to parties selected in the step above.

<End PushTalk>

Ending a Push-to-Talk Call

1 During a PTT call▶[☎]

■ If you made a call

Pressing [☎] ends the PTT call and disconnects all the participants.

■ If you received a call

If it is a group call, pressing [☎] does not end the call and the call continues, but the participants will know that you left the call.
If other members continue a PTT call after you leave the call, you can join (rejoin) the call in progress.
→p.101
When the caller presses [☎], the PTT call ends and all the participants are disconnected.

NOTE

◆ A confirmation tone sounds when one of the participants leaves the call.
◆ When all the participants other than the caller leave the call, the PTT call ends.
◆ If “Setting when folded” (p.106) is set to “End the call”, a PTT call ends when the FOMA terminal is folded. When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, however, communication continues.

Continued on next page

◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, holding down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer causes PTT call ending.

<Add to PushTalk>

Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook

- Copy members (phone numbers, etc.) stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook.
- Add phone numbers to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook beforehand.→p.111
- Up to 700 members can be added.

1 On the standby screen▶

The “PushTalk phonebook” screen (p.103) appears.

2 (New)▶Search for a phonebook entry to add

Searching the phonebook (Selecting the search method)→p.116

3 Display the Phonebook detail screen▶Use to select a phone number to add

A screen appears asking whether to add to the PushTalk phonebook.



Member list

■ To add from the phonebook list screen

▶Highlight a phone number and press (Finish)

If two or more phone numbers are stored in the phonebook entry, the first phone number is added to the PushTalk phonebook.

4 “YES”

A new member is added to the member list.

■ If a phone number is already stored in the selected memory number

A message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing one. Select “YES” to overwrite, otherwise “NO”.

NOTE

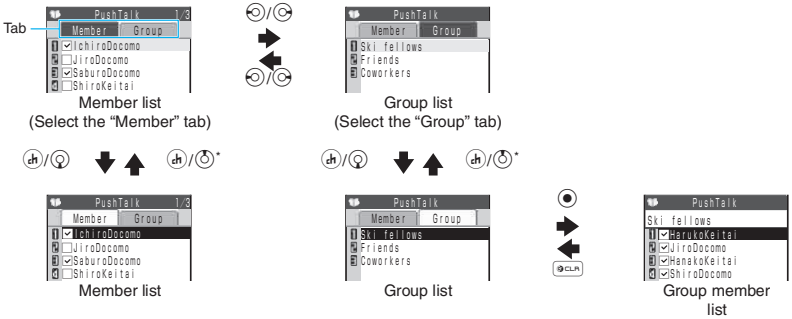
◆ Members in the member list appear as follows:
- When a member is registered to the member list or added to the group, the registered/added member appears on the top.
- When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen, the members appear in last-used order.

◆ You can also add a member by selecting “Add to PushTalk” from the “Phonebook detail” function menu.→p.118

Adding a member to a group

A “group” created with members in the PushTalk phonebook is useful when you want to make a group call.

- You can change the PushTalk phonebook display as follows:



* : The display mode is available only when you select the first item on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

◆ The neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.

◆ Use to change pages on the same tab. Use (Home) and (Memo/Check) to select a tab.

● Creating a group

● Up to 10 groups can be created. A group name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters.

1 PushTalk screen (p.103)▶(FUNC)▶“Group setting”▶“Compose group”

2 Enter a group name and press ●

A new group name is added to the group list.

● Adding a member to the group

● Add a member to the member list beforehand.→p.102
● A group can contain up to 19 members, but a call can be made to only up to four members of the group.

<Example: Add from the group list>

1 On the group list▶Use ◎ to highlight a group, then press (FUNC)▶“Group setting”▶“Add member”

The “select group member” screen appears.

2 Use ◎ to select a member▶(Finish)

The selected member is added to the group.

NOTE

◆ Group members appear as follows:
- When a member is added to the group, the added member appears on the top.
- When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen then the group member list, the members appear in last-used order.

◆ A member cannot be added to the group if the phone number is the same as that of an existing member.
◆ A member can be added separately to different groups.

Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PTT Call

Select members from the PushTalk phonebook and make a PTT call.

● You can make a call to a maximum of four members.

1 On the standby screen▶[P]

The “PushTalk phonebook” screen appears.
You can also display the screen by selecting [MENU]▶[Phonebook]▶“PushTalk”.

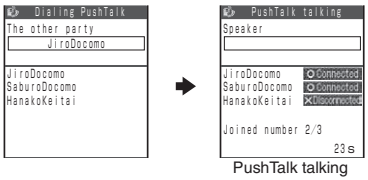


PushTalk

Function menu➡p.104

2 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶[P]

[1 *] to [8 TUV] are also available to select the corresponding checkboxes. A PTT call will be made to the members selected.
When one of the other parties answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the “PushTalk talking” screen appears. You can check the status of the members on this screen.→p.98
Speaking during a PTT call→p.99



PushTalk talking

■ To check the selected members

▶Before pressing [P] to make a call, select (FUNC)▶“View member”

■ To switch to hands-free

▶Press ([ON]) while making a PTT call or during the PTT call
Hands-free→p.63

Continued on next page

NOTE

- If no checkboxes are selected, a call will be made to the highlighted member.
- When you select two or more parties to make a call, those parties will be saved as one record to the Redial/Dialed calls. You can use the record to make another PTT call.→p.100
- If all the other members receiving the call are “Disconnected”, the PTT call will end.

Making a call from a group

1 On the group list▶Use ◎ to highlight a group, then press [Talk]

A call is made to all the members of the highlighted group.

■ **To select members from the group**

▶Select a group▶Use ◎ to deselect members you do not want to dial from the group member list▶[Talk]

NOTE

- If five or more members are registered to the selected group, a call cannot be made. In this case, select up to four members in the group, so that you can make a call.
- If a group is selected, a call is not made to the members stored as secret data. To make a call also to the members stored as secret data, set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- In Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the names of members stored as secret data in the phonebook do not appear on the dialing screen.

Function menu (PushTalk phonebook screen)

● The options available depend on the member list, group list, group member list or selected tab.

New	Copies a phone number from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook.
Set Caller ID	Select “ON” or “OFF” for whether to notify receiving and connecting members of your and other members' phone numbers. ■ **To release “ON” or “OFF” of “Set Caller ID”** ▶**“Cancel prefix”** If “Cancel prefix” is selected, the “Caller ID setting” under “PushTalk setting” applies.
View member	Displays a list of members.
PushTalk setting	Makes the Push-to-Talk settings.→p.106
Network connection	Connects to the network to use the PushTalkPlus.→p.98 Only a PushTalkPlus subscriber can use this function.
Sort	Uses the method to sort the lists.*1
Group setting	Creates a new group, adds a member to the group, or edits a group name.→p.102
Release all	Deselects all members in the member list/group member list.
No. of PushTalk	Checks the number of members, the number of groups and the number of members stored in each group.*2
Delete	Deletes an entry from the PushTalk phonebook.→p.105

*1 : Sorting in Reading order is unavailable in the group list.

*2 : To change displays, use ◎, Home and [Memo](Memo/Check).

NOTE

<No. of PushTalk>

- In “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, the number of secret members also can be checked.

<Delete PushTalk>

Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook

Delete an entry from the PushTalk phonebook.

- A member deleted from the PushTalk phonebook is not deleted from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

1 On the member list▶(FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted member.
Delete selected	▶**Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)**▶(Finish)▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the members.

NOTE

- If a member to be deleted are registered to some groups, the member will be deleted from all the groups containing the member.

Deleting a PushTalk group

1 On the group list▶(FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group.
Delete selected	▶**Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)**▶(Finish)▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the groups.

NOTE

- All the members stored in the group are also to be deleted. The members are not deleted from the member list.

Deleting a group member

1 On the group member list▶(FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group member.
Delete selected	▶**Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)**▶▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the group members in the group.

NOTE

- The members are deleted only from the current group. They are not deleted from another group or from the member list.

<PushTalk setting>

Making the Push-to-Talk Settings

Make the Push-to-Talk settings.

● After making the settings, press CLR to return to the "PushTalk phonebook" screen.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.103)▶(FUNC)▶"PushTalk setting"▶Select any item

Auto answer setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming PTT call in hands-free mode. →p.101	
Ring time setting (default: 30 seconds)	▶**Enter the ring time (01-60 seconds)** The ring tone keeps ringing for the specified time. When the specified time has elapsed, a "Disconnected" response is automatically made and the ring tone stops. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.	
Setting when folded	Selects an operation to be performed when the FOMA terminal is folded during a PTT call.	
	Speaker talk (default)	Continues a call in hands-free mode. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.
	End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing ☎. Ending a PTT call →p.101
Caller ID setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to notify receiving and connecting members of your and other members' phone numbers each time you make a PTT call.	
Set i-mode arrival act (default: PushTalk preferred)	Sets whether to answer an incoming PTT call during i-mode communication. Select "PushTalk preferred" or "i-mode preferred".	
PushTalk arrival act	Sets how to deal with an incoming voice call while making/receiving a PTT call or during the PTT call.	
	Answer	Moves to the incoming voice call screen. The incoming voice call screen does not appear while making/receiving a PTT call. "Receiving a voice call during a PTT call" →p.107
	Call Rejection (default)	Rejects an incoming voice call.
	Voice Mail	Connects an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail service if you have subscribed to the service. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice Mail" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".
	Call Forwarding	Forwards an incoming voice call to the designated forwarding number if you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call Forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".

NOTE

<Ring time setting>

- If "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.)" is set to "ON", the ring tone sounds for the ring time specified in "Ring time setting" after the specified mute time has elapsed.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, priority is given to the shorter time setting, "Ring time setting" or "Automatic answer".

<Setting when folded>

- This setting is available only for Push-to-Talk and does not follow "Setting when folded" (p.66).
- If "Speaker talk" is set, folding the FOMA terminal sets Hands-free ON regardless of the manner mode setting.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and even folding the FOMA terminal does not change the communication status.

<Caller ID setting>

- This setting is available only for making a PTT call and does not follow "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) or "186/184" setting (p.60) of the Network services.
- If "Notify Caller ID" (p.51) or "Set Caller ID" (p.104) is selected from the function menu or if Notify/Not notify appears on the Redial/Dialed calls detail screen, each setting will apply.

<Set i-mode arrival act>

- Setting “i-mode preferred” does not register an incoming PTT call to the Received calls.
- If “PushTalk preferred” is selected, receiving an incoming PTT call disconnects i-mode communication.

<PushTalk arrival act>

- If “Answer” is selected, receiving a voice call while speaking interrupts your speech. Answering the incoming voice call ends the PTT call.

Receiving a voice call during a PTT call

Setting “PushTalk arrival act” to “Answer” beforehand allows you to receive a voice call during a PTT call.

1 When receiving a voice call during a PTT call, press [↵] or ●

The PTT call ends, and the voice in-call screen appears.

2 To end the call, press [PWR]

■ To continue a PTT call

Even when “PushTalk arrival act” is set to “Answer”, you can continue a PTT call by selecting “Call Rejection”, “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail” from the function menu of the ringing screen.

Ringing function menu →p.64

NOTE

- Pressing [C] on the voice call ringing screen (the PTT call ends) then pressing [↵] or ● also switch the screen to the voice in-call.

Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal 110
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook..... Add to phonebook 111
Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook ..... Add to UIM phonebook 112
Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records 113
Renaming Groups..... Group setting 114
Making a Call from the Phonebook..... Search phonebook 115
Editing a Phonebook Entry ..... Edit phonebook 119
Deleting a Phonebook Entry..... Delete data 119
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card ..... UIM operation 120
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status..... 122
Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address ..... Discern connect/Discern group 122
Using Dialing Shortcuts ..... Two-touch dialing 124
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites..... Automatic display 124
Saving Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center ..... Data Security Service 125

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The two phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

● Besides phonebooks described above, you can create the “PushTalk” phonebook available for Push-to-Talk calls. Use the entries of FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to create the PushTalk phonebook. →p.102

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook

■ Stored data

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
Number of entries	Holds up to 700 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Groups*1	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 19.	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 10.
Phone number storage*2	The phonebook will hold up to 2800 phone numbers in total with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact’s mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry. One number selected from an entry can also be stored in the PushTalk phonebook.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 24 icons “ ”, “ ”, etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of contact’s mobile phone number or work number.	Icons cannot be selected. The “ ” icon is automatically assigned.
E-mail address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 2100 e-mail addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the contact’s home and work addresses to be included in one entry.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons “ ”, “ ”, etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact’s home or work address.	Icons cannot be selected. The “ ” icon is automatically assigned.
Image storage	One still image and one “Chara-den” character can be stored per entry, up to a total of 100 of each for the whole phonebook.	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include one contact’s name, reading, ZIP code, street address, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact’s phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact’s name and reading can be stored.

*1 : You can rename “Group 01” to “Group 19” (“Group 01” to “Group 10” in the UIM phonebook). Renaming them as you prefer beforehand enables you to categorize entries more efficiently. →p.114

*2 : You can enter 0-9, #, ✱, + and pause (p) in the phonebook. To use a sub-address (p.62), enter ✱.

■ Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following useful functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- Specifying memory numbers (001 to 009) enables you to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 keys. →p.124
- You can use the “Discern connect” and “Discern group” functions to specify the settings of dialing and receiving calls for each group, phone number or e-mail address. →p.122
- You can use “Restrictions” to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for individual phone numbers. →p.171
- You can use “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode” to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. →p.161
- “Setting your secret code in the phonebook” →p.119

■ Features of the UIM phonebook

Because UIM phonebook entries are stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can transfer your phonebook entries to another FOMA terminal simply by switching the FOMA card (UIM). This enables you to use the same phonebook in multiple FOMA terminals.

Displaying names

■ Voice and videophone calls



When you receive a call from a caller who notifies the caller ID stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number appear.



If there is a still image stored in the phonebook entry and "Disp. PH-book image" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal also displays the image. However, it may take time to display the image depending on the data size.
The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

■ i-mode mail and SMS

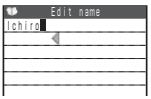
When you receive an i-mode mail from someone whose e-mail address is stored in the phonebook or receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal displays the sender's name on the Received mail list and detail screens. When you send an i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is shown on the Sent mail list and detail screens.
The person's name also appears on the "Sent address" or "Received address" list.

<Add to phonebook>

Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook

● Always enter a name in the "Name" field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶−(FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶"Phone"▶Enter a name



A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.
A name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.

2 Check the reading

■ If a reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.
A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters.
"Search reading" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters▶−(Finish)

Group	▶**Select a group** Selects a group number between "00" and "19". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
Phone number	▶**Enter a phone number**▶**Select an icon** Enters a phone number and selects an icon. A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Once you have stored the first phone number, the "<Not stored>" option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
Mail address	▶**Enter an e-mail address**▶**Select an icon** Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "<Not stored>" option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.
Address	▶**Enter a ZIP code**▶**Enter a street address** Enters a ZIP code and street address. A ZIP code can consist of up to 7 single-byte numbers. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.

Continued on next page

Birthday	▶**Enter a birthday** Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
Memoran-dums	▶**Enter a memo** Enters a memo (short note). A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
Image	Selects an image displayed when you receive a call from the contact. Selecting “Photo mode” activates the “Photo mode” screen on which you can shoot a still image. →p.185
Chara-den	Selects a Chara-den character sent as a substitute image during a videophone call.
Memory No.	▶**Enter a memory number** A memory number is automatically* assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 699, as desired. Press ○, ＊ or ＃ to automatically* assign an available number.

* : The least of available numbers between 010 and 699 is assigned. If there are no numbers available between 010 and 699, the available one between 000 and 009 is assigned.

NOTE

- If you enter “ゎ , ヮ ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ワ” (single-byte, upper case). Only when you press dial keys in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading. Pictographs do not appear in readings.
- Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly e.g. when data are transferred.
- Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is the part of address that follows the “@” symbol.
  (E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- To store an e-mail address in the “phonenumber@docomo.ne.jp” format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.
- If you modify or delete the original data of an image or Chara-den that is stored in the phonebook, the data stored in the phonebook is also modified or deleted.
- To have a stored image displayed when you receive a call, set “Disp. PH-book image” to “ON”. →p.139
- When you receive a call from the phone number for which an image is stored in the phonebook and the image size is larger than the display area set in “Calling” in “Display setting”, the width and length of the image is reduced at the same ratio. When an image is smaller than the set display area, it is centered on the screen.
- When you select “Move to top” from the function menu while viewing multiple phone numbers/mail addresses stored in a phonebook entry, the highlighted phone number/mail address is stored as the first.

<Priority sequence for Chara-den setting>

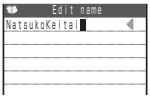
- The priority order for Chara-den settings is as follows:
  ①Chara-den setup in Discern connect →p.122 ②Chara-den setup in Discern group →p.122
  ③Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry ④“Substitute image” in “Select image” →p.89

<Add to UIM phonebook>

Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook

● Always enter a name in the “Name” field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 On the standby screen▶○▶－(FUNC)▶“Add to phonebook”▶“UIM”▶Enter a name



A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.
A name consisting of up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be stored.

2 Check the reading

■ If a reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using double-byte katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.
Up to 12 double-byte or 25 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be used.
“Search reading” in “Search phonebook” uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters▶－(Finish)

Group	▶**Select a group** Selects a group number between “00” and “10”. If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Phone number	▶**Enter a phone number** Enter a phone number. Phone numbers up to 20 digits long can be stored on a blue FOMA card (UIM) or up to 26 digits long on a green FOMA card (UIM). When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
Mail address	▶**Enter an e-mail address** Enters an e-mail address. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

NOTE

- If you enter “わ，ワ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ワ” (double-byte, upper case). However, “ワ ” (double-byte, lower case) can be entered in a reading. Only when you press dial keys in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading.
- Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is the part of address that follows the “@” symbol.
  (E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- To store an e-mail address in the “phonenumber@docomo.ne.jp” format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.

When phonebook editing is interrupted

1 On the standby screen▶●▶−(FUNC)▶“Add to phonebook”▶“Phone” or “UIM”▶“Recall”



If a low voltage alarm sounds during editing or you started up a new Tools group task using multi task, the interrupted phonebook editing can be restarted.
If you cancel the re-editing without storing the edited data, the data is deleted.

■ **To store a new phonebook entry**
▶“New”

NOTE

- Only the latest edited data can be saved temporarily.
- If you receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the edited phonebook data to answer the call.
  During a voice call or Push-to-Talk call, you can return to the phonebook edit screen by pressing dh (MULTI) to display the task change screen (p.386) and selecting “Add to phonebook”. After a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call ends, the original edit screen reappears.

■Important

- It is recommended to back up the information stored in the phonebook onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, the Data Link Software (p.472) and FOMA USB Cable (optional) are available to back up the phonebook data onto your PC.
- Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. If you wish to copy the data for each phonebook entry onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility such as a DoCoMo shop, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal depending on the specifications of the new model.
  Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries.
  It is recommended to use the Data Link Software to back up phonebook data onto a PC.

Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address”, “Sent address”, “Access reader” or the site screen. You can also add a dialed phone number to the phonebook.

<Example: Adding information from the “Received calls” record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

1 Received calls screen (p.67)▶−(FUNC)▶“Add to phonebook”

■ **Using the Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of Push-to-Talk calls (group calls)**
▶“Add to phonebook”▶Use ⊙ to select a party (phone number) to add to phonebook

Continued on next page

2 **"Phone"**

■ **To add to the UIM phonebook**
▶"UIM"

3 **"Add"▶Locate a phonebook entry to which you want to add the information**

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116

■ **To store a new phonebook entry**
▶"New"

■ **To add information to the UIM**
▶"New" or "Overwrite"

4 **Display the phonebook detail screen▶●(Select)**

The phone number is automatically entered and the phonebook edit screen appears.
Editing the phonebook→p.119

5 **Press −(Finish) when you finish editing**

■ **If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data**
▶"YES"

NOTE

- The "Notify Caller ID" setting (ON or OFF) displayed in the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records is not stored in the phonebook.
- You cannot add received addresses to which replies cannot be sent to the phonebook.
- The predetermined number of characters are stored on a phonebook entry and remains are deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.

<Group setting> MENU26

Renaming Groups

Default setting	FOMA terminal (Phone): Groups 01-19 UIM: Groups 01-10

You can assign the stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact's role ("Work", "Friends", etc.) or by hobby ("Baseball", "Football", etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.
The table below shows the groups that can be renamed and the number of characters that can be stored.

	Renamable groups	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Groups 01-19	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte
FOMA card (UIM)	Groups 01-10	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte

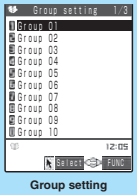
● Group 00 cannot be renamed.

1 **On the standby screen▶○▶−(FUNC)▶"Group setting"**

The "Group setting" screen appears.

2 **Select a group▶Select a new group name**

The " " icon appears next to UIM groups.
If the same name is assigned for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, they appear as separate groups.



Group setting

Function menu➡p.114

Function menu (Group setting screen)

Edit group name	Edits a group name.
Discern group	"Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address"→p.122
Reset group name	Resets the changed group name to the default.

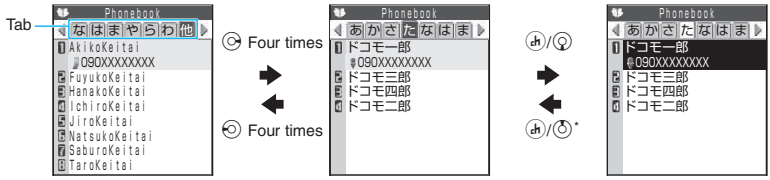
NOTE

- Resetting a group name does not cancel the "Discern group" settings specified for the group.
- If there are no characters entered in the group name to be changed, it returns to the default group name.

Making a Call from the Phonebook

You can make a call quickly by selecting the other party's entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook.

● When tabs appear on Phonebook list screen, you can switch the display as follows.
<Example: Switching tabs from "他(Others)" to "Ta-column" in Alphabet tab display>



* : The display mode is available only when you select the first phonebook entry on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

- The Neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.
- Use ⊖ to change pages on the same tab. Use (Home) and (Memo/Check) to select a tab.
- When a tab is selected in alphabet tab display, you can press the corresponding key to a column to switch to that tab. For keys corresponding to columns, see "Search column" (p.116) in the search method list.
- When a tab is selected in the Memory No. display, you can key in the Memory No. directly to display the phonebook entry.
- When a tab is selected in the Group tab display, you can key in the Group No. directly to select the Group tab (to specify a group registered in UIM, add "＊" before the Group No.).

Opening the other party's entry to make a call

1 On the standby screen▶●

The "Phonebook" screen appears.



Phonebook

Function menu➡p.117

■ To make a call on the list screen

▶Highlight an entry to which you want to make a call and press ☎ or ⊖(V. phone)

Press ☎ to make a voice call or ⊖(V. phone) to make a videophone call.
If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first number.

■ To switch tabs

▶⊖(FUNC)▶"Change Display"

You can select either of "Alphabet", "Memory No." or "Group".

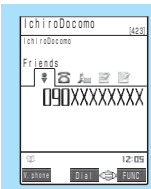


2 Select a desired phonebook entry

The "Phonebook detail" screen appears.

3 ☎ or ⊖(V. phone)

Press ☎ to make a voice call or ⊖(V. phone) to make a videophone call to the currently displayed number.



Phonebook detail

Function menu➡p.117

■ If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry

Use ⊖ to display other stored phone numbers.

NOTE

- You can switch the first phone number of a phonebook entry that contains multiple phone numbers.→p.118
- Press ● during a call to display the Search group screen, or ⊖ to display the Search column screen.

Specifying a method to search for an entry

To search for a desired entry, you can select one of 8 search criteria: reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group, column in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.) and all.

■ Viewing the search results

Except for memory number search or all entries search, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the readings entered when entries were stored. If Search all is performed with no search criterion, “A-column” is shown in Alphabet tab display.

Japanese syllabled [reading beginning with a space, ア, ァ, イ, ィ, ……ン]
↓
Alphabetic letters [A, a, B, b...Z, z]
↓
Numbers [0 to 9]
↓
Symbols
↓
Entries without reading

1 On the standby screen▶○▶Select the search method



You can also perform “Search all” by displaying the standby screen and selecting ▶○. You can also perform “Search phone No.” by displaying the phone number entry screen (p.50)▶Enter a part of the phone number▶○ or ○.

■ To display your preferred search

▶Highlight a search method you want to display preferentially▶−(Prefer)▶●
A star (★) appears next to the preferred search method.
The next time you search the phonebook, pressing ○ on the standby screen will display your preferred search method screen.

■ To cancel your preferred search method setting

▶On the standby screen▶○▶CLR▶Highlight a search method with a star (★)▶−(OFF)

2 Search the phonebook

When a search ends, the “Phonebook” screen that meets the search criterion appears. “ ” appears for the UIM phonebook entries on the search result list screen.

If no phonebook entry that meets the search criterion is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.

Search method	Procedure and description
Search reading	**▶Enter some of a reading▶○ or ○** Enter a reading from the beginning in the order of family and first name. You do not need to enter the entire reading.
Search name	**▶Enter part of a name▶○ or ○** Start with the surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire name.
Search phone No.	**▶Enter part of a phone number▶○ or ○** You can search by entering either the first digits or any part of a phone number.
Search e-mail	**▶Enter part of an e-mail address▶○ or ○**
Search memory No.	**▶Enter a 3-digit memory number** You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.
Search group	**▶Select a desired group** The UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
Search column	**▶Press the key for the “column” you want to search** 1 : Only entries that begin with “a” column reading 2 : Only entries that begin with “ka” column reading 3 : Only entries that begin with “sa” column reading 4 : Only entries that begin with “ta” column reading 5 : Only entries that begin with “na” column reading 6 : Only entries that begin with “ha” column reading 7 : Only entries that begin with “ma” column reading 8 : Only entries that begin with “ya” column reading 9 : Only entries that begin with “ra” column reading 0 : Only entries that begin with “wa”, “wo” or “n” column reading * : Other entries

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Search method	Procedure and description
Search all	▶**Select a desired phonebook** Displays the list of all the entries stored in the phonebook.

NOTE

◆ If you have not set a preferred search method, pressing ⓞ displays the Search phonebook screen with the last selected search method highlighted.

Function menu (phonebook screen)

● Available functions vary depending on search method or how the search is activated (e.g. activated on the standby screen), or the selection condition of tabs.

Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook"→p.111, "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook"→p.112	
Connect to DSC	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"**▶⊖ **(Finish)** Keeps the phonebook data at the DoCoMo Data Security Center. Data Security Service →p.125, 175	
Delete data	Deletes phonebook entries.	
	Delete this[*1]	Deletes the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Delete selected	▶**Use ⓞ to select a checkbox (□)**▶⊖**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** You can delete multiple phonebook entries.
	Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the phonebook entries.
Sort[*2]	Sorts phonebook entries according to the specified criterion.	
Change Display	Switches tabs. You can select either of "Alphabet", "Memory No." or "Group".	
Discern connect	"Checking the Discern connect settings"→p.124	
Restrictions	"Checking the restriction settings"→p.172	
Group setting	"Renaming Groups"→p.114	
Copy to miniSD	Copies the phonebook data to the miniSD memory card.	
	Copy this[*1]	Copies the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Copy selected	▶**Use ⓞ to select a checkbox (□)**▶⊖**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** You can copy the multiple phonebook entries.
	Copy all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Copies all the phonebook entries.
Send Ir data[*1]	"Transferring one Data at a Time"→p.367	
Send all Ir data	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.368	
No. of phonebook	Displays the phonebook storage status. →p.122	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	

*1 : Not available when tabs are displayed or selected.
*2 : Not available when tabs are displayed.

NOTE

◆ If you delete a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook.
◆ If "Delete all" is performed, the UIM phonebook and PushTalk phonebook entries are also deleted.
◆ Selecting "Copy all" or "Copy selected" in "Copy to miniSD" also copies the storage information of PushTalk phonebook.

Function menu (phonebook detail screen)

Notify Caller ID	Selects whether to notify the other party of your caller ID, from "Don't notify" or "Notify caller". ■**To cancel "Don't notify" or "Notify caller" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting** ▶**"Cancel prefix"** When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) setting applies.
Prefix numbers	▶**Select the prefix name to add** "Setting Prefix Numbers"→p.61
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message"→p.56

Continued on next page

Int'l call	■**When "+" is prefixed (country code is added)**[*1] ▶**Select the IDD prefix code** "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■**When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)** ▶**Select a country code**▶**Select the IDD prefix code** The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls →p.54	
Multi Number	"Multi Number"→p.417	
Discern connect	"Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address"→p.122	
Restrictions	"Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers"→p.171	
Edit phonebook	"Editing a Phonebook Entry"→p.119	
Move to top	Specifies the selected phone number/e-mail address as the first number/address when multiple phone number/e-mail addresses are stored in an entry.	
Add to PushTalk[*2]	Adds the entry to the PushTalk phonebook.→p.102	
Delete data	"Deleting a Phonebook Entry"→p.119	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.148	
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243	
Compose SMS	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)"→p.285	
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time"→p.367	
Send all Ir data	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.368	
Automatic display	"Specifying phone number to display automatically"→p.125	
Copy to miniSD	Copies the selected phonebook entry to the miniSD memory card.	
Copy name	Copies a name stored in the phonebook. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→p.436	
Copy phone number[*3]	Copies a phone number stored in the phonebook. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→p.436	
Secret code	▶**Enter your security code**▶**Select any item** "Setting your secret code in the phonebook"→p.119	
	Set code	▶**Enter a 4-digit number**▶**"YES"** Sets your secret code.
	Check code	Displays the set secret code.
	Release settings	Cancels the set secret code.
Set secret[*4]	"Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule"→p.161	
Copy to UIM[*5]	Copies phonebook data. "Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card"→p.120	
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".	
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call.→p.89 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "My side" or "Chara-den".	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	

*1 : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).
*2 : Not displayed for entries stored in the UIM phonebook.
*3 : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, "Copy mail add." appears.
- If you have selected an address, "Copy address" appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, "Copy birthday" appears.
- If you have selected a memo, "Copy memorandums" appears.

*4 : If you have selected a secret phonebook entry, "Release secret" appears.
*5 : If you have selected a UIM phonebook entry, "Copy from UIM" appears.

NOTE

<Add to PushTalk>

◆ When an entry is added to the PushTalk phonebook, "[redacted]" appears on the phonebook detail screen and "★" appears on the function menu.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

<Big font><Standard font>
◆ When “Big font” is selected, only the name appears large on the phonebook detail screen.

● Setting your secret code in the phonebook

For an e-mail address which is “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” with a secret code registered by the owner, you need to specify “phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp” as the e-mail address. If you set the secret code when adding the phonebook entry, the secret code will be added automatically when you search the phonebook and compose an i-mode Mail.

NOTE

◆ You can only set a secret code to e-mail address “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” or a phone number.
◆ You cannot set secret codes to UIM phonebook entries.
◆ Always set the correct secret code set by the owner.
◆ Do not set a secret code using this function if you already registered “phone number+secret code” or “phone number+secret code@docomo.ne.jp” as the e-mail address in a phonebook entry.

<Edit phonebook>

Editing a Phonebook Entry

● Readings cannot be corrected automatically when you edit the names.

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶(-)(FUNC)▶“Edit phonebook”▶Edit each item

Edit the desired items using the same procedure as “Add to phonebook”.
Adding information to the phonebook→p.111

■ **To assign a new memory number**

▶“No.”▶Enter a memory number (000 to 699) that has not already been stored

The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new entry with a different memory number.

2 Press (-)(Finish) when you finish editing▶“YES”

■ **For a UIM phonebook entry**

▶(-)(Finish)▶“Overwrite” or “Add”

Selecting “Overwrite” stores the edited information.
Selecting “Add” leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new one.

NOTE

◆ If you edit a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is automatically edited in the PushTalk phonebook.
◆ If you edit the memory number of an entry which is stored in the member list or group list in the PushTalk phonebook, the edited entry does not take over the storage information for the PushTalk phonebook.

<Delete data>

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶(-)(FUNC)▶“Delete data”▶Select any item

Delete phone No.*	Deletes the selected phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday, memo, image or Chara-den character.
Delete this	Deletes the phonebook entry displayed in detail.

* : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Delete mail add.” appears.
- If you have selected an address, “Delete address” appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Delete birthday” appears.
- If you have selected a memo, “Delete memorandums” appears.
- If you have selected an image, “Delete image” appears.
- If you have selected a Chara-den character, “Delete Chara-den” appears.

NOTE

◆ You can delete a phonebook entry on the phonebook screen. However, you cannot delete respective items stored in an entry.

Continued on next page

◆ If multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored in a phonebook entry and the first phone number or mail address is deleted, the next phone number or mail address appears.
◆ If you select “Delete phone No.” or “Delete this” for a phone number or entry that is stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the phone number or entry is also deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook.

<UIM operation>

Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card

You can transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM). You can also delete the SMS and phonebook data stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

● You cannot make/receive voice calls, videophone calls or Push-to-Talk calls, or send/receive mails while copying or deleting data. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
● You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.
Items and number of entries that can be copied→p.110

Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM)

Use this procedure to copy phonebook entries and SMS data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM).

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶“UIM operation”▶Enter your security code

Once you enter your security code, “” appears and you can no longer perform communication (e.g. receiving calls). If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation ends.

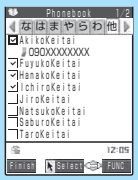
2 “Copy”▶“Phone→UIM” or “UIM→Phone”

3 Select any item

Phonebook	▶**Search the phonebook** Displays the phonebook screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

4 Use ○ to select a checkbox (□)▶−(Finish)▶“YES”

If you select “Phonebook” in step 3 and tabs are displayed on Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



UIM operation (copy)
Example: Phonebook (Search All)

Function menu➡p.121

NOTE

◆ You cannot exchange data with a failed FOMA card (UIM).
◆ Copying a phonebook entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM) converts “katakana” included in name and reading to double-byte. Copied are up to 10 double-byte or up to 21 single-byte characters for name and up to 12 double-byte or up to 25 single-byte characters for reading.
◆ Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry is different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored in a FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook entry cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
◆ Because the types of available characters are different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
◆ Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.

- Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when a FOMA terminal is set to “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If no same group name is set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the copied entries are stored in group 00.
- You cannot copy the SMS report only. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent SMS.
- You cannot copy SMS data by box or folder.
- You cannot protect SMS copied to a FOMA card (UIM). If you copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM). “Replied to” or “Transferred” icons are also changed to “Read”.
- If you copy SMS in added folders, i-αppli mail folders, “Chat” folder or “Trash box” folder from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM), you can view those SMS in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.
- Entries copied from a FOMA card (UIM) to FOMA terminal (Phone) are placed in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.

Function menu (UIM operation (copy) screen)

● Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start copy	Starts copy operation.
Select this	Selects data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the selected data.
Release all	Deselects all the selected data.
Detail	Displays the data details.

Deleting phonebook entries or SMS data

1 MENU▶ LifeKit▶“UIM operation”▶Enter your security code

2 “Delete”▶“Phone” or “UIM”

3 Select any item

Phonebook	**▶Search the phonebook** Displays the phonebook screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

4 Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶●(Finish)▶“YES”

If you select “Phonebook” in step 3 and tabs are displayed on Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



UIM operation (delete)
Example: Phonebook (Search All)

Function menu➡p.121

Function menu (UIM operation (delete) screen)

● Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start deletion	Starts deletion operation.
Select this	Selects data.
Select all	Selects all data.

Continued on next page

Release this	Deselects the selected data.
Release all	Deselects all the selected data.
Detail	Displays the data details.

MENU22

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

1 Phonebook list screen (p.115)▶(-)(FUNC)▶“No. of phonebook”

Phone (phonebook stored on a FOMA terminal)

Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/700 (storage limit)

Secret : Shows the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.

Image : Shows the number of images stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored images/100 (storage limit)

Chara-den : Shows the number of Chara-den characters stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored Chara-den characters/100 (storage limit)

UIM (phonebook stored on a FOMA card (UIM))

Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/50 (storage limit)

<Discern connect/Discern group>

Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address

Default setting
All OFF

The functions enable you to specify settings such as which answer message is used in the Record message function and which ring tones are used for each group, phone number or e-mail address in the phonebook. This function is useful if you want to have ring tone or illumination inform you of the caller, etc.

- These functions cannot be set to “Group 00” on the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and entries and groups on the UIM phonebook.
- These functions cannot be set to the phonebook entries stored as secret data.
- The “Discern connect” and “Discern group” functions will only work if a caller provides the caller ID (phone number). It is recommended to use the “Caller ID Request” service.→p.414

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶(-)(FUNC)▶“Discern connect”

The “Discern connect” screen appears.
A star “★” appears next to the selected function.
Available functions vary depending on the item selected on the Phonebook detail screen.



Discern connect

■ **Setting this function for each group**
▶Group setting screen (p.114)▶(-)(FUNC)▶“Discern group”

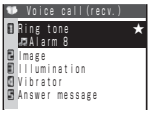
2 Select any item

Voice call (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of voice calls from the specified phone number or group.
V.phone (dial/recv.)	Sets how to notify you of videophone calls from the specified phone number or group.
Mail (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of SMS from the specified phone number or group, or i-mode mail from the specified e-mail address or group.

3 Select any item

A star “★” appears next to the selected function.

■ **To deselect a selected function**
▶Highlight a function with “★” and press (-)(Reset)
The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.



Example : Voice call (recv.)

Ring tone*1	Sets ring tones to distinguish callers or senders. “Changing the Ring Tone”→p.128

Image[*2]	Sets images to distinguish callers. “Changing the Display Settings”→p.136
Chara-den setup[*3]	Sets a Chara-den character (available for videophone calls) for each phone number. “Chara-den Set.”→p.83
Illumination[*1]	Sets illumination patterns to distinguish callers or senders. “Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails”→p.146
Vibrator	Sets vibration patterns to distinguish callers or senders. “Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives”→p.131
Answer message[*2]	Sets an answer message played when Record message starts for each caller.[*4] “Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video”→p.75
Connection speed[*3]	Sets the connection speed used for videophone calls for each phone number. Select “64K” or “32K”.

*1 : Available for 64K data communication calls.
*2 : Displayed when “Voice call (recv.)” or “V.phone (dial/recv.)” is selected.
*3 : Displayed when “V.phone (dial/recv.)” is selected.
*4 : To use this function, set “Record message” to “ON” beforehand.

■ When you set “Discern connect”

The following icons appear on the phonebook detail screen indicating the selected functions have been set:

: “Ring tone” for voice/videophone calls
: “Ring tone” for mails
: “Illumination” for voice/videophone calls
: “Illumination” for mails
: “Vibrator” for voice/videophone calls
: “Vibrator” for mails
: “Image” for voice/videophone calls
: “Answer message” for voice/videophone calls
: “Chara-den setup” for videophone calls
64k : “64K” set in “Connection speed” for videophone calls
32k : “32K” set in “Connection speed” for videophone calls



Example: Videophone setting

NOTE

- The “Ring tone”, “Illumination” or “Vibrator” in “Mail (recv.)” that is set for a phone number takes effect when you receive an SMS from the phone number or mail from the e-mail address in “[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp” format. When you receive a mail from other address, the FOMA terminal operates according to the setting for the mail address in phonebook.
- These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored as secret data and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and ordinary data. However, these settings are disabled for mails or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- When Discern connect/Discern group settings duplicate the ones specified for other functions, or mail and MessageR/MessageF with differing settings are received at the same time, they are handled as outlined below.
- When multiple e-mails or MessageR/MessageF are received simultaneously, the ring tone and illumination perform as shown below.

	Ring tone, Illumination
Mail only	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.
MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the MessageR.
Mail, MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>
- Priority sequence for incoming call lamp when incoming settings are duplicated→p.146

<Vibrator priority sequence>
- Priority sequence for vibrator when incoming settings are duplicated →p.131

<Ring tone priority sequence>
- Priority sequence for ring tone when incoming settings are duplicated→p.130
- Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated→p.256, 286

Continued on next page

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>
◆ Priority sequence for image displayed when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated→p.139

<Connection speed priority sequence>
◆ Priority is assigned as follows when connection speed settings are duplicated:
①Connection speed→p.82, 118 ②Connection speed for Discern connect
③Connection speed for Discern group

Checking the Discern connect settings

MENU 62

You can check the phonebook entries or groups set in "Discern connect" by function or item.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.115)▶(−)(FUNC)▶"Discern connect"

The "Discern connect checking" screen appears.
A star "★" appears next to the item for which the function is set.

2 Select a function or item for which "★" appears on the "Discern connect" screen▶Highlight the function or item with "★"* and press (−)(FUNC)▶Select any item

*: The number of times this step is repeated varies depending on the function or setting specified.

Check settings	Shows phonebook entries and groups with the selected function or item set.
Release settings	Releases the settings of the selected function or item.

<Two-touch dialing>

Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers "000" to "009" to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys 0 to 9 and then pressing ☎.

1 0 to 9 ▶☎

■ **To make a videophone call**
▶(−)(V. phone)

■ **To make a Push-to-Talk call**
▶

This operation is available only for one-to-one call.

NOTE

◆ If a phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, a call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.
◆ When the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret data only mode, you can use two-touch dialing to make a call to a phonebook entry stored as secret data with one of "000" to "009" assigned.
◆ When "Restrict dialing" is set, and the first phone number in a phonebook entry with a memory number between 000 and 009 is not nominated in the "Restrict dialing", two-touch dialing cannot be used. In this situation, you must either cancel Restrict dialing settings or nominate the first phone number in a desired entry with a memory number between 000 and 009 in the Restrict dialing settings.

<Automatic display>

MENU 47

Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites

Default setting: OFF

This function enables you to automatically display a preset phone number by opening the FOMA terminal that was folded on the standby screen. You can make a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to that number simply by pressing ☎, (−)(V. phone) or .

● You can only set automatic display for one phone number. You cannot set this function for mail address.
● You cannot set automatic display for entries in the UIM phonebook or PushTalk phonebook.

Enabling the automatic display function

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Display"▶"Automatic display"▶"ON"

■ **To deactivate the automatic display function**
▶"OFF"

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Specifying phone number to display automatically

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶(FUNC)▶“Automatic display”

A star (★) appears next to “Automatic display”.

■ **If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry**

▶Use to highlight phone number to display automatically

■ **To cancel the automatic display setting**

▶Repeat Step 1

The setting is cancelled and a star “★” disappears.

NOTE

- Press , , or (Home) while the automatic display phone number is shown to return to the standby screen.
- The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:
  - Secret data only mode is set
  - You fold the FOMA terminal during character entry or operation and reopen the terminal
  - Restrict dialing is not set for a phone number with automatic display set, but set for another phone number
- Only one-to-one call is available when you make a Push-to-Talk call while the phone number set in automatic display appears.

<Data Security Service>

Saving Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center

This service enables you to keep the data stored in your FOMA terminal (e.g. phonebook entries, images, mails) at the DoCoMo Data Security Center.

- To use this service, subscribe to “Data Security Service”.
- If you have not subscribed to the Data Security Service, the message notifying that you have not subscribed to the service appears. You can access the Data Security Service site from the message screen to subscribe to the service.
  Data Security Service→p.175
- When “ ” appears, the Data Security Service operations are not available.
- The packet communication charges apply to data update performed during Data Security Service operations. The charges vary depending on the amount of updated data.
- If a videophone or Push-to-Talk call arrives during a Data Security Service operation, the operation is interrupted. After the call ends, the data backup resumes from where it was interrupted.
- If the memory allotted to your FOMA terminal becomes full at the Data Security Center, data backup is interrupted. If this is the case, the data already backed up are saved.

● Data types supported by Data Security Service

Data		Item to be saved	Refer to
Phonebook	FOMA terminal phonebook	Name, Reading, Mail address, Memo, Address, Birthday, Image, Memory number, Secret store, Group number, Group name, PushTalk phone number, PushTalk group number, PushTalk group name	p.126
Mail	i-mode mails, chat mails and SMS in Outbox/Inbox/Draft	Unread/Read, Message type, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/Send date, Message, Attach	p.273
Image	Images in Camera, Deco-mail-picture and user-created folders	Files in JPEG format (including progressive JPEG) or GIF format, title, file type	p.330

* Phonebook entries or SMS that are stored in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be saved at the Data Security Center. Also, the Data Security Center cannot keep the data stored in Secret folders or the miniSD memory card.

● Saving phonebook entries at the Data Security Center

You can save your FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook data at the DoCoMo Data Security Center.

● If you have already saved your phonebook data at the Data Security Center, performing this procedure will update the data to the one currently stored in your FOMA terminal (Phone).

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶**“Data Sec. Service”▶“Connect to DSC”**

■ **To set sending of images stored in phonebook**

▶“PH-book img. Sending”▶“ON” or “OFF”

The default setting is “OFF”. Setting “ON” will also save the images stored in the phonebook at the Data Security Center.

2 **Enter your security code▶“YES”**

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving (updating) the phonebook data.

3 (−) **(Finish)**

NOTE

◆ Note that a phonebook entry with an image whose size is more than 100K bytes cannot be saved or updated.

◆ UIM phonebook entries cannot be saved in the Data Security Center.

■ **Restoring/Updating phonebook data**

The phonebook data kept at the Data Security Center can be restored to a FOMA terminal via i-mode. Furthermore, you can edit the phonebook data kept at the center from a PC and automatically update the edited data to the FOMA terminal.

For details on how to use this function, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

NOTE

◆ Phonebook data may not be updated if another function is activated during the update operation. If this is the case, “” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

◆ When the phonebook data kept at the Data Security Center are restored to a FOMA terminal, the icons registered in the phonebook data change to “☎”.

● Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center

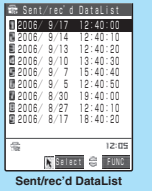
● Up to 30 communication logs can be recorded. If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.

● On the communication log detail screen, transmission results, dates, transmission details, data sizes, results of sending to the Data Security Center, reception results of the mobile phone and number of data files left in the Data Security Center appear.

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶**“Data Sec. Service”▶“Sent/rec’d DataList”**

The “Sent/rec’d DataList” screen appears.

2 **Select a log item**



Sent/rec’d DataList

Function menu➡p.126

NOTE

◆ The data size shown on the communication log detail screen is only as a guide.

Function menu (Sent/rec’d DataList screen)

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted communication log.
Delete selected	**▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□) ▶(−)(Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple communication logs.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all communication logs.

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

Tone settings

Changing the Ring Tone ..... Select ring tone 128
Setting Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies..... Sound effect 130
Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives..... Vibrator 131
Setting the Keypad Tone..... Keypad sound 132
Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging..... Charge sound 132
Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out ..... Quality alarm 132
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails ..... Mail/Msg. ring time 133
Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker..... Earphone 133
Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone..... Manner mode 133
Customizing Manner mode..... Manner mode set 134

Display/Lighting settings

Changing the Display Settings..... Display setting 136
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls ..... Disp. PH-book image 139
Setting the Image Display Mode..... Image display 140
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting ..... Backlight 141
Changing the Display Color..... Display design 142
Changing the Menu Display..... Menu display set 142
Setting the Neuropointer..... Neuropointer 145
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails..... Illumination 146
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call..... Illumination in talk 146
Having a FOMA terminal Show the Call Time During a Call ..... Call time display 147
Changing the Font ..... Font 147
Setting the Clock Display..... Clock display 147
Using Desktop Icons..... Desktop icon 148
Using 3D Animation for the Message of the New Mail Desktop Icon ..... 3D display setting 150
Selecting Icons To Show on the Standby Screen.... Icons setting 151
Setting Style Mode..... Style mode 152

Changing the Ring Tone

Default setting	Phone: Pattern1 Videophone: Pattern4 PushTalk: Pattern1 Mail: Pattern2 Chat mail: Pattern2 MessageR: Pattern3 MessageF: Pattern3

Ring tones can be set for voice calls, videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls, e-mail, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF respectively. You can also set ring tones for particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses and phonebook groups respectively. →p.122

- In addition to the preinstalled ring tones and melodies, i-motion programs and melodies downloaded from i-mode sites or websites can be selected as ring tones.
- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for a ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is QVGA.
- Melody list→p.350

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Incoming call”▶“Select ring tone”▶Select any item

Phone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.136)
Videophone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.136)
PushTalk	Sets a ring tone for Push-to-Talk calls.
Mail	Sets a ring tone for incoming i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication, and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.136)
Chat mail	Sets a ring tone for incoming chat mails and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.136)
MessageR	Sets a ring tone for incoming MessageR and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.136)
MessageF	Sets a ring tone for incoming MessageF and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.136)

2 “Select ring tone”▶Select any item

Melody	Chooses a pre-installed ring tone or melody from the “Pre-installed” folder, or a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website from “Inbox” or a folder you have created.
i-motion	Selects an i-motion downloaded from a site or a movie (i-motion) shot using the built-in camera from “Inbox”, “Camera”, “Movable contents” or a folder you have created. Selects a pre-installed i-motion from the “Pre-installed” folder. Some i-motion programs have a FOMA terminal play video and voice when calls are received (Chaku-motion).
Voice announce	Chooses between “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
Random melody	Selects a folder containing melodies. When you receive a call or message, a FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies stored in the folder at random and plays it as a ring tone.
OFF	Plays no ring tone.

3 Select a ring tone or i-motion

A FOMA terminal plays the selected melody. Press [☎], [✱], [#], [●], [●], or [C] to stop playing the melody. After setting a ring tone, set the receiving screen if necessary.

■ To check settings

▶[●](Play)

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Pre-installed ring tones and melodies

Display	3D sound compatible
Pattern 1 - 4	–
Melody 1	C
Melody 2	C
Melody 3	C
Melody 4	C
Melody 5	C
Melody 6	C
Melody 7	C
Melody 8	C
Melody 9	C
Melody 10	C
Alarm 1	C
Alarm 2	C
Alarm 3	C
Alarm 4	C
Alarm 5	C
Alarm 6	C
Alarm 7	C
Alarm 8	C

Recording patent No.: T-0630128 

Pre-installed Chaku-motion

“Nature” is stored in the “Pre-installed” folder in “i-motion”.

NOTE

- An i-motion with images only or with telop cannot be set as a ring tone.
- An i-motion without images such as singing voice of a singer is only available for an incoming ring tone for Push-to-Talk calls.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be set.
- If you copy a melody available for a ring tone to the miniSD memory card, the copied melody can no longer be set as a ring tone (except as copied it back to a FOMA terminal).
- Videos or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving call image cannot be set if:
  - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange or the Data Link Software and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
  - They are copied from the miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).
- The volume level applied for the ring tone playback during selection follows the one set in “Ring volume”. If “Silent” is set to “Ring volume”, tones are not played back.
- A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. →p.350
- The “Ring tone” settings in “Melody” under Data box affect the settings of this function. →p.351
- The “Select ring tone” settings in “i-motion” under Data box affect the settings of this function. →p.339
- Depending on the precedence setting or combination of a ring tone and the receiving screen, either the ring tone or receiving screen may revert to default set at the time of purchase.
- The ring tone for voice calls without the caller ID can be set in the “Call setting w/o ID” menu. The ring tone for videophone calls without the caller ID is set according to the “Videophone” setting in this function.
- When an i-motion is set as the mail ring tone, the packet communication ring tone is set to “Pattern2”. The special receiving screen appears during packet communication regardless of the receiving screen settings.

Continued on next page

<Ring tone priority sequence>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the ring tone operation when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated.

①Ring tone for Multi Number (Additional Number 1 and 2)→p.417
②Ring tone for Discern connect→p.122 ③Ring tone for Discern group→p.122
④Select ring tone/ring tone of style mode (videophone call) →p.128, 152
⑤Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID→p.173
⑥Select ring tone/ring tone of style mode (except videophone call) →p.128, 152

Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:

①i-motion for Ring tone ②i-motion for Image
③i-motion (without images, such as singer's voice) or melody for Ring tone

Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated→p.256, 286

What is 3D Sound?

The 3D sound function uses the stereo speaker (or stereo earphone set) to produce 3 dimensional and resonating sounds. This function allows you to enjoy i-αppli-based games and melody playback with richer and more realistic sounds.

How to enjoy 3D sound

- To enjoy 3D sound to the fullest, positioning a FOMA terminal at the front of you and holding it approximately 20 to 30cm away from you will produce the best results.
- If you listen at an off-center position or you are too close or too far away from a FOMA terminal, the effect may be diminished.
- The 3D effect differs depending upon the individual. If 3D sound bothers you, set "Surround", "3Dsound" and "SRS_WOW" (p.130) all to "OFF".



<Sound effect> MENU64

Setting Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies

Default setting	Surround: OFF 3Dsound: ON SRS_WOW: OFF

Use this function to get a richer fuller sound when a FOMA terminal plays melodies, ring tones for voice calls, videophone calls and Push-to-Talk calls, sound effects and i-motion sound.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Incoming call"▶"Sound effect"▶Set "ON" or "OFF" for the following**

Surround	Sets natural 3-dimensional sound. The sound you are playing sounds like it is further away from the actual position of the 2 speakers.
3Dsound	Plays 3 dimensional stereophonic sound from the stereo speakers.
SRS_WOW	"Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound"→p.130

Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound

When you play an i-motion using sound effects, the sound effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and earphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music audio, and stereo sound played through earphones is enhanced by effects that provide a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music audio.

- i-motion programs using sound effects can be identified by the icon shown on the Movie List screen. →p.326

<Vibrator> MENU54

Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives

Default setting
All OFF

You can set a FOMA terminal to use different vibration patterns for voice calls, videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls, e-mail, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF respectively.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Incoming call”▶“Vibrator”▶Select any item

Phone	Sets vibration for voice calls or 64K data communication.
Videophone	Sets vibration for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Sets vibration for Push-to-Talk calls.
Mail	Sets vibration for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication.
Chat mail	Sets vibration for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets vibration for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets vibration for MessageF.

2 Select a vibration pattern

Pattern 1	Vibrates in Pattern 1.
Pattern 2	Vibrates in Pattern 2.
Pattern 3	Vibrates in Pattern 3.
Melody linkage	Vibrates in the pattern specified for the melody set as the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is specified for the melody or an i-motion is set as the ring tone, Pattern 2 is used.
OFF	Does not vibrate.

A FOMA terminal vibrates in the selected pattern.
The following icons shown on the standby screen indicate for which function the FOMA terminal vibrates:

: Shows that vibration starts when receiving a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call.

: Shows that vibration starts when receiving a mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF.

: Shows that both “” and “” are set.

NOTE

- To enable “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF” in “Vibrator”, set the respective items in “Mail/Msg. ring time” to “ON”.
- When “Vibrator” is set to other than “OFF”, take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.
- When “Ring volume” is set to other than “Silent” and the vibrator is set, a FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of incoming calls. When “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”, a FOMA terminal uses vibration only.
- The vibration level is always fixed regardless of the ring volume setting.
- When “Melody linkage” is set, the vibration pattern may not match the main theme.

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows for the vibrator when the incoming settings are duplicated.
  ①Vibration setting for Discern connect →p.123　②Vibration setting for Discern group →p.123
  ③Vibrator setting

<Keypad sound> MENU30

Setting the Keypad Tone

Default setting: ON

- Setting this function to “OFF” also disables the following tones:
  - Warning tones
  - The tone emitted when you start adjusting the volume
  - Battery low warning tone
  - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- The keypad tone sounds at the level set in “Volume” during a call, and fixed at the same level while not on a call.
- The confirmation tone sounds regardless of this setting when:
  - You press (Assist key) or (Memo/Check) with a FOMA terminal folded
  - You shoot a picture (shutter sound, Auto focus lock sound)
  - You start/finish memo playback (the sound emanates from the receiver)
  - You start/finish standby voice memo and voice announce recording (the sound emanates from the receiver)
- When setting the keypad tone in “Initial setting” (p.46), select “ON” or “OFF”.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Other settings”▶“Keypad sound”▶“ON”

■ **To prevent a FOMA terminal from emitting the keypad sound**

▶“OFF”

<Charge sound>

Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging

Default setting: ON

This function allows you to set a FOMA terminal to emit a short double-beep (“bibip”) when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

- The confirmation tone does not sound regardless of this setting when:
  - You are dialing
  - You are on a voice call or Push-to-Talk call
  - Public mode (Driving mode) is set
  - Voice announce is being recorded
  - A FOMA terminal is turned off
  - You are receiving a call
  - Manner mode is set
  - Standby voice memo is being recorded
  - Data is sent or received
  - The screen is not standby

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Other settings”▶“Charge sound”▶“ON”

■ **To prevent a FOMA terminal from emitting the charge sound**

▶“OFF”

<Quality alarm> MENU75

Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out

Default setting: High tone

A FOMA terminal uses this function to sound an alarm tone during a voice call or videophone call warning you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

- A call may drop out without the warning tone if signal quality worsens very quickly.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Talk”▶“Quality alarm”▶“No tone”, “High tone” or “Low tone”

<Mail/Msg. ring time> MENU68

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails

Default setting
All ON (ring time: 5 seconds)

Use this function to specify whether a FOMA terminal sounds a ring tone when you receive a mail, chat mail or a MessageR/MessageF. And if so, set the duration of the ring tone.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“Incoming call”▶“Mail/Msg. ring time”▶Select any item**

Mail	Sets the ring time for i-mode mails and SMS.
Chat mail	Sets the ring time for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets the ring time for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets the ring time for MessageF.

2 **Specify whether to ring the tone**

ON	**▶Enter the ring time (01-30 seconds)** A FOMA terminal rings for the specified time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press ●.
OFF	A FOMA terminal does not ring.

NOTE

◆ When “OFF” is selected for “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” or “MessageF”, “ ” appears on the standby screen.

<Earphone> MENU51

Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker

Default setting
Earphone(only)

Use this procedure to give a ring tone or alarm through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“External connection”▶“Earphone”▶“Earphone+ Speaker”, “Earp. (Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone (only)”**

NOTE

◆ Even if “ Earp. (Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone (only)” is set for this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal’s speaker when no earphone/microphone is connected. Even when a earphone/microphone is connected, the shutter tone of the camera sounds through the speaker.

◆ When “Earp. (Speaker in 20s)” is set, you can hear sound through both the earphone and speaker in about 20 seconds after a ring tone or alarm is emitted. However, when the music player is running, the ring tone does not sound through the speaker even in 20 seconds and only sounds through the earphone.

◆ Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the code of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.

<Manner mode>

Muting the FOMA Terminal’s Tone

When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, set this function with a single touch to stop your FOMA terminal emitting ring tones and keypad tones through the speaker.

● When Manner mode is set, the following tones are replaced by vibration:
- Ring tone*1
- Alarm clock, Schedule, ToDo list and Notice designate calls alarm tones*2
- Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded

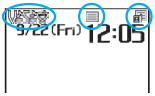
*1： A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “Vibrator”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, a FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.

*2： A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “Phone” in “Vibrator”. If “Phone” in “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, a FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.

● For the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set, select “Manner mode”, “Super silent” or “Original” in “Manner mode set”.→p.134

Continued on next page

1 When the screen is standby or you are talking▶ (#) (1 second or longer)



A FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode and "" appears on the screen.
During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message notifying you that Manner mode is now set appears.
While in Manner mode, the icon indicating the specified "Manner mode set" setting appears together with "".

: Indicates that "Vibrator" works when a call arrives, etc.
, , : Indicates that "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".
to : Indicates that "Record message" is set to record messages. The number indicates how many messages are recorded.
to : Indicates that "Record VP message" is set to record videophone messages. The number indicates how many Record VP messages are recorded.

■ To cancel Manner mode

Hold down (#) for 1 second or longer when the screen is standby or while you are talking.
Manner mode is canceled and "" disappears.
During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message notifying you that Manner mode is canceled appears.

NOTE

◆ Even while in Manner mode, a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound or Auto focus lock sound when you take a picture with the FOMA terminal's camera.

<Manner mode set> MENU20

Customizing Manner mode

Default setting
Manner mode

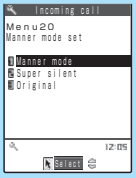
This feature allows you to select the FOMA terminal operations performed in Manner mode.

● The default settings of "Original" manner mode are:

- Record msg.: OFF
- Mail vol.: Silent
- VM tone: ON
- LVA tone: OFF
- Vibrator: ON
- Alarm vol.: Silent
- Keypad sound: OFF
- Phone vol.: Silent
- i-αppli vol.: Silent
- Mic sensitiv.: Up

1 (MENU)▶ Settings▶"Incoming call"▶"Manner mode set"

The "Manner mode set" screen appears.



Manner mode set

2 Select any item

Manner mode	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, the confirmation tone emitted through the earpiece speaker (tone emitted when (Memo/Check) is pressed to play/erase a memo or voice memo) is not muted.
Super silent	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and confirmation tones emitted through the earpiece speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
Original	Customizes the Manner mode settings. You can specify in advance which volume is set for alarm clock tones or how a FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set. "Original manner"→p.134

Original manner

1 Manner mode set screen (p.134)▶"Original"▶Select any item

Record msg.	Sets Record message. "Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video"→p.75
Vibrator	Sets the vibrator. "Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives"→p.131
Phone vol.	**▶Use to adjust the volume** Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls and 64K data communication. "Adjusting the Ring Volume"→p.69

Mail vol.	▶**Use ◉ to adjust the volume** Sets the ring tone volume for mails, chat mails, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF. “Adjusting the Ring Volume”→p.69
Alarm vol.	▶**Use ◉ to adjust the volume** Sets the alarm tone volume for the alarm clock. “Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock”→p.389
i-αppli vol.	▶**Use ◉ to adjust the volume** Sets the i-αppli volume. “Step” is not available.
VM tone	Sets confirmation tones for “Record message” and “Voice memo”.
Keypad sound	Sets the keypad tone. “Setting the Keypad Tone”→p.132
Mic sensitiv.	Selects either of “Normal” or “Up” for the microphone sensitivity during a call.
LVA tone	Sets the low voltage alarm. “When the battery runs out”→p.44

2 Press ⊖ (Finish) after changing the settings

■ When Manner mode is set

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Record Message activation	OFF		“Record msg.” settings
Vibrator	ON		“Vibrator” settings
Ring tone volume for voice/ videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls and 64K data communication	Silent		“Phone vol.” settings
Ring tone volume for mail, chat mail, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF	Silent		“Mail vol.” settings
Alarm volume for the alarm clock (including the snooze function)	Silent		“Alarm vol.” settings
i-αppli volume	Silent		“i-αppli vol.” settings
Alarm volume for Schedule/To Do list/ Notice designate calls	Silent		“Phone vol.” settings
Confirmation, activation and completion tones for recorded messages, voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	“VM tone” settings
Keypad tone	OFF		“Keypad sound” settings
Microphone sensitivity during calls*1	Up		“Mic sensitiv.” settings
Holding tone	Silent		“Phone vol.” settings Off when “Silent” is set. Sounds at “Level 1” when an option other than “Silent” is set.
On hold tone	Silent		“Phone vol.” settings*2
Low voltage alarm	OFF		“LVA tone” settings Even when “ON” is set, the low voltage alarm sounds at “Level 1” if “Phone vol.” is set to “Silent” for this function.
Reading out received mails	“Phone” setting under “Ring volume” (p.69)*3		
Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		“Phone vol.” settings*2
ToruCa acquisition tone	Silent		“Phone vol.” settings*4

*1 : If the microphone sensitivity during calls is set to “Up”, the volume of voice heard by the other party is increased even when you speak quietly during a call. However, the “Normal” microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in “Camera” mode.

*2 : Sounds at the “Level 2” volume when “Step” is set.

*3 : Reads out at the “Level 2” volume when “Silent” or “Step” is set. However, even if “Read out received mail” in “Read out setting” is set to “ON”, reading mail is not performed. Select “Read out message” from the function menu on the received mail detail screen to perform reading out.

*4 : Sounds at the “Level 4” volume when “Step” is set.

Continued on next page

■ When a earphone is connected

The table below lists the settings applied when a earphone is connected.

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Reading out received mails and contents of To Do list/Schedule	"Phone" settings under "Ring volume" (p.69)*		
Voice clock (during standby or snooze) and Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	"Phone" settings under "Ring volume" (p.69)*		"Phone vol." settings Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.
Volume of the music player	Music player (p.377) volume settings		

* : Reads out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set.

NOTE

- Regardless of the "Record message" (p.75) setting, Record message is activated when "Record msg." in "Original" is set to "ON" and Manner mode is set.
- If the Record message set in "Original" starts during manner mode, message recording will start after the ring time set in "ON" in "Record message" (p.75) elapses. (When "OFF" is set, recording will start in 8 seconds.)
- If a FOMA terminal is set to use vibration to notify you of calls or alarms when Manner mode is set, take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.

<Display setting> MENU56

Changing the Display Settings

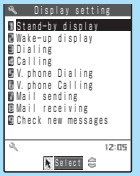
Default setting	Stand-by display: Contrast 1 (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple 1 (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira 1 (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern 1 (Phone color: Pistachio green) Wake-up display: Contrast 2 (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple 2 (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira 2 (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern 2 (Phone color: Pistachio green) Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard V.phone Dialing: Standard V.phone Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard Check new messages: Standard

Use this procedure to show your favorite images such as the photographed or downloaded on a screen (e.g. standby, dialing or receiving).

- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for a ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- An i-motion with voice only (e.g. singer's voice) cannot be set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is QVGA.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Display" ▶"Display setting"**

The "Display setting" screen appears.
If a file other than i-motion is set for the receiving screen, set a ring tone as required.



Display setting

2 **Select any item**

Stand-by display	"Changing the standby screen image"→p.138	
Wake-up display	Specifies a message or image shown when a FOMA terminal is turned on.	
	OFF	Does not show a message or image.
	Message	▶**Enter a message** A message can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.
	My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.

Dialing	Sets the image shown when you make a voice call. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls.	
	Select ring tone	“Changing the Ring Tone”→p.128
	Select calling disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails”→p.137
V.phone Dialing	Sets a screen shown when you make videophone calls. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
V.phone Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls.	
	Select ring tone	“Changing the Ring Tone”→p.128
	Select calling disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails”→p.137
Mail sending	Sets the image shown when you send i-mode mails or SMS. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Mail receiving	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming i-mode mails or SMS.	
	Select ring tone	“Changing the Ring Tone”→p.128
	Select receiving disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails”→p.137
Check new messages	Sets the image shown when you check new messages. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.

● Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails

<Example: Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls>

1 Display setting screen (p.136)▶“Calling”▶“Select calling disp.”▶Select any item

My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.

Continued on next page

i-motion*	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.	
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.
	Movable contents	Sets an i-motion saved as movable contents. When a file in the “Movable contents” folder is selected, the selected contents are moved to Inbox in a FOMA terminal and set.

* : “i-motion” does not appear on the mail receiving screen.

■ **To check settings**

▶●(Play)

NOTE

- ◆ Flash movies can be set in “Select calling disp.” or “Select receiving disp.”, but the tone set in “Select ring tone” sounds as the ring tone.
- ◆ Videos or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving call image cannot be set if:
  - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange or the Data Link Software and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
  - They are copied from the miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).
- ◆ When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.→p.139
- ◆ You cannot set images for the dialing and receiving screens for Push-to-Talk calls.

<Priority sequence for screen>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when screen settings are duplicated:

①Automatic display ②i-αppli display ③Display setting/Style mode

Changing the standby screen image

- ● The “Pre-installed” folder contains pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display. Pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display →p.456

1 Display setting screen (p.136)▶“Stand-by display”▶Select any item

OFF	Does not show an image, etc.		
Calendar	Sets a calendar.		
	Background	Sets a background image for the calendar. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
		Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera	
		Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	No background	Shows a calendar only.	
My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.		
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.	
i-motion	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.		
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.	
	Movable contents	Sets an i-motion saved as movable contents. When a file in the “Movable contents” folder is selected, the selected contents are moved to Inbox in a FOMA terminal and set.	

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

i-αppli display	Sets the i-αppli standby screen. When the i-αppli standby screen is set, a star (★) appears. “Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen” →p.300

■ When the calendar is set for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily check the schedule of the previous or following month or edit schedule events.
Saturdays are colored in blue, holidays are in red and anniversaries are in pink.

■ To check adjacent months on the calendar

Pressing ● on the standby screen or sliding your finger over ● to place the pointer over the calender selects the calendar. (If pressing ● selects a desktop icon other than calendar, use ◎ to select the calendar.) Press ● again. Pressing ◎ opens the previous month or ◎ opens the next month.

■ To activate the schedule function

Press ◎ or ◎ to show the previous or next month and press ● to store the schedule events for the month shown by the schedule function.

NOTE

- If a movie or i-motion is set for the standby screen, opening a FOMA terminal plays the movie or i-motion. Press ↩, CLR, 2, ◎, −, −, ●, ▭ (Assist key) or 1 to stop the playback. While in Manner mode, only the image appears (without sound). When playback ends, the first frame of the movie or i-motion appears on the standby screen.
- If a Flash movie is set for the standby screen, opening a FOMA terminal plays the Flash movie (without the melody). When playback ends, the last frame of the Flash movie appears on the standby screen. Pressing CLR or 2 stops playback, and the frame at the time of stop appears on the standby screen.
- Deleting the image, movie or i-motion that is set for the standby screen restores the default standby screen.

<Disp. PH-book image>

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls

Default setting: ON

Use this procedure to specify whether to show the image when you receive a voice or videophone call from a phone number stored in the phonebook with a still image.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ ▶“Incoming call”▶“Disp. PH-book image”▶“ON”

■ To hide an image stored in the phonebook

▶“OFF”

NOTE

- When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.→p.139
- Depending on the precedence setting or combination of a ring tone and receiving screen, either the ring tone or the receiving screen may revert to default set at the time of purchase.
- If a caller does not show the caller ID, the image does not appear.
- Regardless of this setting, images stored in the phonebook as secret data do not appear.

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>

- Priority is assigned as follows for the image display when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated:
  ①Image for Discern connect →p.123 ②Image for Discern group →p.123
  ③Image for Add to phonebook →p.110 ④i-motion for Select ring tone →p.128
  ⑤Display setting/Style mode (for videophone calls) →p.136, 152
  ⑥Select calling disp. for Call setting w/o ID →p.173
  ⑦Display setting/Style mode (for other than videophone calls) →p.136, 152
  Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:
  ①i-motion for Ring tone ②i-motion, still image or other images for Image

Setting the Image Display Mode

Default setting	Setting: ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Digital 1 (Phone color: Russet black, Ice silver), Digital 2 (Phone color: Jewel pink), Digital 3 (Phone color: Pistachio green), Pict: ON Image set: Preinstall (Contrast (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern (Phone color: Pistachio green)) Called: ON (Image+Missed call) Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Backlight: OFF) Background i-αppli: OFF

You can set the message display mode, background, clock, etc. for the image display.

● “Guide to Image Display (Rear Panel Display)”→p.30

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Display”▶“Image display”▶Select any item

ON	Stand-by	Specifies whether to fix the image display mode. Setting “ON” does not flash the backlight for the image display. The message for incoming calls or an animation such as an alarm does not appear.	
	Clock type	Selects the clock type from “Digital 1 to 4” or “OFF” and turns on/off the Pict.	
	Image set	Specifies whether to show the background image. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
		OFF	Does not show the background image.
		Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera	
		Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Called	Specifies whether to show the phone number of an incoming call.	
		ON	Selects the display mode among “Image+Missed call”, “Image” and “Missed call”.
		OFF	Does not show the phone number or image.
	Mail	Specifies whether to show the contents of a mail. Selecting “ON” shows the sender, date and time, and subject when you receive a mail.	
	Connection	Specifies whether to show conditions using an image or animation while in dialing or talking on a voice call/videophone call/Push-to-Talk call, Infrared data exchange or data communication.	
		ON	Specifies whether to flash the backlight (ON/OFF).
		OFF	Does not show conditions.
	Background i-αppli	Sets background i-αppli to ON or OFF.	
OFF		Shows nothing on the image display.	

NOTE

- When “OFF” is selected for the image display, nothing appears on the image display except when you shoot with the built-in camera or use some special functions.
- When “Digital 1 to 3” is set for “Clock type”, a digital clock that fits the display size is shown on the image display. When you have a missed call or new mail or display telop text of the i-channel information, “Digital 4” to which the display mode and size (large (Big) or small (Small or Down Small)) set in “Clock display” are applied appears. If “Stand-by” is set to “ON”, the specified clock type is applied instead of “Digital 4” even when you have a missed call or new mail.
- When you receive a voice or videophone call with a “Chaku-moji” message, the message appears on the image display following the receiving indication (such as caller’s phone number and image). (The “Chaku-moji” message and receiving indication appear alternately.) If “Called” is set to “OFF”, a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the image display regardless of the “Chaku-moji” settings.
- Even if Mail is set to “ON”, the image display does not show the sender names, dates and times and subjects of received mails that are automatically filtered to the protected folders.
- When an i-mode mail, chat mail or SMS is received, an icon expressing the emotion that matches the contents of the received mail appears. Even if “3D display setting” is set to “ON”, 3D animation is not used for the emotion-expressing mail icon shown on the image display. →p.256
  You can also set your FOMA terminal to pop up an icon when receiving a mail including the specified keyword. →p.280

◆When a FOMA terminal receives multiple mails at the same time, the mail address, sender name, date and time and subject of the latest mail appear. →p.30

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default setting	Lighting: ON (lighting)+Saver (Light time: 5 minutes) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2

1 MENU▶ Settings▶“Display”▶“Backlight”▶Select any item

Lighting	Specifies the normal backlight operation. Selecting “OFF” shows the “ ” icon on the standby screen.		
	ON	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	**▶Enter the waiting time (02 to 20 minutes)** Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and image display turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press ●.
		OFF	Disables power saver mode.
	OFF	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	**▶Enter the waiting time (02 to 20 minutes)** Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and image display turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press ●.
		OFF	Disables power saver mode.
Charging	Specifies the backlight operations during charging.		
	Standard	The backlight lights according to the “ON” setting in “Lighting”.	
	All time ON	The backlight stays on while charging.	
Area	Selects the backlight area.		
	LCD+Keys	Sets the LCD panel and keypad for the area.	
	LCD	Sets only the LCD panel for the area.	
Brightness	Selects the brightness from Level 3 to Level 1.		

NOTE

◆You can also turn the backlight on or off by holding down 5 for 1 second or longer.
◆When “Lighting” is set to “ON”, the backlight stays on when a call is received, and lights for roughly 15 seconds when a FOMA terminal is turned on, one of the FOMA terminal keys is pressed or the FOMA terminal is opened. The backlight also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select “OFF”, the backlight does not turn on. However, the backlight stays on during movie shooting regardless of the “Lighting” setting.
◆If “Charging” is set to “All time ON”, the displays and dial keys are lit all the time following the “Area” setting (“LCD+Keys” or “LCD”). If “Charging” is set to “Standard”, the backlight operates following the “Lighting” setting.
◆Even if “Charging” is set to “All time” while charging, the brightness of the backlight is set to “Level 1” in order to increase the charging efficiency unless any keys are pressed for 15 seconds or so.
◆When “Charging” is set to “Standard”, the image display backlight lights for about 15 seconds at the level set in “Brightness” when charging starts and then stays on at “Level 1”. Setting “All time ON” lights the backlight all the while charging.
◆When the body of a mail or MessageR/MessageF appears, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
◆If a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode while opened, ⊖ and ⊖ flash at roughly 5 second intervals. Pressing any keys releases power saver mode.
◆If you select “ON” in “Stand-by” in “Image display” and then fold a FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal does not switch to power saver mode after the specified waiting time has elapsed.

<Display design> MENU86

Changing the Display Color

Default setting	Color patter: Pattern 5 (Phone color: Russet black, Ice silver), Pattern 4 (Phone color: Jewel pink), Pattern 2 (Phone color: Pistachio green) Background 1: OFF Background 2: Pattern 1

Use this procedure to change the designs of the text, background, upper and lower sections of the display and software keys.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Display design” ▶ Select any item

Color pattern	Selects the color pattern from Pattern 1 to Pattern 5. The selected color pattern appears on the display during selection.
Background 1	Selects Background1 (a 25-dot background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display) among “OFF” (not displayed) and “Pattern 1 to 8”. The selected background pattern appears on the display during selection.
Background 2	Selects the pattern for background 2 (background pattern for the software keys) from “Pattern 1 to Pattern 3”. The selected background pattern appears on the display during selection.

NOTE

◆ Changing this function does not affect the colors of icons and images. There are some screens or functions that are not affected by the changes made to this function, such as i-mode sites.

<Menu display set>

Changing the Menu Display

Setting the menu display mode MENU57

Default setting	Guidance: Picture & Text Menu display: List Theme: Contrast (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern (Phone color: Pistachio green) Memory focus: ON

Change the guidance display on the main menu, specify how to show the branch menus (functions) under “Settings” or set the Last one function for the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher).

● Original menus are shown as a list, regardless of the settings of this function.

■ Guidance



“Picture & Text”

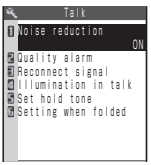


“Text”

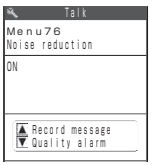


“OFF”

■ Menu display



“List”



“Detail”

■ Theme



"Contrast"



"Ripple"



"KiraKira"



"Elephant Pattern"



"Luminous"



"Layered"

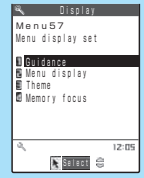


"Disney"

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Display" ▶ "Menu display set"**

The "Menu display set" screen appears.

2 **Select any item**



Menu display set

Guidance	Selects the guidance display on the main menu among "Picture & Text", "Text" and "OFF" (not displayed).	
Menu display	Chooses the display mode for branch menus between "Detail" and "List".	
Theme	Sets the background and icons used on the main menu screen.	
	Contrast	Sets Contrast.
	Ripple	Sets Ripple.
	KiraKira	Sets KiraKira.
	Elephant Pattern	Sets Elephant Pattern.
	Luminous	Sets Luminous.
	Layered	Sets Layered.
	Disney	Sets Disney.
	Original theme	"Changing the main menu screen design"→p.143
Memory focus	Specifies whether to highlight the icon you selected the last time when opening the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher).	

Changing the main menu screen design

Use this procedure to change the icons and background image used on the main menu screen.

1 **Menu display set screen (p.143) ▶ "Theme" ▶ "Original theme"**

The "Original theme" screen appears.
Select an image from Inbox in My picture, Camera, Pre-installed or a folder you created.



Original theme

Function menu➡p.144

Continued on next page

2 Select any item

Mail	Sets a Mail icon image.
i-mode	Sets an i-mode icon image.
i-αppli	Sets an i-αppli icon image.
Settings	Sets a Settings icon image.
Data box	Sets a Data box icon image.
LifeKit	Sets a LifeKit icon image.
Network service	Sets a Network service icon image.
Phonebook	Sets a Phonebook icon image.
Own data	Sets an Own data icon image.
Background image	Sets a background image or color of the Multitask group frame. “Multitask”→p.385

■ **To set the Multitask group frame**

▶“Background image”▶(Play)▶(Frame)▶Use to select a color from the color palette

During color selection, pressing (Change) switches the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.

NOTE

- You can check the image for the selected item by pressing (Play) on the selection screen.
- If at least one image subject to FOMA card operational restriction function (p.38) is set as a menu icon or background image and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or removed, the original theme reverts to default.
- You can set a JPEG, GIF or animation GIF image file with a size of 100K bytes or less and up to 640 dots wide × 640 dots high. If an image is larger than the display area (icon: 64 dots wide × 63 dots high, background: 240 dots wide × 270 dots high), the size is reduced without changing the aspect ratio. If an image is smaller than the display area, it is centered.
- An animation GIF image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animation GIF image set as the background image will not run as an animation.

Function menu (Original theme screen)

Reset	Restores the selected icon or background image to the default settings.
All reset	Restores all the main menu icons and background images to the default settings.

Creating an original menu <Original menu>

MENU 52

Default setting	Own number, Check new messages, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code

Adding often-used functions to the original menu allows you to easily access the functions.

- You can add up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be added to the original menu are the main settings for “Mail”, “i-mode” and “i-αppli”, and the medium and branch settings (functions) for “Settings”, “Data box”, “LifeKit”, “Service”, “Phonebook” and “Own data”.
- You cannot add the same function twice.

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Display”▶“Original menu”

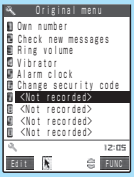
The “Original menu” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)▶Use to select a menu item to add

You can only select main menu items from “Mail/i-mode/i-αppli”.

■ **To change an already stored function**

▶Highlight a stored item



Original menu

Function menu➡p.145

NOTE

- Pressing MENU▶MENU also opens the original menu and you can add or sort items except when Launcher menu is shown.

Function menu (Original menu screen)

Add to org. menu	Adds items to the original menu.
Sort	▶◉**to select order, then**◉ Sorts the Original menu items.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Reset org. menu	Restores the original menu to default.
Release	Removes the selected function from the original menu.
Release all	Removes all functions from the original menu.

<Neuropointer>

Setting the Neuropointer

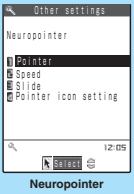
Default setting	**Pointer: ON Simple: Speed (Standard)** **Pointer icon setting: Contrast (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern (Phone color: Pistachio green)**

For better use of the pointer controlled by the Neuropointer key (◉), specify whether to turn Pointer on/off, Speed, the design, etc.

- To set the Neuropointer speed from “Initial setting” (p.46), choose between “Normal” and “High” in “Simple” (p.145).
- The pointer is available when “ ” appears on a screen.
- The pointer icon has two colors, which are decided by whether it is followed by the cursor or not. When “Ripple” is set and the pointer is blue ( ), the cursor follows the pointer. When the pointer is white ( ), it is not followed by the cursor.

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Other settings”▶“Neuropointer”

The “Neuropointer” screen appears.



Neuropointer

2 Select any item

Pointer	Specifies whether to show the pointer (whether to use the Neuropointer).	
Speed	“Changing the pointer speed”→p.145	
Slide	**Adjust**	**▶“YES”▶Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key following the instructions** Sets the limit of the Neuropointer key sliding to move the pointer effectively.
	Reset	Restores the slide adjustment to default.
Pointer icon setting	Changes the pointer icon design. Selecting an item changes the icon design to the selected one. Press ⊖ (Play) to check the icon design in detail before selection. Use the function menu to change the list format (Title name or Picture) for the selection screen.	

Changing the pointer speed

1 Neuropointer screen (p.145)▶“Speed”▶Select any item

Simple	**▶“Normal” or “High”▶“YES”** Chooses between two speeds.

Continued on next page

Detail	Sets a speed for each screen.	
	Standard[*1]	**▶Use ◉ to select "I", "L" or "H"▶Use ◉ to adjust the speed▶"OK"** Speed can be controlled in the range of level 0 (leftmost) to level 11 (rightmost). The more you move the slide to the right, the faster the speed becomes. The more to the left, the slower it does.
	MainMenu	
	T9/Prediction	
	Software[*2]	
Reset	Restores the pointer speed to default.	

*1 : Adjusts the pointer speed for typical screens such as the list or icon selection.
*2 : The settings may be not applicable depending on the i-αppli.

<Illumination> MENU89

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails

Default setting	Phone: Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Pattern: Standard Color setting: Color 1-12

Use this procedure to set the color and pattern (flash pattern) in which the incoming call lamp flashes when you receive voice calls, videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls, mails, chat mails or MessageR/MessageF.

- You can set different flash colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses or groups. →p.122
- The flash pattern for ◉ and ◉ is the same as for the incoming call lamp.

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Incoming call"▶"Illumination"▶Select any item

Set color	Selects the flash color of the incoming call lamp for "Phone", "Videophone", "PushTalk", "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF". The incoming call lamp flashes in the selected color during selection.	
	Color 1 to 12: The lamp flashes in the selected color. Gradation: The lamp flashes in the colors 1 to 12 in numeric order.	
Set pattern	Selects the flash pattern of the incoming call lamp.	
	Standard	Sets the flash pattern to Standard (flashing at 0.5 sec internal).
	Melody linkage	Sets the flash pattern to Melody linkage.
Adjust color	Sets the color.	
	Edit color name	**▶Select a color▶Enter the color name** A color name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
	Adjust color tone	**▶Select a color▶Use ◉ to adjust the color tone**

NOTE

- If "Pattern 1-4" is selected in the Ring tone settings, the incoming call lamp flashes according to the ring tone regardless of the settings of this function.
- If no flash pattern corresponding to the melody is set for the ring tone or Chaku-motion is set, the "Standard" pattern is used regardless of the "Melody linkage" setting.
- While a FOMA terminal is exchanging data with the miniSD memory card, the incoming call lamp flashes in "Color 5" (green) regardless of the settings of this function (the lamp may not flash depending on the exchange function).

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows for the incoming call lamp operation when call/mail settings are duplicated:
  ①Illumination for Discern connect →p.123 ②Illumination for Discern group →p.123
  ③Illumination

<Illumination in talk>

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call

Default setting: OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the incoming call lamp flashes during a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call.

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Talk"▶"Illumination in talk"▶Select a color

OFF: The incoming call lamp does not flash.
Color 1 to 7: The lamp flashes in the selected color.
Gradation 1: The lamp flashes changing the color.
Gradation 2: The lamp lights up changing the color.
Gradation 3: The lamp color quickly changes.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

NOTE

◆ While a message is recorded, a recorded message is played or an incoming call lamp flashes in the same pattern as while you are talking.

<Call time display> MENU48

Having a FOMA terminal Show the Call Time During a Call

Default setting: ON

Use this function to specify whether to have a FOMA terminal show the call time during a voice, videophone, Push-to-Talk call.

- If the call time exceeds “19 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds”, the count restarts from “0 seconds”.
- The shown call time is intended solely as a guide and should not be used as an accurate figure.
- The call time is not counted during i-mode or packet communication.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Call time/Charge”▶“Call time display”▶“ON”

■ **To hide the call time**

▶“OFF”

NOTE

◆ The call time is reset to 0 second every time you switch the call mode between voice and videophone. However, if you switch the call mode and end a videophone call, the call time shown indicates the total time of the voice and videophone calls.

<Font> MENU66

Changing the Font

Default setting: Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

Use this procedure to customize the font (typeface) of the text shown on a screen or the image display.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Display”▶“Font”▶Select any item

Type	Selects the font type between “Font 1” and “Font 2”. A sample of the selected font appears on the bottom of the screen.
Thickness	Selects the thickness among “Thin”, “Medium” and “Bold”. A text sample using the selected thickness appears on the bottom of the screen.

NOTE

◆ “Font 2” is only available for alphabetic letters (double-byte or single-byte), numbers (double-byte or single-byte), hiragana and katakana (double-byte or single-byte), some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. All other characters such as kanji are shown using “Font 1”. Text used for phone number entry or clock display also cannot be changed to “Font 2”.

◆ Changing this function does not affect the thickness of text on the image display.

<Clock display> MENU39

Setting the Clock Display

Default setting: Display: ON Size: Big Display type: World watch OFF

You can set the language mode (Japanese or English) of days shown on the standby screen, the clock display size or whether to show the world clock. You can also hide the date and clock.

- If a screen is not standby, the small clock appears at the bottom of the screen regardless of the settings of this function. →p.29

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Clock”▶“Clock display”▶Select any item

Display	Chooses between “ON” and “OFF”.	
Size	**Big**	Shows the date and large clock.
	Small	Shows the date and small clock.
	Down Small	Shows the small clock at the bottom of the screen.
Display type	Chooses between “World watch OFF” and “World watch ON”.	

Continued on next page

NOTE

- The world clock is only available when “Size” is set to “Small”.
- When “Size” is set to “Down Small” and “Telop display setting” for i-channel is set to “ON” or “Receiving”, the clock is hidden while the telop text appears.

<Desktop icon>

Using Desktop Icons

Default setting
Photo mode

Adding frequently called phone numbers or frequently used functions to the standby screen as desktop icons enables you to quickly access those numbers or functions with simple operations.

Adding desktop icons

Select “Add desktop icon” from the function menu on the screen of the function you want to add, a list screen or details screen.

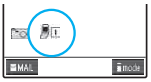
- The following can be added to the standby screen as desktop icons. You can add up to 15 desktop icons into the standby screen.

Action	Icon (Type)	Title*1
Retrieve data	(Phone number)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	(Mail address)	Name stored in the phonebook (mail address if no name is stored)
	(SMS address)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	(URL)	Page title (URL excluding “http://” or “https://” if no title is stored)
	(Melody)*2	Melody title (“Melody” if no title is stored)
	(Image)*2	Image title (“Image” if no title is stored)
	(Movie or i-motion)*2	Movie or i-motion title (“i-motion” if no title is stored)
	(Chara-den)	Chara-den title (“Chara-den” if no title is stored)
	(PDF document)	PDF document title (“Document” if no title is stored)
	(i-αppli program)	Program name
Access function*3	(Photo mode)/ (Movie mode)/ (Voice mode)/ (To Do list)/ (Schedule)/ (Text memo)/ (Access reader)/ (Bar code reader)/ (i-channel)/ (Receive Ir data)/ (Dictionary)/ (Original menu)*3	Respective function name (“Type” on the left)
Open folder	(Inbox folder)	Folder title (“Folder” if no title is stored)

*1 : When a desktop icon is selected, only the first 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters of the title appear.
*2 : The pre-installed melodies or images, i-motion programs or original animations cannot be added as desktop icons.
*3 : The same desktop icon cannot be added twice or more times.

<Example: Adding a phone number from the phonebook>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶●(FUNC)▶“Add desktop icon”▶“YES”



Using desktop icons to access data or functions

1 On the standby screen▶●

The title of the icon in the current cursor position appears.

2 Move the cursor to the desktop icon you want to access and select the icon

■ If there are 6 or more desktop icons stored

The "◁▷" icon appears on the left and right of the screen. Use ⊕ to scroll through icons.



Desktop icon

Function menu➡p.149

Function menu (Desktop icon screen)

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** A title can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.	
Reset desktop	Restores the default setting ("Photo mode" only).	
Delete	**Delete this**	Deletes the selected desktop icon.
	Delete selected	**▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶○(Finish)▶"YES"** Several desktop icons can be deleted.
	Delete all	Deletes all desktop icons.
Move	**▶"YES"▶Use ⊕ to move an icon▶●** Moves the highlighted desktop icon.	

NOTE

◆ The function menu items available on the desktop icon (standby) screen can also be accessed from the function menu on the "Desktop icon" screen (p.149). (However, use ⊕ key to perform "Move" on the "Desktop icon" screen.)

Checking desktop icon information

MENU 63

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Display"▶"Desktop icon"

The "Desktop icon" screen appears.

2 Select a desktop icon title



Desktop icon

NOTE

◆ On the information screen of a URL desktop icon, use ⊕ to scroll the screen to view all the URL information.

Desktop icons that give notice

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
New	Notifies you that you received a mail. Highlighting this icon shows an emotion-expressing mail icon according to the contents of the mail and a pictograph included in the mail title using 3D animation. The mail subject is also shown. →p.150, 256	Opens the detail screen of the latest mail.
CHAT	Notifies you that you received a new chat mail. Highlighting this icon pops up an emotion-expressing mail icon using 3D animation according to the contents of the chat mail. →p.150, 256	Opens the Chat screen.
ToruCa	Notifies you of new ToruCa information.	Opens the ToruCa folder list screen.
Miss	Notifies you of missed calls. Highlighting the icon shows the number of missed calls.	Shows the "Missed calls" record.

Continued on next page

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
MSG	Notifies you of recorded messages of voice calls.	Launches “Play/Erase msg.”
MSG	Notifies you of recorded messages of videophone calls.	Launches “Play/Erase VP msg.”
VM	Notifies you that Voice Mail service center keeps some recorded messages.	Launches “Voice Mail”.
Miss	Notifies you that a FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm of alarm clock, scheduled event or To Do list.	Shows the information about the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
Not run	Notifies you that an i-αppli could not be launched automatically.	Opens the “Auto start” screen.
APPLI	Notifies you that the i-αppli standby screen shut down due to an error.	Shows the security error history.
UPDATE	Notifies you that software updating has been completed.	Opens the update results screen following the security code entry.
MAX	Notifies you that the cumulative charge exceeds the specified limit.	Opens the Notice designate calls screen following the security code entry.
UPDATE	Shows the auto-update of the pattern data of the scan function has been completed. Alternatively, shows new pattern data of the scan function have been released.	Shows the auto-update results for the pattern data of the scan function. If update is not normally terminated or a new pattern is released, the screen prompting you to update the pattern data of the scan function appears.
UPDATE	Notifies you that the Data Security Service information has not been updated. →p.175	Opens the Data Security Service auto start screen.

NOTE

- If you access a function from a desktop icon that gives notice or from the function menu, the desktop icon disappears. However, the desktop icon of “” remains until you play or delete the Record message.
- To delete all the desktop icons that give notice, hold down CLR for 1 second or longer (deleting the icons does not delete their contents). However the desktop icons of “”, “” and “” will remain.
- When you set “Missed calls display” in the “Ring time(sec.)” to “Not display” and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in “Set mute seconds”, the “” icon does not appear. However, calls from phone numbers stored in the phonebook are notified with the icon. →p.174
- If you receive a new mail or chat mail when the destination Inbox or folder is protected for security, selecting the desktop icon does not show the emotion-expressing mail icon, a pictograph using 3D animation or the mail subject. Instead, “New mail” or “Chat mail” appears.

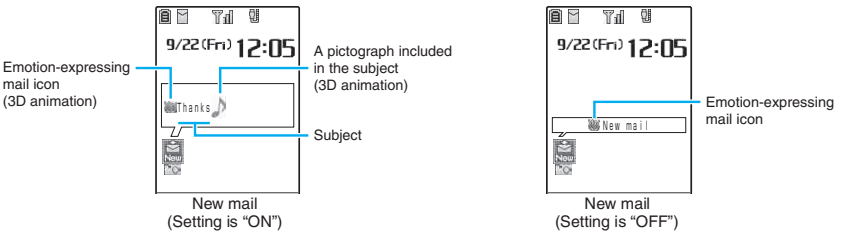
<3D display setting>

Using 3D Animation for the Message of the New Mail Desktop Icon

Default setting	ON

Use this procedure to use 3D animation for the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon when it is selected.

- For new mails, the mail subject up to 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters appears.
- Details of notice given when the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon is highlighted →p.149
- Emotion-expressing mail icon →p.256



1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Display”▶“3D display setting”▶“ON”

■ To disable 3D animation

▶“OFF”

NOTE

- When the subject of a new mail is “No title” or SMS is received, selecting the desktop icon shows an emotion-expressing mail icon in 3D animation according to the contents of the mail, and “New mail” appears.
- Even if this function is set to “ON”, only “New mail” or “Chat mail” appears instead of an emotion-expressing mail icon when “OFF” is set for “Emotion/Keyword notice” in “Mail settings”.
- A 3D animation icon may not appear depending on the pictograph. If many pictographs are included in a mail subject, 3D animation may not be used for all the pictographs.

<Icons setting>

Selecting Icons To Show on the Standby Screen

Default setting: ON

You can select and set the icons, date or time to show on the standby screen using the Neuropointer.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Display”▶“Icons setting”▶“ON”

■ To disable selection

▶“OFF”

Selecting icons with the Neuropointer

1 On the standby screen▶ Slide ● to show the pointer ▶Point the icon you want to check▶●



The icon title appears. You can also select date or time.
After selecting an icon using Neuropointer, you can use ✣ to select icons.

Icon/display	After selected
P / P	Opens the screen for releasing “PIM lock”.
D / D	Opens the screen for releasing “Keypad dial lock”.
D / D	Opens the screen for releasing “Keypad dial lock” and “PIM lock”.
	Shows “Inbox”.
(white)/ (red)/ (white)/ (red)	Shows the list of unread mails.
R (white)/ R (red)	Shows “MessageR”.
F (white)/ F (red)	Shows “MessageF”.
(white)/ (red)/ (white)/ (red)/ (white)/ (red)	Performs “Check new messages”.
self	Opens the screen for releasing “Self mode”.
	Opens the screen for releasing “IC card lock”.
/ /	Opens the screen for selecting “Vibrator” and “Mail/Msg. ring time”.
/ /	• Normal mode (when not in Manner mode) Opens the screen for selecting “Ring volume” and “Mail/Msg. ring time”. • Manner mode, Super silent mode Shows a message notifying that it cannot be set. • Original manner mode Opens the screen for selecting “Original” and “Mail/Msg. ring time”.
	Shows “Manner mode set”.
	Shows “Remote monitoring”.
/	Shows “Alarm”.

Continued on next page

Icon/display	After selected
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
	Shows “Play/Erase msg.”.
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
	Shows “Play/Erase VP msg.”.
	Shows “Voice Mail”. Even if there are already 11 or more recorded voice mail messages, the “10 Voice Mail” message appears.
	Shows “Backlight”.
	Shows “External keys guard”.
Date	Shows “Schedule”. When the time is not set, “Set time” appears.
Clock	Shows “Alarm clock”. When the time is not set, “Set time” appears.
World clock	Shows “World watch”. This title appears only when the world clock is set to be shown. →p.147
	Switches active tasks.
	Shows “USB mode setting”.

<Style mode>

Setting Style Mode

This function enables you to set the FOMA terminal functions such as the standby screen and ring tone at a time.

- The following functions can be set at a time:
  - “Display setting” (p.136)
  - “Select ring tone” (p.128)
  - “Theme” in “Menu display set” (p.142)
  - “Clock type” and “Image set” in “Image display” (p.140)
  - “Display design” (p.142)
  - “Pointer icon setting” in “Neuropointer” (p.145)

Setting Style mode

Select the items shown on the Style Mode list screen and set the selected items at a time.

- If storing the current settings in “お気に入り” before setting Style mode, you can restore the stored settings later.→p.153
- Style mode has the pre-installed design set that matches to the phone color (Russet black: Contrast, Ice silver: Ripple, Jewel pink: KiraKira or Pistachio green: Elephant Pattern) by default.

<Example: Setting “Disney”>

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“Other settings”▶“Style mode”**

The “Style mode list” screen appears.



Style mode list

Function menu➡p.153

2 **“Disney”▶“YES”**

■ **To check settings**

▶Highlight an item▶●(Detail)▶Highlight an item▶●(Play)

NOTE

◆ The following items are automatically shown on screens if highlighted while settings are checked:
  • “Sub clock type” appears on the image display.
  • “Color pattern”, “Background 1” and “Background 2” appear as the background on the shown screen.
◆ When “i-αppli display” is set, the i-αppli standby screen has precedence in the standby screen settings.
◆ When “Discern connect” or “Discern group” is set or an image is set in a phonebook entry, those settings have precedence over this function.
◆ If Style mode is set and then the items set in Style mode are respectively set using other functions, the latter settings have precedence.
◆ Depending on the Flash movie, you may not be able to check the settings even in the items set.

Function menu (Style mode list screen)

Edit title	Edits a title of a Style mode item.
Reset Setting info	Deletes the “お気に入り” settings.

Bookmarking the current settings

1 **Style mode list screen (p.152)▶Highlight “お気に入り”▶●(Detail)**

The items that are currently registered in “お気に入り” appear.
“No data” appears for unregistered items.



Contents checking

Function menu➡p.153

2 **●(FUNC)▶“Take Setting info”▶“YES”**

NOTE

◆ Images, i-motion programs or melodies that are downloaded from sites or attached to mails may not be registered in “お気に入り” or not be set at a time.
◆ The standby screen in which “i-αppli display” is set is not registered in “Stand-by image” in “お気に入り”.
◆ If an image, i-motion or melody that is registered in “お気に入り” is deleted, it is also deleted from “お気に入り” and “No data” appears.
◆ You cannot change settings on the contents checking screen of “お気に入り”.

Function menu (contents checking screen)

Finish	Sets the items registered in “お気に入り” at a time.
Take Setting info	Registers the current settings in “お気に入り”.
Reset Setting info	Deletes the items registered in “お気に入り”.

Security Settings

Security codes

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal 156
Changing Your Security Code ..... Change security code 157
Setting Your PIN Codes ..... PIN setting 157
Releasing PIN Lock 158

Restricting terminal operations and functions

Lock Functions 159
Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal ..... Lock all/Omakase Lock 159
Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule ..... Secret mode/Secret data only mode 161
Hiding Various Data ..... Secret folder 163
Hiding Your Personal Information ..... PIM lock 165
Disabling the External Keys ..... External keys guard 169

Restricting incoming and outgoing calls and transmissions

Locking the Keypad ..... Keypad dial lock 169
Showing/Hiding Redial or Received Calls Record ..... Record display set 170
Setting Security for Mail Folders ..... Mail security 170
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers ..... Restrictions 171
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers ..... Call setting w/o ID 173
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook ..... Ring time(sec.) 174
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook ..... Reject unknown 174
Disabling Communication Functions ..... Self mode 175
Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online ..... Data Security Service 175

Other security settings

Other Security Settings 176

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal

To make a FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require a security code entry. The security codes include the one for terminal operations, network security code for network services, i-mode password, etc. Take care to use an appropriate security code when using your FOMA terminal.

■Notes on security codes

- Avoid using easy-to-guess numbers (e.g. your birth date, a part of your phone number or your address, “1111”, “1234”) for security codes. Take care to make a note of the security codes you have set in case you forget them.
- Take particular care not to disclose your security codes to others. DoCoMo shall not take any responsibility for any damage or loss caused by disclosure of the security codes.
- DoCoMo never ask you about your security codes.
- In case you forget your security code, you need to bring your FOMA terminal, FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification (e.g. driver’s license) proving you are the subscriber to a NTT DoCoMo shop.
  For more information, contact Inquiries described on the back cover of this manual.

● Security code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to “0000” (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time.→p.157

When the security code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code and press ●.



- The entered security code appears as “_” instead of the numbers.
- If an incorrect security code is entered or no key is pressed roughly for 15 seconds, an alarm tone sounds, the alarm message appears and then the screen shown before the security code entry screen reappears.

● Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number you specified at time of contract. This code is required for using DoCoMo e-site or network services. You can change your network security code at any time.
If you have My DoCoMo ID or a password for “My DoCoMo” (general support site for PC), you can change your network security code on your PC.
To change your network security code from i-mode, access “各種手続き” (applications and settings) in DoCoMo e-site (available only in Japanese).
* See the back cover of this manual for more information about My DoCoMo and DoCoMo e-site.

● i-mode password

You need a 4-digit “i-mode password” to register or unregister sites in My Menu and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or paid i-mode sites. (Some other passwords may be set independently by your Internet service providers.)
i-mode password is set to “0000” (4 zeros) when you subscribe to the i-mode service. You can change your password at any time.
To change your i-mode password from i-mode, access MENU▶i-mode (i-mode)▶“iMenu”▶“ENGLISH”▶“Options”▶“Change i-mode Password”.

● PIN1 code and PIN2 code

Two pin numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to a FOMA card (UIM).
PIN1 and PIN2 codes are set to “0000” (4 zeros) at time of contract. You can change your codes at any time.→p.157
PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) you enter when inserting a FOMA card (UIM) into your FOMA terminal or turning the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. Entering PIN1 code enables you to perform terminal operations such as making and receiving calls.
PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit security code that you enter when performing Reset total cost, or using or requesting user certificates.
When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have set.

When the PIN1 or PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit PIN1 or PIN2 code and press ●.

- The entered PIN1 or PIN2 code appears as "_" instead of the numbers.
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, your PIN1 or PIN2 code is locked. (The remained number of entries appears on the screen.) Entering the correct PIN1 or PIN2 code returns the remained number to three.

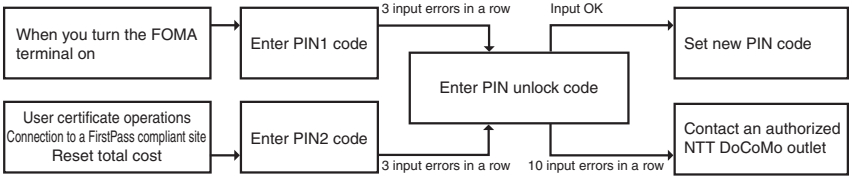


Example: PIN1 code

● PUK code

PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code. You cannot change this code.

- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is locked.



<Change security code> MENU29

Changing Your Security Code

Default setting
0000 (4 zeros)

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Change security code" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code ▶ Select "Yes"

■ **To change your security code from "Initial setting"**

▶Enter your security code▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code▶"YES"

<PIN setting>

Setting Your PIN Codes

Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN1 code entry set: OFF

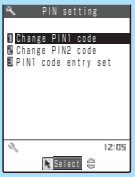
- PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1code entry set are recorded in a FOMA card (UIM). When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can still use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have used for the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use the PIN code. Make a note of your codes in case you forget them.
- PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is then completely locked.
- If you forget your PUK code and your FOMA terminal is completely locked, you need to take your FOMA terminal, current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it unlocked.

Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code

● To change your PIN1 code, select “ON” in “PIN1 code entry set”.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ ▶**“Lock/Security”▶“PIN setting”▶Enter your security code**

The “PIN setting” screen appears.



PIN setting

2 **Select any item**

Change PIN1 code	**▶Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code currently set▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code▶Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again** Changes the PIN1 code.
Change PIN2 code	**▶Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code currently set▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code▶Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code again** Changes the PIN2 code.
PIN1 code entry set	Sets PIN1 code to be entered when you turn a FOMA terminal on.

Entering your PIN1 code when a FOMA terminal is turned on

When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code entry screen appears when you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

1 **Turn a FOMA terminal on**

2 **Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code**

If the entered PIN1 code is correct, the standby screen appears.



Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, unlock the PIN1 or PIN2 code and set a new PIN1 or PIN2 code.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

1 **Enter the 8-digit PUK code**

2 **Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code**

3 **Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again**



Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Refer to
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	Lock all/Omakase Lock	p.159
To hide your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” data to prevent others from viewing them	Secret mode/Secret data only mode	p.161
To hide data such as images or mails to prevent others from viewing them	Secret folder	p.163
To prevent others from viewing or altering your personal information	PIM lock	p.165
To prevent inadvertent use of the external keys	External keys guard	p.169
To prevent calls to phone numbers not stored in “Phonebook”	Keypad dial lock	p.169
To prevent others from viewing records of your incoming and outgoing calls	Record display set	p.170
To use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls	Self mode	p.175
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC card lock	p.312

<Lock all/Omakase Lock>

Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal

To lock your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using it, use “Lock all” that is set on your FOMA terminal or “Omakase Lock” that is set remotely.

- Lock all or Omakase Lock is not released even when a FOMA terminal is turned off.

Available operations and functions while in setting Lock all or Omakase Lock

Operation	Lock all	Omakase Lock
Turning a FOMA terminal on/off	○	○
Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118)	○	×
Setting/Releasing Lock all	○	×
Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock	○	○
Receiving voice calls or videophone calls*	○	○
Receiving remote monitoring calls	○	○
Using IC card functions	○	×
Updating the Data Security Service data	○	×
Using functions other than the above	×	×

○: Available ×: Unavailable

* : You cannot make voice calls, videophone calls or Push-to-Talk calls. Even if receiving Push-to-talk calls, the FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations and records it as “Missed calls”. When a call with a Chaku-moji message is received, the message appears on the incoming call screen. You cannot receive calls when Public mode (Driving mode) is set.

- If Lock all or Omakase Lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” is reached. Once you release Lock all or Omakase Lock, the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- If Lock all or Omakase Lock is set, the icons pasted into the desktop disappear. The icons reappear after Lock all or Omakase Lock is released.
- Only phone numbers appear even for calls from callers stored on the phonebook while Lock all or Omakase Lock is set.
- Calls that arrive while Lock all or Omakase Lock is set are recorded in “Received calls”.

Using a FOMA terminal to set Lock all

Default setting
Release

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ ▶“Lock/Security”▶“Lock all”▶Enter your security code

Operations during Lock all

- “Lock all” and “ ” appear on the display. Also, the message “Setting lock all” appears on the Image display.
- Although a FOMA terminal automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS or chat mails while in setting Lock all, the receiving and reception results screens do not appear. After Lock all is released, the icon for received mails or messages appears on the standby screen.
- Setting Lock all does not affect the “IC card lock” settings. You cannot set or release “IC card lock” while Lock all is set.

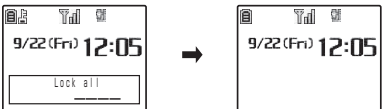


Releasing Lock all

- If you fail to release Lock all 5 times in a row, a FOMA terminal is turned off. However, it can still be turned on again.

1 **Enter your security code on a screen when Lock all is set▶●**

Lock all is released and “ ” disappears from the screen.



NOTE

◆ Even if an incorrect security code is entered for releasing Lock all, no error message appears. Press 2 and enter a correct security code again.

Using Omakase Lock

Default setting
Release

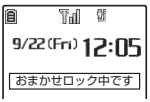
If you have lost your FOMA terminal, contact DoCoMo or operate from My DoCoMo to lock the FOMA terminal remotely. Protect your privacy and Osaifu-Keitai.
To unlock the FOMA terminal, call the Call Center.

Call Center (for setting/releasing Omakase Lock)
0120-524-360 (Operating time: 24 hours a day) (in Japanese only)
* My DoCoMo is also available to set/release Omakase Lock via a PC, etc.

* For details about Omakase Lock, see “ご利用ガイドブック(User's Guide)” or contact the number listed in “For inquiries” on the back cover.

Operations during Omakase Lock

- The message “おまかせロック中です” appears on the display and image display.
- Omakase Lock is a service where you can lock the FOMA terminal with a FOMA card (UIM) you have subscribed to inserted.
- While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/videophone call and turning the power on/off. Other functions (including IC card) are unavailable.
- Mails you receive while Omakase Lock is set are kept at the mail center.
- The FOMA card (UIM) and miniSD memory card remain unlocked.



NOTE

◆ Other active functions are terminated before Omakase Lock is set. (Edited data may be canceled before the function is terminated.)
◆ You can set Omakase Lock even when another lock function is set. If Omakase Lock is released, the lock function that had been set before Omakase Lock is reactivated (except for Secret mode and Secret data only mode).
◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set when:
- The FOMA terminal is out of service area
- The FOMA terminal is turned off
- “ ” appears on a FOMA terminal because Self mode is set, data exchange via Infrared data exchange or cable connection is in progress, etc.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set if you have subscribed to the “Dual Network” service and are using the mova service.
◆ Omakase Lock is a service where a subscriber to a FOMA card (UIM) inserted into the FOMA terminal asks to lock the terminal. Even if somebody else uses the FOMA terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.
◆ Omakase Lock can only be released when the same FOMA card (UIM) as used when the lock was set is inserted. When you cannot release the lock by yourself, contact Inquiries on the back cover of this manual.
◆ If you try to release Omakase Lock set in a FOMA terminal that is on a voice call or videophone call, the lock is released after the call ends.

<Secret mode/Secret data only mode>

Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting	Secret mode: OFF Secret data only mode: OFF

This function enables you to prevent others from accessing “Phonebook” and “Schedule” entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store information as secret data, store it in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” while a FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
In Secret mode, you can access all the data stored in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule”, including secret data. In Secret data only mode, you can access only “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries that are stored as secret data.

● You can move and store data in “My picture”, “i-motion”, “Inbox”, “Outbox” or “Bookmark” into the “Secret” folder.→p.163
● If you make or receive a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call in Secret or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled. If data in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the list screen of each folder.
● You cannot store entries in the UIM phonebook as secret data.
● Turning a FOMA terminal off cancels Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

Storing phonebook or schedule entries as secret data MENU 40

● The operations for using the “Phonebook” and “Schedule” entries in Secret mode or Secret data only mode are the same as when the secret modes are not set.

<Example: Storing an entry in Secret mode>

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret mode” ▶ Enter your security code



Secret mode is set and “ S ” appears on the screen.
Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time →p.28

■ To cancel Secret mode

▶ ☎

Secret mode is canceled and “ S ” disappears.

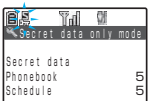
2 Store a “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entry

The entry is stored as secret data.
Adding information to the phonebook→p.111
Adding information to your schedule→p.392

Viewing only secret data <Secret data only mode>

MENU 41

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret data only mode” ▶ Enter your security code



Secret data only mode is set and “S” flashes.
Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.28

■ **To cancel Secret data only mode**

▶ C

Secret data only mode is canceled and “S” disappears.

2 Search the phonebook or check your schedule

Searching the phonebook→p.115
Checking your schedule→p.393

NOTE

- Selecting “Set secret” from the phonebook detail function menu also enables you to store a phonebook entry as secret data.
- In Secret mode, “S” flashes when you select or show secret data or show a Secret folder or data stored in a Secret folder.
- “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries stored as secret data can only be accessed, edited, deleted or referred in Secret mode or Secret data only mode. When a FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of scheduled events stored as secret data by an alarm, while no alarm message appears.
- If a “Phonebook” entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between “000” and “009”, “Two-touch dialing” can only be used to call that number when a FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data are also stored as secret data in the PushTalk phonebook.
- If the caller of an incoming call is stored as secret data and shows the caller ID, not the name but the phone number appears. Only the phone number appears also on “Received calls”. However, setting Secret mode or Secret data only mode shows the name stored in the “Received calls” record.
- If Secret mode or Secret data only mode is released and you receive a mail from a sender stored as secret data, not the name but the mail address appears. The mail address is not stored in the “Received address” record.
- The following functions cannot be set for “Phonebook” entries stored as secret data:
  • Automatic display→p.124 • Restrictions→p.171 • Discern connect→p.122
- If you edit a “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entry in Secret mode, the edited entry is stored as secret data. If a phonebook entry is edited, all the data stored in the edited phonebook entry are stored as secret data.
- You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by pressing MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” and then selecting “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If “Lock all/Omakase Lock” is set at the same time as “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, releasing “Lock all/Omakase Lock” also cancels “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If you receive a call while editing the phonebook or schedule, viewing the schedule or viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the Secret mode or Secret data only mode is canceled. Subsequently when you return to the phonebook or schedule screen and resume the interrupted operation, the security code entry screen appears. When you enter your security code on the screen, Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set and you can then continue the operation.
- When you make a call or send a mail by accessing a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, “Redial”, “Dialed calls” or “Sent address” is not updated.

Changing secret data back to normal

Set Secret mode or Secret data only mode and access a phonebook entry or scheduled event for which you want to cancel the mode.

<Example: Removing secrecy from a phonebook entry>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶(−) (FUNC)▶“Release secret”

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the “ ” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

■ **For scheduled events**

▶Schedule list screen▶(−) (FUNC)▶“Release secret”

In Secret mode, the “ ” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

“Schedule list function menu” →p.393

<Secret folder> Hiding Various Data

You can use “Secret” folders to store bookmarks, received mails, sent mails, images and movies that you want to hide from others.

- “Secret” folders appear in the folders of Bookmark, Inbox, Outbox and Data box only when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set.
- The maximum numbers of files that can be stored in “Secret” folders are listed below.

Bookmark (i-mode)	Bookmark (Full Browser)	Inbox	Outbox	My picture	i-motion
10 (3K bytes)	10 (6K bytes)	100 (150K bytes)	100 (150K bytes)	100 (1.2M bytes)	10 (1M bytes)

* : Maximum number of files that can be stored may vary by the data size.

<Example: Moving an image in My picture to Secret folder>

1 Set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”

“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule”→p.161

2 Image list screen (p.325)▶Select an image and press (−) (FUNC)▶“Keep in secret”

NOTE

- Secret folders are pre-installed in a FOMA terminal. You cannot delete them, change their names or add another Secret folder.
- You cannot use Secret folders to store the images or i-motion programs in “Pre-installed” folders, unread mails or SMS and SMS reports stored in the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you make or receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled even without answering the call. You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by pressing ▶ ▶“Lock/Security”▶“Secret mode” or ▶ ▶“Lock/Security”▶“Secret data only mode”. If a file in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the folder list screen.

<Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser)>

- When you use a bookmark in the Secret folder of i-mode or Full Browser to access a site, the URL of the site is not stored by the Last URL function.

<Inbox/Outbox>

- When mails are sent or received with mail folders full, mails stored in Secret folders are not deleted.
- For mails attached with large images, movies or i-motion programs in Secret folders, only the messages are stored and the attachments are not. On the list or detail screen, “ ”, “ ”, “ ” or “ ” indicating the attached file cannot be shown or played appears. Even if moving the mails into other folders, you cannot view or play the attached files.
- You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function, Web To function or i-αppli To function from mails stored in Secret folders. “ ” indicating i-αppli to be activated from a mail message changes to “ ”.
- Since a mail becomes a normal if it is moved out of a Secret folder, a chronologically-older mail may be deleted when other mails are received or sent, depending on the status of the folder including the mail. We recommend you to protect mails before removing them from Secret folders.
- Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders appear on the i-mode mail screen instead of the chat screen.
- When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in a Secret folder, you cannot select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu even if “ ” appears on the SMS list or detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu, move the SMS from a Secret folder into another one.

Continued on next page

<My picture/i-motion>
- If a file set for the standby screen, a phonebook entry or image on the chat screen is moved to a Secret folder, the setting is reset to default.
- You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function or Web To function from i-motion.

<Desktop icon>
- If an image, movie or i-motion pasted as a desktop icon is stored in a Secret folder, you cannot access the data from the desktop icon.
- Even if a bookmark or mail address is pasted as a desktop icon and the bookmark, received mail or sent mail that contains the mail address is stored in a Secret folder, you can access the bookmark or mail address from the desktop icon.

● Secret folder function menu

The functions available with Secret folders and files in the folders are restricted. The functions available with Secret folders are:

■ Secret folder function menu

Open a folder list screen ▶ Highlight the “Secret” folder ▶ Press ⊖ (FUNC)

Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser) (p.220)	Inbox/Outbox (p.268)	My picture (p.363)	i-motion (p.363)
Add folder No. of bookmarks*1 Send all Ir data*1 Copy all to miniSD*1 Delete all*1	Add folder No. of messages*1 Open folder Send all Ir data*1 Copy all to miniSD*1 Delete read*1*2 Delete all*1	Add folder Delete all image*1	Add folder Delete all*1

*1 : Not subject to the data in the “Secret” folder.
*2 : Only shown on the Inbox folder screen.

■ Data list function menu

Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser) (p.221)	Inbox/Outbox (p.270, 271)	My picture (p.328)	i-motion (p.338)
No. of bookmarks Delete Put out	Color coding List setting Protect ON/OFF Unprotect all Mail info* No. of messages Delete Put out	Display image Image info Delete Memory info Title name, Picture Put out	i-motion info Delete Memory info List setting Put out

* : Only shown on the received mail list screen.

■ Data detail function menu

Inbox/Outbox (p.273, 274)	My picture (p.330)	i-motion (p.341)
Protect ON/OFF Scroll Font size Delete Put out	Image info Set image disp. Delete this Retry	Normal play Slow Fast Stop i-motion info Set image disp.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Changing data in Secret folder back to normal

To change the data in a Secret folder to normal, move the data into another folder.

<Example: Restoring an image stored in the Secret folder under My picture to normal>

1 Set "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode"

"Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule"→p.161

2 Folder list screen (p.325) ▶"Secret"▶ Select an image and press (FUNC) ▶"Put out"

3 Select a folder to save the image

NOTE

◆ Since a mail removed from a Secret folder is a normal mail, it may be deleted when other mails are received or sent. We recommend you to protect mails before removing them from Secret folders.

<PIM lock>

Hiding Your Personal Information

Default setting
OFF (Items: All selected)

Locking the functions that use your personal information such as mails and phonebook entries allows you to prevent other people from viewing or improperly altering the personal information.

- Functions and items to be locked and data to become unavailable→p.166
- Functions and items to be locked can be customized.→p.168
- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release the PIM lock.

Activating PIM lock

1 (MENU)▶ (Settings)▶"Lock/Security"▶"PIM lock"▶Enter your security code▶"ON"



PIM lock is set and functions and data that are subject to PIM lock are locked. "P" appears on the screen.

■ **To release PIM lock**

▶"OFF"

"P" disappears.

The customized settings are retained after PIM lock is released. When PIM lock is reactivated, the same settings as the previous time are applied.

● Operations while PIM lock is set

To use the functions or data that are subject to PIM lock while PIM lock is set, the security code entry is required.

- Entering your security code correctly disables PIM lock temporarily so that the functions and data that are subject to PIM lock become available. ("P" disappears from the screen.) To reactivate PIM lock, exit the active functions to return to the standby screen.

<Example: Composing and sending an i-mode mail while PIM lock is set>

1 On the standby screen▶ (MAIL)



The security code entry screen as shown on the right appears.

2 Enter your security code

PIM lock is disabled temporarily and the mail menu appears.

3 Compose an i-mode mail to send→p.243

4 Close the mail menu to return to the standby screen

PIM lock is reactivated and "P" appears on the screen.

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆ When multiple tasks are activated with the Multitask function (p.385), PIM lock is not reactivated even if the standby screen reappears after the operation. Ending all tasks reactivates PIM lock.
◆ The following functions are unavailable when PIM lock is set (release PIM lock to use them):
- Reset settings
- Initialize
- Software update
- “Update” and “Set auto-update” for the scanning function

● Functions and data that are subject to PIM lock

● The functions and data that are subject to PIM lock are listed below. You can specify whether to set PIM lock for each function and item.→p.168

Group	Item	When locked/Notes
Mail	Mail	Locks the mail menu display. • Mails cannot be composed and mail boxes cannot be displayed. • Though MessageR/MessageF, i-mode mails, chat mails and SMS are received, the receiving and reception results screens do not appear. Releasing PIM lock shows the desktop icon for received mails appears. • Even if you press ▭ (Assist key) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check “New mail” or “Chat mail” and have the terminal read out the messages.
	Mail member, Chat group	Locks the function activation.
i-mode	i-mode	Locks the i-mode menu display. • i-mode, Full Browser and i-channel are unavailable. • The telop text of i-channel does not appear.
	Bookmark	Locks the displays of the bookmark lists of i-mode and Full Browser.
i-αppli	i-αppli	Locks the i-αppli menu and IC card list displays. All i-αppli programs (including pre-installed programs) cannot be performed. • PIM lock does not lock the IC card function. • Even when the i-αppli standby screen is set, the i-αppli standby screen is deactivated and the default standby screen appears instead of a shot or downloaded image that had been set before the i-αppli standby screen while in PIM lock. If a pre-installed image had been set before the i-αppli standby screen, the image appears.
ToruCa	ToruCa	Locks the ToruCa list screen display. ToruCa can be acquired using the reader/writer unit even if PIM lock is set, but the acquisition screen does not appear. Releasing the lock shows the “New ToruCa” desktop icon.
Multimedia	My picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den, My document, Music, Voice announce	Locks the function activation. It cannot be accessed from another function. • If the data subject to PIM lock are set for a ring tone, the receiving screen and standby screen, they work according to the default settings while in PIM lock. • If “Chara-den” is subject to PIM lock and PIM lock is set, the “Pre-installed” substitute image is sent during a videophone call.
	Bar code reader, Camera, Access reader	Locks the function activation.
Schedule	Schedule, Alarm clock, To Do list	Locks the function activation. The alarm is not given even when the specified time is reached. • The alarm is not given and the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears. • If “Schedule” is subject to PIM lock and the calendar is set for the standby screen, Schedule cannot be activated from the calendar on the standby screen while in PIM lock.
Memo	Record message	Locks the “Record message” setting operations. Furthermore, does not record messages when a call arrives. • Locks the “Quick message” activation.
	Play/Erase msg., Play/Erase VP msg.	Locks the function activation. • Even if pressing ▭ (Assist key) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check missed calls indicated by “Record message”.
	Voice memo, Voice memo (in-call)	Locks the function activation.

Group	Item	When locked/Notes
Phonebook	Phonebook	Locks the phonebook and PushTalk phonebook activation. Phonebook entries cannot be accessed. (This affects many other functions that use the phonebook.) • Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears on the dialing or receiving screen of a voice or videophone call. When a new i-mode mail or chat mail is received, the mail address appears instead of the name stored in the phonebook. • If “Only number in PH-book” is set for “MSG display settings” in “Chaku-moji”, a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the receiving screen. • Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears in the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” or “Redial” record. • On the mail list or detail screens, the mail addresses appear instead of the names stored in the phonebook. • If PIM lock is set after “ON” is set to “Set mute seconds” in “Ring time(sec.)” or “Reject unknown” is set, the “Ring time(sec.)” and “Reject unknown” settings become deactivated. • The “Call rejection”, “Call acceptation”, “Call forwarding” and “Voice Mail” settings are deactivated. • Data Security Service is unavailable. • Even if pressing ▭ (Assist key) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot have the FOMA terminal read out the caller or sender of “Missed call”, “New mail”, “Chat mail” or “Record message”.
	Own number	Locks the “Own number” activation.
	Dialed calls	Locks the “Dialed calls”, “Redial” and “Sent address” activations.
	Received calls	Locks the “Received calls” and “Received address” activations. • Even if pressing ▭ (Assist key) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check “Missed call”.
Other settings	Text memo	Locks the “Text memo” activation.
	Notice designate calls	No alarm is given when the specified cost limit is exceeded. • Releasing PIM lock displays the “Notice designate calls” desktop icon on the standby screen. • PIM lock does not lock the “Notice designate calls” setting operations.
	Chaku-moji	Locks “Chaku-moji”. • PIM lock does not lock the operations performed when Chaku-moji mails arrive. (They are performed according to “MSG display settings” in “Chaku-moji”.) • Select “Create message” from the function menu to make a call with a Chaku-moji message.

NOTE

◆ If desktop icons of data that are subject to PIM lock are pasted into the standby screen, they do not appear while PIM lock is set.

◆ When PIM lock is set, you cannot receive Infrared data or exchange data via cable connection (OBEX exchange). (To use those functions, release the PIM lock temporarily.)

Customizing the functions and data that are subject to PIM lock

You can customize the functions and data that are subject to PIM lock. For example, you can lock only phonebook entries or use i-mode or mails while PIM lock is set.

- Specify whether to set PIM lock for each group or item.
  List of the groups and items→p.166
- All groups and items are subject to PIM lock at the time of purchase.
- The customized settings are retained whether PIM lock is set or released.

1 MENU▶ Settings▶**“Lock/Security”▶“PIM lock”▶Enter your security code**

2 ● **(Detail)**

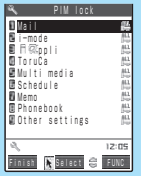
The “group selection” screen appears.

“ ” appears with the group in which any item is selected.

“ ALL ” appears with the group in which all items are selected.

■ To select or deselect all items in a group

▶Highlight a group▶● (FUNC)▶“Select” or “Release”



Group selection

Function menu➡p.168

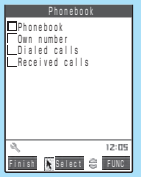
3 **Select a group for which you want to change the settings**

The “item selection” screen appears.

4 **Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐)▶● (Finish)**

The checked (☑) items will be locked when PIM lock is set.
Deselect items you do not want to lock with PIM lock.

5 ● **(Finish)▶“ON”**



Item selection

Function menu➡p.168

Function menu (group selection screen)

Select	Selects all items in a group.
Release	Deselects all the selected items in a group.
Select all	Selects all items in all groups.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items in all groups.

Function menu (item selection screen)

Select all	Selects all items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

<External keys guard> MENU (1 second or longer)

Disabling the External Keys

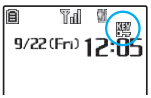
Default setting: OFF

You can disable the external keys ((Assist key), (Home) and (Memo/Check) by folding a FOMA terminal.
You cannot disable using this function.

- In the situations listed below, the external keys are enabled regardless of this setting. However, you cannot activate the camera by pressing ( ) for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded.
  - FOMA terminal is open.
  - An equipment such as flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone terminal.
  - An external connector is connected to PC or other device and " " and " " appear on the screen.
  - An external connector is connected to a printer and " " appears on the screen.

1 MENU ▶ ✱ (1 second or longer)

The external keys are disabled (when a FOMA terminal is folded) and " " appears on the screen.



■ **To cancel this function**

▶Repeat step 1

" " disappears.

<Keypad dial lock>

Locking the Keypad

Default setting: Release

This function prohibits you from making voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls by dialing a phone number or sending i-mode mail and SMS by using dial keys. Calls can only be made by using "Phonebook" entries stored before the keypad is locked or using the "Dialed calls", "Redial" or "Sent address" records logged after the keypad is locked.
In situations where a FOMA terminal is being used for business purposes for example, you can prevent private calls or mails by storing the required work numbers and mail addresses in the "Phonebook" beforehand and then setting this function.

- While the keypad is locked, you cannot use the following functions or procedures to make voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls, compose i-mode mails or SMS:
  - Keypad entry
  - Received calls
  - Received address
  - Mail member
  - Desktop icon
  - Access reader
  - Bar code reader
  - Record message playback
  - Videophone message playback
  - Service Numbers
  - Play messages
  - Voice Mail setting
  - Additional service (numbers stored using "Enter number")
- The following are not possible while the keypad is locked:
  - Adding, editing or deleting phonebook entries
  - Using the "Phone To", "AV Phone To" or "Mail To" function
  - Sending or receiving phonebook data using Infrared data exchange
  - Copying or deleting phonebook entries using "UIM operation"
  - Copying phonebook entries from the miniSD memory card
  - Sending AT commands
- Locking the keypad deletes all the records of "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address". However, all entries logged in those records after keypad is locked remain. If an address, subject and message are included in a mail, the address is deleted and the message and subject remain. If only an address is entered, the mail is deleted.
- Setting this function deletes chat group members.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Keypad dial lock" ▶ Enter your security code



Keypad dial lock is set and " " appears on the screen.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time →p.28

■ **To release Keypad dial lock**

▶Repeat step 1

" " disappears.

NOTE

◆ You can still directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the keypad is locked.

<Record display set>

Showing/Hiding Redial or Received Calls Record

Default setting	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON

This function enables you to hide the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address” records. This is useful for preventing other people from viewing your records of incoming and outgoing calls.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Lock/Security”▶“Record display set”▶Enter your security code▶Select any item

Received calls	Specifies whether to show or hide the Received calls record. Select “OFF” to hide the record.
Redial/Dialed calls	Specifies whether to show or hide the Redial or Dialed calls record. Select “OFF” to hide the record.

NOTE

- When you have a missed call while “Received calls” is set to “OFF”, the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen. If you attempt to access “Received calls” from this desktop icon, the message notifying “Received calls” is set to “OFF” appears and the desktop icon remains on the screen. To clear the “Missed call” desktop icon, press CLR for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.
- To show the Dialed calls or Received calls record that are logged when “Record display set” is set to “OFF”, set it to “ON”.
- You cannot play Record messages when the “Received calls” record display is set to “OFF”.

<Mail security>

Setting Security for Mail Folders

Default setting
No security

This function enables you to apply security to your Inbox, Outbox, Draft or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your permission. Secured mailboxes or folders cannot be opened unless the security code is entered.

- The entered security code is valid until you exit the mail menu to end a mail task. While it is valid, you do not need to enter the security code to open a box or folder protected with other security functions.
- The “” icon appears with secured mailboxes.
- For a secured folder, an icon such as “”, “”, “”, “” or “” appears before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Setting security for individual mailboxes

1 MENU ▶ Mail ▶“Mail settings”▶“Mail security”▶Enter your security code

2 Use ● to select a checkbox (☐)

The selected mailbox is ticked.
To deselect the ticked mailbox, select it again.



3 Press − (Finish) after the settings

Setting security for individual folders

You can also set security for each folder. Secured folders cannot be shown unless the security code is entered.

1 Inbox folder screen (p.262)/Outbox folder screen (p.263)▶ − (FUNC) ▶“Mail security”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”

■ To cancel mail security

▶Repeat step 1

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

Default setting
All OFF

To prevent users from making private calls or receiving nuisance calls, you can restrict calls to/from the specific phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

● The functions listed below can be set:

Item	Description
Restrict dialing	Disables calls to phone numbers other than the specified ones. Use the phonebook to call the numbers specified in this function.
Call rejection	Rejects calls from the specified phone numbers.
Call acceptation	Accepts calls only from the specified phone numbers.
Call Forwarding	Forwards calls from the specified phone numbers regardless of whether Call Forwarding is activated or deactivated.
Voice Mail	Automatically connects calls from the specified phone numbers to the Voice Mail service center regardless of whether Voice Mail is activated or deactivated.

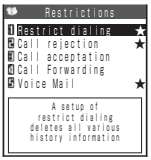
● You can specify up to 20 phone numbers in each directory.
● You cannot set this function for UIM phonebook entries.
● Restrictions are only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. Restrictions should be set in conjunction with "Caller ID Request" and "Call setting w/o ID".
● You cannot concurrently set Call rejection and Call acceptation, or Call forwarding and Voice Mail for the same number.
● This function cannot be set for phonebook entries added in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode".
● If you edit or delete a phone number specified in this function, the restrictions are released. However, setting "Restrict dialing" restricts the phonebook editing or deleting, which prevents you from changing or deleting a phone number to release Restrict dialing.
● The "Restrict dialing", "Call rejection" and "Call acceptation" settings are also applied to the PushTalk phonebook entries.

● When Restrict dialing is set

● You cannot dial using all the records of Dialed calls and Received calls including the specified phone numbers. Also, you cannot retrieve phone numbers other than the specified ones, add to, edit or delete phonebook entries, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate the phonebook using "UIM operation".
● The Redial/Dialed calls records and Sent address list that had been stored before the Restrict dialing setting are deleted. However, you can dial or send mails using the records of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after the setting.

Setting dialing/receiving restrictions on phone numbers

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ▶ (−) (FUNC) ▶ "Restrictions" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select a function



A star (★) appears with the selected function.

■ **To deselect selected functions**

▶Select a function with a star (★)

The function is deselected and the star "★" disappears.

■ **To set dialing/receiving restrictions on multiple phone numbers**

▶Press (CLR) to return to the phonebook detail screen ▶Use ⊕ to show the desired phone number ▶Repeat step 1

Once you press (i-mode) to return to the standby screen after setting Restrict dialing, you can no longer set further restrictions. To set more restrictions, cancel the restrictions that have already been set for a phone number and then set restrictions again for phone numbers including the unrestricted one.

NOTE

<Restrict dialing>

◆ You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when Restrict dialing is set.
◆ To use "Automatic display" at the same time as Restrict dialing, set Restrict dialing for phonebook numbers for which "Automatic display" has already been set.
◆ Only the phone numbers specified in Restrict dialing appear in the phonebook.

Continued on next page

<Call rejection/Call acceptation>

- A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.
- If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptation, the number is recorded as a missed call in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptation, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- While PIM lock is set for “Phonebook” items, this function is disabled and a FOMA terminal accepts calls from the phone numbers specified in Call rejection or the numbers not specified in Call acceptation.
- You can still make calls even when Call rejection or Call acceptation is set.

<Call Forwarding/Voice Mail>

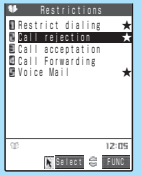
- If you receive a call from a phone number specified in this function, a FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the forwarding number or connected to the Voice Mail service center.
- If no forwarding number is designated or you have not subscribed to “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail”, calls from the phone numbers specified in this function are handled as missed calls.
- While PIM lock is set for “Phonebook” items, this function is disabled and a FOMA terminal acts normally when receiving a call from a specified phone number.

Checking the restriction settings

MENU 12

1 Phonebook list screen (p.115) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Restrictions” ▶ Enter your security code

The “Restrictions” screen appears.



Restrictions

Function menu➡p.172

Function menu (Restrictions screen)

1 Restrictions screen ▶ Highlight a function with a star (★) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item

Check settings	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the highlighted function is set.
Release settings	Cancels all the highlighted function settings.

<Call setting w/o ID> MENU10

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

Default setting	All Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display)

This function enables you to accept or reject voice calls, videophone calls and Push-to-Talk calls from callers who do not show the caller ID based on the reason given.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Call setting w/o ID” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Unknown	Specifies whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to show the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or pay phones or calls sent via a call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may show caller IDs in some cases.		
	Accept	Accepts calls.	
		Select ring tone	Selects the ring tone for “Unknown” calls from “Same as ring tone”, “Melody”, “i-motion”, “Voice announce”, “Random melody” and “OFF”. →p.128 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
		Select calling disp.	Selects the image shown when “Unknown” calls arrive from “Same as display”, “My picture” and “i-motion”. →p.137 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
	Reject	Rejects calls.	
Payphone	Specifies whether to accept calls from pay phones.		
	Accept	Accepts calls.	
		Select ring tone	Selects the ring tone for “Payphone” calls from “Same as ring tone”, “Melody”, “i-motion”, “Voice announce”, “Random melody” and “OFF”. →p.128 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
		Select calling disp.	Selects the image shown when “Payphone” calls arrive from “Same as display”, “My picture” and “i-motion”. →p.137 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
	Reject	Rejects calls.	
User unset	Specifies whether to accept calls that hide the caller ID due to the setting of the caller's phone.		
	Accept	Accepts calls.	
		Select ring tone	Selects the ring tone for “User unset” calls from “Same as ring tone”, “Melody”, “i-motion”, “Voice announce”, “Random melody” and “OFF”. →p.128 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
		Select calling disp.	Selects the image shown when “User unset” calls arrive from “Same as display”, “My picture” and “i-motion”. →p.137 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
	Reject	Rejects calls.	

NOTE

- The ring tone and call receiving image selected in this function are for voice calls hiding the caller ID. For videophone calls hiding the caller ID, the “Videophone” setting in “Select ring tone” and “V.phone Calling” setting in “Display setting” are applied. If you receive Push-to-Talk calls hiding the caller ID, the “PushTalk” setting in “Select ring tone” is applied.
- When “Reject” is set, the other party hears a busy tone.
- If you receive a call from a caller who is set to “Reject”, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service.
- A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.
- Accept/Reject of “User unset” can only be set for Push-to-Talk calls.

<Ring time(sec.)> MENU90

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting	Set mute seconds: OFF Mute seconds(sec): 1 second Missed calls display: Display

Use this function to set the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing when receiving a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call of which caller is not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally making a call using the Received calls record to a number such as a nuisance caller that only rings for a short period of time.

- The specified mute seconds is also enabled when you receive a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call hiding the caller ID, or receive a call during another voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Incoming call" ▶ "Ring time(sec.)" ▶ Select any item**

Set mute seconds	**ON**	**▶Enter a mute time (01 to 99 seconds)** Sets the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press ●.
	OFF	Sets 0 seconds to the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing.
Missed calls display		Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the Missed calls record.

NOTE

- While a FOMA terminal is ringing, the terminal emits a ring tone or vibrates, the incoming call lamp lights up or flashes and an incoming call/mail is indicated on the image window.
- When you receive a call from a caller stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, a FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- If the time set in Set mute seconds is longer than the ring time for the Record message function, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing. To have a ring tone sound before a message is recorded, set a longer ring time for Record message than the time set in Set mute seconds. The same applies to the ring times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer.

<Reject unknown>

Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting: Accept

You can specify whether a FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers that are not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or UIM phonebook.

- This function is only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. "Caller ID Request" and "Call setting w/o ID" should be set in conjunction with this function.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Lock/Security" ▶ "Reject unknown" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "Reject"**

■ To receive calls from callers who are not stored in the phonebook

▶"Accept"

NOTE

- When "Call setting w/o ID" accepts calls hiding the caller ID, a FOMA terminal acts according to the "Call setting w/o ID" setting even if this function is set to "Reject".
- When you receive a call from a caller who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the call is accepted even if this function is set to "Reject".
- When phone numbers are specified in "Call acceptation" in "Restrictions", you can only receive calls from the phone numbers even if this function is set to "Accept".
- When "Reject" is selected for this function and you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a missed call in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Even if you have activated the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service, the caller hears a busy tone. However, if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, or if the ring time set for "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is 0 (zero) seconds, the caller does not hear the busy tone and is connected to the "Voice Mail service center" or forwarding number. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.

<Self mode>

Disabling Communication Functions

Default setting
Release

You can set a FOMA terminal not to make or receive voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mails. This function is useful when you want to use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls.

- You can still make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Self mode. Making a voice call to an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“Lock/Security”▶“Self mode”▶“YES”**

A FOMA terminal is set to Self mode and “self” appears on the screen.

■ To cancel Self mode

▶Repeat step 1

Self mode is canceled and “self” disappears.

● When Self mode is set

- Received calls are not logged in the Received calls record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- Callers of voice calls hear a message that your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off. Callers of videophone calls see a message that your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off. If the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated, calls are handled in the same way as when a FOMA terminal is turned off.
- If a Push-to-Talk call arrives, a “Disconnected” response is sent to the members.
- MessageR/MessageF and i-mode mails sent to you while Self mode is set are kept at the i-mode Center, and SMS are kept at the SMS Center.
- Data exchange using Infrared data exchange or OBEX, packet communication with a PC connected and 64K data communication are also unavailable. However, you can read and write IC card data by using the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

<Data Security Service>

Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online

Subscription Required

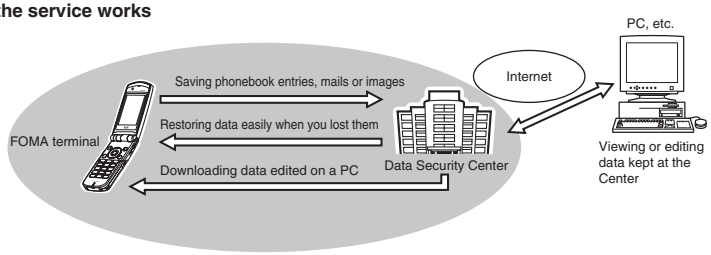
● Data Security Service

Data Security Service is a service where you can back up phonebook entries, images, messages, etc. (hereinafter referred to as “stored data”) stored on your FOMA terminal to DoCoMo’s Data Security Center.

Even if you lose your FOMA terminal or get it wet then stored data are deleted, use i-mode to retrieve the data stored at the Data Security Center to your new FOMA terminal. In addition, you can easily edit the stored data on the My DoCoMo page or retrieve the edited data to the FOMA terminal.

* For more details on the Data Security Service, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

How the service works



- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe to the service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand.)
- See the following pages for saving operations of Data Security Service:
  - “Saving Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center”→p.125
  - “Saving the message at the Data Security Center”→p.273
  - “Saving images to the Data Security Center”→p.330
  - “Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center”→p.126

Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this chapter, there are functions/services relating to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/Service	Refer to
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC card lock	p.312
To avoid “nuisance phone calls” such as prank phone calls or unsolicited sales phone calls	Nuisance Call Blocking	p.414
To ignore calls hiding the caller ID	Caller ID Request	p.414
To send data securely by using a digital authentication service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass	p.233
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software Update	p.487
To protect a FOMA terminal against malicious data	Scanning function	p.491
To accept only necessary i-mode mails	Receive option	p.257
To leave/hear the information about the safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	“i-mode Disaster Message Board” service	See “i-mode User’s Manual”.
To change your mail address	Change Mail Address	
To check your mail address if you forget it	Confirm Mail Address	
To accept/reject mails from the specified domains only	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To accept/reject mails only from i-mode terminals		
To accept/reject mails only from the specified addresses		
To reject short messages (SMS)	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject any further incoming i-mode mail sent from an i-mode mobile phone once you have received 200 messages a day from that phone	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisements sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the size of a received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To check the status of mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	

NOTE

◆ Be careful when making calls to unknown numbers logged as missed or received call. In particular showing your caller ID to other unknown parties may cause unnecessary problems.

<Nuisance Call Blocking priority sequence>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows when Nuisance Call Blocking function is set at the same time.

①Nuisance Call Blocking

②Reject unknown or Ring time(sec.)/Call setting w/o ID/Call rejection

Camera

Before Using the Camera 178
Shooting Still Images ..... Photo mode 185
Shooting Movies ..... Movie mode 192
Changing the Shooting Settings 197
Using the Bar Code Reader ..... Bar code reader 198
Scanning Text ..... Access reader 201

Before Using the Camera

You can shoot still images and movies using the built-in camera.

Using the camera

To switch between the front camera and rear camera, press (FUNC) on the shooting screen and select “Front camera” or “Rear camera” from the function menu.

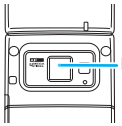
■ Rear camera

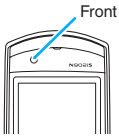
This camera is useful for taking photos of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it appears on the screen). This camera is available for close-up shooting. →p.178

You can also shoot still images by using auto focus. →p.185

■ Front camera

This camera is useful for taking photos of yourself. Images appear as if you were looking in the mirror (Mirror display) and shot images are reversed (Normal display) when saved in a FOMA terminal.





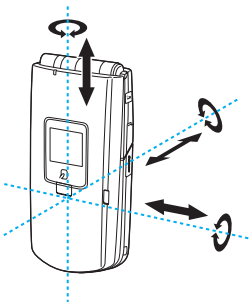
- The cameras are developed based on the extremely high-precision technology. However, the shots may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Random color points (statistical noise) may also appear on the photographed images particularly when you shoot in very poorly lit locations.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens may prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when folding a FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Image quality may be adversely affected if a FOMA terminal is left in a hot location for a long period of time.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly the sun or a powerful lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.

● Close-up

- To take close-up photos, select “Close-up” from “Photo mode” (p.194) under “Image quality”. The camera is focused on an object 7 to 9cm away from the rear lens.

● Shake correction function

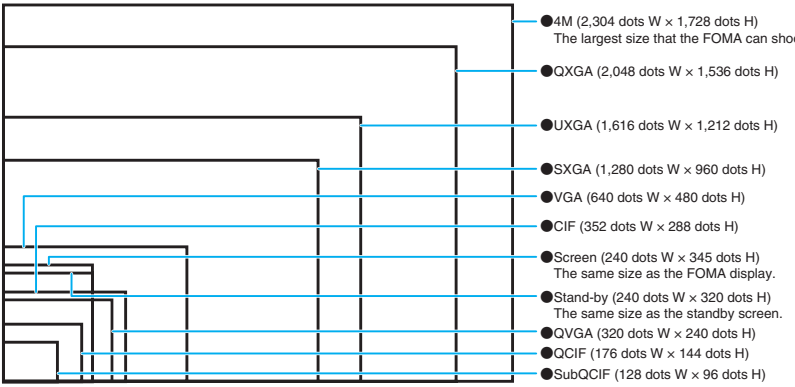
Your FOMA terminal incorporates the shake correction function. Using this function prevents the rear camera from being shaken in all directions while shooting of images or movies.
Shake correction function →p.195



* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Image size

● The following shows the image sizes supported by FOMA N902iS. Choose the size that suits your purpose:



* : The image sizes framed above are not the actual sizes.

Image shooting specifications

● Up to 720 still images can be saved in a FOMA terminal (Phone). This may vary depending on the image size settings or number of downloaded images.
● The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings activated when shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.
● The following table lists the sizes and approximate numbers of images that can be stored: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		Storage setting	Maximum number of images		
	Rear camera	Front camera		N902iS (Phone)	miniSD memory card	
					16M bytes	32M bytes
4M (2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 24	Approx. 50
			Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 28	Approx. 60
			Normal	Approx. 8	Approx. 36	Approx. 80
QXGA (2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 28	Approx. 60
			Fine	Approx. 8	Approx. 36	Approx. 80
			Normal	Approx. 14	Approx. 54	Approx. 118
UXGA (1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 12	Approx. 46	Approx. 98
			Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 54	Approx. 118
			Normal	Approx. 22	Approx. 88	Approx. 188
SXGA (1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 12	Approx. 46	Approx. 98
			Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 54	Approx. 118
			Normal	Approx. 22	Approx. 88	Approx. 188
VGA (640 dots wide × 480 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 54	Approx. 118
			Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 254	Approx. 540
			Normal	Approx. 130	Approx. 444	Approx. 944
CIF (352 dots wide × 288 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 54	Approx. 118
			Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 444	Approx. 944
			Normal	Approx. 180	Approx. 592	Approx. 1,260
Screen (240 dots wide × 345 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 254	Approx. 540
			Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 444	Approx. 944
			Normal	Approx. 180	Approx. 592	Approx. 1,260

Continued on next page

Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 254	Approx. 540
			Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 444	Approx. 944
			Normal	Approx. 180	Approx. 592	Approx. 1,260
QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 254	Approx. 540
			Fine	Approx. 360	Approx. 890	Approx. 1,890
			Normal	Approx. 480	Approx. 1,780	Approx. 3,780
SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 254	Approx. 540
			Fine	Approx. 360	Approx. 890	Approx. 1,890
			Normal	Approx. 480	Approx. 1,780	Approx. 3,780

* : The FOMA terminal defines UXGA as 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high and SXGA as 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high.

Movie shooting specifications

- Up to 100 movies can be saved in a FOMA terminal (Phone). This may vary depending on the image size settings or number of downloaded i-motion programs.
- The default length of movie shooting is roughly 45 seconds. However, the shooting time per movie varies depending on factors such as the types of objects.
- The maximum number of movies that can be stored varies depending on shooting lengths.
- The following table lists the sizes and approximate numbers/time of movies that can be stored: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		File size setting	Movie type set	Maximum number of movies		
	Rear camera	Front camera			N902iS (Phone)	miniSD memory card	
						16M bytes	32M bytes
QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high)	A	U	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 4	Approx. 17	Approx. 35
				Video	Approx. 4	Approx. 17	Approx. 35
				Voice	Approx. 4	Approx. 17	Approx. 35
			Long time	Normal	—	Approx. 4 min.	Approx. 9 min.
				Video	—	Approx. 4 min.	Approx. 9 min.
				Voice	—	Approx. 90 min.	Approx. 90 min.
QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 11	Approx. 46	Approx. 93
				Video	Approx. 11	Approx. 46	Approx. 93
				Voice	Approx. 11	Approx. 46	Approx. 93
			Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 28	Approx. 57
				Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 28	Approx. 57
				Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 28	Approx. 57
			Local playback	Normal	Approx. 4	Approx. 17	Approx. 35
				Video	Approx. 4	Approx. 17	Approx. 35
				Voice	Approx. 4	Approx. 17	Approx. 35
			Long time	Normal	—	Approx. 36 min.	Approx. 60 min.
				Video	—	Approx. 47 min.	Approx. 60 min.
				Voice	—	Approx. 90 min.	Approx. 90 min.
SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 11	Approx. 46	Approx. 93
				Video	Approx. 11	Approx. 46	Approx. 93
				Voice	Approx. 11	Approx. 46	Approx. 93
			Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 28	Approx. 57
				Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 28	Approx. 57
				Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 28	Approx. 57
			Local playback	Normal	Approx. 4	Approx. 17	Approx. 35
				Video	Approx. 4	Approx. 17	Approx. 35
				Voice	Approx. 4	Approx. 17	Approx. 35
			Long time	Normal	—	Approx. 42 min.	Approx. 60 min.
				Video	—	Approx. 58 min.	Approx. 60 min.
				Voice	—	Approx. 90 min.	Approx. 90 min.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Notes on using the camera

■ Notes on shooting

- A sound heard when the rear camera is launched is no problem.
- The color and brightness in still images or movies shot with the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual objects.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly the sun or a powerful lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.
- Take care that your fingers, hair or the camera strap do not cover the lens when shooting.
- Shooting images or movies uses a large amount of battery. It is recommended that you turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot with low battery.
- If one of the following events occurs during continuous or movie shooting, the shooting is interrupted and then the respective screen appears. After the screen is finished, the camera screen reappears and the shots can be saved. If one of the following events occurs during zoom or brightness adjustment, the adjustment is fixed and the camera menu reappears. If one of the following events occurs during self-timer operation, the operation is interrupted:
  - A voice call, videophone call, Push-to-Talk call or 64K data communication data arrives.
  - The alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list is given.
  - An operation of another function is performed.
- Note the following:
  - If you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF while using the camera (including while the shooting screen appears), the shooting continues without the Receiving results screen being displayed regardless of the “Receiving display” settings (p.276).
  - Selecting “Operation preferred” in “Alarm setting” does not stop shooting, performing the camera settings or operating the auto timer even when it is time to give an alarm.
- Even in “Manner mode” or “Public mode (Driving mode)”, a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound, auto timer tone and AF lock sound. Even if “Earphone” is set to “Earp.(Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone(only)” and an earphone is attached to the terminal, these sounds come out of the speaker.
- If Shake correction is set to “OFF”, moving a FOMA terminal while shooting may blur images. It is recommended to set Shake correction to “Auto”.
- When shooting a still image, keep a FOMA terminal steady until it emits the shutter sound and finishes loading the shot image (the shooting checking screen appears). (Furthermore, keep the FOMA terminal steady while a message indicating the shot is being processed appears.)
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take long for the brightness or color tone to become its best.
- Setting “Auto save set” (p.186, 193) to “ON” allows you to automatically save the shots to the folder specified in “Select to save” without showing the shooting checking screen.
- The camera is automatically finished if you do not press any keys for three minutes or longer.

■ Copyright Information

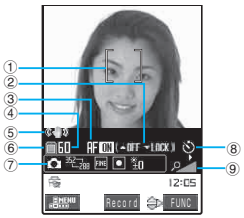
- Take care not to infringe copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded with a FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe portrait rights by using or altering another person’s portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

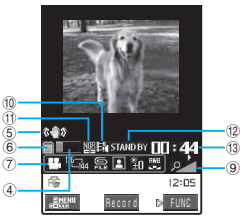
Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens show the icons of the camera settings.

Photo mode shooting



Movie mode shooting



Function	Icon	Description	Refer to
① **Focus frame**		Setting AFchange to “ON” changes the auto focus frame as follows: • White: Before focusing • Dotted white: Focusing • Green: Focused • Dotted red: Focusing failed	p.185
② **AF operation guidance**		Shows the guide to the AF change and focus lock.	p.185
③ **Auto focus change**		“AFchange” is set to “ON”.	p.185
		“AFchange” is set to “OFF”.	
④ **Remaining storage count/ Memory info**[*1]		Shows the number of photos that can be saved in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or miniSD memory card on the Photo mode screen. • White: 11 or more • Yellow: 10 or fewer • Red: No memory available	–
		Shows the amounts of total and available memories on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or miniSD memory card using a bar and colors before shooting a movie. • Blue: 500K bytes or more remaining • Yellow: Less than 500K bytes remaining • Red: No memory available[*2]	–
⑤ **Shake correction**		Appears when Shake correction is set to “Auto”.	p.195
⑥ **Select to save**		Shows the destination folder.	p.186 p.193
⑦ **Shooting menu**		Shows the shooting settings. You can access functions to perform the settings by pressing ●(MENU) or 1* to 9WXYZ.	p.183
⑧ **Auto timer**		Shows that the auto timer is set.	p.198
⑨ **Zoom**		Shows the zoom settings. When a zoom arrow (◀ or ▶) appears, you can zoom in or out by pressing ◀ or ▶.	p.197
⑩ **Movie type set**		Shoots movies with video and voice.	p.193
		Shoots movies with video only.	
		Shoots movies with voice only.	

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

⑪ **Storage setting**	NOR	Shoots movies with “Normal” set for the image quality.	p.192
		Shoots movies with “Fine mode” set for the image quality.	
		Shoots movies with “Long dur. mode” set for the image quality.	
		Shoots movies with “Move mode” set for the image quality.	
⑫ **Shooting status**	●REC	Shows that a movie is being shot.	p.192
	STAND BY	Shows that movie shooting is in standby.	
⑬ **Remaining shooting time**	00:44	Shows the time left (minutes:seconds).	p.192

*1 : The icon does not appear if miniSD is selected for the destination and the miniSD memory card is not inserted.
*2 : Still images or movies can be shot as long as the “File size” is not set to “Long time” to shoot movies. The shot is saved or overwritten in the FOMA terminal (Phone)/miniSD memory card.

NOTE

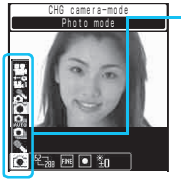
◆ The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings activated when shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.

● Guide to the shooting menu

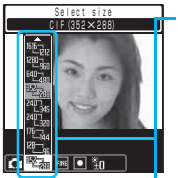
● Pressing ●(MENU) or 1 to 6 shows the shooting menu.
● Press ● (FUNC) and select “Help” or press ☐ to show the keys assigned to the shooting menu or the shooting operations.
● The settings that can be performed from the shooting menu can also be accessed from the function menu.

1 Shooting screen ▶● (MENU) ▶Use ✣ to select any of the following

Neuropointer is also available for selecting items.
Items that can be selected from the shooting menu vary depending on the camera mode.



CHG camera-mode
- Movie mode ····· Shoots a movie. →p.192
- Chance capture ····· Shoots a movie retroactively from the point you end shooting. →p.196
- Picture voice (Photo mode) ····· Records voice to add to a still image you shot. →p.196
- Photo mode ····· Shoots a still image. →p.185
- A-Continuous mode ··· Shoots still images continuously at a time. →p.189
- M-Continuous mode ··· Continuously shoots still images one by one. →p.189
- Voice mode ····· Records voice only. →p.197



Select size (Ex. “Photo mode”)
- 4M ····· Shoots in 4M (2,304 × 1,728).
- QXGA ····· Shoots in QXGA (2,048 × 1,536).
- UXGA ····· Shoots in UXGA (1,616 × 1,212).
- SXGA ····· Shoots in SXGA (1,280 × 960).
- VGA ····· Shoots in VGA (640 × 480).
- CIF ····· Shoots in CIF (352 × 288).
- Screen ····· Shoots in Screen (240 × 345).
- Stand-by ····· Shoots in Stand-by (240 × 320).
- QCIF ····· Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
- SubQCIF ····· Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96).
- JAVA* ····· Shoots in JAVA (240 × 240).

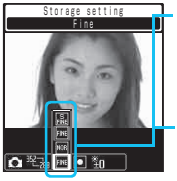
(Default: CIF)

Select size (Ex. “Movie mode”)
- QVGA ····· Shoots in QVGA (320 × 240).
- QCIF ····· Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
- SubQCIF ····· Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96).

(Default: QCIF)

* : This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-αppli.

Continued on next page



Storage setting
(Ex. “Photo mode”)

- Super Fine · · · · · · · · · · Saves the shot as a large-sized file.
- Fine · · · · · · · · · · · · · · Saves the shot as a medium-sized file.
- Normal · · · · · · · · · · · · Saves the shot as a small-sized file.

(Default: Fine)

File size setting
(Ex. “Movie mode”)

- Restricted(Short) · · · · Shoots up to 290K bytes as the file size (Suitable for sending to an i-motion-message-compatible terminal.)
- Restricted(Long) · · · · Shoots up to 490K bytes as the file size (Suitable for sending to a terminal supporting large-sized i-motion messages.)
- Local playback · · · · · · Shoots up to 800K bytes as the file size.
- Long time · · · · · · · · · · Shoots for a long time.

(Default: Restricted(Short))

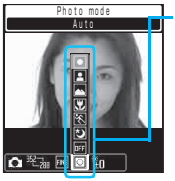
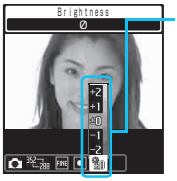


Photo mode
(Ex. “Photo mode”)

- Auto · · · · · · · · · · · · · · Selects the shooting mode automatically.
- Portrait · · · · · · · · · · · · Suitable for shooting people.
- Scenery · · · · · · · · · · · · Suitable for shooting scenery (including night views).
- Close-up · · · · · · · · · · · Suitable for close-up shooting. →p.178
- Sports mode · · · · · · · · Suitable for shooting moving objects.
- Night mode · · · · · · · · · Suitable for shooting objects in poorly lit places.
- OFF · · · · · · · · · · · · · · Does not use any effects for shooting.

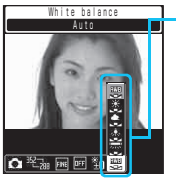
(Default: Auto (Photo mode, Continuous mode)/ Portrait (Movie mode))



Brightness

- ±2 ±1 ±0 ±1 ±2 · · · · · · · · · Sets the brightness of the shot (-2/-1/±0/+1/+2).

(When the camera launches: ±0)



White balance

- Auto · · · · · · · · Automatically corrects the color.
- Fine · · · · · · · · Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
- Cloudy · · · · · · Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
- Light bulb · · · · Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
- Fluorescent lamp · · · · Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

(Default: Auto)

NOTE

◆ You can create desktop icons of “Movie mode”, “Photo mode” and “Voice mode” from the function menu launched from (MENU) ▶ (LifeKit) ▶“Camera”. The “Photo mode” desktop icon is pasted at the time of purchase.
Desktop icons →p.148

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

<Photo mode>

Shooting Still Images

Use the built-in camera to shoot still images.

- You can shoot with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.188
- You can also save the shots directly in the miniSD memory card.
- You can specify the folder to store images. You can also set a FOMA terminal to save shot images automatically in the specified folder after shooting.

How to shoot still images

The auto focus function is available for shooting still images with the rear camera.

- Press ⏱ on the “Photo mode” screen (p.185) to turn on/off the auto focus.
- Switch between ON and OFF to select any of the following three shooting methods:

Method	Auto focus	Description
Auto focus	**ON**	When you release the shutter, the focus is automatically adjusted on the object in the center of the screen. →p.185 The center of the screen is focused and then a still image is shot. When the subject is focused, the focus frame turns green. When the subject is not focused, the focus frame turns red.
AF lock		Lock the focus on an object before releasing the shutter. →p.186 E.g. when an object you want to shoot is off-centered on the screen, you can manually focus on the object and change the composition.
Focus fixed	**OFF**	Shoots without using the auto focus. →p.185 You can quickly shoot a still image so that you do not miss the shutter chance.

NOTE

◆The auto focus ON/OFF setting changed during shooting are retained while the camera runs. The auto focus is always set to “ON” when the camera launches.

◆Keep a distance of at least 10cm from an object when using the auto focus function.

◆Turn the auto focus “OFF” if the object cannot be properly focused because:

- It is dark
- The object is poorly contrasted (there is little difference between bright and dark)
- There are close objects and remote objects seen through the lens
- There is a light or something in the shooting area
- The object is moving
- You are shaking a FOMA terminal

◆Completing the focus lock fixes the camera brightness. If the camera is moved after completing the focus lock, the camera brightness may be inappropriate then. In this case, retry the focus lock, or cancel the AF lock to adjust the brightness.

Shooting with a FOMA terminal opened <Shoot open>

1 On the standby screen▶●▶“ ”▶●

The “Photo mode” screen appears.
Pressing 📷 (📷) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen also launches the “Photo mode” screen.

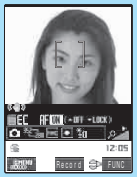


Photo mode

Function menu➡p.186

■ **To turn on/off the auto focus**
▶⏱

■ **To shoot with a FOMA terminal folded**
“Shoot folded” →p.188

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or 📷 (📷)

The image is shot. The incoming call lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds. The “image checking” screen appears.



Image checking

Function menu➡p.187

■ **To shoot with Focus fixed**
▶Set the auto focus to “OFF”▶● or 📷 (📷)

■ **To retake the shot**
▶CLR▶“YES”

3 ●

The shot image is stored in the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.188).

Shooting still images with AF lock

1 Photo mode screen (p.185) ▶Press ⊙ to set the auto focus to "ON"

Confirm that the auto focus icon is "AF ON". →p.182

2 Point the camera at an object▶⊙

Pressing ⊙ again resets the focus lock. Completing the focus lock turns the focus frame into green and sounds the AF lock tone.

3 ● or ▯(📷)

The image is shot.

NOTE

- ◆It may take some time to lock focus. If the focus lock is failed, the AF lock tone does not sound and the focus frame turns into dotted red.
- ◆Following the steps below also displays the Photo mode screen:
  - MENU▶LifeKit(LifeKit)▶"Camera"▶"Photo mode"
- ◆Some images may go grainy, depending on the sizes. When you set the "Display size" to "Fit in display" and shoot an image in QCIF (176 × 144) or in SubQCIF (128 × 96), the image may look grainy.
- ◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card while saving an image to the miniSD memory card. Doing so may cause a FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.
- ◆Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆The incoming call lamp flashes in green while data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.

Function menu (Photo mode screen/Continuous mode screen)

Front camera/ Rear camera	Switches between front camera and rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.183).
Storage setting	
AFchange	Turns on/off the auto focus on the rear camera.
Light	Turns on/off the light. The light cannot be turned on/off when using the front camera.
Select finder*2	Sets whether the preview of the image shot with a FOMA terminal open will be shown on the display or image display.
• **Front** (default)	Shows the preview on the display.
• **Rear**	Shows the preview on the image display.
Interval/Number*1	Sets the shooting interval and the number of shots you want to take on the continuous mode. →p.190
Image quality	
• **Photo mode**	"Selecting the mode suitable for shooting"→p.194
• **Brightness**	**▶Use ⊙ to adjust the brightness ▶●** Selects the brightness among 5 levels from "－2 to ±0 to ＋2". The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. "±0" is the default setting when the camera launches.
• **White balance**	"Setting the white balance"→p.193 The white balance cannot be specified unless Photo mode is "OFF".
• **Color mode set**	"Setting the effects on the photographed images"→p.194
• **Image tuning**	"Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images"→p.194 Cannot be changed when using the front camera.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. "Sound 1" is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer. →p.198
Select frame*2	Sets a frame for the image. →p.191
Auto save set	Turns on/off the auto save set.
• **ON**	Does not display the image checking screen when you shoot an image. The image is automatically saved to the destination folder specified in "Select to save".
• **OFF** (default)	Displays the image checking screen when you shoot an image.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot is saved.
• **Phone** (default)	**▶Select a folder to save the image** The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	**▶Select a folder to save the image**
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the sizes of data stored and available spaces on the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.
Shake correction*2	Sets the shake correction. →p.195

*1 : The option cannot be set in Photo mode.
*2 : The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

<Shutter sound>
◆A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting "Original" for "Manner mode set" and "ON" for "VM tone" emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Select to save>
◆Selecting miniSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.
◆You cannot select miniSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<Select finder>
◆When a FOMA terminal is folded, the preview of a shot image is shown on the image display regardless of this setting.
◆When the front camera is used, the preview of a shot image is shown on the display regardless of this setting.

<File restriction>
◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

● Setting the image quality for still images

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Continuous mode screen (p.189)▶ −(FUNC)▶"Storage setting"▶Select "Super Fine", "Fine" or "Normal"

The image quality can also be set from the shooting menu. →p.183
Data sizes caused by the combinations of "Storage setting" and "Select size" settings are listed below. Higher the image quality (in order of Super Fine, Fine and Normal), larger the data size becomes.
For saved images, add up to 5K bytes to the sizes below.

Storage setting / Select size	Super Fine	Fine (default)	Normal
4M (2,304 × 1,728)	Approx. 1,200K bytes max.	Approx. 1,000K bytes max.	Approx. 750K bytes max.
QXGA (2,048 × 1,536)	Approx. 1,000K bytes max.	Approx. 750K bytes max.	Approx. 500K bytes max.
UXGA (1,616 × 1,212) SXGA (1,280 × 960)	Approx. 600K bytes max.	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 305K bytes max.
VGA (640 × 480)	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.
CIF (352 × 288)	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.	Approx. 40K bytes max.
Screen (240 × 345) Stand-by (240 × 320)	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.	Approx. 40K bytes max.
QCIF (176 × 144) SubQCIF (128 × 96) Small(117×96)*	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 20K bytes max.	Approx. 9,000K bytes max.

* : The sizes can be set for saving Chara-den as a still image. →p.349

Function menu (image checking screen)

Save	Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.186).
Mirror save	Saves the mirrored image (inverted left-right) to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Compose message	"Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted" →p.191
Edit image	**▶Edit the image** Adds a frame or effect to the image. "Editing Images" →p.335 The image cannot be edited if the size is larger than VGA (640 × 480).
Set as display	**■To specify for screens such as standby, dialing or receiving ▶Select a screen** **■To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶Select a screen▶Check the image▶●▶"YES"** Sets the image for the standby screen, etc. The image cannot be set if the size is SXGA (1,280 ×960) or larger or if the size is VGA (640 × 480) or CIF (352 × 288) and the Storage setting is Super Fine.
Change frame	"Changing the frame" →p.191
Mirror display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.

Continued on next page

Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot is saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the image** The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the image**
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

NOTE

◆Pressing ● (MAIL) on the image checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the still image attached/inserted.

<Edit image>

◆Selecting “Edit image” changes the display to the Normal display.

◆“Compose message” and “Save” are available after you edit an image.

<Set as display>

◆Selecting “miniSD” in “Select to save” saves the images to the Camera folder under My picture (you cannot save the images to the miniSD memory card).

<Mirror display>

◆An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting “Normal display” means what you see is what you get.

<Select to save>

◆Selecting miniSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.

◆You cannot select miniSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

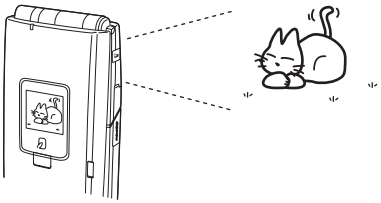
<File restriction>

◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Shooting with a FOMA terminal folded <Shoot folded>

You can launch the camera to shoot still images with a FOMA terminal folded.

- You cannot shoot in AF lock.
- If “External keys guard” is set to “ON”, you cannot launch the camera by pressing ● (📷), use the light by pressing ● (☼) or shoot a still image by pressing ▭ (Assist key)/● (📷).



Look at the picture above. Make sure not to turn the rear camera and the image display upside down but to place the rear camera upward.
You can check the shot on the image display.

1 Press ● (📷) for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded

The camera launches in Photo mode and the shooting indicator lamp lights up in red for approx. 3 seconds.
The image size is the one used at the last shooting.
To change the image size, zoom or brightness, open the FOMA terminal.

■ To use the light

▶● (☼)
The light is turned on/off.

2 Point the camera at an object▶Press ▭ (Assist key) or ● (📷)

The image is shot. The shooting indicator lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds.

3 Check the shot image ▶▭ (Assist key)

The image is saved.

NOTE

◆You can also shoot an image with a FOMA terminal folded when the shooting screen appears. When a FOMA terminal is folded, the shooting indicator lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds.

◆Setting “Auto save set” (p.186) to “ON” allows you to automatically save still images shot with a FOMA terminal folded. Select the destination in “Select to save”.

◆The image is scaled down to fit the image display and intended as an approximate guide.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Shooting continuously

<Continuous mode>

Default setting	Select size: CIF(352×288) Shot interval: 0.5 seconds (A-Continuous mode) Shot number: 4

You can shoot a series of up to 20 continuous still images. The continuous mode is categorized into two types: Auto and Manual.

- Auto continuous mode allows you to specify the number of shots and the interval. Once you release the shutter, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots at the specified interval. The auto focus function is available only for the first shot. The second and subsequent shots are shot with the focus point placed for the first shot.
- Manual continuous mode allows you to shoot up to the specified number, one shot each time you release the shutter. You can change the auto focus settings for each shot (“Photo mode”→p.185).
- The following image sizes are available: CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), SubQCIF (128 × 96)
- You can enjoy the continuous image shots as an animation added to the original animation.
- Continuous shooting is unavailable when a FOMA terminal is folded. Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the continuous shooting.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185) ▶ (MENU) or 1 ▶ “AUTO” or “”

The “Continuous shooting” screen appears.

Shot number/Max. shot count



Continuous shooting (Ex. manual)

Function menu➡p.186

■ **To turn on/off the auto focus**

▶

2 Point the camera at an object▶ or ( )

Locking the focus turns the focus frame into green. After the shooting, the “Continuous shooting checking screen” appears showing four of the shots at the same time.



Continuous shooting checking

Function menu➡p.190

■ **To shoot with AF lock**

“Shooting still images with AF lock”→p.186

■ **To shoot with Focus fixed**

▶Press to set the auto focus to “OFF”▶ or ( )

■ **To stop the continuous shooting**

Auto continuous mode: ▶ ▶“NO”

Manual continuous mode: ▶ (or ▶“NO”)

The shooting is finished and the continuous shooting checking screen appears.

■ **To select the image to save**

▶Use to select an image

The icon (check mark) appears for the selected image.

Repeat the step to select images.

To cancel the selected image, select the image again.

■ **To check the images in detail**

▶Use to select an image▶ (Detail)

Use to change the image to check.

To return to the list, press .

To save the image displayed in detail, press . The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.186).



Detail checking

Function menu➡p.190

3 (FUNC)▶Select the saving method (Store selection, Store all or Store all&anime)

“Function menu (continuous shooting checking screen)”→p.190

The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.186).

If “Store selection” is selected, the “Continuous shooting checking screen” appears with the saved images removed after the image saving.

NOTE

- If you receive a call during continuous shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the Continuous shooting checking screen shows the images you shot until the interruption.
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card while saving an image to the miniSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.
- Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- In Manual continuous mode, the incoming call lamp lights in red each time you shoot. The lamp lights in red in Auto continuous mode. It flashes in green while data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- When you automatically shoot a strong light or moving object, the interval may become longer than the specified one.
- Keep a FOMA terminal steady until the checking screen appears or while a message indicating that the shot is being processed appears.

Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

- "Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 5" are the default settings for Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144) and SubQCIF (128 × 96).

1 Continuous mode screen (p.189)▶ (FUNC)▶"Interval/Number"▶Select any item

Shot interval	Selects the shooting interval among "0.5 seconds", "1.0 seconds" and "2.0 seconds". The interval cannot be set for Manual continuous mode.
Shot number	**▶Enter the number of shots (2-digit)** Sets the number of shots between "05 and 20" (5 to 20 shots)*. Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the number of shots. To set the currently displayed number, press ●.

* : "05 to 10" (5 to 10 shots) appears for Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320)

2 After changing the settings, press CLR▶CLR

NOTE

<Shot number>

- ◆When CIF (352 × 288) is set as the image size, the number of shots is always set to 4.
- ◆Changing the image size from CIF (352 × 288) to another size changes the number of shots to 5.
- ◆Changing the image size to Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320) changes the number of shots set to 11 or more to 10.

Function menu (continuous shooting checking screen)

Store selection	Saves the selected still images. **▶"Save" or "Mirror save"** The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Store all	Saves all the still images. **▶"Save" or "Mirror save"** The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Store all&anime	Saves all the still images as the original animation. **▶"Save" or "Mirror save"▶Select No. for original animation** The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Select this	Attaches ☑ to the selected still image to show that it is selected.
Select all	Attaches ☑ to all the still images to show that they are selected.
Release this	Deselects the selected still image. ☑ disappears.
Release all	Deselects all the still images. ☑ disappears.
Mirror display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot is saved.
• **Phone** (default)	**▶Select a folder to save the image** The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	**▶Select a folder to save the image**
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the selected still image.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Restriction all	Sets file restrictions on all the still images.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes all shot the images and returns to the continuous shooting screen.

NOTE

<Store all&anime>

- ◆"Store all&anime" cannot be selected if only one image has been shot or one or more of the photographed images have already been saved.
- ◆Even if "miniSD" is selected in "Select to save", images are saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

<Mirror display>

- ◆An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

<Select to save>

- ◆Selecting miniSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.
- ◆You cannot select miniSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction/Restriction all>

- ◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Function menu (Detail checking screen)

Save	Saves the displayed still image.
Mirror save	Inverts the left and right of the displayed image to save.
Compose message	"Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted" →p.191

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Mirror display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, “Normal display” appears.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE

◆Pressing ● (MAIL) on the Detail checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the still image attached/inserted.

<Mirror display>

◆An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting “Normal display” means what you see is what you get.

Shooting framed images

<Framed photography>

Images of CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96) can be framed.

- Pre-installed frames→p.456
- You can download frames from sites.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)▶●(FUNC)▶“Select frame”▶Select a frame

■ **To cancel framed photography**
▶“OFF”

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or ▮ (📷)

The “frame shooting check” screen appears.

3 Check and save the shot as you do in “Shooting with a FOMA terminal opened” (p.185)

You can change the frame before saving the still image.→p.191

NOTE

◆Pressing ● (Play) on the Select frame screen allows you to check the selected frame.

◆You can shoot a framed image with a FOMA terminal folded. The selected frame appears on the image display.

◆Framed images shot with the front camera appear mirrored (inverted left-right). They are automatically saved in the normal display. When the images are converted from mirrored to normal, the frames are also inverted left-right.

◆If the sizes of the image and frame are the same, the image can be framed regardless of portrait or landscape.

- If a portrait frame is selected for a landscape image, the frame is rotated 90° counterclockwise.
- If a landscape frame is selected for a portrait image, the frame is rotated 90° clockwise.

◆Exiting the camera releases the frame.

Changing the frame

You can change the frame before saving the still image.

- You cannot remove the frame.

1 Frame shooting check screen▶●(FUNC)▶“Change frame”▶Select a frame

Use ⊕ to change the frame.



Frame shooting check

2 Check the framed image▶●

The screen returns to the frame shooting check.

■ **To rotate a frame 180°**
▶●(Rotate)

■ **To cancel the selected frame**
▶●(FUNC)▶“Cancel”

Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted

If a still image cannot be attached/inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached/inserted.

<Example: Selecting “Compose message” on the image checking screen>

1 Image checking screen (p.185)▶●(FUNC)▶“Compose message”▶Select any item

Attach image[*1] (i-mode mail)	
• **Attach mail**[*3]	Reduces only the file size to attach the image.
• **QVGA scale down**	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to attach the resized image.
Insert image[*2] (Deco-mail)	
• **Insert mail**[*4]	Reduces only the file size to insert the image.
• **SubQCIF scale down**	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to insert the resized image.

*1 : Shooting an image of Stand-by (240 × 320) or smaller does not display the screen for selecting “Attach mail” or “QVGA scale down”.

Continued on next page

*2 : Shooting an image of SubQCIF (128 × 96) does not display the screen for selecting “Insert mail” or “SubQCIF scale down”.
*3 : This option cannot be selected for 4M (2,304 × 1,728).
*4 : This option cannot be selected for the image size other than QCIF (176 × 144).

2 Compose an i-mode/Deco-mail message

Composing and sending an i-mode message→p.243
Composing and sending a Deco-mail message→p.247

NOTE

- Pressing ● (MAIL) on the image checking screen also allows you to attach or insert the image to an i-mode mail or Deco-mail.
- An image whose size exceeds 10,000 bytes is called large image. A large image sent to an i-mode terminal is resized in the i-shot Center so that it can be received by the i-mode terminal.
- If you attach a large image whose size is 10,001 to 500K bytes, the image to attach is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.186). Selecting “miniSD” saves the image to the Camera folder under My picture (you cannot save the image to the miniSD memory card).
- You cannot compose an i-mode message when there are already 20 draft messages stored.

<Movie mode>

Shooting Movies

Use the built-in camera to shoot movies with voice.

- Movie shooting is unavailable when a FOMA terminal is folded. Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the movie shooting.
- If you set “File size” to “Long time” and shoot a movie, the movie checking screen does not appear, but the movie is saved directly to the miniSD memory card and then the shooting is finished.
- The shooting time depends on the conditions such as the object.
- You cannot shoot movies while talking on the phone.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185) ▶● (MENU) or 1 ▶“ ”

The desktop icon is also available for launching the “Movie mode” screen.→p.148



Movie mode
Function menu➡p.192

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or ( )

The shooting starts. During shooting, the incoming call lamp flashes in red (it turns green when “File size” is set to “Long time”).
You can zoom in/out during shooting.
The screen indicates the approximate time left to shoot.



■ If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size
▶●
The movie checking screen appears.

3 ● or ( )

The shooting terminates and the “Movie checking screen” appears.

■ To play the movie you shot
▶●(FUNC)▶“Play”

■ To reshoot a movie
▶CLR▶“YES”



Movie checking
Function menu➡p.195

4 ●

The movie is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.193).

NOTE

- Following the steps below also displays the Movie mode screen:
  - MENU▶LifeKit(LifeKit)▶“Camera”▶“Movie mode”
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card while saving a movie to the miniSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- If you receive a call during movie shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the “movie checking” screen shows the movie you shot until the interruption.
- If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the movies.
- Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- The incoming call lamp flashes in green while data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- If you press any key to perform a function such as zoom in/out during shooting, the sound may be recorded.

Function menu (Movie mode screen)

Front camera/ Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.183).
File size	
Storage setting	Sets the image quality and duration for movie shooting.
• **Normal** (default)	Shoots a movie with the typical quality and duration.
• **Fine mode**	Shoots a movie with quality higher. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
• **Long dur. mode**	Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
• **Move mode**	Shoots a movie when the object is moving around. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Light	Turns on/off the light. The light cannot be turned on/off when using the front camera.
Image quality	
• **Photo mode**	“Selecting the mode suitable for shooting”→p.194
• **Brightness**	**▶Use ⊙ to adjust the brightness ▶●** Selects the brightness among 5 levels from “－2 to ±0 to ＋2”. The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. “±0” is the default setting when the camera launches.
• **White balance**	“Setting the white balance”→p.193
• **Color mode set**	“Setting the effects on the photographed images”→p.194
• **Image tuning**	“Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images”→p.194 Cannot be changed when using the front camera.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer.→p.198
Movie type set	
• **Normal** (when the camera launches)	Records video and voice.
• **Video**	Shoots a movie without voice.
• **Voice**	Records a voice without movies.
Auto save set	Turns on/off the auto save set.
• **ON**	Does not display the movie checking screen when shooting a movie. The movie is automatically saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
• **OFF** (default)	Displays the movie checking screen when shooting a movie.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie is saved.
• **Normal or Video**	Specifies the folder where movies with video are saved.
• **Phone** (default)	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the miniSD memory card.
• **Voice**	Specifies the folder where movies with voice only are saved.
• **Phone**	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the miniSD memory card.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Sets the display mode for movies.
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the sizes of data stored and available spaces on the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.
Face stamp	**▶Select a face stamp** Places a stamp that follows facial movements on the Movie mode screen. Face stamps cannot be selected if the image size is not QCIF (176 × 144).
Shake correction	Sets the shake correction.→p.195

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

◆A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting “Original” for “Manner mode set” and “ON” for “VM tone” emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Movie type set>

◆The movie type cannot be set in Voice mode.

<Auto save set/File restriction>

◆The auto save or file restriction cannot be set if the file size is set to “Long time”.

<Select to save>

◆Selecting “miniSD” in “Normal or Video” creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.

◆You cannot set “miniSD” if:

- The number of files in the specified folder reaches the maximum (for “Normal or Video”).
- The number of files in the specified folder other than the SD Multimedia folder reaches the maximum (for “Voice”).

<File restriction>

◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot movie after it is saved.

● Setting the white balance

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Continuous mode screen (p.189)/Movie mode screen (p.192)▶－(FUNC)▶“Image quality”▶“White balance”▶Select any item

The white balance can also be set from the shooting menu.→p.183

Continued on next page

Auto (default)	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under the typical shooting conditions. The color intensity may be slightly reduced if the colors in the image are distorted.
Fine	Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
Cloudy	Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

NOTE

- If the camera is set to the Photo mode, Auto continuous mode, Manual continuous mode or Picture voice and the Photo mode is not "OFF", the white balance is automatically set to "Auto".
- Selecting "Fine", "Cloudy", "Light bulb" or "Fluorescent lamp" may make the image more vivid under the specified conditions than Auto.
- The settings are retained after you exit the camera, and applied to the videophone shooting. →p.83

Setting the effects on the photographed images

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Continuous mode screen (p.189)/Movie mode screen (p.192)▶●(FUNC)▶"Image quality"▶"Color mode set"▶Select any item

Normal (when the camera launches)	Shoots with the typical color settings.
Sepia	Shoots a sepia-tone image.
Monochrome	Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.

Selecting the mode suitable for shooting

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Continuous mode screen (p.189)/Movie mode screen (p.192)▶●(FUNC)▶"Image quality"▶"Photo mode"▶Select any item

The mode can also be set from the shooting menu. →p.183

Auto[*1] (default: Photo mode/ Continuous mode)	Selects the shooting mode automatically.
Portrait (default: Movie mode)	Is the shooting mode for people.
Scenery	Is the shooting mode for scenery (including night view).
Close-up	Is the shooting mode for close-up. →p.178
Sports mode[*1]	Is the shooting mode for moving objects.
Night mode[*1*2]	Is the shooting mode for objects in a dark place.
OFF[*1]	Disables any effects for shooting.

*1 : The options cannot be set in Movie mode.
*2 : The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

- Only Portrait, Night mode and OFF can be selected for the front camera in shooting a still image. Portrait is selected for shooting in Continuous mode or Movie mode with the front camera.
- In Night mode or Scenery, the shake correction may not properly work even if Shake correction is set to "Auto".
- Auto, Scenery, Close-up or Sports mode is restored to Portrait when the camera is switched to the front.
- Auto, Sports mode, Night mode (in Photo mode only) or OFF is restored to Portrait when Photo mode or Continuous mode is switched to Movie mode or Chance capture.
- Night mode is restored to Auto when Photo mode is switched to Continuous mode.

Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images

Setting this function according to the frequency of power supply in the area you use the FOMA terminal may decrease flicker on the screen that is caused by fluorescent light, etc.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Continuous mode screen (p.189)/Movie mode screen (p.192)▶●(FUNC)▶"Image quality"▶"Image tuning"▶Select any item

Auto (default)	Avoids flicker automatically.
Mode 1(50Hz)	Is the mode for shooting in 50Hz-frequency areas.
Mode 2(60Hz)	Is the mode for shooting in 60Hz-frequency areas.

NOTE

- The flicker may not be fully avoided depending on the ambient brightness or the colors of objects.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Setting the shake correction

The shake correction function is available for shooting with the rear camera.

- This function is available in Photo mode, Movie mode, Chance capture or Picture voice. It is unavailable in Continuous mode.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Movie mode screen (p.192)▶(FUNC)▶"Shake correction"▶Select any item

Auto (default)	**■Photo mode (Photo mode, Picture voice)** Automatically corrects camera shake in a place where camera shake can easily occur or in a dark place. **■Movie mode (Movie mode, Chance capture)** Always corrects camera shake regardless of the situation.
OFF	Shoots without using the shake correction.

NOTE

- ◆This function only reduces the camera shake, and the effect depends on the objects or situations.
- ◆The shake correction may not properly work when:
  - The camera shake is large
  - The zoom is used
  - The object is moving
  - "Photo mode" is set to "Night mode" or "Scenery"
- ◆The spectrum or noise may be seen if part of the object is moving. In this case, set this function to "OFF" to shoot.
- ◆The shake correction uses the ambient pixels. The shooting area varies depending on the "Auto"/"OFF" setting.
- ◆If this function is activated, the processing time after shooting may be longer (about two seconds) due to the shake correction process.

Function menu (movie checking screen)

Play	Plays the movie you shot.
Save	Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Compose message	**▶Compose an i-mode message** Composes an i-mode message with the movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
Set as stand-by	Sets the movie for the standby screen.
Display size	Sets the display mode for movies. The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Edit title	Edits a movie title.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie is saved.
• **Normal or Video**	Specifies the folder where movies with video are saved.
• **Phone** (default)	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the miniSD memory card.
• **Voice**	Specifies the folder where movies with voice only are saved.
• **Phone**	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	**▶Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the miniSD memory card.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the movie to reshoot new one.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆Movies to send are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save". Selecting "miniSD" saves the movies to the Camera folder under i-motion (you cannot save them to the miniSD memory card).
- ◆If a movie of QVGA (320×240) is to be attached, a message asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached appears. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176×144) so that the movie is saved in Data box and attached to an i-mode mail.
- ◆Pressing (MAIL) on the movie checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the movie attached.

<Set as stand-by>

- ◆The movie to set for the standby screen is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save". Selecting "miniSD" saves the movie to the Camera folder under i-motion (you cannot save the movie to the miniSD memory card).
- ◆A movie with only voice cannot be set.

Continued on next page

<Select to save>

◆Selecting “miniSD” in “Normal or Video” creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.

◆You cannot set “miniSD” if:

- The number of files in the specified folder reaches the maximum (for “Normal or Video”).
- The number of files in the specified folder other than the SD Multimedia folder reaches the maximum (for “Voice”).

Capturing important scenes

<Chance capture>

Use the chance capture function if you do not want to miss important moments in shooting a movie.

- A movie you shot for the specified shooting time (roughly 45 seconds by default) before ending the shooting is saved. The part shot before the shooting time is not saved.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)▶ (MENU) or 1▶“ ”

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or (📷)



The shooting starts.
You can zoom in/out during shooting.
After the available shooting time runs out, the displayed remaining time turns to the “00:00” flash.

3 ● or (📷)

The shooting terminates.

4 Check and save the movie as you do in “Shooting Movies” (p.192)

NOTE

◆You can also activate the chance capture function by selecting (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Chance capture” on the “Photo mode” screen.

◆The shot finished before the available shooting time is saved from the beginning to the end as well as the “Movie mode”.

Adding voice to still images

<Picture voice>

Add the voice to a still image of QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96) to make a movie.

<Example: Shooting a still image and adding voice>

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)▶ (MENU) or 1▶“ ”

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or (📷)



Recording start

A still image is shot.
The “recording start” screen appears.
You can set the file size by selecting “File size” from the function menu before recording the voice.

Function menu➡p.196

3 ● or (📷)



The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.

4 ● or (📷)

The recording terminates.

5 Check and save the created picture voice as you do in “Shooting Movies” (p.192)

NOTE

◆You can also create a picture voice by selecting (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” ▶ “Photo mode” on the Photo mode screen.

◆If you want to create a picture voice using the existing still image, follow Step 3 and later after following the steps below:
On the Photo mode screen, press (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” ▶ “My picture” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Function menu (recording start screen)

File size	Sets the file size for recording.
• **Restricted (Short)** (when the camera launches)	You can record up to 290K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a typical movie.
• **Restricted (Long)**	You can record up to 490K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a large-sized movie.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Using Voice mode

- A voice can be recorded without movies.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)▶ (MENU) or 1 ▶ “ ”

The desktop icon is also available for launching the “recording start” screen. →p.148

2 or ( )

The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.

3 or ( )

After the recording is finished, the “recording check” screen appears.

4

The movie is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.193).

NOTE

- ◆Setting “File size” to “Long time” allows you to record up to about 90 minutes.
- ◆You can also record in Voice mode by selecting (FUNC) ▶ “Movie type set” ▶ “Voice” on the “Movie mode” screen.
- ◆Voice that can be recorded in Voice mode is MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.

Changing the Shooting Settings

Perform the camera settings such as the zoom, auto timer or image quality.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom allows you to adjust an image so that it will be shot in your desired size.

- You cannot adjust the zoom if you are using the front camera and the image size is VGA (640 × 480) or JAVA (240 × 240).
- You can zoom in/out while shooting a movie.
- The zoom is digital.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Continuous mode screen (p.189)/Movie mode screen (p.192)▶Use to adjust the zoom

: Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.
: Zooms out by one step to 1× (default) each time you press the key.
Press and hold or to zoom in/out continuously.

Still image/ Movie	Rear/ Front	Size	Zoom	Maximum
Still image	Rear camera	4M (2,304 × 1,728)	16 steps	Approx. 4×
		QXGA (2,048 × 1,536)		
		UXGA (1,616 × 1,212)		
		SXGA (1,280 × 960)		
		VGA (640 × 480)		
		CIF (352 × 288)		
		Screen (240 × 345)		
		Stand-by (240 × 320)		
		JAVA (240 × 240)*1		
		QCIF (176 × 144)		Approx. 9×
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		
Movie	Rear camera	QVGA (320 × 240)	3 steps (7 steps*2)	Approx. 1.44× (Approx. 3.6×*2)
		QCIF (176 × 144)	16 steps	Approx. 7.2× (Approx. 9×*2)
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		Approx. 9×
Still image/ Movie	Front camera	VGA (640 × 480)	—	—
		CIF (352 × 288)	2 steps	Approx. 1.8×
		JAVA (240 × 240)*1	—	—
		QCIF (176 × 144)	2 steps	Approx. 2×
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		

*1 : This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-αppli.
*2 : If “Shake correction” is set to “OFF”

NOTE

- ◆“1×” is set when the camera launches. Changing the image size or camera mode also changes the zoom to “1×”.
- ◆Changing the zoom may slightly change the image quality.

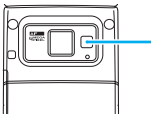
Turning on the light

When it is not so bright (e.g. in a room), turning on the light of a FOMA terminal brightens the object.

- If you do not shoot for 30 seconds or so after turning on the light, it is automatically turned off.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Continuous mode screen (p.189)/Movie mode screen (p.192)▶ (-☼-)

To turn off the light, press (-☼-).



NOTE

- ◆When a movie is shot, continuous lighting time is up to approximately 5 minutes.
- ◆You cannot turn on the light when using the front camera to record a voice without movies.
- ◆This function is only supplementary. You cannot always get enough light.

Using the auto timer

Setting the auto timer allows you to shoot images without holding a FOMA terminal (e.g. to shoot people including yourself or to avoid the camera shake).

- The auto timer is available for Photo mode, Auto Continuous mode and Movie mode. It is unavailable for Manual Continuous mode.
- The auto timer is reset to "OFF" each time you finish shooting.
- The auto focus is available for Photo mode. When shooting with AF lock, focus on the object before setting the auto timer.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Continuous mode screen (p.189)/Movie mode screen (p.192)▶(FUNC)▶"Auto timer"▶"ON"▶Enter a 2-digit number for the auto timer



Enter a 2-digit number between "01" and "15" for the auto timer.
Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the auto timer. To set the currently displayed number, press ●.
"10 seconds" is set at the time of purchase.

If the auto timer is set

The "⏲" icon appears on the screen to show that the auto timer is set.



Pressing ● or (📷) sounds the auto timer tone, and then the auto timer starts running.
The incoming call lamp, ●, ● and "⏲" flash.

The countdown tone sounds roughly five seconds before the shooting. The incoming call lamp, ● and ● flash rapidly.

During the auto timer countdown, you can shoot manually by pressing ● or (📷).

■ To cancel the auto timer settings

▶●(FUNC)▶"Auto timer"▶"OFF"

■ To stop the timer while it is running

▶● (Quit) or CLR

NOTE

- ◆Exiting the camera sets the auto timer to "OFF".

<Bar code reader>

Using the Bar Code Reader

Using the rear camera allows a FOMA terminal to scan JAN codes and QR codes. The data scanned especially from QR codes can be used for displaying/copying the text, using the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, i-αppli To, or adding to bookmark/phonebook. The FOMA terminal can also scan image or melody data to play or save.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to five scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning.
- When scanning a bar code, keep about 7 to 9cm between the rear camera and the code.

■ JAN code and QR code

- JAN code



JAN code is a series of vertical lines (bars) with various widths and spaces to represent numbers. A FOMA terminal can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

* Scanning the JAN code above displays "4942857113068".

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

● QR code

QR code is a type of two-dimensional symbology expressing numbers, alphabets, kanji, kana or pictographs both horizontally and vertically. Some QR codes express images or melodies. Some data are divided into several QR codes.

* Scanning the QR code above displays "株式会社NTTドコモ" (NTT DoCoMo, Inc.).

Scanning codes

1 (MENU) ▶ LifeKit ▶ **"Bar code reader"**

The "Bar code reader" screen appears.



Bar code reader

2 **"New"**

The shooting mode is automatically set to "Close-up".

3 **Position a JAN code or QR code inside the recognition field**



The area surrounded by "⌜, ⌝, ⌞, ⌟" at the corners of the screen is the recognition field.

Focus the JAN code or QR code so that the entire code appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.

■ **To adjust the zoom**

(Left): Returns to default.

(Right): Zooms in.

■ **To turn on the light**

▶(Right) (ON) or ▮(☼)

To turn off the light, press (Right) (OFF) or ▮(☼).

4 ● ▶ **Check the scanned data**

The focus frame changes as follows during scanning:

- White: Before focusing
- Dotted white: Focusing
- Green: Focused
- Dotted red: Focusing failed

It may take long to scan some data.

■ **To cancel scanning**

▶●▶●

■ **To scan data divided into several QR codes**

▶●▶Repeat Steps 3 to 4

A FOMA terminal can scan up to 16 QR codes expressing one data.

■ **To discard scanned data**

▶CLR▶"YES"

5 (Left) **(FUNC) ▶"Store"▶"YES"▶●**

NOTE

- Codes other than JAN or QR cannot be scanned. Some bar codes may not be scanned, depending on the size.
- A FOMA terminal may fail to scan a code, depending on the scratch, stain, damage, print quality or the reflection of light.
- You can also launch the Bar code reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the screen. However, you cannot display the already stored data or save the scanned data here. Image or melody data cannot be scanned correctly on the screen. Characters that cannot be entered on the text editing screen are replaced with space (blank) characters.
- A data cannot be stored if it is a JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, a JPEG image whose size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high, a GIF image whose size exceeds 640 dots wide or 640 dots high, a GIF image whose total dots exceed 640 × 480, or the file size exceeds 100K bytes.
- You cannot store a progressive JPEG image whose size exceeds 640 dots wide or 640 dots high or whose total dots exceed 640 × 480.
  Progressive JPEG image→p.223
- The scanned data cannot be stored on the miniSD memory card.
- On the Bar code reader screen, selecting ▶(Left) (FUNC) ▶ "Add desktop icon" adds the desktop icon for this function.

Using the scanned data

1 (MENU) ▶ LifeKit ▶ **"Bar code reader"▶"Reading data list"**

The "Reading data list" screen appears.



Reading data list

Function menu➡p.200

2 **Select the scanned data**

The "Reading data detail" screen appears.



Reading data detail

Function menu➡p.200

Continued on next page

3 Select any of the displayed items

"Add to phonebook" : Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook →p.111, 112

"Compose message": Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered →p.243

"Add bookmark" : Bookmarks the URL and title →p.220

"Activate i-αppli" : Launches the specified i-αppli →p.300

Melody icon : Plays the melody →p.350

Phone number : Calls the number using the Phone To (AV Phone To) function →p.226

Mail address : Composes an i-mode message using the Mail To function →p.227

URL : Accesses the site using the Web To function →p.227

NOTE

◆The title of the scanned data would be:

- Title: yyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4-digit)
  If two or more data are to be stored at the same time, 4-digit numbers are assigned to the data in numerical order.

Function menu (Reading data list screen)

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the selected data. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Result	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all data.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Store	Saves the scanned data.
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen. If the displayed data is not stored yet, a message asking whether to delete the data appears.
Internet	Accesses the site if the URL is selected. "Web To function" →p.227
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message entered in the scanned data if "Compose message" is selected. Composes an i-mode message with a mail address entered if the mail address is selected. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →p.243
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected. "Phone To function" →p.226
Add to phonebook	Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo in the scanned data to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is selected. Adds the phone number to the phonebook if it is selected. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" →p.111 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" →p.112
Add bookmark	Adds the URL and title in the scanned data to Bookmark if "Add bookmark" is selected. Adds the URL to Bookmark if it is selected. "Adding bookmarks" →p.220
Save image	**▶Select a folder▶"YES"▶Select an item** Saves the selected image to My picture under Data box. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Save melody	**▶"YES"▶Select a folder▶"YES"▶Select an item** Saves the selected melody to Melody under Data box. If you do not set the melody as the ring tone, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Activate i-αppli	Launches the i-αppli specified in the scanned data if "Activate i-αppli" is selected. "Launching an i-αppli from the Bar code reader" →p.300
Copy	Copies text contained in the scanned data. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →p.436

NOTE

◆If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be scanned by the Bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces (blanks).

<Internet/Add bookmark>

◆You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if there are unusable characters in the URL.

<Compose message>

◆The address cannot be entered if it contains characters that cannot be entered.

<Dialing>

- Double-byte/single-byte numbers and symbols (#, ＊ and +) can be contained in the phone number. You cannot make a call if any other characters are contained.
- The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

<Activate i-αppli>

- You cannot launch an i-αppli from the scanned data if "Bar code "i-αppli To"" under "i-αppli To setting" (p.299) is not selected.
- You cannot launch an i-αppli if no application is specified.

<Access reader>

Scanning Text

Using the built-in camera allows a FOMA terminal to scan printed text then add the scanned text data as a phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose a message. You can also make a call or access website.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to 8 scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning.
- When scanning text, keep about 7 to 9cm between the rear camera and the text.
- Vertically written Japanese text can also be scanned.

Scan mode

The following are the scan modes. Select the mode suitable for the data to scan:

Card read	Scans the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on the business card to add to the phonebook.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the scanned recipient address, subject and message entered.
URL	Scans URL, and accesses the site or adds the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scans the mail address and composes an i-mode message.
Phone number	Scans the phone number and makes a call.
Free memo	Scans Japanese or English text to save to Text memo.

The number of characters that can be scanned

The following table shows the maximum number of characters that can be scanned for each item:

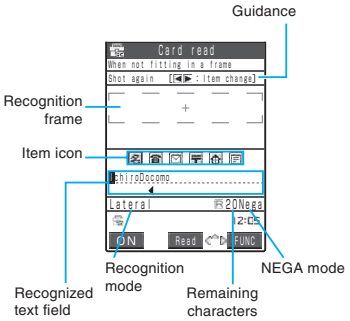
Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
Card read	Name	16 in double-byte, 32 in single-byte
	Phone number	26 in single-byte numbers including #, ＊, +, p (pause), (,), -
	Mail address	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Postal code	7 in single-byte
	Address	50 in double-byte, 100 in single-byte
	Memo	100 in double-byte, 200 in single-byte
Compose message	Receiver	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Subject	15 in double-byte, 30 in single-byte
	Text	128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
URL		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
Mail address		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
Phone number		256 in single-byte numbers including (,), -
Free memo		128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
Dictionary*	Japanese	32 in double-byte, 64 in single-byte
	English	64 in single-byte

* : The option can be selected when the Access reader is launched from Dictionary.

Continued on next page

■ Guide to the scanning screen

Taking Card read for example, the following describes the scanning screen:



Guidance : Shows the operation.

Recognition frame:
Shows the recognition field.

Item icon : Shows the item to scan.
Card read mode: “Name/phone number/mail address/postal code/address/memo”
Compose message mode: “Recipient/subject/message”

Recognized text field:
Shows the scanned text (The guidance appears on some screens).

Recognition mode:
Shows the recognition mode used for scanning “Kanji (lateral writing/vertical writing)/postal code/phone number/mail address/URL”.

Remaining character count:
Shows the number of single-byte characters left that can be scanned.

NEGA mode : Appears if the NEGA/POSI mode is set to Negative fix.

Scanning text

<Example: Scanning text in Card read mode>

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶“Access reader”

The “Access reader” screen appears.



Access reader

2 “New”

The “scanning mode selection” screen appears.
“Scan mode”→p.201



3 “Card read”

The “Access reader scanning” screen appears.
The shooting mode is automatically set to “Close-up” on the rear camera.
Use ○ to select the icon for the item to save.



Access reader scanning

Function menu➡p.203

4 Display the text in the recognition field

Focus the text so that the entire text appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.
If the recognition field cannot display the whole text, the text can be scanned several times.

■ To adjust the zoom

○: Changes from “Normal” to “Large”.
○: Returns from “Large” to “Normal”.

■ To turn on the light

▶○(ON) or ▮(☼)
To turn off the light, press ○ (OFF) or ▮(☼).

5 ●

A FOMA terminal scans the text, and the recognized text appears in red.

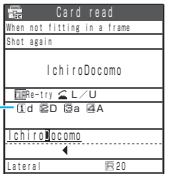
■ To rescan the text

▶CLR▶“YES”

If the screen does not display the entire text, press ○, ▮ (Home) or ▮ (Memo/Check) to show the hidden text.
Pressing ○ (Store) stores the scanned text, and then the text data details screen appears.
The following are the two methods to edit the scanned text:

■ To select the string to edit

▶Use ○ to highlight the string to edit ▶Press the candidate No.
Use ↩ to change the cases between upper and lower if it can be changed.



Candidates

■ To edit in the text editing

▶○(FUNC)▶“Edit”
▶Edit the text
The text can be edited in the typical text editing.
To return to the candidate selection, press ○(FUNC) and select “Select recog. data”.
Go on to Step 6 when you finish editing.



6 ●

The entry is fixed as the text.

■ To scan the remaining text

▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6
Ensure that the last two characters of the scanned text are included in the recognition field.

■ **To scan another item**

▶Use ⊙ to select the item to scan▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6

In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 mail addresses.

7 ⊖(FUNC)▶"Store"

The Reading data detail screen appears. Press CLR to return to the Reading data list screen.

NOTE

- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the "Processing" message appears on the screen.
- A FOMA terminal can scan kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols. However, all katakana characters are scanned as double-byte, and all numbers and alphabets as single-byte. Some of the JIS level 2 kanji characters cannot be scanned.
- A FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. If the text is faxed or copied, if the fonts are decorated, if the character spaces are not fixed, or if the fonts and background cannot be easily distinguished, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize the text. Whether the FOMA terminal can recognize the text correctly may depend on the ambient lighting.
- You can also launch the Access reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the screen.
- When launching the Access reader from Dictionary, choose the reading mode between "Dic.(Japanese)" and "Dic.(English)".
- If you do not press any keys for three minutes or so before scanning the text, the Access reader scanning screen exits and the screen returns to the Access reader.
- Before saving the scanned text data, if you receive a voice call, if you are notified of an alarm clock or if you use another function, the scanned text is saved, and then the corresponding screen appears. Finishing the operation afterwards that occurred during the saving returns the screen to the Reading data detail screen.
- On the Access reader screen, selecting ▶⊖ (FUNC) ▶ "Add desktop icon" adds the desktop icon for this function.
- In URL mode, "http://" is added to the beginning of the scanned string if it does not include "://". If the scanned string includes "://" or "s://" at its beginning, it is replaced with "http://" or "https://".

Using the text data

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶"Access reader"▶"Reading data list"

The "Reading data list" screen appears.



Reading data list

Function menu➡p.203

2 Select the scanned data

The "Reading data detail" screen appears.



Reading data detail

Function menu➡p.204

3 Select any of the displayed items

"Add to phonebook":
Adds the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook→p.111, 112

"Compose message":
Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered→p.243

* Select any displayed item such as Phone number or Mail address to edit the data.

Function menu (Access reader scanning screen/Reading data list screen)

Edit[*1]	Edits the scanned text.
Store[*2]	Saves the scanned data.
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. "Web To function"→p.227
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with all data entered in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
Dialing	Calls the phone number in Phone number mode. "Phone To function"→p.226

Continued on next page

Add to phonebook	Adds the scanned data to the phonebook. Adds the data all at once to the phonebook in Card read mode. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” →p.111 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.112
Add bookmark	Bookmarks the URL in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks”→p.220
Search phonebook	Searches the data in the phonebook using the scanned data. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116 You cannot search on the Access reader scanning screen, in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Add to memo	Adds the scanned data to Text memo. “Composing Text Memos”→p.401 You cannot add data in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Reading mode set*2	Selects the scanning mode among “Card read”, “Compose message”, “URL”, “Mail address”, “Phone number” and “Free memo”.
NEGA/POSI mode*2	Sets the type of printing.
• **Auto setting**	Automatically sets the positive or negative.
• **Positive fix**	Is suitable for printing the dark text on the light background.
• **Negative fix**	Is suitable for printing the light text on the dark background.
Guidance OFF/ Guidance ON*2	Shows or hides the guidance.
Vertical writing/ Lateral writing*2	Selects the lateral writing or vertical writing for the Japanese text to scan.
Display detail*3	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Copy*3	Copies text contained in the scanned data. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.436
Delete this*3	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all*3	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Deletes all the data.

*1 : Only available on the Access reader scanning screen.
*2 : Only appears on the Access reader scanning screen.
*3 : Only appears on the Reading data list screen.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Edit	Edits the text of the selected item. You cannot edit the text when you select “Add to phonebook” or “Compose message”.
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. “Web To function”→p.227
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered if the mail address is selected in Card read mode. Composes an i-mode message with all data entered if “Compose message” is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered if the recipient address, subject or message is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected in Card read mode. Calls the phone number in Phone number mode. “Phone To function”→p.226
Add to phonebook	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook if “Add to phonebook” is selected in Card read mode. Adds the data to the phonebook if the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address, or memo is selected in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected in Compose message mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” →p.111 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.112
Add bookmark	Bookmarks the URL in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks”→p.220

Search phonebook	Searches the phonebook using the selected data. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116 You cannot search when you select “Add to phonebook” or “Compose message”.
Add to memo	Adds the selected data to Text memo. “Composing Text Memos”→p.401 You cannot add the data when you select “Add to phonebook” or “Compose message”.
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen.
Copy	Copies data contained in the scanned data. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.436
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶ **“YES”** Deletes all the data.

NOTE

<Dialing>

- ◆Single-byte numbers and symbols (#, ＊ and +) can be contained in the phone number. Only the numbers and symbols are dialed as the phone number if any other characters are included.
- ◆The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

i-mode/i-motion

What is i-mode? 208
Displaying i-mode Menu ..... i-mode menu 213

Viewing sites

Viewing Sites 214
Viewing and Using Sites 217
Registering My Menu Entries ..... My Menu 218
Changing Your i-mode Password ..... Change i-mode Password 219
Viewing Websites ..... Internet connection 219
Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly ..... Bookmark 220
Saving Site Content ..... Screen memo 222

Downloading images and melodies from sites

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages ..... Save image 223
Downloading Melodies from Sites ..... i-melody 224
Downloading PDF documents from Sites 224
Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites 226
Downloading Data Files from Sites 226

Useful i-mode functions

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions
..... Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions 226

Making i-mode settings

Making i-mode Settings 227

Using message services

When You Receive a Message ..... Receive message 229
Checking for Messages ..... Check new messages 231
Viewing Messages in the Message Box ..... MessageR/MessageF 231

Using certificates

Using SSL Certificate 232
Setting FirstPass 233
Changing the Certificate Host 234

Using i-motion

What is i-motion? 234
Downloading i-motion ..... Download i-motion 235
Setting i-motion 236

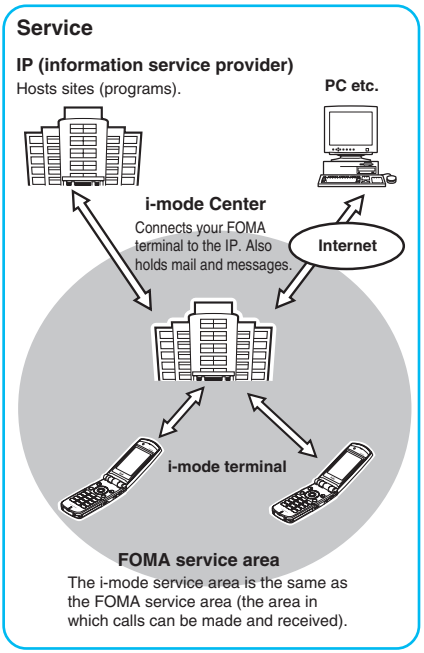
What is i-mode?

The i-mode service allows you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail and connection to the Internet and i-mode sites (programs).

■ **Accessing a site (program)**
Select an option from the i-mode menu to use a range of online services provided by your IP (information service provider) such as weather report and news. In addition, download and enjoy games or images for the standby screen.

■ **Internet access**
Enter URLs on your i-mode terminal to access a wide range of i-mode-compatible websites.

■ **i-mode mail**
Exchange e-mail messages up to 5,000 double-byte characters long not only with another i-mode terminal but with anyone who has an Internet e-mail address. In addition, exchange and enjoy Deco-mail messages, still images and movies.



i-mode is a pay service you need to subscribe to. For information on subscription, see the back cover of the manual.

NOTE

- ◆New subscribers to FOMA services can use all the services from the time of subscription.
- ◆If you have updated your mova service (i-mode) subscription to the FOMA service subscription, you can continue to use the "My Menu" content used under the mova service. Some sites may not retain your "My Menu" data under the FOMA service. In this case, re-register. To check "My Menu"-compatible sites, see "お知らせ&ヘルプ" (News & Help) in the iMenu.
- ◆You are charged for the amount of sent and received data (the number of packets). This manual does not provide any information on the charges. For information on the charges, etc., see the "i-mode User's Manual" provided at the time of subscription.
- ◆The i-mode service details are subject to change. See the "i-mode User's Manual".

Accessing a site (program)

Simple key operations allow you to access sites provided by IPs (information service providers) and use various online services.
For instance, you can check your bank account balance, transfer money, reserve tickets, read news, use online dictionaries or download ring tones.

● Viewing sites

When you connect to the i-mode center, the iMenu screen appears first. From this screen, access a variety of sites such as "What's New!!".
Viewing a site→p.214



* Left is a screen image. The actual screen may be displayed differently depending on the settings.

1 マイメニュー **(My Menu)**	Register a frequently visited site, so that you can visit the site easily and quickly from next time on (p.218). Pay sites in iMenu are automatically registered. Up to 45 sites can be registered.
2 週刊 i ガイド **(What's New)**	Latest information on new and recommended sites is updated daily from Monday through Friday.
3 メニューリスト **(Menu List)**	Lists all sites by genre and area for your convenience. Select and access an interesting site.
4 とくするメニュー **(tokusuru menu)**	Features campaign information, giveaways, discount coupons, etc. The information is updated weekly (Presented by D2 Communications).
5 i エリア **(i-area)**	Provides quick access to information on the current area and vicinity, such as weather report, map and local facilities.

6 かんたん検索 **(Simple search)** Use categories such as “Games” and “i-αppli” to search for sites by keyword.	• i-αppli search Categorizes i-αppli into groups such as free and game.
	• Useful site search Categorizes useful sites.
7 マイボックス **(My Box)**	A member-only service that provides quick access to pre-registered service-providing shops or sites.
8 オプション設定 **(Options)**	Make the i-mode mail settings or change the i-mode password.
9 お知らせ& ヘルプ **(News & Help)**	Provides news from DoCoMo, help on how to use i-mode, and the usage regulations.
■ 料金&お申込 **(■Charges & Subscription)**	Check/pay i-mode charges or change your subscription options.
ENGLISH	Views iMenu in English mode.

NOTE

- ◆Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.
- ◆Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.
- ◆Some sites (i-mode pay sites) may charge you an information fee.
- ◆A separate subscription is required to use some services provided by IPs (information service providers).
- ◆Even if the i-mode icon is flashing, no packet communication charges apply unless you communicate with the i-mode center.
- ◆If you have subscribed to the “Dual Network” service, the iMenu screen is slightly different.

● Other useful features

■ i-channel

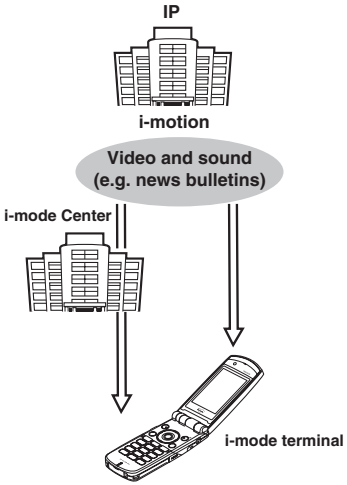
i-channel is a service whereby news, weather and other information is sent as graphical information to i-channel compatible terminals from DoCoMo or IPs (information service provider). Information is periodically received and the latest information appears as telop text on the standby screen. Pressing the i-channel key (dch) displays the channel list. Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information.

- i-channel compatible models are available. For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

■ i-motion

Download videos and sounds from i-mode sites to your i-mode terminal and play them or set them to the standby screen. →p.234

- To download an i-motion →p.235
- To play an i-motion →p.235
- To set an i-motion to be played automatically →p.236



■ Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta®

Download an i-motion from an i-mode site to your i-mode terminal and set the i-motion as a ring tone or incoming call image. In addition to a melody, your favorite artist’s voice can be set as a ring tone. (Some incompatible i-motion cannot be set for Chaku-motion.)

- To set a Chaku-motion →p.128

■ i-αppli

Downloading an i-αppli from an i-mode site makes your i-mode terminal more useful and enjoyable. For example, download a range of games or an i-αppli that updates stock prices periodically. A map i-αppli downloads only necessary data, which enables smooth scrolling.

- To download an i-αppli →p.291
- To launch an i-αppli →p.292
- To launch an i-αppli automatically →p.298

■ i-αppli display

An i-αppli can be set to the standby screen, and you can receive a message or make a call on the screen. The standby screen can be more useful; e.g. news or weather information can be displayed, or your preferred character notifies you of an incoming message or alarm.

- To set the i-αppli display →p.138, 300

Continued on next page

■ i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX is linked to data stored on the i-mode terminal (e.g. messages, Dialed calls/ Received calls, phonebook entries). i-αppli can be more useful and enjoyable; e.g. you can compose a message on the screen with your preferred character appearing, the character notifies who gave you a call or sent you a message, or an i-αppli is linked to a message and updates stock prices or game progress in real time.

• i-αppli DX→p.290

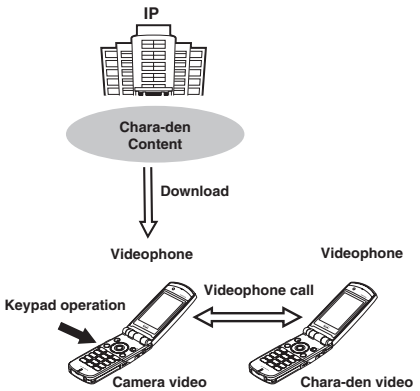
■ 3D sound

The stereo speaker (or stereo earphones) on a 3D sound compatible i-mode terminal produces a 3 dimensional and resonating sound, and you can enjoy rich sound of i-αppli games, ring tones and i-motion programs. (Only available with 3D sound compatible content.)

■ Chara-den

When talking on a videophone call, you can send a cartoon character (“Chara-den” character) image to the other party’s phone instead of your own image. You can even make the “Chara-den” character’s mouth synchronize sounds or move using your phone’s keypads. You can also download your preferred character, shoot it as a still image or movie and set it to the standby screen or attach it to a message. (You cannot send an image or movie if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal or attached to a message.)

• To download a Chara-den character →p.226
• To check a Chara-den character→p.346
• To set a Chara-den character→p.347
• To control a Chara-den character→p.347
• To shoot a Chara-den character→p.348



■ Infrared data exchange function

i-mode terminal can exchange data such as phonebook entries, messages and bookmarks with mobile phones, PCs and other devices equipped with infrared data exchange function*.

Use the infrared data exchange function with an i-αppli, and the i-αppli is linked to a device equipped with the infrared data exchange function, which provides a variety of usage patterns. For example, your mobile phone can be used as a TV remote control or member ID.

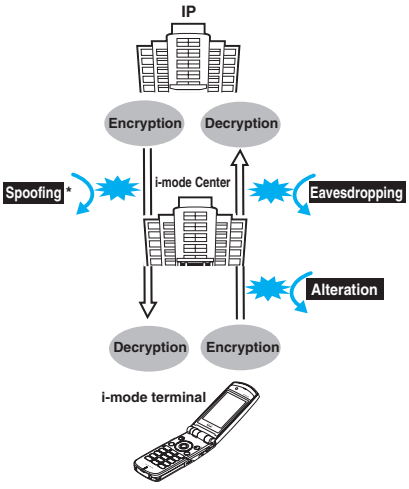
*: The FOMA terminal may be unable to communicate with some devices even if they are equipped with the infrared data exchange function.

• To use the infrared data exchange function →p.364

■ SSL session

SSL is authentication/encryption technology to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site spoofing* or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer. There are 2 types of SSL communication. In one, SSL certification authority (CA) (SSL certificates) stored in an i-mode terminal are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) without requiring the user to perform any special procedures. In the other, user certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages). The type of certificate used depends on the site. →p.215

• To view sites using SSL certificates stored in the i-mode terminal→p.215
• To use FirstPass user certificates→p.233



* Spoofing: A security attack that allows an adversary to observe all information entered into forms by the victim.

■ FOMA card operational restriction function

Restrictions are set on files such as melodies, images and movies loaded from mail or downloaded from sites when you insert a FOMA card (UIM) containing your data (such as phone number and phonebook data) into an i-mode terminal. When you insert another FOMA card (UIM) or turn the phone on without inserting the FOMA card (UIM), the function prevents retrieved files from being played or viewed.

* Images and movies shot with the camera function, and files saved to the FOMA terminal from external memory are not subject to this function.
* If a file subject to this restriction is set on your i-mode terminal (e.g. ring tone or standby screen), the setting is reset by this function.

■ i-melody

Download the latest songs or your preferred tunes from sites to your i-mode terminal, and set them as ring tones. →p.224

■ i-anime

Download your preferred animations from an i-mode site or website to your i-mode terminal and run the animations on the standby screen or receiving screen. →p.223

■ Flash®

Flash is an animation using images and sounds. Use a variety of animations and visually exciting sites. In addition, download a Flash movie to your i-mode terminal and set it to the standby screen. →p.218

Some Flash movies are able to use the terminal data on your i-mode terminal. The following are usable data:

- Battery level
- Signal strength
- Date and time
- Ring volume setting
- Bilingual setting
- Model data

■ Download dictionary

Download dialects or specialist dictionaries from sites to your i-mode terminal and set them as a conversion dictionary. →p.226

■ Message service

The message service automatically delivers required information (message) to your i-mode terminal.

The message service is categorized into MessageR (Request) and MessageF (Free).

MessageR (Request)	If you subscribe to the message service on the site, desired information is automatically delivered to your FOMA terminal.
MessageF (Free)	Messages are delivered with no packet communication charges applied.

Using the message service →p.229, 231

As of October 1, 2004, MessageF (Free) is set to “受信する” (ON) by default for all new subscribers to the FOMA service who subscribe to i-mode at the same time. If you do not want to receive MessageF, set MessageF to “受信しない” (OFF).

* For subscribers other than the above to receive MessageF, change the settings in “オプション設定” (Options). The default setting is “受信しない” (OFF).

If you cannot receive messages because your FOMA terminal is turned off or is out of range (“ ” displayed), MessageR and MessageF are kept at the i-mode center.

- The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be kept at the i-mode center and the maximum storage period. If the number or period exceeds the limit, the oldest message is to be deleted.

	Max. number of messages	Max. storage period
MessageR	300	72 hours
MessageF	300	72 hours

- Use “Check new messages” to receive MessageR and MessageF kept at the i-mode center. →p.231

Continued on next page

■ トクだねニュース便 (Tokudane News Bin)

DoCoMo uses the MessageR (Request) function to deliver information such as news and weather to i-mode terminals.
トクだねニュース便 (Tokudane News Bin) is a pay service you need to subscribe to. Once you have completed the subscription, the service is automatically registered to your My Menu list, and you can view the same information by accessing the service from My Menu.
Guide to the MessageR screen→p.231

● i-mode password

"i-mode password" is required to register or unregister sites in My Menu, make your i-mode mail settings, or subscribe to i-mode pay sites. The i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros) at the time of purchase. Change this number to a 4-digit number of your choice.→p.219
Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.

Internet access

Enter a website address to access the Internet and view an i-mode-compatible site.
Viewing websites→p.219

NOTE

- ◆i-mode-incompatible websites may not be displayed correctly. To be i-mode-compatible, websites must be created using i-mode-compatible tags.
For details→p.219
- ◆Operations for websites are the same as those for i-mode sites.
- ◆A website viewed on your terminal and on a PC may be displayed differently.
- ◆A webpage whose URL is over 256 single-byte characters long may not be displayed.
- ◆You can view websites designed for a PC in full browser.→p.315

■ To view pages stored in cache

- A cache temporarily stores websites you have visited in the FOMA terminal. Use ⊙ to move to another page while you are viewing an i-mode site or website, and the FOMA terminal displays a page stored in cache without accessing the site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal accesses the site even when you use ⊙. If the date and time information for a page has been updated, the FOMA terminal accesses the site and displays the latest information even when the page is stored in the cache.
- Even when site data are loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered previously do not appear.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you download an SSL-compatible page from the cache, a message appears indicating that an SSL page will be displayed.

■ Notes on using i-mode

- Site (program) or Internet website (page) content is generally protected by copyright laws. Documents, pictures and other data downloaded from these sites or websites to your i-mode terminal are permitted only for personal use. It is prohibited to copy or modify the whole or part of data for resale or redistribution without the copyright holders' permission.
- All data stored (messages, MessageR/MessageF, screen memos, i-αppli, i-motion, bookmarks, etc.) on your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the data stored on your i-mode terminal.
- In the course of repairs or other works performed on your i-mode terminal, data downloaded via i-mode, i-αppli or i-motion will not be transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law. When the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files (images, movies, melodies, ToruCa (detailed images)) attached to sent or received messages, screen memos and Message R/MessageF messages.
- If a file for which the viewing and playback are restricted by a FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates using the default settings when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

■Important

- ● It is recommended to back up bookmark contents onto a miniSD memory card or note the contents down separately. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.472) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- ● Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for data loss. Take notes of the data just in case.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Displaying i-mode Menu

Starting i-mode

1 MENU ▶ i-mode



The "i-mode menu" screen appears. The i-mode menu consists of 11 items.
Pressing (i-mode) on the standby screen also displays the "i-mode menu" screen.

■ **If "" appears**

You are out of range or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. "" appears.

■ **If "" is flashing**

The FOMA terminal is communicating with the i-mode center. If you attempt to access an i-mode site (p.214) or website (p.219) or send an i-mode message (p.243) while you are in range but not using the i-mode service, "" flashes and i-mode startup may take some time.

■ **If "" is flashing**

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode), "" flashes.

Item	Description	Refer to
iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you access the i-mode center. From this screen, access a variety of sites such as "What's New!!".	pp.208, 214
Bookmark	Store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	p.220
Screen memo	Shows the i-mode site screens stored on your i-mode terminal.	p.222
Last URL	Displays the i-mode site or website that was displayed last time.	p.216
Go to location	Directly enter an address to access the i-mode-compatible website.	p.219
i-Channel	Shows the channel list screen.	p.304
Message	Displays received MessageR/MessageF. The message service automatically delivers required information to your FOMA terminal.	p.231
Check new messages	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode center to check for new messages or MessageR/MessageF.	pp.231, 258
Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to request or download user certificate.	p.233
i-mode settings	Make the i-mode settings.	p.227
Internet (Full Browser)	Displays a website designed for a PC in full browser.	p.315

NOTE

◆The i-mode range is the same as the FOMA range (the area in which calls can be made and received).
◆The i-mode menu can be displayed even when you are out of range. However, you cannot send/receive information to/from sites or via the Internet.

Displaying the iMenu screen

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶ **"iMenu"**

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode center and the "iMenu" screen (the first i-mode screen) appears.



i-mode menu　　iMenu

■ **To cancel downloading pages**

▶CLR or (Quit)

Exiting i-mode

1 **During i-mode, press ▶"YES"**

"" flashes, then "" disappears.

NOTE

◆Press and hold for 2 seconds or longer, and the FOMA terminal is turned off.

Viewing Sites

You can use various services provided by the IP (information service provider). (A separate subscription may be required.)

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶“iMenu”

2 “ENGLISH”▶“Menu List”▶Select a site

The “sites” screen appears.



Sites

Function menu➡p.214

● “みんなNらんど”

You can download and save i-αppli, dictionaries, face stamps and Deco-mail templates available on your FOMA terminal from the site “みんなNらんど” under iMenu, and use them for various purposes.

The following shows how to access “みんなNらんど”.

Select “iMenu” → “メニューリスト” → “ケータイ電話メーカー” → “みんなNらんど”

The QR code on the right is also available to access “みんなNらんど”.

NOTE

- Some sites may charge you an information fee.
- You may be unable to view images on some sites.
- If an image cannot be downloaded, the “” icon appears. However, “” does not appear for a background image that cannot be downloaded.
- You can make and receive voice calls even while accessing a site (p.384). You can also send and receive messages.
- You can select any of the underlined items on the site screen to access the related page (link destination).
- The displayed site screen is not updated automatically. To see the latest information, select “Reload” from the function menu.
- The number of colors displayed on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. In this case, the site may not appear as intended.
- On some i-mode-compatible sites or websites, characters may be difficult or impossible to see depending on the selected colors.

Function menu (sites screen)

Add bookmark	Adds the URL of the currently displayed page to the bookmark list. “Adding bookmarks”→p.220
Bookmark	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen. You can use bookmarks to access i-mode sites or websites. →p.220
Add screen memo	Saves the displayed page as a screen memo. “Saving a screen memo”→p.222
Screen memo list	Displays the screen memo list screen. “Displaying a screen memo”→p.222
Save image	Saves an image on the displayed page. Select “Normal image” or “Background image”. “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages”→p.223
Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode. →p.216
Compose message	Paste the URL of the currently displayed page or insert/attach an image to compose an i-mode message or Deco-mail message.
• **Attach URL**	Paste the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243
• **Attach image**	▶**Select an image** Attach an image on the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243
• **Insert image**	▶**Select an image** Insert an image on the displayed page to compose a Deco-mail message. “Composing and Sending Deco-mail”→p.247
Enter URL	▶●▶**Enter a URL**▶**“OK”**▶● Enters a URL to access the website.
Add to phonebook	“Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook”→p.218
Add desktop icon	Pastes the URL of the displayed page as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Save schedule	Saves a schedule while browsing the displayed page. “Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries”→p.390
Refer dictionary	Uses a dictionary on the displayed page. “Using dictionaries from other functions”→p.403
Home	
• **Set as home URL**	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home page. One URL can be registered.
• **Display home**	Displays the home page.

Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page that is not displayed correctly.
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Retry	Plays a Flash movie or animation on the displayed page from the beginning.
iMenu	Displays the iMenu screen.
i-mode menu	Displays the i-mode menu.
Site info	
• **Title**	▶**Check the title**▶**"OK"** Displays the title of the displayed page.
• **URL**	▶**Check the URL**▶**"OK"** Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• **Certificate**	Displays the contents of the SSL certificate on an SSL-compatible page.
Site settings	Sets the image display mode, i-motion type and sound effects for the displayed page.
• **Set image disp.**	Sets the image display mode for a page. If "OFF" is selected, "" appears instead of an image on the page.
• **i-motion type**	"Setting the i-motion type to download"→p.236
• **Sound effect**	Sets sound effects for Flash movies.
Switch to FB	Displays the current page in full browser.→p.319

NOTE

<Compose message>
◆You can paste a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long on a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

<Set as home URL>
◆Storing a URL in the "Set as home URL" option does not change the "Valid"/"Invalid" under "Home URL".

<Display home>
◆"Display home" is not available when "Home URL" is set to "Invalid".
◆If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch on the standby screen will also display the home page.

<Title>
◆Up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters are displayed.

<URL>
◆If the entire URL does not appear, press ● to display the cursor. Use ◎ to move the cursor and check the URL. Press ● again to hide the cursor. Select "OK" to return to the page screen.

<Certificate>
◆Up to 5 certificates are displayed. If there are two or more certificates, use ◎ to check the previous or next certificate.
◆When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls by line regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

<Change CHR code>
◆If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. If you perform the procedure 4 times in a row, the site is displayed in the original character code.
◆Some sites may not be displayed correctly even when character codes are changed.
◆If you change the character code on a site displayed correctly, the site may no longer be displayed correctly.
◆"Change CHR code" only applies to the currently displayed site.

<Retry>
◆Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.

<Switch to FB>
◆Some sites may not be displayed in full browser.

Viewing SSL pages

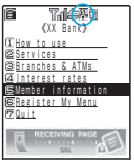
To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:
- CA Certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored on your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.
- DoCoMo Certificate: Required to connect to the FirstPass center and stored on the FOMA card (green).
- User Certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting "Client certificate" (p.233) from the i-mode menu and stored on the FOMA card (green).

1 Open an SSL page

An SSL page and "" appear.

■**To cancel opening during authentication**
▶●

■**To cancel loading an authenticated page**
▶−(Quit)



SSL page

2 Move from the SSL page to a normal page▶"YES"

SSL communication ends and "" disappears.

NOTE

◆The message "This site is not certified Do you connect?" may appear when you attempt to open an SSL page. This message appears when the SSL certificate for the page has expired or is not supported. In this case, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES". You may not be able to safely send your personal information such as your credit card number or contacts. To cancel displaying, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press ● to return to the original screen.

Scroll function

When you are viewing a webpage, MessageR/MessageF, i-mode message or SMS and the text or list cannot appear on a screen, scroll up and down to view the rest.

■ Scrolling by line

Press ◉ to scroll down by line to view the next list item or text line.
Press ◉ to scroll up by line to view the previous list item or text line.
You can set the number of lines to scroll when pressing ◉ or ◉. →p.227

■ Scrolling by page

Press (Memo/Check) to scroll down by screens to view the next part of the list or text.
Press (Home) to scroll up by screens to view the previous part of the list or text.

■ To use the scroll mode

If “Scroll mode” is selected from the sites function menu (p.214) or screen memo detail function menu (p.222), you can scroll in the direction (up or down) as you slide ●. Pressing on the sites screen also sets/releases the scroll mode.

iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

1 Display the i-mode menu and select iMenu and press ●



2 Select “ENGLISH” and then press ●



Select “日本語” to return to the Japanese display.

NOTE

- The iMenu in English differs slightly from the iMenu in Japanese.
- とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu), ｉエリア (i-area), かんたん検索 (Simple search), マイボックス (My box), お知らせ& ヘルプ (News & Help) and 料金＆お申込 (Fee & application) are not shown on the English iMenu.
- Generally, the What' s New site is updated every other Monday.
- English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).
- Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on What's New.

Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item on an i-mode site or website, a message may appear indicating that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent. If it is OK to send the numbers, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”. Press (Return) or CLR to return to the previous screen.

- Before the manufacturer numbers are sent, a message appears indicating that they will be sent. They will not be sent automatically.

NOTE

- Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.
- Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Reconnecting to the last viewed page <Last URL>

Each time you view a page, the URL of the currently viewed page is set to “Last URL”. When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last viewed page is saved to “Last URL”. Use “Last URL” to reconnect to the last viewed page.

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶ “Last URL” ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- The current URL is not saved to “Last URL” if:
  - You accessed the page from Bookmark under the Secret folder
  - You downloaded a PDF document showing separate charges
- The URL of the data acquisition screen is not saved to “Last URL”. In this case, “Last URL” will save the URL of page viewed before the data acquisition screen.

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes operations available while viewing an i-mode site or website.

Displaying images

- The FOMA terminal displays GIF and JPEG images and Flash movies (p.218). Some images and movies may not be displayed even if the formats are supported.
- When a Flash movie is used, display operations may differ from on a normal page.
- You can set whether to display images in “Set image disp.” (p.215) under “Site settings”.

■ Image icons

(color) : Appears during image loading or if “Set image disp.” is set to “OFF”.

: Appears if image loading failed.

(BW) : Appears if the image cannot be loaded.

Select an item

When you are using i-mode, you may need to perform the operations below.

- For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

● Radio button

Radio buttons allow you to choose one of a range of options. ◉ indicates a selected radio button.

● Checkbox

Checkboxes allow you to select multiple options from a range of options. ☑ indicates a selected checkbox.

● Text box

You can enter text directly into a text box. When you select a text box, the text entry screen appears.

● Pull-down menu

A pull-down menu allows you to choose one of a range of options. Some options are shown and hidden sub-options appear as a list when you select an option.

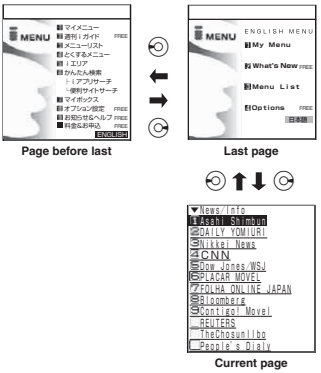
NOTE

◆Depending on how the site is constructed, a pull-down menu may include multiple available options that can be selected by checking ☐. Each time you use ⊙ to move the focus between ☐ and press ◉ the option ☐ is selected or deselected. When you have completed your selections, press ⊖(Finish) or CLR to end the procedure.

Jumping forward/back to a page

You can jump forward or back to a page that has been retrieved and stored in the FOMA terminal’s cache (up to 30 pages are stored).

1 Press ⊙ to jump back to the previous page or ⊙ to jump forward to the next page

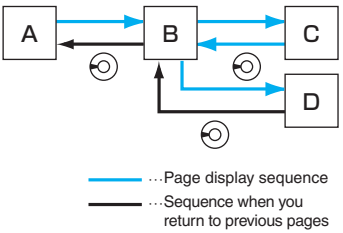


Page before last　Last page　Current page

NOTE

◆You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing ⊙. However, when you have pressed ⊙ to return to an earlier page (from “C” to “B”) and then gone from that page to another page (from “B” to “D”), pressing ⊙ twice from page “D” will not display page “C”, but will take you back to “B” and then to page “A” (see below). The previous page is displayed in order of “D”, “B”, and “A”.

■When the page display sequence is “A”, “B”, “C”, “B” and “D”



◆Cache→p.212

Reloading data

Use this procedure to refresh the displayed page.

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶⊖(FUNC)▶“Reload”

NOTE

◆If you perform “Reload” on the final completion screen for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a message asking whether to resend the data appears. Note that selecting “YES” will resend information that has already been sent once.

Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

You can add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: When adding a phone number displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶(FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶"YES"▶Add the phone number to phonebook

"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook"→p.111
"Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook"→p.112
If the name, reading and mail address are attached to a phone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with the phone number. Enter remains of needed items and then save to the phonebook.

Handling Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it in the standby screen.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the "Vibrator" setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when "◁△▽▷" does not appear at the bottom of screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select "OFF" in "Set image disp.".
- Selecting "YES" in "Use phone information" (p.229) enables you to use data stored on the FOMA terminal (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

NOTE

◆To rerun a Flash movie, select "Retry" from the Sites function menu or other menus.→p.215
◆Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash movie without the sound effects, select "Sound effect" in "Site settings" from the Sites function menu and then select "OFF". Even if "Vibrator" is set to "Melody linkage", this setting is invalid for sound effects of Flash movie.
◆When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using "Display setting", the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. Furthermore, "Retry" is unavailable for repeating a Flash movie.
◆Some Flash movies may appear differently from the way they do on a site (e.g. a part of movie is not saved) if they are saved or stored as screen memo.
◆Display behavior may differ when a Flash movie appears.
◆For some Flash movies, the vibrator function is activated. If such Flash movie is set in the ringing screen, videophone ringing screen or mail receiving screen, the FOMA terminal vibrates according to the "Vibrator" or "Manner mode set" setting. However, a terminal does not vibrate when a Flash movie is set in the standby screen or as Wake-up display.
◆Depending on the activated Flash movie, you may not be able to use the neuropointer to select menu screens.

<My Menu>

Registering My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use "Bookmark" (p.220).

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶"My Menu Registration"▶Select the "Input password" box▶Enter your 4-digit i-mode password▶"Select"

i-mode password→p.156

NOTE

◆Charged sites in the iMenu list are automatically registered to My Menu upon subscription.

Viewing sites registered to My Menu

1 (MENU)▶(i-mode)▶"iMenu"▶"My Menu"▶Select a site you want to view

NOTE

◆To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must first be registered to My Menu.
◆Dual Network service users may find that My Menu entries registered on their mova-compatible i-mode terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries registered on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova-compatible i-mode terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing Your i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or charged i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to "0000" (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber need to take a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to "0000".

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶"iMenu"▶"Options"▶"Change i-mode Password"

2 Select the "Current Password" box ▶Enter your current i-mode password

The numbers of the entered security code is displayed as "✻".

3 Select the "New Password" box▶Enter a new password

Enter a 4-digit number as your i-mode password.

4 Select the "New Password" box▶Enter a new i-mode password again

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

5 Select "Select"

■ **If you enter your "Current Password" incorrectly**

A message notifying that the entered i-mode password is incorrect appears.

■ **If you enter different numbers in "New Password" and "New Password (Confirmation)"**

A message notifying that the entered i-mode passwords do not match appears.

<Internet connection>

Viewing Websites

This function enables you to view any website simply by entering its URL.

- i-mode-incompatible websites may not be displayed correctly.
- A website viewed on your terminal and on a PC may be displayed differently.
- You can view websites designed for a PC in full browser. →p.315

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶"Go to location"▶"Enter URL"▶Select "<NEW>"



2 Enter a URL▶"OK"

A message appears warning that it may not be possible to display the site for the entered URL. Press ● or CLR to connect to the website with the entered URL.

■ **If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with "http://" or "https://"**

A message notifying that the URL is incorrect appears.

NOTE

◆Some websites may not be displayed correctly on a FOMA terminal.
◆If the received data exceeds the maximum amount that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing ●.
◆You can enter a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long including "http://" or "https://".

Accessing sites from the URL history

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

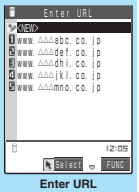
1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶"Go to location"▶"Enter URL"

The "Enter URL" screen appears.

2 Select a URL number ▶"OK"▶"OK"

■ **To edit the selected URL**

▶Select the "Internet address" box▶Edit the URL



Enter URL

Function menu➡p.220

NOTE

◆Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as new entries are added.
◆Multiple visits to the same site by entering the URL are logged as separate entries.
◆The URL history indicates URLs up to 22 single-byte characters long, excluding the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

Function menu (Enter URL screen)

Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.148
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
Set as home URL	Stores the selected URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Delete	Deletes URLs.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted URL.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶(−)(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple URLs.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the registered URLs.

<Bookmark>

Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark folders enables you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each bookmark can contain up to 256 single-byte characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Up to 10 URLs can be stored in the Secret folder separately from normal bookmarks.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: When displaying a site>

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶(−)(FUNC)▶"Add bookmark"▶"YES"▶Select a folder number

NOTE

◆A bookmark title can consist of up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters. Longer title is truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding "http://" or "https://").

Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or website

1 (MENU)▶(i-mode)▶"Bookmark"

The "Bookmark folder list" screen appears.



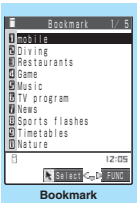
Bookmark folder list

Function menu➡p.220

2 Select a folder number

The "Bookmark" screen appears.

3 Select a bookmark number



Bookmark

Function menu➡p.221

NOTE

◆Page titles in the bookmark list are shown in the order they were used.

Function menu (Bookmark folder list screen)

You cannot rename or delete the "Bookmark" folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

Add folder	▶**Enter a folder name** You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Edit folder name	▶**Enter a folder name** You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Sort folder	▶**Select the destination** Rearranges folders.
No. of bookmarks	Indicates the total number of bookmarks in all the folders. However, bookmarks in the Secret folder are not included.
Send all Ir data	Sends all the bookmarks via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.368

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Copy all to miniSD	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all the stored bookmarks to the miniSD memory card. However, bookmarks in the Secret folder are not copied.
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes the highlighted folder and bookmarks in the folder.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all the bookmarks. Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not deleted.

NOTE

◆You cannot apply security to bookmark folders.
◆All folders including Secret folders are displayed when Secret mode and Secret data only mode are set.

<Add folder>
◆Newly added folders appear below the existing folders.
◆The Secret folder location is not changed even if a folder is added.

<Send all Ir data>
◆Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not sent.

Function menu (Bookmark screen)

Move	Moves bookmarks.
• **Move this**	**▶Select a folder number▶“YES”** Moves the highlighted bookmark.
• **Move selected**	**▶Select a folder number▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□) of a bookmark▶●(Finish)▶“YES”** You can move bookmarks to other folders to organize them by category.
• **Move all**	**▶Select a folder number▶“YES”** Moves all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Edit title	**▶Edit a title** You can enter up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time”→p.367
Copy to miniSD	Copies bookmarks to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted bookmark.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□) of a bookmark▶●(Finish)▶“YES”** Copies multiple bookmarks.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Set as home URL	Stores a bookmarked URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Copy URL	**▶Use ✣ to highlight the head of text to copy▶●▶Use ✣ to highlight the end of text to copy▶●** Copies a bookmarked URL.
No. of bookmarks	Shows the number of bookmarks in the folders.
Delete	Deletes bookmarks.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted bookmark.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□)▶●(Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple bookmarks.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Keep in secret*	“Hiding Various Data”→p.163

* : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears.→p.163

NOTE

<Move>
◆You cannot move a bookmark to the Secret folder.

<Edit title>
◆If you delete a title and press ●, the URL is stored without the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

<Add desktop icon>
◆You can display the bookmark pasted into the desktop by selecting its desktop icon even if the bookmark is stored in the Secret folder.

<Delete all>
◆“Delete all” deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

<Screen memo>

Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies between 2 and 100 depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

Saving a screen memo

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶(FUNC)▶"Add screen memo"▶"YES"

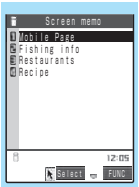
NOTE

- ◆When you save an SSL page as a screen memo, the SSL certificate for the page is also saved.
- ◆A title for a saved screen memo can be up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters long. Longer title is truncated.
- ◆If you save the same page twice, they are saved separately as a screen memo.
- ◆Even if an item is entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box when you save a site page as screen memo, the item does not appear in the saved screen memo.
- ◆When you save a screen such as the data acquisition, the data is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion with set playback period cannot be saved as a screen memo.
- ◆Other than the data acquisition screen itself, the URL for that page (up to 256 single-byte characters) can be saved.

Displaying a screen memo

1 (MENU)▶(i-mode)▶"Screen memo"

The "Screen memo list" screen appears.



Screen memo list

Function menu➡p.222

2 Select a screen memo number

The "Screen memo detail" screen appears.



Screen memo detail

Function menu➡p.222

NOTE

- ◆Information on a screen memo is the one stored and may differ from the latest one.
- ◆If a saved page has no title, the page appears in the Screen memo list screen as "No title".

Function menu (Screen memo list screen)

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with "". The "" icon disappears when the protection is removed. Protected screen memos cannot be deleted.
No. of memos	Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.
Delete	Deletes screen memos.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted screen memo.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple screen memos.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the registered screen memos.

NOTE

<Protect ON/OFF>

- ◆Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the number of screen memos storable varies depending on the data size.

<Edit title>

- ◆If you delete the title, the screen memo is added as "No title".

<Delete>

- ◆Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

Function menu (Screen memo detail screen)

Save image	Saves an image or background image displayed in a screen memo. Select "Normal image" or "Background image". "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages"→p.223
Add to phonebook	Add a phone number and e-mail address displayed on a screen memo to the phonebook. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook"→p.111 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook"→p.112
Edit title	**▶Edit a title** You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with "". The "" icon disappears when the protection is removed. Protected screen memos cannot be deleted.

Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode. →p.216
Compose message	Enables you to compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail with a URL for a screen memo pasted into a message or with an image pasted/attached.
• **Attach URL**	Composes an i-mode mail with a URL in a screen memo pasted in a message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →p.243
• **Attach image**	▶**Select an image** Composes an i-mode mail with a URL in a screen memo pasted in a message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →p.243
• **Insert image**	▶**Select an image** Composes a Deco-mail with an image displayed in a screen memo pasted into a message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" →p.247
Save schedule	Stores a scheduled event by browsing a screen memo. "Adding schedule entries" →p.392
Refer dictionary	Uses a dictionary from a screen memo. "Using dictionaries from other functions" →p.403
URL	Displays the screen memo URL.
Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.
Sound effect	Sets sound effects for Flash movies. Select "ON" or "OFF".
Retry	Replays the Flash movie or animation in a screen memo from the beginning.
Delete	Deletes the displayed screen memo.

NOTE

<URL>

◆You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Retry>

◆Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.

<Delete>

◆Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

<Save image>

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

If saving an image or animation attached to or displayed in an i-mode mail, MessageR/MessageF, screen memo or site, you can set the saved image on a screen such as the standby or wake-up display.

<Example: When saving an image displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.214)/Message detail screen (p.231)▶(FUNC)▶"Save image"▶"Normal image"▶Select an image▶"YES"▶Select a folder number

Position the frame ▭ over the image to be saved.

■ **To display a background image**

▶"Save image"▶"Background image"

▶"YES"▶Select a folder number

2 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

◆You cannot save a JPEG image of which height or width exceeds 2,304 dots, JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 × 1,728 or GIF image of which size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or height or width exceeds 2,304 dots.

◆A progressive JPEG image* larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be stored.

* : Progressive JPEG is a format widely used for websites. The whole image is displayed as very low-quality and fuzzy, which becomes sharper as the lines fill in.

◆You cannot save an image with a file size larger than 100K bytes.

◆Up to 36 single-byte characters can be used in the file name of the saved image. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals).

◆An image cannot be saved if "  " is displayed.

◆If you try to save an image during reception of a large image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while a large size of file is downloaded.

◆A transparent GIF file that is not an animation GIF file and has the extension "ifm" is saved as a frame or stamp in one of the following sizes:

- Frame that has an image size of CIF (352 × 288), CIF Vert. (288 × 352), QVGA (320 × 240), Screen (240 × 345, 345 × 240), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), QCIF Vert. (144 × 176), SubQCIF (128 × 96), SubQCIF Vert. (96 × 128)
- Stamp that is not a frame image and has a size of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller

Continued on next page

Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored images to the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.472) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save images in the miniSD memory card or transfer them to PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

<i-melody>

Downloading Melodies from Sites

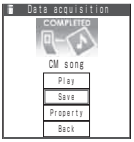
You can set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 400 melodies can be stored (the number of melodies that can be stored depends on the amount of melody data stored).

<Example: Storing a melody downloaded from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶Select a melody

2 "Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder



■ **To play a melody**
▶"Play"

■ **To display melody information**
▶"Property"

3 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.**
▶"NO"

NOTE

- You may not be able to download a melody depending on the site or melody size.
- A downloaded melody may be subject to restrictions such that only a pre-designated part of the melody can be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on a FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.
- Some downloaded melodies may not be played correctly.
- When the file name of saved melody consists of only single-byte alphanumeric characters, the melody is saved using up to 36 single-byte characters of that file name. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "melodyxxx" (xxx are numerals).
- Downloaded melodies are played at the ring volume specified in "Phone" in "Ring volume".

Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored melodies to the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.472) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save melodies in the miniSD memory card or transfer them to PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

Downloading PDF documents from Sites

Use this procedure to download a PDF-formatted document from a website and display it on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 400 documents can be stored on the FOMA terminal (the number of documents that can be stored depends on the amount of document data stored).

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶Select a PDF document▶●

When a document that requires download of all data is selected, the "PDF document" screen (p.370) appears after all the data is downloaded. When a PDF document that enables you to download the specified pages is selected, the first downloaded page appears. The subsequent pages are downloaded when you move to those pages.
Operation for viewing a PDF document→p.371

■ **To cancel download in the middle**
▶−(Quit) or CLR
When the message asking whether to save the partly downloaded data appears, select "YES" to save it. In this case, you can download the remaining data later.→p.225

■ **If the password entry screen appears**
Enter the password set to the document.

■ **To save the document**
▶−(FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder
For a document that requires download of all data, all the pages are saved. For a document that enables you to download the specified pages, the downloaded data (pages) are saved. You can download the remaining pages later.
→p.225

■ **To close the document**
▶CLR
When the document is not saved, the message asking whether to close the document appears. Select "YES" to close the document without saving it and "NO" to save it. To save the document, see "To save the document" above.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

● Downloading remains of document that was downloaded partly

When you save the partly downloaded document, you can download the remaining pages (data) later. The ways of downloading vary depending on the status of downloaded document that can be checked with icons on the "PDF document list" screen (p.370).

Icon	Description
(Pale blue)/ (Pale blue)	All pages are downloaded (no additional download is required).
(Pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded by page. You can download the remaining data together or by specifying pages.
(Pale blue)/ (Pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).

<For a document in which the specified pages have been downloaded ("" (Pale blue))>

1 PDF list screen (p.370)▶Select a PDF document to view

The message informing that the document may be downloaded appears and then the "PDF document" screen (p.370) appears.

2 ●(Tool)▶Press ◀▶ on toolbar to display pages not downloaded

When you try to display pages not downloaded, you connect to the site to download the pages.
Operation for viewing a PDF document→p.371

■ To specify the pages you want to download

▶Select a page number indicated on toolbar▶Enter a page number you want to view

■ To download all the remaining data together

▶●(FUNC)▶"DL remaining data"▶"YES"

■ To save the document

▶●(FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"

The document including newly downloaded pages is saved.

<For a document in which only a part has been downloaded for reasons such as download interruption ("" (Pale blue), "" (Pale blue))>

3 PDF list screen (p.370)▶Select a PDF document to view

Before the document is displayed, the message asking whether to download all the remaining data appears.

4 "YES"

You connect to the site and downloading all the remaining data starts. After the downloading, the "PDF document" screen (p.370) appears. (Some document may not be viewed so that the document screen may not appear.)
You can also download all the remaining data by selecting "DL remaining data"→"YES"→"YES" from the function menu in the PDF list screen.

■ To save the document

▶●(FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"

After the save, the icon changes to "" (Pale blue) or "" (Pale blue).

NOTE

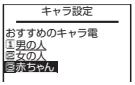
- ◆It may take long to display a document.
- ◆A document may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
- ◆Note that the communication fee for downloading large amounts of data will be expensive.
- ◆If you attempt to download a document larger than 500K bytes, a confirmation message asking whether to download the document appears.
- ◆You cannot download a document if the file size is unknown or larger than 2M bytes.
- ◆Depending on sites, you may not download a document.
- ◆When a document that you try to download has the same definition file (information file for defining PDF) as a document stored in the FOMA terminal (not in miniSD memory card), they are recognized as the same document. Consequently the document will not be downloaded and the document in the FOMA terminal will be displayed.
- ◆When you try to download a document with unsupported format, the download may not run and the screen showing only "" may appear. In this case, press ⏎ to return to the previous screen.
- ◆Up to 36 single-byte characters can be saved for a file name of a document saved in Inbox or a user-created folder. If no file name is specified for the document, characters between the last "/" (slash) of URL and "." (period) are used for a file name. If no characters are between the last "/" and "." or in other cases, "pdfXXX" (XXX are numeric characters) is used for the file name. For file names of documents saved in the miniSD card, "PDFDCXXX.PDF" (XXX are numeric characters) is always used.

Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites

You can download your favorite Chara-den cartoon characters from i-mode sites and save the characters on your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed ones.
- If you delete a pre-installed Chara-den character on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from "みんなNらんど" in "ケータイ電話メーカー" site.
  The QR code on the right is also available to access "みんなNらんど".
  Accessing "みんなNらんど"→p.214

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶Select a Chara-den character



2 "Save"▶"YES"



■ **To play the Chara-den character**
▶"Play"
Controlling a Chara-den character→p.347

■ **To view the Chara-den information**
▶"Property"

NOTE

◆The maximum size of one Chara-den file you can download is 100K bytes.

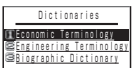
Downloading Data Files from Sites

You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading additional data files such as dictionaries, face stamps, Deco-mail template files from i-mode sites.

- Up to five dictionaries, up to 720 images including face stamps and Deco-mail pictures, and up to 45 Deco-mail templates including the preinstalled data can be stored (the number of data that can be stored depends on the amount of data stored).

<Example: Downloading a dictionary file from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶Select a data file



2 "Save"▶"YES"



■ **To display dictionary information**
▶"Property"

■ **When the memory for storing dictionaries is full**
▶Select a dictionary to delete▶"YES"
New dictionary is stored by overwriting the selected dictionary.

NOTE

◆The file name used for a template is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

◆You may not be able to download a data file depending on the site or file size.

<Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions>

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls, sending mails and viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in a mail or on a site.

- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with a mail sent from a PC.

Phone To function

You can make a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call to a phone number displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message or document (PDF data).

- When used for videophone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.
- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 26 single-byte characters as a phone number.

<Example: Making a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶Select a phone number



2 "Voice phone"



■ **To make a videophone call**
▶"V.phone"

■ **To make a Push-to-Talk call**
▶"PushTalk dial"
This operation is available only for one-to-one call.

3 "Dial"



■ **To withhold your caller ID when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "ON"**
▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Don't notify"

■ **To provide your caller ID when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "OFF"**
▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Notify caller"

■ **To follow the setting of "Caller ID Notification"**
▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Cancel prefix"

NOTE

- You may be able to use the Phone To function with the item in which a phone number is not indicated but linked (e.g. "please contact here").
- You can use this function to make a call to the sender of a received mail or the receiver of a sent mail if the address is a phone number or in the "phone number@..." format.
- You cannot use the Phone To function in the full browser screen.

Mail To function

You can send a mail to a mail address displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message, document (PDF data) or the full browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mail messages.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

<Example: Sending a mail from the received mail detail screen>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.265)▶Select a mail address



2 Compose an i-mode mail and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

NOTE

- If an entered e-mail address is incorrect, correct the address before sending the mail.
- You may be able to use the Mail To function with the item in which a mail address is not indicated but linked (e.g. "please contact here").

Web To function

You can view the website of a URL displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message, document (PDF data) or the full browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 512 single-byte characters for a URL.

<Example: Displaying a webpage from the received mail detail screen>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.265)▶Select a URL▶"YES"



NOTE

- You may be able to use the Web To function with an item in which a URL is not indicated but linked (e.g. "for more information").

Making i-mode Settings

1 MENU▶i-mode▶"i-mode settings"

The "i-mode settings" screen appears.

2 Select any item



i-mode settings

Scroll (default: 1 line)	Sets the number of scrolling lines on a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.
Font size (default: Standard)	Sets the font size on a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.
Set image disp. (default: ON)	Sets the image display setting for a site page or the detail screen for screen memo. When "OFF" is set, "" icon appears instead of an image. Flash movies are not displayed.
i-motion setting	Specifies the settings for i-motion.
• **Automatic replay**	"Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion"→p.236
• **i-motion type**	"Setting the i-motion type to download"→p.236
i-Channel setting	Sets the telop and its speed for i-channel. "Making the i-channel Settings"→p.306

Continued on next page

Message auto-display (default: MessageR preferred)	Sets the automatic display mode for MessageR/MessageF.
Start attachment(auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening a MessageR/MessageF.
Use phone information (default: YES)	"Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies"→p.229
Message list display (default: 2 lines)	Sets the number of lines on the message list screen.
Home URL	Sets whether to enable the home URL display. Up to 256 single-byte characters can be entered.
• **Invalid** (default)	Disables the home URL display.
• **Valid**	Enables the home URL display. Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to be stored.
Sound effect (default: ON)	Sets whether to play sound effects for Flash movies on a site or screen memo.
Check settings	Enables you to check the settings specified in "i-mode settings".
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.
Reset	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Resets the settings specified in "i-mode settings" to the defaults.

NOTE

<Scroll>

◆When displaying the SSL certificate, you can scroll one line at a time even if this function is not set to "1 line".

<Set image disp.>

◆Even if "ON" is selected, the images may not be downloaded. If so, "" is displayed.

<Sound effect>

◆Even if "ON" is set, some Flash movies may not make any sound.

<Reset last URL>

◆When you purchase the FOMA terminal, or after you reset the i-mode settings or last URL, selecting "Last URL" displays the iMenu screen.

Setting the connection timeout

<Set connection timeout> Default setting: 60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which a FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

1 (MENU)▶ Settings ▶"Connection setting"▶"Set connection timeout"▶Select an item

Select "60 seconds", "90 seconds" or "Unlimited".

NOTE

◆Even when you select "Unlimited", the connection may drop out due to poor signal reception.

Setting a host different from i-mode host (ISP connection)

<Host selection> MENU 81 Default setting: i-mode

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this procedure to select a different host for using a service other than i-mode. If you set a host other than i-mode, you can no longer use i-mode or i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts besides "i-mode".

1 (MENU)▶ Settings ▶"Connection setting"▶"Host selection"▶Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (-)(Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Select any item

Host name	Sets a host name. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters for a host name.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.
Host address	Sets a host address. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.
Host address2	Sets a host address 2. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.

2 Press (-)(Finish) after changing the settings

NOTE

◆You cannot change hosts while using i-mode. End i-mode before changing the host.

◆Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the "Pake-Houdai" deal.

◆To change a stored "User defined host", use the procedure for storing the host.

◆To delete a stored “User defined host”, select a host you want to delete, select “Delete” from the function menu, enter the security code and select “YES”. If the deleted host was set as the host to connect, it returns to “i-mode”.
◆If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host may revert to “i-mode”.
◆If you change a host to connect, the i-channel telop text is not displayed. When the information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing dch, the telop text appears automatically.
◆If you change a host to connect, the i-channel information may not be updated. To receive the latest information, press dch to display the channel list.

Specifying whether to use the stored data in Flash movies

<Use phone information>

Use this function to specify whether to use the stored data when running Flash movies.

- The stored data may be used depending on the Flash movie. To enable Flash movies to use the stored data, set “YES” to “Use phone information” in “i-mode settings”. The default setting is “YES”. Such movies may use the following types of stored data:
  - Battery level • Ring volume setting
  - Signal strength • Bilingual setting
  - Date and time • Model data
  - Signal status

1 i-mode settings screen (p.227)▶“Use phone information”▶Select an item

Select “YES” or “NO”.

<Receive message>

When You Receive a Message

When a FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, MessageR and MessageF are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will save up to 100 received MessageR and MessageF respectively. The number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for MessageR and between 10 and 100 for MessageF depending on the amount of data in each saved message.

Viewing newly received messages

- To prevent the FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select “OFF” in “Message auto-display” (p.228).

The “ R ” (white) or “ F ” (white) icon flashes and the “MessageR Receiving...” or “MessageF Receiving...” message appears.



- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop the reception while a message is being received, hold down (Quit) or CLR for 1 second or longer. However, a message may be downloaded depending on the timing of the cancellation.
- Once reception is finished, the numbers of each type of mail and MessageR/MessageF received are displayed on the reception results screen for roughly 15 seconds. The display time for the receive result screen depends on the “Mail/Msg. ring time” setting.



- To view the MessageR or MessageF list screen, select “MessageR” or “MessageF”.
- If you receive a message while on the standby screen, the contents of the received MessageR or MessageF are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if the standby screen appears while another function is being used, messages are not automatically displayed.



- While you perform an operation such as scrolling on the MessageR or MessageF screen, the message continues to be displayed.

■ When automatic display is disabled

The reception results screen appears when you receive a MessageR or MessageF while using a FOMA terminal.

NOTE

◆Automatic display for MessageR/MessageF can be selected in “Message auto-display”. If you do not want to display messages automatically, select “OFF”.
◆When a new MessageR/MessageF arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with other MessageR/MessageF or i-mode mail held at the i-mode center.
◆Received MessageR/MessageF are not automatically displayed if the current screen is not the standby screen, the FOMA terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode), an i-αppli program is running, Lock all is set, Omakase Lock is set, or PIM lock is set to mail.
◆If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of MessageR/MessageF when you receive a new MessageR/MessageF, the oldest MessageR/MessageF that is neither unread nor protected is deleted before the new message is received.

Continued on next page

◆When the “ R ” (red) or “ F ” (red)icon appears, a FOMA terminal can receive no further MessageR/ MessageF. To receive a new message, delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF until those icons no longer appear.

◆When the “ R ” (white) or “ F ” (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR/MessageF held for you at the i-mode center. Use “Check new messages” to receive your MessageR/MessageF held at the center.

◆When the “ R ” (red) or “ F ” (red) icon appears, the space for your MessageR/MessageF at the i-mode center is full. Delete the unnecessary MessageR/ MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF before checking for messages held at the center.

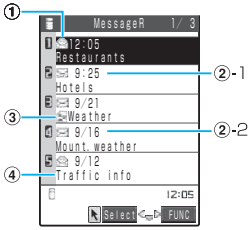
◆After displayed automatically, messages are still marked as unread on the MessageR or MessageF list screen. However, if you perform an operation such as scrolling of screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read on the MessageR or MessageF list screen.

◆When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/ MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.

◆You can download the ToruCa (detail) from ToruCa attached to a MessageR/MessageF.

Guide to the MessageR/ MessageF screen

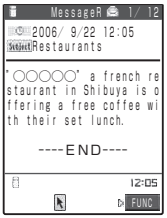
- Some of the icons displayed on the MessageR and MessageF list screens are also shown on the MessageR and MessageF detail screens. Some icons are not displayed.



List screen (2-line display)



List screen (1-line display)



Detail screen

① Shows the MessageR/MessageF status.

: Unread MessageR/MessageF

: Read MessageR/MessageF

: Unread and protected MessageR/ MessageF

: Read and protected MessageR/ MessageF

② Shows the message arrival time and date.

②-1 The time is shown for MessageR/ MessageF that arrived today.

②-2 The date is shown for MessageR/ MessageF that arrived yesterday or earlier.

③ Shows any attached or pasted file.

: Attached or pasted melody.

: Multiple attached or pasted melodies, some of which are invalid.

: All the attached or pasted melodies are invalid.

: Attached image.

: Multiple attached images, some of which are invalid.

: All the attached images are invalid.

: Multiple pasted files.

: Attached ToruCa.

: Multiple attached ToruCa, some of which are invalid.

: All the attached ToruCa are invalid.

The following icons appear when 1-line display is selected for a list screen:

: Attached or pasted file.

: Multiple attached or pasted files, some of which are invalid.

: All the attached or pasted files are invalid.

④ Shows the message subject.

<Check new messages>

Checking for Messages

Default setting	Check for all (mail, MessageR and MessageF)

- MessageR and MessageF delivered to the i-mode center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode center:
  - The FOMA terminal is turned off.
  - " " appears
  - Message boxes are full
  - During a videophone call or remote observation
  - Self mode is set
  - During a Push-to-Talk call
  - The FOMA terminal is connected to the First-Pass center
- Use "Set check new messages" (p.278) to specify which items are checked for.

1 ▶ i-mode ▶"Check new messages"

The check new messages screen appears.
The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

- (i-mode)▶"Check new messages"
- (MAIL) (1 second or longer)
- (MAIL)▶"Check new messages"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail" → "MessageR" → "MessageF".

The " " (white), " R " (white) and " F " (white) icons flash during checking, and the "Mail Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.

The numbers of newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF are displayed.

■ **To cancel the inquiry**

▶Hold down (Cancel) or CLR (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry

Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

◆When the " R " (white) or " F " (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR or MessageF held for you at the i-mode center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode center for holding your MessageR/MessageF is full, the " R " (red) or " F " (red) icon appears.

◆The table below shows the maximum number of MessageR/MessageF that can be held at the i-mode center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number	Longest period
MessageR	300	72Hours
MessageF	300	72Hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest one.

◆Even if a MessageR or MessageF is stored at the i-mode center, the " R " (white) or " F " (white) may not appear if a FOMA terminal is turned off or " " appears.

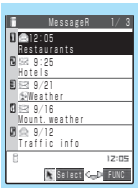
<MessageR/MessageF>

Viewing Messages in the Message Box

- When a FOMA terminal receives a MessageR/MessageF from the i-mode center, " R " (white) or " F " (white) icon appears at the top of the screen.

1 ▶ i-mode ▶"Message" ▶"MessageR" or "MessageF"

The "message list" screen appears.



Message list

Function menu➡p.231

2 Select a message you want to read

The "message detail" screen appears.
To display the next or previous message on the message detail screen, use .
Press CLR on the message detail screen to return to the message list screen.



Message detail

Function menu➡p.232

NOTE

◆Keys such as "OK" and "Cancel" may appear in a MessageR/MessageF. The keys can be used in the same way as those on a site.

Function menu (message list screen)

Display all	Reverts a sorted or filtered display to the original (all items shown in reverse chronological order).
Sort	Sorts messages according to the specified criterion.
Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.

Continued on next page

Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all the protected MessageR/MessageF.
No. of messages	Displays the number of stored MessageR/MessageF, unread messages and protected messages.
Delete	Deletes MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (□)▶⊙(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete read**	Deletes the read MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the stored MessageR/MessageF.

NOTE

<Sort>
- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together.
- Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Filter>
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Delete this>
- You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
- You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete selected>
- You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
- You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete read>
- The protected and read MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.

<Delete all>
- The unread MessageR/MessageF are also deleted.
- The protected MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.
- When only filtered MessageR/MessageF are displayed, selecting "Delete all" deletes all the unprotected MessageR/MessageF shown on the current list screen.

Function menu (message detail screen)

Add to phonebook	Adds the phone number and e-mail address displayed in MessageR/MessageF to the phonebook. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" →p.111 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" →p.112
Save melody	Saves a melody attached to or pasted into MessageR/MessageF.
Save image	Saves an image attached to MessageR/MessageF. "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" →p.223
Save ToruCa	Saves a ToruCa attached to MessageR/MessageF.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Delete	Deletes the MessageR/MessageF displayed on the message detail screen.

NOTE

<Save melody>
- Select an attached melody to play it.
- When you save a pasted melody, it is saved under its title instead of the file name. If a melody has no title, its file name is appended.
- Some saved melodies may not be played correctly.

<Save image>
- All attached images are displayed regardless of the "Set image disp." setting.

<Delete>
- You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

Using SSL Certificate

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set it to valid/invalid.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶**"Connection setting"▶"Certificate"**



2 Select a certificate▶Check the details

■ **To validate and invalidate an SSL certificate**

▶Highlight a certificate▶⊖(FUNC)▶"Valid/Invalid"

NOTE
- All certificates are set to "Valid" at the time of purchase.
- The "" icon appears when you select "Valid". The "" icon appears when you select "Invalid".

◆If you select “Invalid”, you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
◆DoCoMo Cert 2 is always set to “Valid” and this setting cannot be changed.

Setting FirstPass

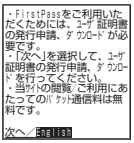
User certificates prove that the user is a bona-fide FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access FirstPass compliant sites.

Connecting to the FirstPass Center

Use this procedure to request and download the user certificate.

- You can request a user certificate or download it from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with a FOMA card (blue).
- Date and time must be set before connecting to the FirstPass Center.→p.46
- The screens and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

1 (MENU)▶ (i-mode)▶“Client certificate”▶Check the details▶“English”



2 “Request your certificate”



■ **If you are using FirstPass for the first time**
Select “The usage regulation (Japanese only)” and carefully read the information provided.

■ **To apply invalidation**
Select “Other settings” then “Revoke your certificate”.
Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

3 Check the details▶“Continue”

4 Enter the PIN2 code
PIN2 code→p.156

5 Check the message▶“Download”▶Check the details▶“Continue”▶“Menu”



The confirmation message appears.
The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is complete.

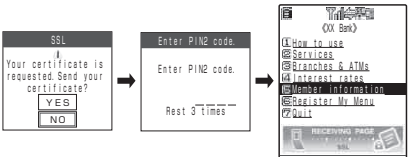
NOTE

◆Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.
◆Before using the FirstPass Center, select “Usage regulations (Japanese only)” and read the information.
◆You cannot use the following functions while you are connected to the FirstPass Center.
- Push-to-Talk calls
- Sending or receiving i-mode mails (sending or receiving SMS is available)
- Check new messages (Check new SMS is available)
- Sending or receiving speed photo mails
- Receiving MessageR/MessageF
- Downloading i-motion
- Web To function

◆Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
◆Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.
◆To use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, apply issue for the user certificate again and download it.
◆To check a downloaded user certificate, see “Using SSL Certificate” (p.232).
◆FirstPass is also available in full browser. However, the packet communication charge for connecting to FirstPass-compliant sites is not covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal.

Using a user certificate to connect to a site

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶Confirm the user certificate transmission▶“YES”▶Enter the PIN2 code



NOTE

◆Packet communication charge for connection to FirstPass-compliant sites is covered by “Pake-Houdai” deal.
◆If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, a message informing you of that fact is displayed. You may still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting “YES”, but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select “NO”. When the “SSL session was terminated” message appears, press ● to return to the original screen. Reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

Continued on next page

■ Notes on using FirstPass

- FirstPass is a DoCoMo's digital authentication service. FirstPass enables client authentication, where a site authenticates the FOMA terminal.
- FirstPass can be used either when a FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software provided on the "FOMA N902iS用CD-ROM" (CD-ROM for FOMA N902iS) bundled with the FOMA terminal must be installed on the PC. For more information, refer to the "FirstPassManual" (PDF file) contained in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is in Japanese only.)
  To view the "FirstPassManual" (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required.
  If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Visit the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the "FirstPass usage regulations" shown on your screen before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you need to enter your PIN2 code (p.156). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to the PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated by calling "Inquiries" described on the back cover.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing the Certificate Host

Default setting: DoCoMo

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this procedure to set the host for downloading the user certificate.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Connection setting"** ▶ **"Certificate host"**

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Default URL	Sets the URL of the initial screen for the host. You can enter up to 100 single-byte characters.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.

3 Press (Finish) after changing the settings

NOTE

- To change a stored "User defined host", use the procedure for storing the host.
- To delete a stored "User defined host", select "Delete" from the function menu.

What is i-motion?

i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data and downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can also set an i-motion as a ring tone.
Chaku-motion →p.128

● i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into two types. The type of i-motion downloaded depends on the site or file type.

i-motion		Description
Type	**Replay type**	
Standard type (Can be saved*)	Playable after downloaded (Up to 500K bytes)	Can be played after the whole data is downloaded.
	Playable during download (Up to 500K bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time.

i-motion		Description
Type	Replay type	
Streaming type (Cannot be saved)	Playable during download (Up to 2M bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time. The data is deleted after played. Cannot be played repeatedly or stored on the FOMA terminal.

* : Some i-motion programs cannot be saved.

NOTE

◆The FOMA terminal can play i-motion in the MP4 format (Mobile MP4).
◆The i-motion of ASF format cannot be downloaded.

<Download i-motion>

Downloading i-motion

Downloading i-motion from sites to play

1 (MENU)▶(i-mode)▶"iMenu"▶"Menu List"▶Select a site

2 Select i-motion

The "data acquisition" screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ To cancel the download

▶(Quit)

■ Standard-type i-motion

Use the "Automatic replay" setting in "i-motion setting" (p.236) to specify whether to play standard i-motion automatically during download. Some i-motion may be played after downloaded.

■ Streaming-type i-motion

You cannot download streaming i-motion if "Standard type" is selected in "i-motion type".

When you receive a message "Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay"

- "Standard type" is selected in the "i-motion type" (p.236) in "i-motion setting". Select "Site Settings" → "i-motion type" from the function menu, change the settings to "Std · Streaming type", and then download the i-motion again.

When you receive a message "Replay streaming?"

- Selecting "YES" plays the i-motion. Selecting "NO" returns you to the site screen.
- To cancel playback in progress after selecting "YES", press (Quit).

3 "Play"

Plays the downloaded i-motion.

"Operation during i-motion playback"→p.340



Data acquisition

NOTE

◆Untitled i-motion appears as "No title" on the data acquisition screen.
◆Some sites and i-motion do not allow playback during download.
◆Even if you stop playback of a standard-type i-motion program during download, the download continues.
◆Even if "ON" is selected in "Automatic replay", the data played during download is not automatically played after download.
◆Some i-motion are restricted to be played. "" appears at the beginning of the title for the i-motion with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. i-motion restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, i-motion restricted on the playback period or time limit cannot be played.
"i-motion information"→p.340
◆Some downloaded i-motion may not be played correctly.
◆When you download and play standard-type i-motion at the same time (the first replay only), you cannot play fast, step or slow. When playing the streaming-type, you cannot pause the playback either. Press (Quit) to stop playback.
◆If data download is interrupted due to problems with signal reception or the downloaded data exceeds the maximum data size, a message saying that the data could not be downloaded and the data acquisition screen appear, on the condition that "Play", "Save" or "Property" can appear on the data acquisition screen.
◆The reception status may affect the replay or motion during download. After the data download is completed, you can play the standard-type i-motion repeatedly, but not the streaming-type.
◆Select "Add screen memo" from the data acquisition function menu (p.235) to save an i-motion as a "screen memo" (p.222), then play the i-motion from the screen memo.
However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of the following i-motion types of i-motion as screen memo:
- i-motion with playback restrictions
- Streaming-type i-motion
- Incomplete i-motion

◆i-motion programs saved in screen memos are not listed in the i-motion folder of Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the playlist or Stand-by display function with these i-motion programs.

Saving i-motion

When “Save” can be selected on the data acquisition screen, the i-motion can be saved to your FOMA terminal.

- Some i-motion programs may not be saved.
- Up to 100 i-motion programs can be saved, including movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion programs that can be saved varies between 4 and 100 depending on the amount of i-motion data.
- i-motion folder→p.324

1 Data acquisition screen (p.235)▶“Save”▶“YES”

■ **To cancel saving**

▶“NO”

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

2 Select the destination folder

You receive a message that the i-motion was saved.

NOTE

- ◆An i-motion without a title is listed as “movieXXX” (XXX are numeric characters).
- ◆You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site to the standby screen.→p.138
  Some i-motion programs cannot be set for the standby screen.
- ◆You cannot use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

Viewing i-motion details

You can check the i-motion details, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

1 Data acquisition screen (p.235)▶“Property”

The “i-motion info” screen appears. Use ⊙ to scroll the display up and down to check the details such as the remaining replay count, playback period and time limit.
After checking the information, press CLR.

Setting i-motion

Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion <Automatic replay>

Default setting: ON

You can specify whether to automatically play an i-motion when:

- Downloading i-motion from a site
- Downloading i-motion from the received mail screen
- Displaying a screen memo of the data acquisition screen
- The “Automatic replay” setting is available only for standard-type i-motion. Streaming-type i-motion is automatically played regardless of the setting.
  i-motion types→p.234

1 i-mode settings screen (p.227)▶“i-motion setting”▶“Automatic replay”▶Select any item

ON	Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion are played during download.
OFF	Opens the data acquisition screen without automatically playing the i-motion after downloading.

Setting the i-motion type to download <i-motion type>

Default setting: Standard type

Use this procedure to set the type of i-motion you want to download from a site.

1 i-mode settings screen (p.227)▶“i-motion setting”▶“i-motion type”▶Select any item

Standard type	Downloads only standard-type i-motion.
Std・Streaming type	Downloads standard-type and streaming-type i-motion.

NOTE

- ◆When you want to download a streaming-type i-motion, you need to select “Std・Streaming type” in “i-motion type”. If it is not selected and you try to download a streaming-type i-motion, you receive a message saying that you need to change the i-motion type and cannot download the streaming-type i-motion.

Mail

What is i-mode Mail? 238
Displaying Mail Menu..... Mail menu 242

Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail.... Compose message/Send 243
Composing and Sending Deco-mail ..... Deco-mail 247
Self-Decorating a Mail to Text..... Auto Deco-mail 250
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail 250
Attaching Files ..... Attach Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion/ToruCa 252
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later..... Save i-mode mail 253
Storing Addresses in Mail member..... 254

Receiving and handling i-mode Mail

When You Receive i-mode Mail ..... Auto receive mail 255
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively ..... Receive option 257
Checking for i-mode Mail ..... Check new messages 258
Replying to i-mode Mail ..... Reply to mail 258
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients..... Forward mail 259
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook..... 259
Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail ..... Save melody 260
Saving Images in Image Mail..... Receive image mail 260
Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail.... i-motion mail 260
Displaying/Saving ToruCa..... Receiving ToruCa 261

Using mailboxes

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox..... Inbox/Outbox 261

Using mail records

Using mail records..... Sent address list/Received address list 275

Specifying mail settings

Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions..... Mail settings 276

Using chat mail

Composing and Sending Chat Mail ..... Compose chat/Send 280
Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group..... 283

Using SMS (Short Message)

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message) ..... Compose SMS/Send 285
When You Receive an SMS (Short Message) ..... Receive SMS 286
Checking for SMS (Short Message) ..... Check SMS 287
Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings..... SMS settings 287
Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM) ..... UIM operation 288

What is i-mode Mail?

The mail function provided on the FOMA terminal enables you to send and receive i-mode mail and SMS. Subscribing <i-mode> is required for using i-mode mail.
How to send and receive i-mode mail→p.243, 255

- You can send and receive SMS (text) with other FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode.
How to send and receive SMS→p.285, 286

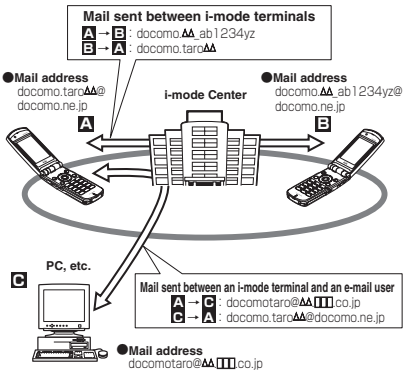
● i-mode mail

Subscribing to i-mode, as well as allowing you to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova phones), also lets you send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet.
Your mail address when you subscribe to i-mode is determined as described below.

■ For subscribing i-mode first time

The part before the @ symbol in your e-mail address is randomly created using a combination of alphanumeric characters. You should check what your e-mail address is after you subscribe to the i-mode service.
Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp
<To check your own e-mail address>
iMenu screen▶ENGLISH▶4 Options▶Mail Settings▶"Confirm Mail Address"

- When mail is exchanged between i-mode terminals (including movas), only the part before the "@" symbol in the e-mail address needs to be entered.
- To receive mail sent from a PC via e-mail, the full e-mail address, including "@docomo.ne.jp", must be used.



- Sending i-mode mail→p.243
- Receiving i-mode mail→p.255

■ Receive option

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail.→p.257

■ Specifying mail settings

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>
iMenu screen▶ENGLISH▶4 Options▶Mail Settings▶"Each setting"

* For details, refer to the "i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.

■ Changing your mail address <Mail Address (Change Mail Address)>

For example, if your address is "docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp", you can change the part that precedes the "@" symbol to your preferred name.

■ Confirming your mail address <Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)>

This allows you to check your current mail address.

■ Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Register a Secret Code>

When your phone number is used as your e-mail address, you can include your 4-digit secret code in the address. In that way, you can avoid receiving unwanted mail since only incoming mail that provides the secret code will be accepted.

■ Resetting your mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶Reset Mail Address>

Use this feature to reset your mail address to "[your-phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp".

■ Rejecting spam mail

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and mail reject settings:

① Reject/Receive Mail Settings <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶Reject/Receive Mail Settings>
- Allows you to accept only mail from specified service providers among DoCoMo, au, Vodafone, TU-KA and WILLCOM. Also accepts only mail from specified domains or addresses when the mail is not from one of the above providers. You can reject messages from addresses disguising mobile phone/PHS domains.

② SMS Rejection Settings <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶SMS Rejection Settings>
- You can restrict receiving SMS using one of the following four rejection settings: "Reject all", "Reject SMS with no caller ID", "Reject international SMS" and "Reject SMS with no caller ID and international SMS". You can also check the setting status.

③ Reject mass i-mode mail senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)▶Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders>

- This function gives you the choice of accepting or rejecting i-mode mail from an i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) once you have received 200 messages from that terminal in one day. The default setting is “Reject”, so you do not have to change the setting to reject mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders.

④ Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)▶Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>

- This feature lets you reject mail marked as “未承諾広告※” that is sent to you without your consent. The default setting is “Reject”, so you do not have to change the setting to reject unsolicited advertising. Senders are legally required to include “未承諾広告※” (6 double-byte Japanese characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.

■ **Restricting mail size <Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)>**

Using this option enables restriction to an incoming i-mode mail by size specified in advance.

■ **Checking your settings <Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)>**

Use this option to check your current mail settings, including your mail accept/reject settings.

■ **Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>**

Use this option to stop the mail functions at the i-mode Center when you are not using them.

■ **Preventing nuisance mail**

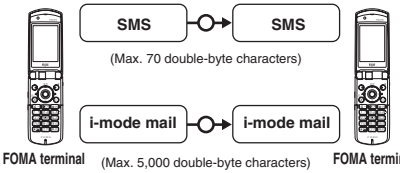
Effective ways of preventing nuisance mail include changing your mail address and using address-specific accept/reject.

● Your SMS (Short Message)

Your SMS address is your “subscriber mobile phone number”.

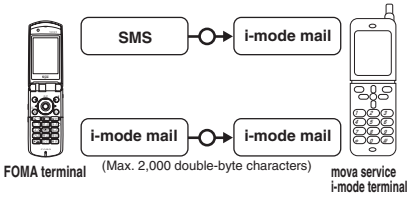
● Sending and receiving mail using the 3 mail functions

FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal-to-mova service i-mode terminal

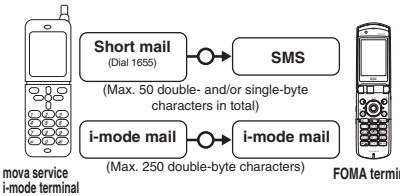
SMS from the FOMA terminal is received as an i-mode mail at the mova service i-mode terminal.



* If “ON” is selected in “SMS report request” (p.286), you cannot send SMS to the mova terminal.

mova service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

Short Mail* sent from a mova service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



* : Short Mail is a text messaging service provided by DoCoMo for mobile phones.

- On FOMA terminals, Short Mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal is received as SMS.

● Numbers of characters that can be sent/received

The table below shows the maximum number of characters that you can send or receive using i-mode mail or SMS.

Continued on next page

■ i-mode mail

Item	Double-byte characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Single-byte characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana etc.)
Subject	15	30
Mail address	—	50
Message	5,000*	10,000*

* : The number of characters in the message that you can send or receive decreases if a file (melody, image, i-motion or ToruCa) is attached to the message. Note also that the number characters that can be sent in Deco-mail is no more than half the numbers shown above.

■ SMS (Short Message)

The maximum number of characters vary depending on the SMS input character setting. “Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)”→p.285

Item	SMS input character “Japanese”	SMS input character “English”
Recipient	20 (numbers only) *1	
Message	Double-byte characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.) or single-byte characters (alphabetic characters, numeric, katakana etc.) 70*2	Single-byte characters (alphabetic characters and numeric) 160*3

*1 : 21 characters if a single-byte “+” is included at the beginning.
*2 : 70 characters for both single- and double-byte
*3 : Entering symbols such as | ^ { } [ ] ~ \ € decreases the number of sendable characters.

NOTE

- You can send and receive i-mode mail where the message body contains up to 5,000 double-byte characters (10,000 bytes), but the number of characters that can be sent and received is reduced depending on the amount of data in any attached files. You cannot send and receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted in the i-mode Center and you receive only the message. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the “添付ファイル削除” (Attached file delete) message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message (The “添付ファイル削除” (Attached file delete) message is included the count of the number of characters that can be received).
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either “/” or “//” is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- When you send i-mode mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, the message body can contain up to 2,000 double-byte characters. An i-shot or i-motion mail is sent as a message with URL to show the mail and other attached files are deleted.
- If the number of characters in the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, all characters that exceed the limit are automatically deleted.
- Except for mail exchanged between i-mode terminals (including movas), do not use single-byte katakana or pictographs in the messages as they may not be displayed properly on the receiver side.

● If the FOMA terminal cannot receive mail

When mail is delivered to the i-mode Center, it is immediately sent to your FOMA terminal. However, if your FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, or if you have selected “ON” in “Receive option setting” (p.276), the mail is stored at the i-mode Center.
When keeping your mail at the i-mode Center, it is resent up to three times at regular intervals. Using other settings, you can select and receive your mail at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

<i-mode mail>

- The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number of messages	Maximum storage period
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 M bytes)	720 hours

- SMS left at the SMS Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- The limit on the number of messages that can be held differs depending on the mail file sizes. When the amount of held mail exceeds the limit, the i-mode Center no longer accepts incoming mail and any new mail is returned to the sender together with an error message. In this case, the “ (red)” icon appears on the i-mode terminal. If you have selected “ON” in “Receive option setting” (p.276), “ (red)” may not appear on your i-mode terminal for excess of the limit.
- You can receive mail held at the i-mode Center to your FOMA terminal using “Check new messages” (p.258) or “Receive option” (p.257). When the new mail arrives on your FOMA terminal, other held mail and messages are also received at the same time.
- All the mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted once it has been received on your i-mode terminal. The received mails are stored on the i-mode terminal. →p.255
- Very large e-mail messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.
- If you use “Suspend Mail” function, new mail is not held at the i-mode Center.

<SMS>

- SMS are held at the SMS Center for a maximum of 72 hours. You can set the holding period for sent SMS using “SMS validity period” (p.276, 286).
- SMS left at the SMS Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- You can receive SMS held at the SMS Center to your FOMA terminal using “Check new SMS” (p.287).
- SMS held at the SMS Center is deleted once it has been received on your FOMA terminal. The received SMS is stored on the FOMA terminal.

● Other useful features

■ Attachments

- **Attached melodies**

  You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use

as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with melodies→p.252
- For receiving i-mode mail with melodies →p.260

- **Attached images**

You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with images→p.252
- For receiving i-mode mail with images→p.260

- **Attached ToruCa**

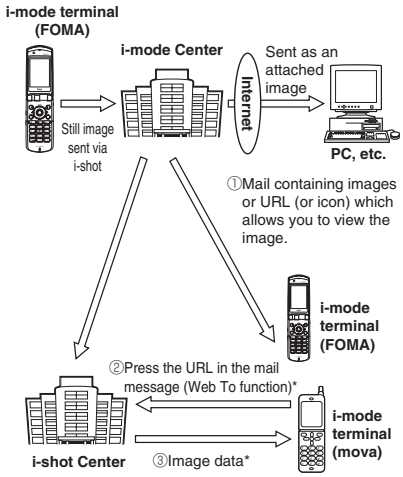
With attached to an i-mode mail, you can send or receive ToruCa which is downloaded from the websites or i-mode sites, or is acquired from the reader/writer unit for ToruCa or the external memory.

- To send i-mode mail with ToruCa→p.252

■ i-shot

You can use i-shot to exchange still images shot using a terminal with a camera function as attached files with i-mode terminals (including movas), PCs or third-party mobile phones. A mail that includes the attached file format or the URL (or icon) to view the image and the storage expiration date of the image is sent to the recipient, and selecting the URL can download the image. The body of mail sent to a mova service i-mode terminal can be up to 184 double-byte (369 bytes) long. If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.

- To send i-mode mail with images→p.252
- For receiving i-mode mail with images→p.260



* : If you receive a mail showing URL for the attached image

- Images are held for up to 10 days at the i-shot Center, after which they are automatically deleted.
- An i-mode terminal can send a still image up to 500K bytes. When an attached image of 20K bytes or larger is sent to an i-mode terminal, the recipient receives the image automatically compressed in size.

■ i-motion mail

You can use i-motion mail to exchange movies you have shot or downloaded from i-mode sites with phones that support i-motion mail, PCs or third-party mobile phones. (Note that you cannot attach movie files when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

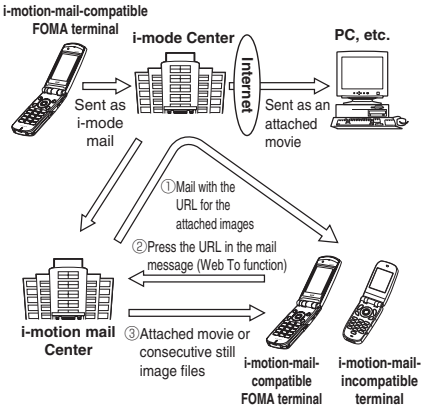
- To send i-motion mail→p.252
- For receiving i-motion mail→p.260

■ How the service works

Movie files attached to i-mode mail are sent to the i-motion mail Center where they are saved. (If the mail is sent to a PC, the data is sent directly as an attached file.)

When i-motion mail is received by a phone that supports i-motion mail, the URL appears in the message body of the mail and the recipient can then download the movie by pressing the URL.

If you send i-motion mail to a phone that does not support i-motion mail, the i-motion is converted into consecutive still images and the recipient receives a mail message containing the URL for the images. The recipient can then download the images by selecting the URL displayed in the mail.



- Movies are stored at the i-motion mail center for up to 10 days. If this storage period is exceeded, the images are automatically deleted.
- A terminal that supports i-motion mail can receive a movie up to 500K bytes. The size of downloaded movie is automatically changed to the one that matches the terminal that supports i-motion mail.

Continued on next page

■ Deco-mail

The FOMA terminal enables you to compose and send your own distinctive personalized mail or attractively decorated mail by allowing you to vary the text size or change the background color, etc. when editing mail, or by pasting images into the message body. (If you receive Deco-mail from a PC, it may not run as it did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on i-mode terminals.)
If you send Deco-mail to a non-Deco-mail-supported-terminal, it is sent with URL showing the Deco-mail site. The recipient selects on the URL to view the Deco-mail.

- Composing and Sending Deco-mail→p.247

- Support model: Deco-mail-capable model is available. For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

■ Sending broadcast mail

This feature allows you to send the same i-mode mail message to multiple addresses (up to 5) at once.→p.245

■ Cc/Bcc sending and receiving

As on a PC, you can select “To”, “Cc” and/or “Bcc” as the recipient when editing i-mode mail. However, if there is no address in the “To” field, the mail cannot be sent.

- “Change rcv. Type” in the Function menu (New mail screen) → p.244

■ Chat mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

NOTE

<Attachments>

◆When “File restricted” is selected in “File restriction”, you can still send still images shot using the FOMA terminal’s built-in camera.

◆If you send i-mode mail to a mova service i-mode terminal (excluding all the 501 models, R691i, and R209i), you can send only one JPEG-format image as an attachment.

<i-motion mail>

◆If you send i-mode mail to an i-motion terminal, each browser URL for the i-motion stored at the i-motion Center can be accessed and the i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times. Once it has been accessed and downloaded 50 times, the i-motion can be no longer downloaded any more.

◆When “File restricted” is selected in “File restriction”, you can still send movies shot using the FOMA terminal’s built-in camera.

◆To play an i-motion on a PC, you must have compatible software. See the DoCoMo website for details.

<Sending broadcast mail>

◆The communication charges for broadcast mail are the same as if one message were sent to each recipient. However, you are charged for the data in the additional recipient addresses.

<Chat mail>

◆Communication charges for chat mail with multiple recipients are the same as when broadcast mail is sent.

■ Important

- We recommend that you take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails, and store them on the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.472) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal may erase any recorded messages or memos. We take no responsibility in such an event so please take memos of the contents of your mail.

<Mail menu>

Displaying Mail Menu

1 MENU ▶ Mail

Pressing ● (MAIL) in standby screen also displays Mail menu.

Inbox	Shows the Inbox folder list screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail or mail from mail-connected i-αppli is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS.→p.261
Outbox	Shows the Outbox folder list screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail or mail from mail-connected i-αppli is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS.→p.261
Draft	Shows the Draft mail list screen. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS.→p.253
Compose message	Shows the screen used for composing i-mode mail.→p.243
Chat mail	Shows the chat screen.→p.281
Compose SMS	Shows the screen used for composing SMS.→p.285
Check new messages	Sends an inquiry to the i-mode Center and receives any i-mode mail held at the Center.→p.258
Receive option	Checks the subject of the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center and then selects the i-mode mail to be received or deletes items of i-mode mail before it is received when “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”.→p.257
Check new SMS	Receives new SMS stored in the SMS center→p.287
Template	Shows the template screen.→p.251

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Mail settings	“Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions”→p.276

<Compose message/Send>

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

- You can change the size and color of the text used in the message body, assign actions to the text and insert images, lines and other decorative features. Deco-mail→p.247

1 (MENU)▶(Mail)▶“Compose message”

The “New mail” screen appears.
Pressing ● (NEW) on “Mail menu” also displays the “New mail” screen.



New mail

Function menu➡p.244

2 “To”▶Select the address entry method

Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116
Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Mail member	Enters e-mail addresses from a mailing list. “Entering mailing list member addresses”→p.245
Enter address	Enters the e-mail address directly.

3 “Subject”

The “Subject” screen appears.

4 Enter a subject

You can enter the subject up to 15 double-byte characters or 30 single-byte characters.



Subject

Function menu➡p.245

5 “ ”

The “Message” screen appears.

6 Enter message body

You can enter the message body up to 5,000 double-byte characters.
You can also insert a line feed while editing the message. A line feed is counted as 1 double-byte character and shown as “↵”. Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.
You can select the font size for the Message screen.→p.427
You can compose and send the Deco-mail.→p.247
You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail.→p.250



Message

Function menu➡p.245

■ Screen shown when you enter an i-mode mail message

The screen when you enter an i-mode mail message is shown below.



① Mail message entry area: Shows the message that has been entered and confirmed so far.
② Text entry (edit) screen: Shows the text to be entered, operation guidance and other information. This area shows the entered text before you confirm it. You can use the Word Prediction function to enter text in the text entry (editing) area.→p.429

7 Check the details▶●(Send)

An animation is displayed while then i-mode mail is being sent. Press ● to return to the Mail menu screen.



■ To interrupt transmission

▶●(Cancel) or (CLR) (1 second or longer)
Depending on the timing, the i-mode mail may be sent.

■ For another transmission request

▶“YES”

Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook screen

Locate and display an e-mail address stored in the phonebook and then press ●(MAIL).
The currently displayed phonebook e-mail address is pasted into the address field in the new mail screen.



NOTE

- If the total number of sent mail items (including both i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 400 messages or the storage capacity for sent mail, sent mail is automatically replaced starting with the oldest message, except i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted.
- When sending mail to phones that do not support i-mode, do not use single-byte katakana or pictographs in the subject or the message body as the recipients may not be able to display the mail correctly.
- When the recipient address is a phone number and the number is preceded by the "184" or "186" prefix, a message appears when you try to send i-mode mail asking whether to delete the prefix before sending the mail. Select "YES" to send the i-mode mail without the "184" or "186" prefix. Selecting "NO" returns you to the previous screen.
- You cannot send i-mode mail to addresses that include a comma (,) or a space (blank).
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the "Transmission failed" message may appear even after the message has been sent.
- If you enter an address that was stored in the phonebook with a "Secret code" assigned (p.119), the secret code is automatically added to the address when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not saved in the record of sent mail addresses.

Function menu (New mail screen)

Send	Sends i-mode mail.
Preview	Allows you to check the mail address and content before sending a message. Selecting "Save" from the function menu when previewing is also available for saving a mail.
Save	Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. "Saving i-mode mail"→p.253
Delete receiver	Deletes an added address. When other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up to fill the space. If there is only 1 address entered, you cannot delete the address.
Change rcv. type	Changes the receiver type with a receiver highlighted.
• **To**	The recipient's address. The mail address entered in the "To" field is displayed in other recipients' terminals.
• **Cc**	Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.
• **Bcc**	Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.
Template	You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail"→p.250
Attach file	Attaches the image, i-motion, melody or ToruCa data to an i-mode mail message. "Attaching files"→p.252
Activate camera	Activates camera function. "Shooting Still Images"→p.185 "Shooting Movies"→p.192
• **Photo mode**	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• **Movie mode**	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot a movie. File size setting can be specified as Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long). The image sizes you can shoot are QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).
Delete att. file	Deletes the highlighted attachment file.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachment files.
Add header	Pastes a header into the i-mode mail message.
Add signature	Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message.
Erase message	Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.
Delete	Deletes the current i-mode mail message.

NOTE

<Change rcv. type>

- You can use To, Cc and Bcc to send an i-mode mail message to different addresses. Note that "To" must be filled in for sending it.
- E-mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, some terminal devices or mailing applications may not show the address on the receiving side.

<Add header> <Add signature>

- If you select the "Insert" checkbox in "Header/Signature", the header or signature is automatically pasted into the new i-mode mail message.→p.277

Searching for an address in the phonebook

You can enter an address by searching for e-mail addresses in the phonebook.

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶“ To ”▶“Phonebook”▶Select the search method

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

Adding addresses

You can enter additional addresses so that an i-mode mail message is sent to multiple addresses at the same time (broadcast mail).

- You can enter up to 5 addresses.

<Example: Looking up and adding addresses from the phonebook>

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶“ To ” with a blank address▶“Phonebook”▶Select the search method

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen

To add more mail addresses, repeat steps 1 and 2.



■ **To change the entered recipient**

▶Select the address you want to change
▶Select the address entry method

If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select “YES”.

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

Entering mailing list member addresses <Mail member>

Using Mail member allows you to add multiple addresses at once.

To use Mail member, you need to register the addresses of the mailing list members beforehand.→p.254

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶“ To ”▶“Mail member”

2 Select a mail member

The selected mail member is entered into the recipient column.



3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

NOTE

◆If addresses are is already entered and you specify another address from a mail member, a message appears to confirm whether to overwrite them after selecting the search method. Select “YES” if you want to overwrite the entered addresses. Otherwise, select “NO”.

Function menu (Address/Subject screen)

- The same function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen→p.434

Function menu (Message screen)

- See the function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen (p.434) for the following items.

Decorate mail	“Decorating a message”→p.248
Select area	Decorating the area-selected characters or cut and paste is available. →p.249
Load template	Creates Deco-mail using templates. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail”→p.250
Activate camera	Activates camera.→p.185
Property	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.
Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step.
Preview	Displays the message preview.

NOTE

<Activate camera>

◆The size of image that can be shot using the camera function is SubQCIF (128 × 96).

Continued on next page

<Undo>

◆After you press “Undo” and return the text or message decoration to its state one step ago, you cannot cancel “Undo”.

◆On the message screen, if you press ● to return to the new mail screen and then go back to the message screen, you cannot “Undo”. (If you select “Preview” on the message screen, after previewing the text, you are able to return.)

<Preview>

◆When you have included a phone number, e-mail address, URL or a link to an i-αppli in an i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview screen. However, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions cannot be used.

Sending the still image shot in talking <Speed photo mail>

This function allows you to take a picture while you are in the middle of a voice call and then send the picture to the other party.

- To use Speed photo mail, the phone number and e-mail address of the person you are talking to must be stored in the phonebook under the same memory number beforehand.

<Example: To send a picture taken as you speak>

1 In-call screen (p.50)▶(−)(FUNC)▶“Speed photo mail”▶“Photo mode”

■ **To send an image saved on the FOMA terminal**

▶“Speed photo mail”▶“My picture”

Images that cannot be sent cannot be selected. You can only send “QCIF” or “SubQCIF” images that are 9,000 bytes or less in size when they are attached to mails.

2 ● or (📷)

The image is shot.
The FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound as it takes the picture.
You can use the camera functions to adjust the brightness or set the image size before taking the picture. →p.186
The “speed photo mail image” screen appears.



Speed photo mail image

Function menu➡p.247

■ **To save and send the still image you shot**

▶Speed photo mail image function menu▶“Save & send”

If you send the image without selecting “Save & send”, it is not saved.

3 ●▶●

A send confirmation message appears.



■ **When multiple e-mail addresses are registered**

▶Select the e-mail address of the intended recipient

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

NOTE

◆This function cannot be used in the following situations:

- When the other party’s phone number and e-mail address are not stored in the phonebook
- When the other party’s phone number and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”
- When the called party has not provided a caller ID (User unset or Not support, etc.)
- During packet communication using a FOMA terminal as a modem in data communication
- When the Draft mailbox is full
- During call waiting
- When the call was made during software updating

◆Mail sent using this function is stored in the Outbox with your phone number as the subject.

◆Even if “Select size” is set to other than “QCIF (176 × 144)” or “SubQCIF (128 × 96)”, launching this function reverts the setting to “QCIF”.

◆If you change the “Select size” while this function is running, only the “QCIF (176 × 144)” and “SubQCIF (128 × 96)” formats can be selected.

<Priority sequence for addresses highlighted in the send confirmation screen>

◆If there are multiple e-mail addresses stored for the other party, the addresses shown in the send confirmation screen are highlighted in the following priority order:

①i-mode address (where the “@” symbol is followed by “docomo.ne.jp”)

②Phone numbers or addresses without domains (the domain is the part that follows the “@” symbol)

③The first address stored in the phonebook

Speed photo mail image function menu

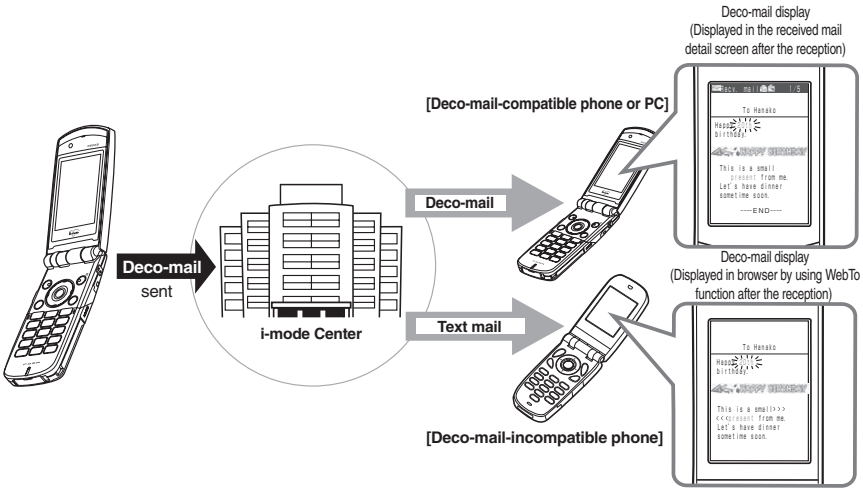
Save & send	Saves the photographed image in My picture and then sends it as speed photo mail. →p.246
Compose message	Sends the photographed image as speed photo mail without saving it.
Set as display	Saves and pastes the photographed image before sending it as speed photo mail. This is the same procedure as “Set as display” in the function menu (image checking screen). →p.187
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

<Deco-mail>

Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to make your i-mode mail (text mail) more visually appealing and exciting by changing the size and color of the text, changing the background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message.

- To create a Deco-mail, you can either select the decoration and then enter the message body, or you can enter the message body first and then decorate the mail.



NOTE

- If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, inserted images and decorations appear as quoted in the message.
- If you use “Reply with quote” or “Forward” with Deco-mail that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image is deleted.

Composing a Deco-mail message

- The Deco-mail pictures are saved in the "Deco-mail-picture" folder in "My picture". Decomail-picture preinstalled at default→p.456
- If you decorate the message in Deco-mail, you can enter fewer characters than in the text mail.
- The decoration affects the number of characters available for entering characters and decorating.
- You can preview the decoration by selecting "Preview" from the function menu on the message screen.

<Example: Changing the font size>

1 Inputting the address and subject on the "New mail" screen (p.243)▶"[ ]"

The "Message" screen appears.

2 Enter message body▶(−)(FUNC)▶"Decorate mail"

The decoration menu appears.
Pressing [✉] also displays the decoration menu on the message screen while in composing the new i-mode mail.

3 "[AA]"



■ **To decorate the text already entered**

▶"Edit"▶Use ⊕ to select a start point of the text to be decorated▶Use ⊕ to select the end of the text to be decorate▶"[AA]"▶Select size

The size of letters in the specified area is changed.

4 Select size



5 Enter text to be decorated

Press (−) (Exit) or [CLR] to end the decoration menu.



Decorating a message

1 Message screen (p.243)▶(−)(FUNC)▶"Decorate mail"▶Select any item

Auto	"Self-Decorating a Mail to Text"→p.250
[A]	**▶Use ⊕ to select a color▶Enter message body** Selects the color of the entered text or lines from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors every time (−)(Change) is pressed.
[AA]	**▶Select any item▶Enter message body** Selects the size of the entered text.
[AAA]	Sets large text.
[AAA]	Sets standard-size text.Sets standard-size text.
[AAA]	Sets small text.
[ ]	Selects the image to be inserted from the images saved in My picture.→p.325
[A]	**▶[ABegin]▶Enter text to be blinked** Makes the entered text blink.
[ABegin]	Sets the point at which blinking starts.
[AEnd]	Sets the point at which blinking ends.
[A]	**▶[ABegin]▶Enter text to be displayed as ticker** Scrolls the entered text horizontally (displays as tickers).
[ABegin]	Sets the point at which the ticker starts.
[AEnd]	Sets the point at which the ticker ends.
[A]	**▶[ABegin]▶Enter text to be swung** Swings the entered text horizontally (swinging text).
[ABegin]	Sets the point at which swinging starts.
[AEnd]	Sets the point at which swinging ends.
[ ]	**▶Select any item▶Enter message body** Selects the position of the entered text. If the line length at the text entry position is too short to hold all the text, the setting is changed to however many lines are needed to accommodate the text.
[ ]	Sets left-justified text.
[ ]	Sets centered text.
[ ]	Sets right-justified text.
[ ]	Inserts a line.
[ ]	**▶Use ⊕ to select a color** Selects the background color from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors every time (−)(Change) is pressed.
Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step. (You cannot use this operation after ending the message input screen.)
Edit	"Changing the decorations"→p.249
Reset All	Deletes all the decorations.
[ ]	Previews the entered text and decoration in sending image

NOTE

- 5 colors last selected from the 256-color pallet appear in the lowest row of the 25-color pallet.
- If you change the background color setting, the cursor color also changes in accordance with the selected colors.
- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select "Edit", specify the extent to be changed and then select "Reset".
- If you enter a character in the area you want to decorate, the character is decorated as well.
- You can insert JPEG images or GIF images such that the total size of the message and the image does not exceed 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters).
- If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are handled as 1 image. However, if you save or send an image once and then edit and insert it again, it is handled as a separate image.
- If you copy and paste an image that has already been inserted in the edit screen, it is also regarded as the same image and the original and copied images are handled as a single image.
- When inserting an animation to Deco-mail, you can see its action during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- If you make the text blink, set ticker or swing, those actions are shown during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- If you select "Add header" or "Add signature" on the compose message screen to paste a non-decorative text-only header or signature, the pasted header or signature takes over the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning or end of the message, respectively.
- Some background colors may overlap with the color of URL text to download image or i-motion and hence the URL text may be unreadable.
- Even if you delete the decorated text, the decoration data itself is retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations and then delete the text. Also, if you delete all texts by holding down CLR for 1 second or longer, all data including the decoration is deleted.
- If a mail is exchanged with PC or other devices other than an i-mode compatible terminal that supports Deco-mail, decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- If a Deco-mail is sent to a non-Deco-mail-supported-terminal, it is held for up to 10 days at the i-mode Center. The message can be viewed in i-mode using the Web To function during those days.

Changing the decorations

1 Message screen (p.243)▶(FUNC)▶"Decorate mail"▶"Edit"▶Use to select the start▶Use to select the start▶Select any item

■ To change the decoration after specifying the area

▶Message screen (p.243)▶(FUNC)▶"Select area"▶Use to select the start▶Use to select the end▶"Decorate mail"▶Select any item

	▶Use to select a color Selects the color of the text or lines to be changed from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors every time (Change) is pressed.	
	Changes the font size in the specified range.	
		Changes to large text.
		Changes to standard-size text.
		Changes to small text.
	Changes or cancels blinking for the text in the specified area.	
	Select	Changes the blink setting.
	Reset	Cancels blink.
	Changes or cancels ticker for the text in the specified area.	
	Select	Changes the ticker setting.
	Reset	Cancels ticker.
	Changes or releases swinging for the text in the specified area.	
	Select	Changes swinging.
	Reset	Cancels swinging.
	Changes the position of the text in the specified area.	
		Changes to left-justified text.
		Changes to centered text.
		Changes to right-justified text.
Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step. (You cannot use this operation after ending the message entry screen.)	
Reset	Cancels blinking.	
	Previews the entered text and decoration in sending image	

NOTE

- You cannot change the inserted images or lines. If you do, delete the images or lines in the message entry screen and try to insert them.
- To change the specified background color, select "Decorate mail" from the message input function menu and choose "" (Change background color).

<Auto Deco-mail>

Self-Decorating a Mail to Text

Your FOMA terminal recognizes emotion expressed on the message you enter, and chooses the best suited decoration to your message in self-decorating. The entire message is displayed in the background color standing for the message emotion, as well as decorated with the font color, font size and tickers which are suited for the sentences.

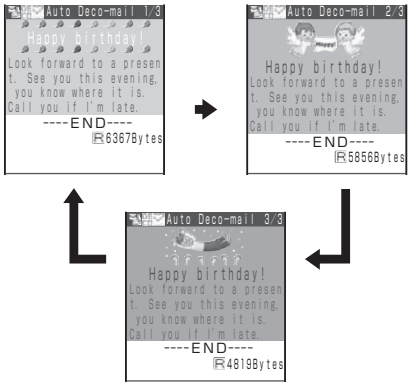
1 Message screen (p.243)▶(-)(FUNC)▶"Decorate mail"

2 "Auto"



3 Press (-) (Next) to select a decoration pattern

Three decoration patterns are available.



NOTE

◆You cannot use the auto Deco-mail in the following case:
- When ten files are attached
- When 5,000 bytes or less remains in total of the attached files and messages
- When a message alone has a 1,000-byte capacity or more

◆If an invalid termination occurs during preview of the decoration patterns for auto Deco-mail, the mail data including the decoration patterns are stored.

◆Immediately after returning to the message screen from the auto Deco-mail screen, selecting "Undo" is not available on the function menu.

◆When running the auto Deco-mail to the message already decorated, the message appears to say "All decorations of mail will be released OK?".

- The following emotions are recognized and classified by priority.

Priority	Classification by emotion
1	Hurry
2	Love/Dislike/Happy/Angry/Sad/Fun/Surprise
3	Question/Advice/Cheer up/Join/Remark/ Please/Information/OK
4	Reply/Notice

- The auto Deco-mail provides the following decoration pattern:
  - Background color
  - Character color /font size (big or small)
  - Word alignment (Center)
  - Telop/swing/blink
  - Insert image (animation GIF or still image)
- The best picture, which matches the contents of the message, is automatically selected from "Auto Decomail-picture". Depending on the contents, the picture displayed may not be the one you imagined.
  Auto Decomail-picture preinstalled at default →p.458

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using preinstalled templates at default. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and the ornament were already set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

- Preinstalled templates at default →p.459
- You can download templates from sites.
  "Downloading Data Files from Sites" →p.226
- You can edit a template on the template preview screen. →p.252
- The decoration information is already included in the templates. Consequently, the number characters that can be entered may be fewer than for text mail.
- When you try to use a template in the following situations, a message appears asking whether to delete the edited content in the message:
  - When there is already text entered in the mail message
  - When the header or signature is automatically inserted
  - When there is an attached file

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶(FUNC)▶“Template”▶“Load template”▶Select a template

■ **To display a preview of the template**

▶Highlight the template▶(Play)

- The template is shown in the preview. →p.251
- During preview, use to display other templates.
- If the template will not fit into the screen, use to scroll the screen.
- During preview, you can select the template by pressing .

■ **To load the template from the message screen**

▶Message screen (p.243)▶(FUNC)▶“Load template”▶Select a template

2 ▶Edit the message

After you have applied the template, you can still edit the message. You can use “Decorate mail” (p.247) to add arrangement of decorative features.



3

This confirms the edited i-mode mail message and returns to the new mail screen.



4 (Send)

Saving a template

This function allows you to save the Deco-mail you are composing as a template.

- You can save up to 45 templates.
- If the message has any attachments other than inserted images, those attachments are deleted.
- Text mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in “Template” in the Mail menu.
- You can save a template from the menu function of the received mail detail screen (p.273) or sent mail detail screen (p.274).

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶(FUNC)▶“Template”▶“Save template”▶“YES”

NOTE

◆The subject of the message being composed is used as the template title. If no subject is entered, “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm” is used as the title (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

Viewing the templates list

1 MENU▶Mail▶“Template”

The “Template” screen appears.



Template

Function menu➡p.251

Function menu (Template screen)

Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail”→p.250
Sort	Sorts the templates according to the specified criteria.
Edit title	**▶Enter a title** You can enter the title up to 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters.
Info	Displays the template size, save date and whether or not it includes images.
No. of messages	Shows the number of saved templates.
Delete	Deletes templates.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted template.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple templates.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all the saved templates.

NOTE

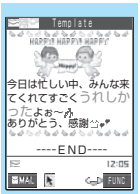
<Compose message>

◆If you attempt to use “Header/Signature” to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

Previewing a template

1 Template screen (p.251)▶Select a template

The “Template preview” screen appears.



Template preview

Function menu➡p.252

Function menu (Template preview screen)

Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail”→p.250
Edit	Edits the template.
Save insert image	**▶Select an image▶“YES”▶Select a folder** **■If the image can be set as a screen such as standby ▶“YES”▶Select an item** Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select “NO” after selecting the folder.

NOTE

<Compose message>

◆If you attempt to use “Header/Signature” to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

<Edit>

◆The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm” (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

◆If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.

<Attach Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion/ToruCa>

Attaching Files

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶(−)(FUNC)▶“Attach file”▶Select any item

Attach image	**▶Select a folder▶Select an image** Attaches an image.
Attach i-motion	**▶Select a folder▶Select i-motion** Select i-motion
Attach melody	**▶Select a folder▶Select a melody** Attaches melody.
Attach ToruCa	**▶Select a folder▶Select ToruCa** Attaches the ToruCa.

■ **To switch the image list screen**

▶On the image list screen▶(−)(FUNC)▶“Title name”

The Picture list screen changes to the Titles list screen. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to mail.

To return to the Picture list screen, select “Picture” from the function menu.

■ **To display an image**

▶Use ⊕ to highlight the image to be displayed▶(−)(Play)

Images that cannot be sent as attachments are not displayed.

To return to the list screen, press CLR.

■ **To play a melody**

▶Highlight a melody you want to play▶(−)(Play)

Melodies that cannot be attached cannot be selected.

To stop melody playback, press any one of ↩, *Navi, #, CLR, (Home), (Memo/check).

If the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select “YES” to play the melody.

■ **To View ToruCa**

▶Highlight ToruCa you want to view▶(−)(Play)

You cannot select the ToruCa (detail) that is not attachable.

The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detail information.

To return to the list screen, press CLR.

■ **To send an image as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal**

You can send an image-attached mail as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal. If you send an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. If you attach multiple files or attach a GIF-format image downloaded from an i-mode site or website, all the attached files are deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.

To send mails to the mova service i-mode terminal, a message that the other party can receive is up to 184 double-byte characters long (369 bytes) when the number of the received characters is not set on the other side. When the number of the received characters is set on the other side, a message that the other party can receive is up to 2000 double-byte characters long including i-shot URL (where the image is stored).

■ **To re-size and change the file size of an image attached to a mail**

If the file size of an image stored in the Inbox, Camera or User-created folder exceeds 500K bytes, select “Size for mail” from the image list function menu.→p.328

■ **To re-size an i-motion attached to a mail**

To attach an i-motion larger than 500K bytes to a mail, select “Trim for mail” from the video edit function menu, and cut the file into sections less than 500K bytes.→p.345

NOTE

◆The table below shows the files that can be attached to i-mode mail.

File type	Max. files attached to 1 mail
Melody	Up to 10 files and 10,000 bytes (5,000 double-byte characters worth) including melodies, images and ToruCa. The maximum number of files may vary depending on the file sizes.* *: You may be unable to attach ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-αppli, etc., depending on the data size.
Image*1	
ToruCa	
Large image*2	Either a large image or movie/i-motion can be attached.* *: Some i-motion programs cannot be attached.
Movie/i-motion*3 (i-motion mail)	

*1 : Still image shot using the built-in camera or a JPEG or GIF format image of 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) or less that was downloaded from a site.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

*2 : JPEG format image larger than 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) but no larger than 500K bytes (256,000 double-byte characters). Note that the size is changed at the i-shot Center to the one suitable for being received at an i-mode terminal before being sent to the recipient. You cannot attach a GIF image that exceeds 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters).

*3 : Movie or i-motion of up to 500K bytes (equivalent to 256,000 double-byte characters)

◆If an image selected for “Attach image” is more than the QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), “Attach image” comes out and you can select any one from “Attach mail”, “QVGA scale down” or “QVGA trim away”.

◆If the amount of data remaining for the message (including attached files) is less than 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 double-byte) or less than 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 double-byte), you cannot attach a large image, movie or i-motion.

◆When you attach a large still image, movie or i-motion to i-mode mail, the number of characters that can be entered decreases by 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters) or 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 double-byte or 400 single-byte characters).

◆When you send an i-motion mail, a mail with a URL for viewing an i-motion is sent and you can view an i-motion.

◆Depending on the recipient’s mobile phone model, the sent image may be displayed incorrectly or may not be displayed. A coarse image may also be displayed.

◆When you send an i-motion mail, depending upon the phone model of the recipient, movies may be choppy and may be converted to continuous still images for viewing.

◆You cannot attach movies or melodies stored on a miniSD memory card. Copy those data to the FOMA terminal (Phone) first and attach them. →p.360

◆You can send still images shot on the built-in camera as attachments to an i-mode terminal, PC or third-party mobile phone. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by selecting the URL. The message body sent to a mova service i-mode terminal can be up to 184 double-byte (369 bytes) long (for “250 double-byte characters” on the received character count of the mova service i-mode terminal). If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.

◆Attached melodies or GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.

◆You cannot attach a file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it from the FOMA terminal.

◆You can attach the still images or movies shot using the built-in camera even if “File restriction” is set to “File restricted”.

◆If the recipient is not using a FOMA N902i, melodies you send may not be playable.

◆A recipient cannot receive ToruCa without ToruCa-supported-terminal.

<Save i-mode mail>

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while composing i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the unfinished message on your FOMA terminal. This feature also enables you to edit and resend a message that you have saved.

Saving i-mode mail

The unfinished message is stored in the Draft mailbox.

- The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all.
- Once there are 20 message stored in the Draft mailbox, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail messages.

1 New mail screen (p.243)▶(FUNC)▶“Save”

If there are no characters in the address, subject, or message body, the mail cannot be saved. Note that if there is an attached file, the mail can be saved even when no text is entered.

Sending draft i-mode mail

1 (MENU)▶Mail▶“Draft”

The “Draft mail list” screen appears.

2 Select a mail▶Edit the address, subject or message body and then send the mail



Draft mail list

Function menu➡p.253

Function menu (Draft mail list screen)

List setting	Selects a mail-list format from “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.
Send Ir data	“Sending on data at a time via infrared data exchange” →p.367
Send all Ir data	Sends all mails in Draft using Infrared data exchange. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” →p.368

Continued on next page

Copy to miniSD	Copies the mails in Draft to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted mail.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶(-)(Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple mails.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all mails stored in Draft.
No. of messages	Shows the number of mails in Draft.
Store at DSC	"Saving the message at the Data Security Center"→p.273
Delete	Deletes Draft mail.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□) ▶(-)(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple mails.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all mails in Draft.

MENU97

Storing Addresses in Mail member

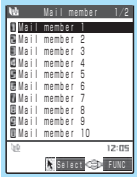
Default setting
Not stored

Store two or more addresses to a mail member in the FOMA terminal, and you can simply enter several addresses with the mail member specified.

- Up to 20 mail members (5 addresses for each) can be stored.

1 (MENU)▶(Own data)▶**"Mail member"**

The "mail member list" screen appears.



Mail member list

Function menu➡p.254

2 Select a mail member

The "mail member detail" screen appears.

3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (-)(Edit)▶ Enter the e-mail address

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

To add another mail address, repeat step 3.



Mail member detail

Function menu➡p.254

■ **To look-up and enter the mail address**

<Example: Look-up and enter the phonebook address>

▶Select "<Not recorded>"▶"Phonebook"▶Select a look-up item

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116

Function menu (Mail member list screen)

Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the mail member pasted to the address field. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
Edit member name	▶**Enter a name** Edits the name. You can enter the title up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset member name	Restores Name to default.

Function menu (Mail member detail screen)

Edit address	▶**Enter an address** Edits the e-mail address. Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered.
Look-up address	■ **When no addresses are recorded** ▶**Select any item** ■ **When the address is recorded** ▶**"YES"▶Select any item** Enters a mail address by looking-up the phonebook or history.
• **Phonebook**	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116
• **Sent address**	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• **Received address**	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted address.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Delete all members in the selected mail member.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

<Auto receive mail>

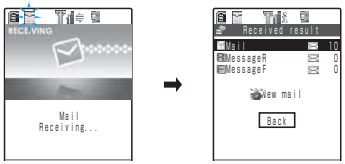
When You Receive i-mode Mail

If the FOMA terminal is in service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent from the i-mode center.

- Inbox can contain up to 1,000 messages* (i-mode mail and SMS in total).
  * : Secret folder in Inbox can contain up to 100 messages separately.
- You can receive i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal which sent from the mova service i-mode terminal.

1 When you receive an i-mode mail, "(white)" icon blinks and "Mail Receiving..." is displayed.

After receiving is completed, the number of messages appears for the received messages, MessageR and MessageF.
When "Mail" is selected, the received mail list screen appears.
No operation for about 15 seconds returns to the previous screen. The display time for the receive result screen depends on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.
The ring tone volume for the mail conforms to the setting of "Mail" under "Ring volume".



■ When the i-shot service mail is received

When you receive the i-shot service mail sent from the mova service i-mode terminal, an image file is received as an attachment.

■ When a mail with a large size of image file is received

If you automatically retrieve a large size of the image file exceeding 10,000 bytes, "" is displayed and the received image is stored in "My picture". If not, display the mail detail screen and select "", then a large size of the image file is retrieved and stored in "My picture".

NOTE

- "(white)" icon blinks when the mail reception is in progress. When reception is completed, this icon lights up.
- When the "(red)" or "(red)" icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no further i-mode mail. To receive a new message, delete some unnecessary mails or read the unread mails until those icons no longer appear. Mails or messages are overwritten starting with the oldest one as a new mail or message is received.
- If the total number of received i-mode mail messages (both i-mode and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. →p.270
- If you select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (p.276) and set your FOMA terminal not to automatically receive i-mode mail, mail sent to you is stored at the i-mode Center (the standby screen shows the message saying mails at the i-mode Center and the "" icon appear). In this situation, you can use "Check new messages" (p.258) to receive all the i-mode mails held at the i-mode Center, or use "Receive option" to the check the subject lines of the i-mode mails held at the i-mode Center and then choose the mail to be downloaded. →p.257
- Very large e-mail messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.
- You can use "Attached file" (p.276) to specify whether you will accept melodies or images attached to your mail.
- When i-mode mail is received in the FOMA terminal, i-mode mail is deleted stored in the i-mode center.
- You can send or receive the i-mode mails, melodies, images or ToruCa as attachment. Unsupported attachments are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "Delete att.file" message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message.
- When new i-mode mail is delivered, you also receive any other i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF stored on the i-mode Center.
- If you receive i-mode mail from a phone on which specifying To, Cc and Bcc is available, you can confirm which address type you receive that is To, Cc, Bcc in the mail detail screen. →p.265
- You can set a limit in advance on the sizes of the i-mode mail you receive. →p.239
- When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/ MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.

<When a mail with a large size of image file is received>

- When you select "" while in active service at other function, a message may appear saying that you cannot retrieve a large size of the image file. Quit the active function before retrieving the image.
- If you select "" before finishing data edited in the other function, the message appears and prompts you to discard the editing data. Choose "YES", and the editing data is discarded and the image is loaded. If "NO", it stops loading the image. No editing data proceeds to load the image.

Continued on next page

<Priority sequence for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

◆Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive i-mode mail.

①"Discern connect" specified for each e-mail address→p.122

②"Discern group" specified for each group→p.122

③"Select ring tone"/"Style mode"→p.128, 152, "Illumination"→p.146

Displaying the new i-mode mail

- Set "3D display setting" to "ON" and select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs in the subject are displayed as animations.

1 On the standby screen

▶●▶"✉"



Hilighting the "✉ (white)" icon displays the unread mail list. The function menu of the unread mail list screen is the same as that of the received mail list screen (p.270).

NOTE

◆Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.

◆If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.

◆If the size of mail to be sent to you exceeds the value set in "Limit Mail Size" in "Options", the file or data that is attached or pasted in the mail is deleted in the i-mode Center so that you cannot download it.

◆The FOMA terminal may sometimes be unable to correctly display images attached to i-mode mail. Images larger than 240 dots wide are shown reduced.

◆Some background colors may overlap with the color of URL text to download image or i-motion and hence the URL text may be unreadable.

◆If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.

◆You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions included in a mail message received from a PC.

Emotion-expressing mail

An icon pops up and shows the emotion matching the contents of the received mail.
You can also find the icon in the received mails containing the keywords specified in advance.

- The following are the icons for the emotion-expressing mail:

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Hurry		Advice		OK
	Love		Cheer up		Reply
	Dislike		Question		Information
	Happy		Join		Angry
	Remark		Sad		Please
	Fun		notice		Icon unsupported*
	Surprise				

*: "Icon unsupported" icon is displayed for the following mails:

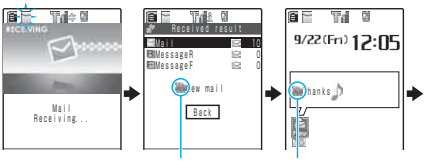
- Mail forwarded by Infrared data exchange or cable connection
- Mail copied from miniSD memory card
- SMS copied or moved from FOMA card (UIM)
- SMS in FOMA card (UIM)

- You can specify whether to display icons in "Emotion/Keyword notice".→p.280
- The followings are "Disp keyword" icons that appear when you receive a mail that includes the specified keyword.
  You can specify the settings of "Disp keyword" in "Emotion/Keyword notice".→p.280



- If the received mail includes the contents for the icons of emotion-expressing mails or keywords, the following priority will be applied.
  ①Disp keyword 1 ②Disp keyword 2
  ③Disp keyword 3 ④Emotion
- Using the filter function allows you to list only mails containing the emotion-expressing icons specified.→p.270
- For the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the icons are displayed as follows. They are also displayed on the image display.→p.30

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353



Emotion-expressing mail icon



Emotion-expressing mail icon

NOTE

- Depending on the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the wrong icons may be displayed misunderstanding the contents.
- The icons for an emotion-expressing mail does not appear on MessageR/MessageF.
- The reception date and time, subject and up to 1,000 bytes (500 double-byte characters) from the beginning in the message are searched for determining an appropriate emotion-expressing mail icon and the subject and all the message texts are searched for "Disp keyword" icon.
- When you receive two mails or more at the same time, only the icon for the latest mail is displayed on the reception results screen and as a popup on desktop.

<Receive option>

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail.

- To use this function, you must first select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (p.276). Note that you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail if you set this function to "ON".

When mail arrives

When the i-mode Center notifies you of mail reception, your FOMA terminal shows the message saying mails at the i-mode Center and the "" ”icon is displayed rather than "(white)" or "(white)".

Receiving mail selectively

- If you used this function to show the receive option screen, the "" ” icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail.

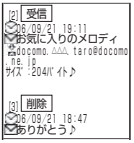
  The "" ” icon also disappears if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.

1 ▶ Mail ▶"Receive option"

■ If "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF"

A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select "Receive option setting" to specify the "Receive option" setting. When you set the receive option to "ON", the Mail menu screen reappears.

2 Select and set an option for each item of i-mode mail



"受信" (Accept): Accepts the selected mail.

"削除" (Delete): Deletes the selected mail.

"保留" (Hold): Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.

Use "Check new messages" (p.258) to receive the mail.

■ To delete all mails

▶"削除"(Delete) at the bottom of the page ▶"決定"(Set)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

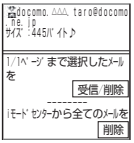
▶"前ページ" (Previous page) or "次ページ" (Next page)▶Move to other pages and select the mail to be accepted

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.

The meanings of the icons displayed after "サイズ(Size):XXXバイト(bytes)" are as follows:

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	Attaches an i-motion.
	Attaches the ToruCa.

3 "受信／削除" (Receive/Delete)▶"決定"(Set)



The completion screen appears and mail reception begins.

■ To cancel selective reception

▶"キャンセル"(Cancel)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Selecting "受信／削除"(Receive/Delete) midway through the pages applies your options (hold, accept or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

- You can also access "Receive option" as follows (only Japanese mode available):
  - ▶ (i-mode)▶"iMenu"▶"メニューリスト" (Menu List)▶"メール選択受信"(Receive option)
- If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be received even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". Deselect "Mail" in "Set check new messages" (p.278) if you do not want to receive any mail.

<Check new messages>

Checking for i-mode Mail

Default setting	Check for all (mail, MessageR and MessageF)

- i-mode delivered to the i-mode center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode center:
  - The FOMA terminal is turned off.
  - When "" is displayed
  - When the Inbox is full
  - When "Receive option setting" (p.276) is set to "ON"
  - During a videophone call or remote observation
  - Self mode is set
  - Push-to-Talk call in progress
  - The FOMA terminal is connected to the First-Pass center
- Use "Set check new messages" (p.278) to specify which items are checked for.

1 (MENU)▶ Mail ▶"Check new messages"



The check new messages screen appears.
The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

- (-)"i-mode"▶"Check new messages"
- (-)"MAIL"(1 second or longer)
- (-)"MAIL"▶"Check new messages"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail" → "MessageR" → "MessageF".
The " (white)", " R (white)" and " F (white)" icons flash during checking, and the "Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.

■ To cancel the inquiry

▶Hold down (-)(Cancel) or CLR (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry

Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

- Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking.
- When the " (white)" icon appears, i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center. Once i-mode mail is full on storage at the i-mode Center, the icon is changed to " (red)".
- Even when there is i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, the " (white)" icon may not be displayed if the mail arrived at the Center while the FOMA terminal is turned off or the "" is displayed.
- This function is not available for receiving SMS. Use "Check new SMS" to receive SMS.

<Reply to mail>

Replying to i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to send a reply to an i-mode mail message. To return the mail, there are two manners: inputting the new message or quoting the received i-mode mail.

- A reply has "Re:" automatically inserted into the front of the subject. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including "Re:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

Replying by composing a new message

1 Received mail list screen (p.263) or Received mail detail screen (p.265) ▶(-)(Reply)▶Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶"Reply"▶"To sender"

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply" and then "To all".
If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.
If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.
After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the " " icon changes to " ".

NOTE

- The " Fm " icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with e-mail addresses longer than 50 single-byte characters).
- When you reply to i-mode mail that has "Re:" (all single-byte characters) already included in the subject line, "Re2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Re:". Similarly, if "Re2:" is included, "Re3:" is inserted in the reply, and "Re4:" if "Re3:" is included and so on up to"Re99:". If the "Re:" in the original mail includes double-byte characters or an upper case"E" ("RE:"), this is discarded and replaced by"Re:" in your reply.
- You cannot reply to an i-shot mail sent from the address "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

Replying by quoting the received message

Use this procedure to quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

- Attached files of i-mode mail or Deco-mail you quote are deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.265)▶(FUNC)▶“Reply with quote”▶Edit the subject and message body and send it

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶“Reply with quote”▶“To sender”

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select “Reply with quote” and then “To all”.

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A quotation mark (set to “>” by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply. Quotation marks are not placed at every beginning of lines.

To edit the quotation symbol→p.277

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.243.

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the “” icon changes to “”.

NOTE

- If files attached or pasted into an i-mode or Deco-mail message to quote are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal, those files or contents are deleted.
- If i-mode message contains data such as melodies or i-αppli start modules, you cannot reply message with quoting the pasted data.

<Forward mail>

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients

Use this procedure to forward the received i-mode mail to other people.

- Forwarded mail has “Fw:” added in the subject line of i-mode mail. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including “Fw:”), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.265)▶(FUNC)▶“Forward”▶“To”▶Select the address entry method

For detailed information on entering addresses →p.245

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images.

2 (Send)

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the “” icon changes to “”.

NOTE

- When you reply to i-mode mail that has “Fw:” (all single-byte characters) already included in the subject line, “Fw2:” is inserted into the reply’s i-mode mail subject line instead of “Fw:”. Similarly, if “Fw2:” is included, “Fw3:” is inserted in the forwarded mail, and “Fw4:” if “Fw3:” is included and so on up to “Fw99:”. If the “Fw:” in the original mail includes double-byte characters or an upper case “W” (“FW:”), this is discarded and replaced by“Fw:” in the forwarded mail.
- If files attached or pasted into an i-mode or Deco-mail message to forward are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal, those files or contents are deleted.
- Images are not attached when you forward an i-mode mail without retrieving the large size of a still picture after you receive it.
- If i-mode message contains data such as melodies or i-αppli start modules, you cannot forward message with quoting the pasted data.
- If you transfer the received mail containing URL for referencing the Deco-mail in the message, the person who receives the transferred mail cannot view the Deco-mail through the URL selection and the Web To functions. Moreover, it is not available to input the URL directly and view the Deco-mail.

Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

Use this procedure to add the e-mail address or phone number of the sender of received mail to your phonebook.

<Example: Adding the sender’s e-mail address to the phonebook>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.265)▶(FUNC)▶“Save address”

■ When there are multiple e-mail addresses to be added

▶On the e-mail address selection screen, select the e-mail address you want to add

■ To add the e-mail address or phone number of a recipient specified in a sent i-mode mail

▶Sent mail detail screen (p.265)▶(FUNC)▶“Save address”

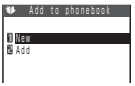
If the i-mode mail was sent to multiple addresses, select the e-mail address to be added from the displayed list of e-mail addresses.

■ To add an e-mail address or phone number included in the body of sent or received i-mode mail

▶“Sent mail detail screen” or “Received mail detail screen”▶Highlight an e-mail address or phone number you want to add▶(FUNC)▶“Add to phonebook”

Continued on next page

2 “YES”▶“Phone”▶“New”



The add new phonebook entry screen appears with the entered information displayed. Enter the required items and store the entry.
“Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.111
“Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.112

■ **To add information to the UIM phonebook**
▶“YES”▶“UIM”
When you add information to the UIM phonebook, “Overwrite” is displayed as the storage method instead of “Add”.

<Save melody>

Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to save a melody (or) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If the sender is not using a FOMA N902iS, melodies you receive may not be playable.
- Select the melody beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.265)▶(FUNC)▶“Save data”▶“YES”▶Select a folder

■ **To stop the melody**
▶, to , , , , (Assist key)
Pressing (Assist key) reads out the mail message after stopping the melody.

■ **To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open a mail**
▶Set “Start attachment (auto)” (p.276) to “OFF”

2 “YES”▶Select an item

■ **To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.**
▶“NO”

NOTE

◆If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

<Receive image mail>

Saving Images in Image Mail

This function enables you to save images ( ) inserted or attached to received i-mode mail.
Saving inserted images→p.273

1 Select the image to be saved in “Received mail detail screen” (p.265)

■ **To change from image display to file name display**
▶Select the image
To return to image display again, select the file name.

2 (FUNC)▶“Save data”▶“YES”▶Select a folder

3 “YES”▶Select an item

■ **To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.**
▶“NO”

NOTE

◆Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, too large images may not be displayed.
◆Images may be displayed differently between i-mode mail and My picture. To view an image correctly, you must first save the image in the “Inbox” folder.

<i-motion mail>

Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When you receive an i-motion data sent as i-motion mail, the data is not downloaded to the FOMA terminal when you receive mail. This function downloads the i-motion from the i-motion Mail Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

- You receive the mail to which the URL to browse the i-motion is attached.
- Select an i-motion mail beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.265)▶Select a URL▶“YES”



Data acquisition

The “data acquisition” screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ **To cancel i-motion downloading mid-way**
▶(Quit)

■ **To save a downloaded i-motion**
▶Data acquisition screen▶“Save”▶“YES”▶Select a folder
Can be saved in the “Inbox” folder under i-motion.→p.324

■ **To display information about the downloaded i-motion**

▶Data acquisition screen▶“Property”

→p.236

NOTE

◆If “ON” is selected in “Automatic replay” (p.236), the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion during downloading. However, depending on the signal quality, playback may pause or the image may break up. When this occurs, play the i-motion again after it has finished downloading.

◆You cannot use fast playback, frame advance or slow playback when an i-motion is playing during downloading (first playback only).

<Receiving ToruCa>

Displaying/Saving ToruCa

Displays or saves ToruCa attached to the received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.265)▶Select a file

The ToruCa appears.

■ **To save ToruCa**

▶When the ToruCa is displayed▶(Save)▶Select a folder

■ **To display the ToruCa (detail)**

▶When the ToruCa is displayed▶“詳細” (Detail)▶“YES”

■ **To save the ToruCa (detail)**

▶On the ToruCa (detail) screen▶(Save)▶Select a folder

■ **To cancel the ToruCa (detail) downloading mid-way**

▶(Quit) or CLR

NOTE

◆The “詳細” (Detail) button may not appear for some ToruCa.

<Inbox/Outbox>

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox

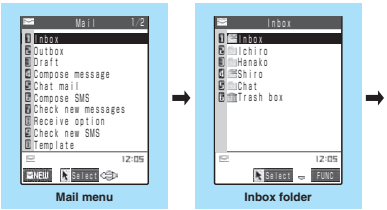
The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000* i-mode received mail and/or SMS and up to 400* sent mail and/or SMS. Both received mails and sent mails can be protected up to half of the maximum storage capacity. The number of mail messages that can be saved and protected varies depending on the amount of data in each message. When files sizes are large, the number of messages that can be saved and protected decreases.

* : Up to 100 mails can be stored in the Secret folders of the received mails and sent mails, respectively.

Reading i-mode mail messages

<Example: Reading a received mail message>

1 MENU▶Mail▶“Inbox”▶Select a folder▶Select a mail



Mail menu | Inbox folder | Function menu➡p.268

Received mail list | Received mail detail

Function menu➡p.270 | Function menu➡p.273

■ **To view the previous or next mail**

▶Mail detail screen▶

Press CLR to return to the Mail menu screen.

NOTE

◆You can also place the received address for the sender or broadcast member, or the address to be sent (a phone number for SMS and a mail address for an i-mode mail) into your standby screen as a desktop icon. You can then use the placed desktop icon to compose a new i-mode mail message addressed to that e-mail address (or to compose a new SMS message addressed to the phone number). However, you cannot paste e-mail addresses with the “Fm”, “To” or “Cc” icon as desktop icons. Also for broadcast mail, only one e-mail address can be pasted in each operation.

◆You can also view the mails contained in other than the “Secret” folder even in the Secret data only mode.

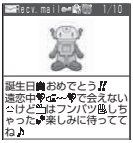
◆You cannot view the large size of images or play i-motion from the mails in the Secret folder.

Continued on next page

■ Mail-connected i-αppli

- i-mode mail sent using a mail-connected i-αppli is sorted into the dedicated folder for that mail-connected i-αppli.
- Where the sender used a mail-connected i-αppli to send i-mode mail and the recipient has created a dedicated mail folder for that mail-connected i-αppli, the i-mode mail is sorted into that folder.
  If there is no dedicated folder but the “Auto-sort” function has been set, mail is sorted into the folder designated in the “Auto-sort” settings. If the “Auto-sort” function has not been set, mail is sorted into the Inbox.
- Selecting the dedicated folder for a mail-connected i-αppli activates the software.
- To view the mail list screen for a folder without activating the software, highlight the folder and select “Open folder” from the function menu.

■ Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)



Messages written in English are read out in alphabetic reading.

- By selecting “Read out message” from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the body of the received message in the designated voice.
  To cancel reading, press ●. (Pressing ● after reading has been canceled restarts the reading from the beginning of the message.) To exit reading-out mode, press ⊖(Exit).
- You can set the voice used to read out received mail using “Read out setting” (p.278).
- A FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in “Phone” in “Ring volume”. If “Silent” or “Step” is set, messages are read out at the “Level 2” volume. Volume in Manner mode→p.135
- While a message is being read out, an image appears in the top half of the screen, as shown in the figure. If the sender’s address and image are stored in the phonebook, the stored image is displayed.

- ▭(Assist key) also reads out the message of the mail.→p.386
- While a message is being read out, you can scroll around the message by pressing ⊙, ▯(Home) or ▯ (Memo/Check). Also, holding down 5 for 1 second or longer turns the display light on or off. Pressing any of the FOMA terminal’s other keys stops the reading.
- If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading ends and the ringing screen appears.
- If you receive new mail or messages while a message is being read out, the setting in “Receiving display” takes effect. Also, if the specified alarm time is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in “Alarm setting” takes effect.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to read out some message body in the received mail from PC, etc.

Guide to the folder list screens

- Mails can be organized into different folders in the Inbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the “Inbox”, “Secret”*, “Chat” and “Trash box” folders, but you can add folders using the function menu of the Inbox folder list screen and mail-connected i-αppli.
- Mails can be organized into different folders in the Outbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the “Outbox”, “Secret”*, “Chat” and “Trash box” folders, but you can add folders using the function menu of the Outbox folder list screen and mail-connected i-αppli.

* : The Secret folders are only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.



Inbox folder list

Function menu➡p.268

- : Folder containing no unread mails
- : Folder containing unread mails
- : Folder with security (p.268) set containing no unread mails
- : Folder with Auto-sort (p.269) set containing no unread mails
- : Folder with security set containing unread mails
- : Folder with Auto-sort containing unread mails
- : Folder with security and Auto-sort set containing no unread mails
- : Folder with security and Auto-sort set containing unread mails
- : Inbox folder for a mail-connected i-αppli (p.290)
- : Inbox folder for a mail-connected i-αppli containing unread mails
- : Inbox folder with security set for a mail-connected i-αppli
- : Inbox folder with security set for a mail-connected i-αppli containing unread mails

: Inbox folder with Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-αppli

: Inbox folder with Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-αppli containing unread mails

: Inbox folder with security and Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-αppli containing unread mails

: Inbox folder with security and Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-αppli containing unread mails

: Trash box folder

: Trash box folder with security set

: Secret folders (only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode)→p.163



Outbox folder list

Function menu➡p.268

: Outbox folder

: Outbox folder with security (p.268) set

: Outbox folder for a mail-connected i-αppli (p.290)

: Outbox folder with security set for a mail-connected i-αppli

: Outbox folder with Auto-sort (p.269) set

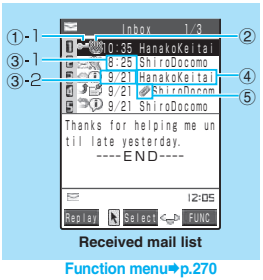
: Outbox folder with security and Auto-sort set

: Outbox folder with Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-αppli

: Outbox folder with security and Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-αppli containing unread mails

: Secret folders (only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode)→p.163

Guide to the mail list screens



Received mail list

Function menu➡p.270

① Shows the mail status.

①-1 receive

: Unread mail

: Read mail

: Forwarded mail

: Replied-to mail

: Unread protected mail

: Read protected mail

: Forwarded protected mail

: Replied-to protected mail



Sent mail list

Function menu➡p.271

①-2 Transmission

: Mail sent successfully

: Mail sent unsuccessfully

: Mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully

: Mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully

: Mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully

: Protected mail sent successfully

: Protected mail sent unsuccessfully

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully

Continued on next page

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully

②Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the message

etc.: Emotion-expressing mail icons →p.256

③Shows the time and date of transmission

③-1 The time is shown for mail sent and received

③-2 The date is shown for mail sent and received yesterday or before.

④Shows the sender/recipient or subject of a mail. You can switch the display mode by address or phone number, by name or by subject. Where i-mode mail has no subject, "No title" is displayed. For SMS, the message header is displayed. (For an SMS report, "SMS report" is displayed.) For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed.

⑤Shows the message type and the attached or pasted file information type.

<2 lines>

: SMS

: SMS with SMS report received

: SMS on the FOMA card

: Attached melody

: Multiple attached melodies, some of which were invalid or deleted.

: All the attached melodies were invalid or deleted.

: Attached images

: Multiple attached images, some of which were invalid or deleted.

: All the attached images were invalid or deleted (too much pasted images to be displayed in the mail detail screen).

: Large image downloaded and confirmed as OK.

: Large image downloaded but was then found to be invalid or was deleted.

: Large image attached but was not automatically downloaded.

: Before downloading, attached large image was found to be invalid.

: Displayed when an i-mode mail with an attached i-motion has been sent.

: An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.

: Before downloading a large image pasted to a Deco-mail, the type of file was found to be unknown.

: Launching i-αppli available from the message body

: Moving the mail which can start an i-αppli from the message to the Secret folder.

: A mail that the mail-connected i-αppli transmits.

: Multiple data pasted (also displayed when pasted with i-αppli To together)

: Attaches the ToruCa.

: Multiple attached ToruCas, some of which were invalid or deleted.

: All the attached ToruCas were invalid or deleted.

: Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

<1 line/1line+body>

: One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large.

: Multiple files attached or pasted, none of which are large but some of which are invalid.

: One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large but all of which are invalid.

: One or more files attached, including one or more large files

: Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and some of which are invalid.

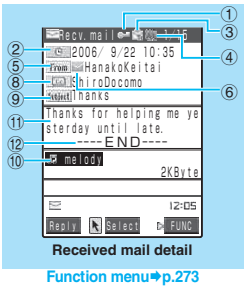
: Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and all of which are invalid.

: Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

NOTE

◆When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the received mail detail screen or sent mail detail screen, the screen switches between image display and file name display every time you press ●.

Guide to the mail detail screens



Received mail detail

Function menu➡p.273

① Shows the mail status. (See the explanation for item ① in the mail list screen on p.263.)

② Shows the time and date of transmission (time and date of arrival at the Center).

③ Shows the sending type of received mail.

: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient by the sender.

: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient in broadcast sent as a copy from the sender

: Received mail broadcast by the sender with the other recipients not shown.

④ Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the received message

etc.: Emotion-expressing mail icons ➡p.256



Sent mail detail

Function menu➡p.274

⑤ Shows received mail with the sender's e-mail address.

From : Sender's mail address

Fm : E-mail address to which replies cannot be sent (shown when the e-mail address exceeds 50 single-byte characters, etc.)

⑥ : If the sender's address and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the icon stored in the phonebook is displayed.

⑦ Shows sent mail with the recipient's address and recipient type.

Use this to check whether the message was sent successfully. If the message was sent to multiple recipients, all the recipients are shown.

: Recipient to which mail was successfully sent.

: Recipient to which mail was not successfully sent.

: Recipient to which mail was successfully sent for broadcasting as a copy.

: Recipient to which mail failed to sent for broadcasting as a copy.

: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was sent successfully.

: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was not sent successfully.

⑧ Received mail with multiple addresses (not including the recipient itself). Up to 4 addresses can be shown.

: The sender addressed the message specifically to the recipient.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender specifically addressed the message.

: An e-mail address to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.

The "Fm", "To" or "Cc" icons are used to indicate an e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent.

If the sender of received mail or the recipient of sent mail is stored in the phonebook, the "Name" stored in the phonebook appears in fields ⑤, ⑦ and ⑧.

To display the name, the other party's e-mail address must be stored correctly in the phonebook. ➡p.111

⑨ Shows the message subject. Where there is no subject, "No title" is displayed. For received SMS, "SMS" is displayed ("" if the SMS is in the FOMA card (UIM)) and "SMS" is displayed as the title (or "SMS report" for SMS reports). When an SMS report has been received, the "" icon is also displayed.

Continued on next page

⑩ When a message includes attached or pasted files, this shows the icon, file name and file size (in bytes).

: Pasted melody (if the pasted melody file is faulty, it is displayed as text in the message.)

: Multiple data pasted (also displayed when pasted with i-αppli To together)

: An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.

: i-motion attached to sent mail is subject to PIM lock

: An attached image was deleted.

: Large image was deleted after downloading (also displayed when data was edited or overwritten after downloading).

: Attached large images are subject to PIM lock

: An attached melody was deleted.

: Attaches the ToruCa.

: Attached ToruCa are invalid or the ToruCa (detail) is attached.

: An attached ToruCa was deleted.

Attached file icons→p.264

⑪ Shows the mail message.

⑫ Shows the end of the message body.

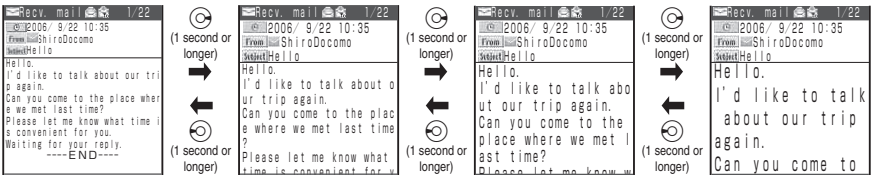
On the following situations, the e-mail address and not the “Name” is displayed, even when the phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.

- When “Restrict dialing” (p.171) is set and the phone number is not designated in the “Restrict dialing” settings
- When details are displayed in Secret data only mode for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data
- When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret mode or Secret data only mode and details are displayed for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data

Changing the mail character size or list display mode

When changing the mail character

On the mail detail screen, you can change the size of the text in the message body.



NOTE

- When you use the keys shown above to change the text size, the setting in “Font size” (p.276) also changes.
- The character size can be changed in the same way in the mail message reading out screen (p.262).

Changing the mail list screen display mode (1line+body/1 line/2 lines)

You can switch to any one of 1line+body, 1 line and 2 lines using the “Mail list disp.” setting in “Mail settings” in the Mail menu→p.276



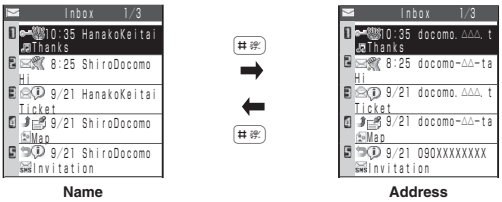
● Changing the mail list screen display mode (Name/Address/Subject)

In the mail list screen, you can switch between displaying mail by recipient or sender, by e-mail address or phone number, and by subject. If the name of the recipient or sender is stored in the phonebook, his or her name can also be displayed.

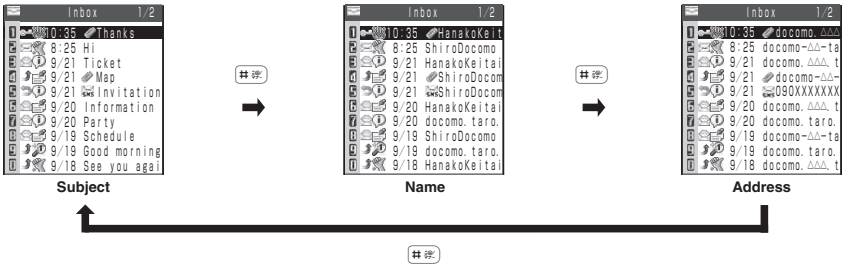
- Mail list screen (1line+body)



- Mail list screen (2 lines)



- Mail list screen (1 line)



NOTE

◆ You can also change the display mode by selecting “List setting” from the function menu in the received mail list screen, sent mail list screen or draft mail list screen and then selecting “Subject”, “Name”, or “Address”.

● Checking the number of received or sent mail messages

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select “Memory info” from the function menu in the folder list screen.

To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the list screen for mails in the folder you want to check and then select “No. of messages” from the function menu.

● Backlight function

When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the FOMA terminal’s backlight comes on for around 15 seconds. (You can change the time for which the backlight stays on in “Mail/Msg. ring time”.) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.

The backlight does not turn on if “Lighting” is set to “OFF” in “Backlight”.

Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu

- You can add up to 22 folders.

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name▶Set the filter conditions** Adds a new folder. Sets the auto-sort settings for the added folder. "Automatic sorting settings"→p.269
Auto-sort	"Automatic sorting settings"→p.269
Edit folder name	**▶Enter a folder name** You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Mail security	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Sets or cancels folder security. "Setting security for individual folders"→p.170
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"**
Sort folder	**▶Select the destination** Rearranges folders.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.
Open folder	Displays list of the mails in the selected folder.
Add desktop icon*	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.148
Send all Ir data	Sends all the mail in the selected box using Infrared data exchange. However, neither mails in the Secret folder nor SMS on FOMA card (UIM) are sent. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.368
Copy all to miniSD	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all mails in the selected box. However, the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM) and mails in the Secret folder are not copied.
Delete read*	Deletes all the read mails.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all mails.

* : Only displayed in the Inbox folder screen.

NOTE

<Add folder>
- When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, an i-αppli mail folder is automatically created (5 folders max.) separately from a folder which you can add using "Add folder".

<Edit folder name>
- You cannot edit the folder name for the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", a mail-connected i-αppli, "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.
- You cannot edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.

<Mail security>
- You cannot set the mail security to the "Secret" folder.

<Delete folder>
- You cannot delete a folder that contains protected mail or a folder for which mail security is set. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.
- You cannot delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-connected i-αppli. You can delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder screen or Outbox folder screen is also deleted.
- If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.
- You cannot delete the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" and "Secret" folders that are already installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

<Sort folder>
- You cannot sort the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.
- You cannot run "Sort folder" when only one folder was added.

<No. of messages>
- Mail messages stored in the Secret folder are not included.

<Delete read>
- This option does not delete read SMS or i-mode mail that is protected.
- i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

<Delete all> (on the Outbox folder screen)
- This option does not delete SMS or i-mode mails that are protected.
- i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

<Delete all>
- This option deletes unread mails except for the protected i-mode mail or SMS.
- i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Automatic sorting settings

You can automatically sort i-mode mail (including broadcast mail) or SMS to the specified folders by making conditions in advance such as the e-mail addresses, phone numbers or subjects used in the received or sent mails.

- You can set a total of 700 e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders in the Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.
- When PIM lock is in setting to the phonebook, the group name is displayed as “Group”. When PIM lock is in setting to the mail member on the contrary, the mail member name is displayed as “Mail member”.
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below. Note that mail for mail-connected i-αppli is sorted into the respective dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings.
  ①Sort all ②Subject sort ③Reply/Send impossible ④Address/Number sort ⑤Mail member ⑥Phonebook group
- Mail received or sent before the automatic sorting settings are specified remains in their original folders.

1 Select the destination folder for sort

2 Inbox folder list screen (p.262) or Outbox folder list screen (p.263) ▶(-)(FUNC)▶“Auto-sort”▶Set Auto-sort from the following item

Address sort	Sets an e-mail address or phone number to be used for automatic sorting.
• **Look-up address**	Sets the e-mail address or phone number by browsing the phonebook and records.
• **Phonebook**	Sets the e-mail address or phone number by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116
• **Received address**	Sets an e-mail address or phone number from the Received address list.
• **Sent address**	Sets an e-mail address or phone number from the sent address list.
• **Look-up group**	**▶Select a group** Sets the mail address or phone number of the selected group.
• **Look-up member**	**▶Select a mail member** Sets the mail address or phone number of the selected mail member.
• **Enter address**	Sets an e-mail address or phone number directly entering each character.
Subject sort	**▶Enter a subject** Sets a mail subject as an auto-sort criterion.
Reply impossible*	Sets an e-mail address or phone number to which you cannot reply (or which failed to be sent).
Sort all	This can only be set for mail-connected i-αppli folders. Sorts all mails into a mail-connected i-αppli folder.
Edit addr/subj	Edits a previously specified e-mail address, phone number or mail subject.
List setting	Selects from “Name” or “Address” about how to view the list of mail addresses or phone number to be automatically sorted.
Release	Releases the auto-sort conditions.
• **Release this**	Deselects the selected auto-sort criterion.
• **Release selected**	**▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶(-)(Finish)▶“YES”** Deselects the selected auto-sort criteria.
• **Release all**	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.

* : If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox folder, “Send impossible” is displayed.

NOTE

- ◆You cannot set the “Inbox”, “Outbox”, “Chat”, “Trash box” or “Secret” folders in automatic sorting.
- ◆If even a single address on the broadcasted mail fits the auto-sort condition, the message is sorted to the folder set in “Address sort” or “Send impossible”. Sort condition is looked up to in order of entries for address.
- ◆For the folder with mail security (p.268) set, you need to enter the security code after selecting “Auto-sort” from the Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>

- ◆You cannot set “Group 00” or groups in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Address sort (Enter address)>

- ◆Ensure that the e-mail address domain (the part that follows the @ symbol) is entered correctly. If the address format is “[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp”, simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>

- ◆If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.
- ◆Only 1 subject can be set for each folder.
- ◆You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as “No title” even if setting “No title” as a sort criteria.
- ◆You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>

- ◆You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
- ◆“Reply impossible” can only be set for one folder within Inbox.

Continued on next page

<Send impossible>

◆"Send impossible" can only be set for one folder within Outbox.

<Sort all>

◆You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).

◆"Sort all" can only be set for 1 i-αppli mail folder for received and sent i-αppli mail respectively.

<List setting>

◆You can also switch between the "Name" and "Address" by pressing [#] in the Auto-sort settings screen.

Function menu (received mail list screen)

- The available functions vary between the received mail list screen and unread mail list screen, which means that the functions to be listed are different.

Reply	"Replying by composing a new message"→p.258
Move	**▶Select a folder▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶ ⊖(Finish)▶"YES"** Moves the selected mail to another folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail using a specified sender or subject.
• **Search sender**	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.
• **Phone-book**	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116
• **Received address**	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.
• **Sent address**	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• **Enter address**	Specifies an e-mail address by entering each character.
• **Search sub-ject**	**▶Enter a subject**
Display all	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑").
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.
• **Unread**	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.
• **Read**	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.
• **Protected**	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
• **Image**	Displays only i-mode mail with attached or inserted images, or with pasted downloading information for large images.
• **Melody**	Displays only i-mode mail with attached or pasted melodies.
• **ToruCa**	Displays only i-mode mail with ToruCa attached.
• **i-αppli**	Displays only i-mode mail that includes i-αppli startup setting.
• **SMS**	Displays only SMS
• **keyword**	**▶Select a "Disp keyword" (1 to 3) icon** Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected "Disp keyword" icon added. "Emotion/Keyword notice"→p.280
• **Emotion**	**▶Select a "Disp emotion" icon** Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected "Disp emotion" icon added.
Color coding	Selects the color to the received mail (date, address/name and subject) from "Default" (Black), "Red" and "Blue".
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Read all	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Send Ir data	"Sending one data at a time via infrared data exchange"→p.367
Copy to miniSD	Copies the received mails to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted mail.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶ ⊖(Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple mails.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). →p.288
Mail info	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store at DSC	“Saving the message at the Data Security Center”→p.273
Move trash box	**▶Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶“YES”** Moves the selected mail to the trash box folder.
Delete this[*1]	Deletes the highlighted mail.
Delete	Deletes received mail.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶“YES”**
• **Delete read**	Deletes read mails.
• **Delete all SMS-R**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all SMS reports.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all the received mails.
Keep in secret[*2]	“Hiding Various Data”→p.163

*1 : The option only appears on the unread mail list screen.
*2 : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears.→p.163

NOTE

<Move>
◆You cannot use this option to move mail to the “Trash box” or “Secret” folder.
◆You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Search mail>
◆You can also search the results of a search.
◆Filter and Sort can be used together.
◆To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
◆You cannot search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as “No title” even if setting “No title” as a criterion for searching by subject.

<Sort/Filter>
◆Sort and Filter can be used together.
◆Sort and Filter are released when you end the received mail list screen.

<Color coding>
◆You can switch colors by pressing ✱ in the received mail list screen as well.

<List setting>
◆You can switch to the “Subject”, “Name” or “Address” by pressing # in the received mail list screen as well.

<Read all>
◆If you view mail with Filter and then select “Read all”, only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect ON/OFF>
◆Once you reach the maximum number of the received mails stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode and SMS)(p.261), precedence is given to deleting mail in the “Trash box” folder when new mail arrives. If there is no mail in the “Trash box” folder, read received mail with unprotected is deleted starting with the oldest message. However, i-mode mails and SMS in the “Secret” folder are not deleted.
◆You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
◆Mails in the “Trash box” folder cannot be protected.

<Unprotect all>
◆If you view mail with the Filter function and then select “Unprotect all”, protection is only removed from the currently displayed mail.

<UIM operation>
◆When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Move trash box>
◆This option moves mail to be deleted to the “Trash box” folder. Mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the Inbox is full, mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is the first to be deleted as new mail arrives.
◆You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the “Trash box” folder.
◆If you move unread mail to the “Trash box” folder, it is marked as read.

<Delete this>
◆You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail or SMS (including SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)).
◆You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete selected>
◆You cannot use this option to select protected i-mode mail or SMS (including SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)).

<Delete read>
◆If you select “Delete read” after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected and already read.

<Delete all SMS-R>
◆You cannot use this option to delete protected SMS reports.

<Delete all>
◆You can delete unread i-mode mail or SMS.
◆If you select “Delete all” after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected.

Function menu (sent mail list screen)

Edit	**▶Edit the address, subject or message body▶(Send)** Re-edits the message.
Move	**▶Select a folder▶Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶“YES”** Moves the selected mail to another folder.

Continued on next page

Search mail	Searches for mail using a specified receiver or subject.
• **Search receiver**	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.
• **Phone-book**	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116
• **Sent address**	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• **Received address**	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.
• **Enter address**	Specifies an e-mail address by entering each character.
• **Search subject**	▶**Enter a subject**
Display all	Reverts a display resulted from search, sort or filter to the original (all items shown in reverse chronological order).
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays only mails that meet the specified criterion.
Color coding	Selects the color to the sent mail (date, address/name and subject) from "Default"(Black), "Red" and "Blue".
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time" →p.367
Copy to miniSD	Copies the sent mails to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted mail.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶●(Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple mails.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). →p.288
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store at DSC	"Saving the message at the Data Security Center"→p.273

Delete	Deletes sent mail.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶●(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple mails.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the sent mails.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data"→p.163

* : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.163

NOTE

<Move>
- ◆You cannot move a bookmark to the Secret folder.
- ◆You cannot move SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Search mail>
- ◆You can also search the results of a search.
- ◆Filter or Sort can be used together.
- ◆To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- ◆You cannot search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a criterion for searching by subject.

<Sort/Filter>
- ◆The Sort display and Filter function can be used together.
- ◆Sort and Filter are released when you end the sent mail list screen.

<Color coding>
- ◆You can switch colors by pressing ✱ in the sent mail list screen as well.

<List setting>
- ◆You can switch to the "Subject", "Name" or "Address" by pressing # in the received mail list screen as well.

<Protect ON/OFF>
- ◆Once you reach the maximum number of the received mails stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode and SMS) (p.261), unprotected sent mail is deleted starting with the oldest message. i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted.
- ◆SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be protected.

<UIM operation>
- ◆When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Delete>
- ◆You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.
- ◆If you select "Delete all" after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Saving the message at the Data Security Center <Data Security Service>

You can keep i-mode mail or SMS at the DoCoMo's Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to perform "Data sec. Service" for subscribing.
- If you have not subscribed to "Data Security Service", a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. Access the site from the screen to subscribe to the service.
  Data Security Service→p.125, 175

1 Received mail list screen (p.263)/ Sent mail list screen (p.263)/Draft mail list screen (p.253)▶ (FUNC) ▶"Store at DSC"

2 Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)

Up to 10 messages can be selected.

■ **To save a message with an attached file or inserted image that cannot be stored at the Data Security Center**

▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶"OK"

The attached file or inserted image is deleted before the message is saved.

3 Enter your security code▶"YES"

A FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the mails at the center.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- You cannot save an SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM).
- A large image, movie or i-motion attached to an i-mode message is deleted when the mail is saved.
- If an image that is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal is attached to or inserted into a received mail, the image is deleted when the mail is saved.
- The "Color coding" setting set on the Inbox screen, Outbox screen or Draft screen cannot be saved.

■ Restore mail

Message put in the Data Security Center can be restored to the FOMA terminal. To restore message, connect to i-mode. For more details, see "i-mode User's Manual".

Function menu (received mail detail screen)

Reply	"Replying by composing a new message"→p.258
Reply with quote	"Replying by quoting the received message"→p.259
Forward	"Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients"→p.259
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	▶**Select a folder** Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. "Copying (or cutting) text"→p.436
Save address **Add to phonebook**	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→p.259
Save data	Saves a melody, image or ToruCa that is attached to or pasted into mail. "Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail"→p.260 "Saving Images in Image Mail"→p.260 "Displaying/Saving ToruCa"→p.261
Save insert image	▶**Select an image**▶**"YES"**▶**Select a folder**▶**"YES"**▶**Select an item** Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a sender address as a desktop icon. "Using Desktop Icons"→p.148
Save template	Saves a received i-mode mail as a template. "Saving a template"→p.251
Refer dictionary	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries"→p.402
Property	▶**Select an image** Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
URL	Displays the URL of the large image attached to mail.
Read out message	Has the FOMA terminal read out the message in an i-mode mail.→p.262
Chat	Starts chat mail.→p.281
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time"→p.367
Copy to miniSD	"Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card"→p.357
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).→p.288
Scroll	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that data saved in the data box is not deleted.

Continued on next page

Move trash box	Moves the mail to the “Trash box” folder.
Delete	Deletes the received mail displayed in the received mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	“Hiding Various Data”→p.163

* : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears.→p.163

NOTE

<Move>

◆You cannot use this option to move mail to the “Trash box” or “Secret” folder.

◆You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<UIM operation>

◆When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<URL>

◆Select “” or “” on the received mail detail screen, then “URL” from the function menu, and you can check the destination URL for the images. You can enter URLs up to 150 single-byte characters long including “http://”.

<Delete att. file>

◆You cannot use this option to delete a file pasted into the message body.

<Move trash box>

◆You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the “Trash box” folder.

Function menu (sent mail detail screen)

Edit	**▶Edit the address, subject or message body▶(Send)** Re-edits the message.
Resend	Resends the message.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	**▶Select a folder** Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. “Copying (or cutting) text”→p.436
Save address / **Add to phonebook**	“Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook”→p.259
Save data	Saves a melody, image or ToruCa that is attached to mail “Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail” →p.260 “Saving Images in Image Mail” →p.260 “Displaying/Saving ToruCa”→p.261
Save insert image	**▶Select an image▶“YES”▶Select a folder▶“YES”▶Select an item** Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select “NO” after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes an address (recipient) as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Save template	Saves a sent i-mode mail as a template. “Saving a template”→p.251
Refer dictionary	Starts the dictionary. “Using Dictionaries”→p.402
Property	**▶Select an image** Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
Disp. SMS report	Displays the SMS report for an SMS.→p.285
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time” →p.367
Copy to miniSD	“Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card ”→p.357
UIM operation	Moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). →p.288
Scroll	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from “1 line”, “3 lines” or “5 lines”.
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from “Standard”, “Small”, “Large 1” or “Large 2”.
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that data saved in the data box is not deleted.
Delete	Deletes the sent mail displayed in the sent mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	“Hiding Various Data”→p.163

* : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears.→p.163

NOTE

<Resend>

◆Selecting “Resend” resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.

◆When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is saved as a sent mail. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is also saved as a sent mail.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

<Disp. SMS report>

◆If there is no SMS report for the selected SMS, this function cannot be used.

◆When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in a Secret folder, you cannot select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu even if "" appears on the SMS list or detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu, move the SMS from the Secret folder into another one.

<UIM operation>

◆When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Sent address list/Received address list>

Using mail records

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address list and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address list. You can use this procedure to send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail address or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address lists.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Checking an address list

<Example: To display the received address list screen>

1 (MENU)▶ (Own data)▶**"Received calls"▶"All calls"▶ (FUNC)▶"Received address"**

The "Received address" screen appears.

You can also display the "Received address" screen by pressing and holding for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

Pressing also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.



Received address list

Function menu➡p.275

■ To display the sent addr

▶(MENU)▶ (Own data)▶"Dialed calls"▶ (FUNC)▶"Sent address"

You can also display the Sent address list by pressing and holding for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

Pressing also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.

2 Select a sender

"Received address detail screen" appears.



3 Check the details

NOTE

◆The following icons are used in the sent address list and sent address detail screens:

- : i-mode mail transmission succeeded.
- : i-mode mail transmission failed.
- : SMS transmission succeeded.
- : SMS transmission failed.

◆The following icons are used in the received address list and received address detail screens:

- : Received i-mode mail.
- : Received SMS.

◆When "Keypad dial lock" is set, the registered Sent/Received address lists are deleted. After setting "Keypad dial lock", Sent address and Received address are stored respectively.

◆Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleted sent or received mail does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others from seeing them.

Function menu (Sent address/Received address list screen)

This explanation also applies to the function menus in the sent address and received address detail screens.

Add to phonebook	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→p.259
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.148
Compose message*1	Composes an i-mode message with the mail address pasted to the address field. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
Dialing	Uses the Phone To or AV Phone To function to make a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to the phone number on the phonebook which the e-mail addresses are stored.→p.226
Received calls*2	Switches to the received calls screen (or dialed calls screen) (list).→p.58, 66
Delete	Deletes e-mail addresses.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted e-mail address.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes the selected sent or received address.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all items in the Received address or Sent address list.

Continued on next page

*1 : If an SMS is selected, this option changes to “Compose SMS”, which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted to address. “When You Receive an SMS (Short Message)” →p.285

*2 : “Redial” is for the sent address list screen from redials and “Dialed calls” is for the sent address list screen from dialed calls.

NOTE

<Received calls>

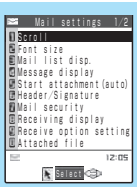
◆The displayed received calls screen is “All calls” (shows the entire received calls record).

<Mail settings>

Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

1 MENU ▶ Mail ▶“Mail settings”

The “Mail settings” screen appears.



Mail settings

2 Select any item

Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects any of “1 line”, “3 lines” and “5lines” to specify the number of lines scrolled when using ⓕ on the mail detail screen.
Font size (default: Standard)	Selects the size of displayed characters on the mail detail screen from “Standard”, “Small”, “Large 1” or “Large 2”.
Mail list disp. (default: 1line+body)	Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. You can select either of “2 lines”, “1 line” or “1line+body”. ■**To switch the mail list display** ▶**Select the display mode** Switches to “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.
Message display	Sets the position from where to start displaying the message body.
• **Standard** (default)	Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).
• **From message**	Displays the message from the message body onwards.
Start attachment(auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.
Header/Signature	“Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation marks” →p.277
Mail security	“Setting security for individual mailboxes” →p.170
Receiving display	Sets whether to give display priority to receiving and reception results screens if a mail, MessageR or MessageF is received while you are using the FOMA terminal.
• **Alarm preferred** (default)	Shows the receiving and reception results screen.
• **Operation preferred**	Gives priority to the screen being used rather than showing the receiving and reception results screens.
Receive option setting	Sets whether to receive mail selectively.
• **ON**	Does not automatically receive mail.
• **OFF** (default)	Receives mail automatically.
Attached file (default: Receive all)	Sets the mode to receive the attached files selecting from “Receive all”, “Receive image”, “Receive melody” or “No receive”.
Speed photo auto disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically display a still image when receiving a speed photo mail. If you set Speed photo auto display to “OFF” and you receive a speed photo mail, the attached image is not automatically displayed. To display the image, display the received mail.
Read out setting	Sets Read out message.
• **Select voice** (default: Female 1)	Select a voice for reading a received mail from “Female 1”, “Female 2”, “Male 1”, “Male 2” or “Robot”.
• **Read out received mail** (default: ON)	Sets Read out message to “ON” or “OFF” when pressing ▭ (Assist key).
Chat	“Specifying the chat mail settings” →p.284
Emotion/Keyword notice	“Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail” →p.280
SMS settings	Sets the options for SMS.
• **SMS report request** (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select “ON” or “OFF”.
• **SMS validity period** (default: 3 days)	Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center by selecting “None”, “1 day”, “2 days” or “3 days”. Set “None” not to store SMS at the SMS Center.
• **SMS input character** (default: Japanese (70char.))	Sets the SMS body character input method. Up to 70 of all double-byte and/or single-byte characters can be entered for Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered for English.
Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in “Mail settings”.
Reset	Resets the settings specified in “Mail settings” to the default. →p.280

NOTE

<Scroll>

◆The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the mail detail screen by selecting “Scroll” from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

<Font size>

◆You can also change the character size on the mail details screen by pressing ⊖ or ⊕ for 1 second or more. You can also change the character size on the mail detail screen or Read out mail screen by selecting “Font size” from the function menu. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.

◆When you switch to a screen other than the mail detail screen, an enlarged or reduced display automatically reverts to normal display. When you return to the mail detail screen, it is again shown enlarged or reduced.

<Message display>

◆If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers (date and time received/sent) may be displayed even when you select “From message”.

<Start attachment(auto)>

◆Even when you select “ON” in this option, you may be unable to play melodies sent from devices other than a FOMA N902iS correctly.

<Receiving display>

◆When you receive a mail or MessageR/MessageF while receiving an incoming voice call, making a voice call, being on a call or using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-αppli, i-motion, Chara-den or the camera, the receiving and reception results screens may not appear even if you have set “Alarm preferred”.

<Receive option setting>

◆This setting applies only to i-mode mail. SMS, MessageR and MessageF are automatically received regardless of this settings.

<Attached file>

◆Setting to “Receive all” receives all attached files of the images, melodies and ToruCa.

◆When you receive a mail with the files attached, those files are deleted as follows at the i-mode Center depending on the Attached file setting: Setting to “No receive”, “Receive melody” and “Receive image” deletes all attached files, files other than the melody files and files other than the image files, respectively. You cannot retrieve the attached file once you have deleted even if you check new messages.

◆The melody may not be played correctly if you receive it through other than FOMA N902iS terminals.

◆When the “No receive” or “Receive melody” is set, an image inserted to a Deco-mail or still image on a speed photo mail is deleted at the i-mode Center.

<SMS report request>

◆You can view received SMS reports in the “Inbox” folder. You can also check the report by selecting “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu in the detail screen of the sent SMS.

Headers, Signatures and Quotation marks

Default setting	Header/Signature (Not stored): Insert Quotation marks: >

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail (text mail) or Deco-mail message. This function also allows you to edit a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

1 Mail settings screen (p.276)▶“Header/Signature”

2 “Edit header” or “Edit signature”▶●

■ **To edit the quotation symbol**

▶“Edit Quotation marks”

3 Enter your header and signature▶ー(Finish)

You can enter up to 5,000 double-byte (10,000 single-byte) characters for header or signature, and up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for quotation marks.

■ **To enter a quotation mark**

▶Enter a quotation mark

■ **To decorate header or signature**

You can decorate header or signature.

“Composing a Deco-mail message”→p.248

4 “Insert setting”▶Select the checkbox for the header or signature▶ー(Finish)

■ **To compose mail without adding a header or signature automatically**

▶Deselect the checkbox for the header or signature

NOTE

◆Even if you select the “Insert” checkbox, the header or signature is not pasted into speed photo mail, template, chat screen or i-mode mail composed from an i-mode mail-connected i-αppli.

◆You cannot set the background color to the decoration for header or signature. It changes to the background color of a mail to be pasted.

◆When pasting the decorated header or signature to i-mode mail (text mail), it is Deco-mail.

Specifying which items are checked for in Center inquiries <Set check new messages>

Default setting: Check new messages

Use this option to select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode Center by “Check new messages”. You can specify whether to check for “Mail” (i-mode mail), “MessageR” and “MessageF”.

- A deselected checkbox (□) denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “Set check new messages”

2 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□) ▶ ●(Finish)

Setting the voice to read out received mails

- The FOMA terminal cannot read out SMS report (p.285), mail without messages, mail only including attached melodies or URLs for an i-αppli activation, or Deco-mail without messages.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out mail during a voice call or Push-to-Talk call, while running the music player or during 64K data communication.

1 Mail settings screen (p.276) ▶ “Read out setting” ▶ “Select voice” ▶ Select a voice

● Rules used for reading out mail

The read out mail function generally follows the rules given below when reading out received mail.

■ Symbols, special characters and pictographs

- Symbols, special characters and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols.

* The FOMA terminal may be unable to correctly read out sentences that include symbols, special characters or pictographs.

■ Numbers

- The FOMA terminal will read out numbers up to 16 digits long.

E.g.: 1234 → “Sen nihyaku sanju yon”

■ Monetary amounts

- If a currency symbol (e.g. “￥” (double-byte or single-byte character)) is placed at the beginning of a number up to 16 digits long, the FOMA terminal reads out the number as a monetary amount.

  If commas (,) are used as a delimiting character in an input string, the FOMA will recognize the string as a monetary amount only if the commas are used every 3 digits.

E.g.: ￥12345
　　￥12,345 → “Ichiman nisen sanbyaku yonju go en”

■ Phone number

- If numbers are delimited by hyphens (-) or parentheses (()) in the patterns listed below, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers but not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by “Tel:” as phone numbers.

E.g. Tel: 0120-102-001 →“Teru zeroichinizero ichizeroni zerozeroichi”

land line			
XX-XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXX-XXXX	XXXX-XX-XXXX	XXXXX-X-XXXX
(XX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XX-XXXX	(XXXXX)X-XXXX
XX(XXXX)XXXX	XXX(XXX)XXXX	XXXX(XX)XXXX	XXXXX(X)XXXX
XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXXX	XX-XXXX	X-XXXX
Mobile phone			
XXX-XXXX-XXXX	XXXX-XXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XXX-XXXX
XXX(XXXX)XXXX	XXXX(XXX)XXXX		
Toll-free			
XXXX-XXX-XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX		

* “X” indicates a number.

■ Time

● Numbers separated by a colon (:) are read out as time*. If the hour component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minute component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as time. If “AM” or “PM” is added before or after the number, it is read out before the number.

“Hour”:“Minute”(“Hour” = 0-29: “Minute” = 00-59)
E.g. 23:15 → “Nijusanji jugofun”
AM “Hour”:“Minute” or “Hour”:“Minute” AM (“Hour” = 0-12; “Minute” = 00-59)
E.g. AM 5:05 → “Gozen goji gofun”
PM “Hour”:“Minute” or “Hour”:“Minute” PM (“Hour” = 0-12; “Minute” = 00-59)
E.g. PM 5:05 → “Gogo goji gofun”

* : The time entered in the format of “Hour”:“Minute”:“Second” (e.g. 23:15:10) is not read out.

■ Date

● Numbers separated by a slash (/) or a period (.) are read out as time. If “M”, “T”, “S” or “H” (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name is read out.

“Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0-9999; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31)
Eg.: 2006/9/22 2006/09/22 2006.9.22 2006.09.22 —“Nisenrokunen kugatsu nijuuniti”
“M” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “M” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0-99; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31)
E.g. M10/04/20 → “Meiji junen shigatsu hatsuka”
“T” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “T” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0-99; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31)
E.g. T8.10.15 → “Taishou hachinen jugatsu jugonichi”
“S” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “S” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0-99; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31)
E.g. S50.3.6 → “Shouwa gojunen sangatsu muika”
“H” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “H” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0-99; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31)
E.g. H17.10.3 →“Heisei junananen jugatsu mikka”

- The above formats for numbers, monetary amounts, phone numbers, time and date can also be used with double-byte characters.
- When monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date are read out and the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters shown below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly. When you want to have monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date read out correctly, you should use a space as the delimiting character before and after the item.
  0-9, A-Z (upper case), colon (:), ¥, slash (/), period (.), hyphen (-) (single-byte/double-byte)

■ Symbols

● The FOMA terminal can read out the symbols shown below. (These symbols are read out as shown when used with numbers.)

$(dollars)→doru	%(percent)→paasento	￥(yen)→en	゜(degrees)→do
℃(degrees)→do	￥(yen)→en	$(dollars)→doru	%(percent)→paasento
ミリ(mm)→miri	キロ(kilograms)→kiro	センチ(cm)→senchi	メートル(meters)→meetoru
グラム(grams)→guramu	トン(tons)→ton	アール(ares)→aaru	ヘクタール(hectares)→hekutaaru
リットル(liter)→rittoru	ワット(watts)→watto	カロリー(calories)→karorii	ドル(dollars)→doru
セント(cent)→sento	パーセント(percent)→paasento	ミリバール(millibars)→miribaaru	ページ(pages)→peeji
mm(millimeters)→mirimeetoru	cm(centimeters)→senchimeetoru	km(kilometers)→kiromeetoru	mg(milligrams)→miriguramu
kg(kilograms)→kiroguramu	cc(cc)→siisii	m^2(square meters)→heihoumeetoru	

■ Others

● Alphabetic letters are read out in alphabet reading, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.
● Depending on the content of a sentence or description (particularly where place names or proper nouns are used), the FOMA terminal may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.
● Mail is not read out in a natural voice. In some cases the sounds or stress may be difficult to understand.
● Items such as punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces serve as separators for passages read out, except where a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. In text that has no delimiting punctuation, reading is paused automatically. Depending on the content being read out, there may be a pause before the FOMA terminal starts speaking. The FOMA terminal may also be unable to correctly read out passages where kanji characters are used. To ensure that the content of your received mail is read out correctly, you should recommend the following guidelines to people with whom you frequently correspond:

- Compose your e-mail using katakana for nouns, particularly proper nouns such as place names and personal names.
- Use punctuation marks when composing mails.

Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail <Emotion/Keyword notice>

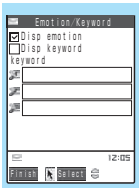
Default setting	Disp emotion: ON Disp keyword: OFF

You can specify whether to display the emotion-expressing mail icons when receiving i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS. You can also set to use icons for notifying you of the received mails containing the keywords specified.

- "Emotion-expressing mail"→p.256

1 Mail settings screen (p.276)▶"Emotion/Keyword notice"

The "Emotion/Keyword notice" screen appears.



Emotion/Keyword

Function menu➡p.280

■ **To use "Disp emotion"**

▶Select the checkbox (☐) of "Disp emotion"

The checkbox is checked (☑), and an emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed when you receive a mail.

■ **To use "Disp keyword"**

▶Select the checkbox (☐) of "Disp keyword"▶Enter one keyword or more

The checkbox is checked (☑), and when you receive a mail containing the strings entered in "keyword", the corresponding emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed. Enter at least one keyword (available for entering up to 3 keywords consisting of 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters).

2 (Finish)

Function menu (Emotion/Keyword screen)

Delete keyword	Deletes the selected keyword.
Delete all keyword	Deletes all the keywords specified.

NOTE

◆Changing or deleting the keywords also deletes the keyword icons displayed on received mail list screen, etc.

Resetting your mail function settings <Reset>

1 Mail settings screen (p.276)▶"Reset"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

- You cannot launch Chat mail in the following situations:
  - When "ON" is selected in "Receive option"
  - If your Inbox is full of saved mail
- The communication fee for sending chat mail to several people is the same as sending a mail with multiple recipients.→p.242
- You can set a ring tone specifically for chat mail. When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail.

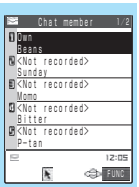
Selecting chat session members <Chat member>

Use this procedure to select the people you want to chat with.

1 (MENU)▶Mail▶"Chat mail"▶(FUNC)▶"Chat member"

The "Chat member" screen appears.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see "Refer address" in the Chat member function menu list.



Chat member

Function menu➡p.280

Function menu (Chat member screen)

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

Edit	Enters and registers the e-mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself.
Refer address	■**If no address is stored** ▶**Select any item** ■**When the address is recorded** ▶**"YES"▶Select any item** Enter the chat member's mail address from the phonebook or history.
• **Phonebook**	Enters an e-mail address from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116
• **Sent address**	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• **Received address**	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.

Change member	“Changing chat session members” →p.281
Add chat group	Adds the current chat member to the chat group at a time.
Display setting	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.
Delete	Deletes a selected chat session member other than yourself.
Delete all	Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.

NOTE

<Edit>

◆If the added e-mail address is registered in a chat group, the member’s name is displayed. If the address is not registered in a chat group but registered in the phonebook, up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed. If the address is not registered in the phonebook, up to 8 single-pitch characters of the address are displayed.

<Refer address (Phonebook)>

◆If you change an e-mail address of the registered chat member by searching it in the phonebook, the name of a person and an image file (if an image is registered) on the phonebook is used for the chat member screen.

<Display setting>

◆If you display your own details, your e-mail address is not shown.

<Delete> <Delete all>

◆You cannot delete yourself.

● Changing chat session members

1 Chat member screen (p.280)▶(−)(FUNC)▶“Change member”▶Select any item

Chat group	Select the member to be replaced from the group list or member list.
• **Group list**	▶**Select “Chat group”**
• **Member list**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶(−)(Finish)**
Mail member	▶**Select a mail member**

NOTE

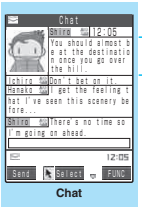
◆If you receive chat mail from a group member who has been deleted from the list of chat group members, the chat mail does not appear on the chat screen. Even if you select “Quit” without deleting the chat mail, it is not displayed on the chat screen when starting the next chat mail, but saved as an i-mode mail.

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new chat mail message.

1 (MENU)▶(Mail)▶“Chat mail”

The “Chat” screen appears.



2 ◉▶Enter your message▶(−)(Send)

You can send up to 250 double-byte characters from the chat screen.

When sending is completed, your message appears in the latest message area.

To send another message, repeat step 2.

■ If message transmission fails

The latest message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed chat mail message.

■ To end a chat mail session

▶Chat function menu▶“Quit”

NOTE

◆Attached and pasted files are not displayed.

◆Sent and received chat mail is stored in the “Chat” folder. To resend chat mail, send it from the “Chat” folder.

◆The subject used for chat mail you send is “チャットメール” (single-byte characters).

◆Chat mail received in the chat screen is marked as read in the “Chat” folder.

◆If you receive i-mode mail while a chat mail is running, the reception results screen does not appear.

◆Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders are not displayed on the chat screen.

Function menu (Chat screen)

Send	Sends chat mail.
Select receiver	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶(−)(Finish)**
Chat member	“Selecting chat session members” →p.280
Broadcast address	“Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail” →p.282
Refresh	Receives the chat mail held at the i-mode Center.
View first line	Displays the most recent message in the latest message area
View last line	Displays the oldest message in the latest message area.

Continued on next page

Delete read	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received.
Quit	Selects whether to delete a chat mail message, and then quits the chat mail.

NOTE

<Delete read>

◆This option also deletes chat mail that could not be sent.

<Quit>

◆The unsent chat mails are deleted when quitting a chat mail.

◆To quit a chat mail without deleting the chat mail, select "NO" after you select "Quit".

◆If you quit chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the "Chat" folder in the Outbox screen and Inbox screen respectively.

◆Chat mails failed to send are stored in the "Chat" folder under the Outbox list.

◆If you did not delete the chat mails at the end of a session, the chat mail appear in the message record area in reverse chronological order at the start of next session.

◆When closing the chat screen, you can delete all chat mails. In this case, chat mails are deleted from the chat folder as well. However, a protected chat mail is not deleted.

● Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail

● You can use this function only for the broadcast mail from the FOMA terminal supporting to the chat mail.

1 Chat screen (p.281)▶(-)(FUNC)▶"Broadcast address"▶"YES"▶Use (◎) to select a checkbox (□)▶(-)(Finish)

■ **When all the addresses are for chat session members**

▶"Broadcast address"▶"OK"

Receiving chat mail

<Chat mail recv.>

If you receive a chat mail while chat is not running, the "CHAT" icon appears on the FOMA terminal's standby screen. Selecting this icon launches a chat mail so that you can start using it.

● Chat mail can display up to 250 double-byte characters (or 500 single-byte characters).

● If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat screen.

● If you launch chat by selecting "CHAT" or by selecting "Chat" from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, the chat session members and recipients change as follows:

- When the sender's e-mail address was set in the list of chat session member, the session members from the last time you quit a chat session are again set. However, if you launched chat from the received mail detail screen, session members in the recipients list other than the sender are excluded. If you select "CHAT" and the sender's e-mail address is not specified as a recipient, it is added to the list of recipients in accordance with the "Select receiver" setting.
- If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member but is registered in a chat group, all the members of the chat group to which the sender belongs are set as chat session members. Note that members on the recipients list other than the sender are not included as recipients.
- If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member and is not registered in a chat group, only the sender's e-mail address is set as a chat session member.

● Set "3D display setting" to "ON" and select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body is displayed as animations.

1 On the standby screen ▶(●)▶"CHAT"



Standby

■ **When the sender is not registered as a chat session member**

▶"YES"

A message appears asking whether to delete the chat members and launch a chat mail. Select "YES" to change the current chat members and launch a chat mail.

■ **To remain the currently specified chat members**

▶"NO"

The current chat session member settings are retained and the Mail menu screen appears.

2 Start chat mail

Received chat mail appears in the latest message area. If you have undeleted chat mail, it appears in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

NOTE

◆The FOMA terminal recognizes the mails as a Chat mail when it meets the following criteria:

- The subject line includes "チャットメール" (all single-byte or all double-byte characters)
- The sender's or recipient's e-mail address is registered as a chat member or chat group
- When it is not mail-connected i-αppli
- When it is not Deco-mail
- When it is not SMS

◆You cannot use Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function on the chat screen. You can use those functions in the mail screen that you opened from Inbox.

Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group

Registering proposed chat session members in a chat group beforehand simplifies the task of registering chat session members.

- You can register up to 5 people in a chat group. You do not need to register yourself.
- You can register up to 5 chat groups.
- You cannot register the same chat session member in more than 1 chat group.
- When you register a chat session member in a chat group, you can edit that member's name and set an image for him or her.

1 (MENU)▶(Own data)▶**"Chat group"**

The "Chat group" screen appears.



Chat group list

Function menu➡p.283

2 Select a chat group

The "group member list" screen appears.

3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (-)(Edit)▶ Enter the e-mail address▶(●)



Group member list

Function menu➡p.283

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

To store more e-mail addresses, simply repeat steps 2 and 3.

■ To enter a mail address by looking up the phonebook

▶"<Not stored>"▶"Phonebook"▶ Select the search method▶Select a mail address you want to enter

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116

NOTE

◆If your i-mode address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" for registration to Chat member, enter only phone number. If your address is an e-mail address, you can use either letters preceded before @ (at mark) or the entire address including "@docomo.ne.jp".

◆The first 8 characters of the registered e-mail address are set as the member name. If the registered e-mail address is stored in the phonebook, the first 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are set. The registered image is also set if it is stored on the phonebook.

Function menu (Chat group list screen)

Active chat	Sets the member of the chat group as a chat member and launches a chat mail.
Edit group name	**▶Edit a group name** Edits a group name. You can enter the title up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset group name	Resets the group name to the default.

Function menu (group member list screen)

Edit	**▶Enter the e-mail address** Edits the e-mail address. Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered.
Refer address	**■When no addresses are recorded** **▶Select any item** **■When the address is recorded** **▶"YES"▶Select any item** Enters the group member's mail address from the phonebook or history.
• **Phonebook**	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen. The registered name and image are stored in the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116
• **Sent address**	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• **Received address**	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Change member	**■If no member is registered** **▶"Mail member"▶Select a mail member** **■If a member is registered** **▶"Mail member"▶"YES"▶ Select a mail member**
Member setting	"Setting member details"→p.284
Delete this	Deletes the mail address of the highlighted group member.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the members in the selected group.

Setting member details

1 Group member list screen (p.283)▶ (FUNC)▶“Member setting”▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item

Name	**▶Enter a name** Edits a member name. Name can consist of up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters.
Image	Selects the image shown for each member in the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
• **Inbox**	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• **Camera**	Selects an image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• **Pre-installed**	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Beans”, “Sunday”, “Momo”, “Bitter”, “P-tan” and “Tong · Tong”.
Voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen, from “Female 1”, “Female 2”, “Male 1”, “Male 2” or “Robot”.

NOTE

<Name>

◆If there is no member name entered, the first 8 characters of the e-mail address are set as the member name.

<Image>

◆You cannot change the background color.

Specifying the chat mail settings

1 Mail settings screen (p.276)▶“Chat”

The “Chat setting” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Chat setting

Sound setting	Sets the tone sounded in the chat screen when new chat mail is received or chat mail is sent. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
• **Inbox**	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website.
• **Pre-installed**	Select the chat sound from “Alarm 1” to “Alarm 3”.
• **Voice announce**	Selects the notification tone from the recorded melody or ring tone in “Voice announce”.
• **OFF**	No notification tone sounds.
Chat image (default: ON)	Sets whether to display an image in the latest message area.
Read out chat (default: OFF)	Sets whether to read out new chat mail on the chat screen.
User setting	“Setting user details”→p.284

NOTE

<Sound setting>

◆The notification tone does not sound when you receive chat mail from someone who is not a registered chat group member

Setting user details

1 Chat setting screen (p.284)▶“User setting”▶Select any item

Name	**▶Enter a user name** Enters a user name. Name can consist of up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters.
Image	Selects the image you want to display on the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
• **Inbox**	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• **Camera**	Selects an image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• **Pre-installed**	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Beans”, “Sunday”, “Momo”, “Bitter”, “P-tan” and “Tong · Tong”.
Voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail on the chat screen, from “Female 1”, “Female 2”, “Male 1”, “Male 2” or “Robot”.

NOTE

<Name>

◆If you leave the name blank or enter only spaces, “Own” is used.

<Image>

◆You cannot change the background color.

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and the supported overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

1 MENU ▶ Mail ▶ "Compose SMS"

The "New SMS" screen appears.



New SMS

Function menu➡p.286

2 "To" ▶ Select the address entry method

You can only enter 1 SMS recipient.

Phonebook	Enters the phone number by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116
Sent address*1	Enters the phone number from the Sent address list.
Received address*2	Enters the phone number from the received address list.
Enter address	Enters the phone number directly.

*1 : "Sent address list" can be displayed by pressing ⊙ on the "New SMS" screen as well.

*2 : "Received address list" can be displayed by pressing ⊙ on the "New SMS" screen as well.

■ If the recipient is using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo

▶Enter + (hold down the 0 key for 1 second or longer) - the country code - the other party's mobile phone number

If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero.

You can also send SMS by entering in order of "010" - "Country code" - "the other party's mobile phone number" (To reply to SMS received from overseas, enter "010" to send overseas).

■ To change the entered recipient

▶Enter an address▶Select the address entry method

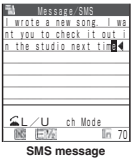
If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select "YES".

In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

- When it includes characters other than numbers, asterisks "✱" or hash symbols (#)
- When it includes "+" as second or later character
- When it includes a space

3 "✉"

The "SMS message" screen appears.



SMS message

4 Enter message body

The numbers and types of characters that can be entered in the message entry screen are as specified in the "SMS input character" settings (p.286). If "Japanese" input is selected, you can enter up to 70 double-byte or single-byte characters in all. If "English" input is selected, you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

You can use the "Enter address" function menu (p.434) while entering a message.

5 ⊖(Send)

An animation is displayed while the SMS is being sent. Select "OK" to return to the Mail menu screen.

Editing sent and unsent SMS→p.274

● SMS (Short Message) reports <Disp. SMS report>

If "ON" is selected in "SMS report request" (p.286), you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox along with the sent SMS, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the recipient.

To view an SMS with an SMS report (✉), select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the received mail list screen. SMS reports are indicated by "SMS SMS report" in the subject line.

NOTE

- ◆If you exceed the limit on the number of sent mail messages (total SMS and i-mode mail messages) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, sent mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: sent mails in protected, or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders.
- ◆Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- ◆Even when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- ◆If additional number of the multi number is set to the default dial number, SMS cannot be sent. Set the default dial number to Basic Number.
- ◆You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in double-byte alphanumeric input mode.
- ◆Some characters cannot be properly displayed at the received side depending on the font type to be sent or terminal at the sending side.→p.239

Function menu (New SMS screen)

Send	Send SMS
Preview	Allows you to check the SMS recipient and message before sending it.
Save	Saves the SMS you are currently editing in Draft. You can save up to 20 mails in total for SMS and i-mode mails. SMS saved by this function can be sent later.
SMS report req. (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select “ON” or “OFF”.
SMS valid. per. (default: 3 days)	Sets how long an SMS is stored at the SMS center when the SMS cannot be received. Select “None”, “1 day”, “2 days” or “3 days”.
SMS input char. (default: Japanese)	Sets the SMS body character input method. Up to 70 of all double-byte and/or single-byte characters can be entered for Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered for English.
Erase message	Only the message body is deleted.
Delete	The SMS being edited is deleted.

NOTE

◆If you set “SMS input char.”, “SMS report req.” or “SMS valid. per.” in the mail settings screen, the setting is retained when the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, the “SMS input char.”, “SMS report req.” or “SMS valid. per.” set in the function menu is only valid for the current SMS.

◆If “SMS valid. per.” is set to “None”, an attempt continues to be made to resend an SMS for a given time, then the SMS is deleted from the SMS center.

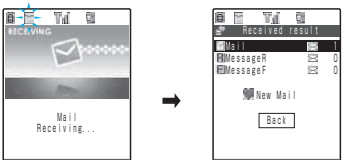
<Receive SMS>

When You Receive an SMS (Short Message)

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 SMS and/or i-mode mail in all.

❶When you receive an SMS, the “ (white)” icon flashes and the “Mail Receiving...” message appears



After receiving is completed, the number of messages appears for the received SMS or i-mode, MessageR and MessageF on the reception results screen.
When “Mail” is selected, the received mail list screen appears.
No operation for about 15 seconds returns to the previous screen. The display time for the receive result screen depends on the “Mail/Msg. ring time” setting.
The ring tone volume conforms to the setting of “Mail” under “Ring volume”.

NOTE

◆If the total number of received i-mode mail messages (both i-mode and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. →p.270, 273

◆If the “ (red)” icon is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or SMS. To receive a new mail or message, delete the unnecessary i-mode or SMS, or read the unread i-mode or SMS until those icons no longer appear. The mails or messages are overwritten starting with the oldest one as a new mail or message is received.

◆When you receive multiple mails (i-mode and/or SMS) at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp pattern set for the last item of mail received.

◆If you receive short mail sent from the phone such as a mova terminal, the sender’s phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.

◆If you receive SMS while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.

<Priority sequence for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

◆Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive SMS.

①“Discern connect” specified for each phone number →p.122

②“Discern group” specified for each group →p.122

③“Select ring tone”/“Style mode” →p.128, 152, “Illumination” →p.146

Viewing received SMS (Short Message)

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the received mail list screen.
- For received SMS reports, “SMS report” is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- For Voice Mail notices, “Noticecall voicemail” is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- Set “3D display setting” to “ON” and select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body is displayed as animations.

1 On the standby screen ▶● ▶“ ”



Selecting the “ (white)” icon displays the unread mail list.
The function menu of the unread mail list screen is the same as that of the received mail list screen (p.270).

NOTE

- If a received SMS includes double-byte characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).
- The phone number of the sender of the displayed SMS is highlighted. Pressing ● in highlighted condition makes a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to the displayed number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the sender’s phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored “Name” is highlighted. In that case, you can call the sender in the same way.

Replying and forwarding to received SMS (Short Message)

You can forward SMS and send a reply to the sender.

- You cannot enter a subject. “Replying by composing a new message”→p.258

NOTE

- You cannot reply to an SMS by quoting the received message.
- You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID (User unset) or is sending from a pay phone (Payphone) or a phone that does not support Caller ID Notification (Not support).
- You cannot forward or reply to an SMS report.
- You cannot reply to Voice Mail notices.
- If you reply to or forward an SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the “ ” remains on the received mail list screen and received mail detail screen and the “ ”/“ ” icon does not appear.

<Check SMS>

Checking for SMS (Short Message)

- SMS that arrive at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are held at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, if you are outside the service area, if the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or if the FOMA terminal’s memory is full.

1 MENU ▶ Mail ▶“Check new SMS”

“SMS Checking...” is displayed while you check for new SMS. Once the FOMA terminal has sent the inquiry, the message informing that the inquiry has done appears. Press ●.
If there are any messages held at the SMS Center, automatic receiving begins.
In some cases, automatic receiving may not begin immediately after the inquiry is sent.

NOTE

- Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking.
- This function is not available for receiving the i-mode mails or MessageR/MessageF. To receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF, use “Check new messages”.

<SMS settings>

Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings

Specifying the SMS (Short Message) center setting

Default setting: DoCoMo

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another provider’s SMS center for SMS.

<Example: To use another provider’s SMS center>

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Connection setting”▶“SMS center selection”▶Select any item

DoCoMo	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
User setting	**▶Enter the SMS center address▶“International” or “Unknown”** Uses another provider’s SMS center.
Reset	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes the “User setting” data and resets the setting to “DoCoMo”.

NOTE

- If the entered SMS Center address includes “#” or “✗”, you cannot select “International”.

<UIM operation>

Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) to your FOMA card (UIM). You can also use this function to move or copy SMS stored on your FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The FOMA card (UIM) will hold up to 20 received or sent SMS.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) to the FOMA card (UIM)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the Inbox to the FOMA card (UIM)>

1 MENU ▶ Mail ▶"Inbox"▶Select a folder ▶Highlight SMS▶(FUNC)▶"UIM operation"▶Select any item

Move to UIM	Moves SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).
Copy to UIM	Copies SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- Received or sent SMS that moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM) is displayed in the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- If there appears "", "(white)" or "(red)" icons, you cannot move or copy SMS.
- You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM). If you move or copy the protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you remove the battery pack, the dates and times for sent SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, if an SMS report is stored with the sent SMS, the date and time are not erased.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) on the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) to the Inbox>

1 MENU ▶ Mail ▶"Inbox"▶Select a folder ▶Highlight SMS▶(FUNC)▶"UIM operation"▶Select any item

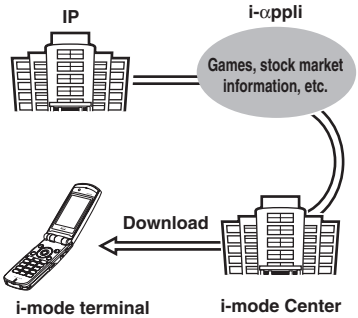
Move from UIM	Moves SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).
Copy from UIM	Copies SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).

i-αppli

What is an i-αppli? 290
Downloading an i-αppli from a Site 291
Running an i-αppli 292
Launching an i-αppli Automatically 298
Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail ..... i-αppli To function 299
Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen ..... i-αppli stand-by display 300
Organizing an i-αppli 301

What is an i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli programs from sites, you can make it more useful and enjoyable to use your i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal). For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and play them or download an i-αppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also a mapping i-αppli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth. There are other i-αppli programs of which you can store data from the i-αppli directly into the phonebook or schedule, or which is linked to Data box when saving or downloading images.



- To download an i-αppli→p.291
- To launch an i-αppli→p.292
- To launch an i-αppli automatically→p.298

NOTE

- Some software applications use the i-mode terminal mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers.
- Some software applications use a FOMA terminal to communicate when running, but can also be set to run without communicating.

Using stored data

Some i-αppli programs can browse, store or use data (such as phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information) stored on your i-mode terminal. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images into Data box
- Saving i-motion programs
- Browsing i-motion programs
- Changing the alarm clock setting
- Saving the ToruCa

What is an i-αppli DX?

i-αppli DX programs link up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mails, the Dialed/Received calls record and phonebook data) to make the i-αppli programs even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mails on your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you from who a call or message has come, and linking up with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices.

Using stored data

Some i-αppli DX programs can browse, store and use not only the stored data used by ordinary i-αppli programs (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information), but also data such as mails, dialed calls record, received calls record and ring tones. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Browsing phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Using the Mail menu
- Using the Compose message screen
- Browsing the latest Dialed calls record
- Browsing the latest Received calls record
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Saving melodies
- Changing ring tones (Phone, Videophone, Mail, MessageR, MessageF and Chat mail)
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images into Data box
- Saving Chara-den
- Browsing Chara-den
- Changing screen settings (standby screen, dialing/receiving phone call, receiving videophone call, receiving/sending mail, receiving MessageR/MessageF and menu icon)
- Changing the videophone substitute image settings
- Changing the alarm clock setting
- Newly adding, selecting or acquiring ToruCa
- Saving i-motion programs
- Browsing i-motion programs
- Browsing Inbox/Outbox

NOTE

- Regardless of the software communication settings, an i-αppli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of the software. The frequency and timing of connections differs depending on the software.

What is mail-connected i-αppli?

Mail-connected i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that uses i-mode mails to exchange information and provide essential information such as share prices and real time updates on the progress of games, etc., allowing you to make your FOMA terminal even easier and more fun to use.
i-αppli mails used for mail-connected i-αppli programs may not be displayed correctly.

What is Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli?

Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli that reads and writes data in an IC card enables you to use useful functions such as downloading electronic money or ticket, etc. and browsing the balance or records in your mobile phone.

● “What is Osaifu-Keitai?”→p.308

NOTE

◆Using Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli sends the information stored in your IC card to an information service provider (IP) of the subscribing service. (Contract with DoCoMo is not forwarded.)

Other useful features

■ i-αppli standby screen

On the i-αppli standby screen, an i-αppli is set as the standby screen and you can still receive mails or make calls. The standby screen can be more useful; e.g. news or weather information can be displayed, or your preferred character notifies you of an incoming message or alarm.→p.300

- This function is available for software that supports i-αppli standby screens.

■ i-αppli auto start

This feature allows you to automatically launch an i-αppli by specifying a time, date or day of the week. Some i-αppli programs can be launched automatically at the intervals specified in the programs beforehand.→p.298

■ Using the camera

Some i-αppli programs allow you to take pictures using the camera built in an i-mode terminal.→p.178

- This function is available for programs that support the camera function.

■ Infrared data exchange

This feature allows an i-αppli running on a FOMA terminal to communicate with other devices equipped with the Infrared data exchange function. This further expands the use of your FOMA terminal by allowing link-ups with other infrared-capable devices.→p.364

- This function is available for programs that support the Infrared data exchange function.
- Depending on the device to communicate, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even if the device has an Infrared data exchange function.

■ Infrared remote control

This allows i-αppli programs to control devices such as household appliances that support infrared remote control.→p.369

For example, the pre-installed “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control) enables you to use your terminal as an AV remote control device that works with a TV time table.→p.296

- This function is available for programs that support the infrared remote control function. The programs must be compatible with the controlled devices.

Downloading an i-αppli from a Site

You can download an i-αppli from an i-mode site and run it on your FOMA terminal.

- A FOMA terminal can hold up to 200 downloaded programs (up to 5 mail-connected i-αppli programs). Depending on the sizes of programs, the actual number of downloadable i-αppli programs varies between 10 and 200.
- When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, folders for the mail-connected i-αppli are automatically created in the Inbox and Outbox folder lists. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-connected i-αppli and cannot be changed. If PIM lock is set for the i-αppli, the folder names are “i-αppli”.
- If there are already 5 folders for mail-connected i-αppli, delete one or more of the existing folders for mail-connected i-αppli to create available space for the new programs.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-αppli that will use the same Inbox and Outbox folders as those for an i-αppli that has already been stored in your FOMA terminal.
- You cannot download mail-connected i-αppli programs while mail security is set. Remove the mail security before download.
- Mails sent or received using a mail-connected i-αppli are automatically sorted into the folders created when that mail-connected i-αppli was downloaded. You can also manually sort received mails.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αppli without deleting its folders and then download the i-αppli again, the undeleted folders can be reused. Alternatively, you can delete the undeleted folders and create new folders. If you neither use the undeleted folders nor create new folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-αppli.

1 Select a program

When the message “Completed” appears after downloading, press ●. Programs that are immediately launched from sites (p.300) start up without displaying the completion message.

■ To interrupt download while the data are being received

▶During download▶●

■ If a software setting screen appears

▶Set the program▶●(Finish)

Software settings→p.293

Continued on next page

2 “YES”

When you launch the i-αppli program, “” appears at the bottom of the screen. If an i-αppli DX launches, “” appears.

■ **To prevent the i-αppli from launching**

▶“NO”

NOTE

- ◆You may not be able to download an i-αppli depending on the site or the size of the i-αppli.
- ◆Some i-αppli programs may automatically perform communication after downloaded. You can set your terminal not to automatically communicate by using “Network set” in “Software setting”.
- ◆If you download an i-αppli or i-αppli DX that uses the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, a message notifying that the i-αppli will use the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers appears. When this happens, your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result.
- ◆When you are downloading i-αppli information or an i-αppli program from an SSL site, “” appears. →p.215
- ◆When you download an i-αppli that uses FOMA terminal’s communication functions or that can be set as a standby screen, the Software setting screen appears. After completing settings according to the downloaded i-αppli, press ● (Finish). (Press CLR to cancel the settings.)
- ◆Depending on the data storage capacity of the IC card, you may not be able to download an Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli even when there is space available in the program storage area. Follow the instructions on the confirmation screen to delete the displayed programs and then try downloading the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli again. Depending on the i-αppli to be downloaded, some programs may not be deleted. Some programs may require you to launch the program to delete the data on the IC card before deleting the program itself.
- ◆If you download the same program as the one already taken using the different FOMA card (UIM), a message confirming that you will overwrite the program appears. Select “YES” to start download. After the download is completed, the program already downloaded is deleted.
- ◆“i-αppli mail” refers to mails sent by mail-connected i-αppli programs or those sent to you so that they will be used in mail-connected i-αppli programs. i-αppli mails contain i-αppli data that enable the mails to be automatically saved in the i-αppli mail folder.

Viewing i-αppli information during downloading <Display software info>

Default setting: Not display

This setting allows you to specify whether to show the program information when downloading a program.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“i-αppli settings”▶ “Disp. Software info”

Select “Display” or “Not display”.

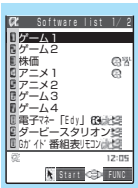
Running an i-αppli

Launching an i-αppli

1 MENU ▶ i-αppli ▶“Software list”

The “Software list” screen appears.

You can also open the “Software list” screen by pressing ● ( ) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.



Software list

Function menu➡p.293

2 Select an i-αppli to launch

Quitting an i-αppli

1 CLR (1 second or longer)▶“YES”

Selecting ☎ ▶ “YES” also ends the i-αppli.

■ **For software developers**

When a created i-αppli program does not run correctly, the trace information can be accessed for reference.

Select in order of MENU ▶ i-αppli (i-αppli) ▶ “i-αppli action info” ▶ “Trace info”. The trace information appears in the order in which actions occurred. You can copy trace information by selecting “Copy info” from the function menu. To delete trace information, select “Delete info” from the function menu.

NOTE

- ◆You can set an i-αppli to be launched automatically. →p.298
- ◆You can enjoy rich-sound melodies with 3D sound compatible i-αppli programs. →p.130
- ◆If you receive a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call while a program is starting up, the program operation is paused. The program screen reappears when the call ends. If you receive a call during i-αppli communication, the FOMA terminal works according to the “Vphone while packet” setting. →p.92

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

◆Some i-αppli programs allow you to use the Phone To (AV Phone To) or Web To function from the program. However, you cannot use the functions from the i-αppli standby screen (p.300) (except when running an i-αppli).
◆i-αppli mails used for mail-connected i-αppli programs may not be displayed correctly.
◆Do not remove the battery pack while running a program. Doing so may delete the data or information that has been entered.
◆Some programs allows you to save the data you will use for the program (i-αppli data (miniSD)) in the miniSD memory card.
◆If you attempt to copy data to the miniSD memory card during use of i-αppli, a message may appear indicating that the copy cannot be performed.
◆Images used in i-αppli programs* or data entered by the user may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
* : Images used in i-αppli programs mean those shot by the camera activated by a camera-linked i-αppli, those retrieved using an i-αppli Infrared data exchange function, those that an i-αppli downloaded from a site or website or those that an i-αppli loaded from Data box.
◆If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.
◆Some i-αppli programs may not make sounds.
◆If the camera was activated by an i-αppli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-αppli.
◆If the camera is activated by an i-αppli, settings such as the image size, image quality and frame may be specified by the i-αppli.
◆Some i-αppli programs can activate the Bar code reader to scan JAN codes or QR codes. The scanned data are used by the i-αppli.
◆Depending on the program, the information service provider (IP) may access the program stored on your FOMA terminal and directly disable use of the program. When this happens, you can no longer launch, upgrade or set the program as a standby screen. You can only delete the program or view the program information. To use the program again, you have to contact the IP and have them send an instruction to re-enable the program.
◆Depending on the program, the IP may send data to the program stored on your FOMA terminal.
◆When an IP sends a disable or re-enable instruction or other data to a program stored on your FOMA terminal in this way, the FOMA terminal starts communication and the "⇆" icon flashes. No communication charges apply when this happens.

Function menu (Software list screen)

Set i-αppli To	"Enabling program launching with i-αppli To"→p.299
Auto start time	"Setting the launch date/time"→p.299
Software setting	Specifies the software settings.
• **Stand-by display**	"Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen"→p.300
• **Network set**	Sets whether to allow the network connection to be performed when launching an i-αppli. Setting to "Confirm every session" enables you to select online or offline communication every time you launch an i-αppli. ▶●**(Finish)**
• **Stand-by net**	Sets whether to allow the network connection on the i-αppli set for the standby screen. ▶●**(Finish)**
• **Icon info**	Specifies whether to permit the use of unread mails or message icon information when launching an i-αppli. ▶●**(Finish)**
• **Change mld./img.**	Sets whether to allow an i-αppli DX to change ring tones for phone calls, mails and messages, to change images such as those on the standby screen or used when mails are sent or received, or to change menu icons when launching the i-αppli. When "ON" is set, the ring tone, image or menu icon is automatically changed. When "Check every change" is set, you can specify whether to change those items every time the i-αppli tries to change them. ▶●**(Finish)**
• **See P.book/hist.**	Sets whether to allow an i-αppli DX to look up the phonebook, latest Dialed and Received calls records, the latest unread mail and the ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) when the program is launched. When "ON" is set, the phonebook and records are automatically looked up. ▶●**(Finish)**
Software info	"Checking i-αppli information"→p.294
Upgrade	"Upgrading an i-αppli"→p.301
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.148
Memory Info	Shows the i-αppli memory status
Delete	"Deleting an i-αppli"→p.302
• **Delete this**	
• **Delete selected**	
• **Delete all**	

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Software setting (Network set)>

◆If you specify “OFF”, note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

<Software setting (Icon info)>

◆If you set this function to “ON” for the program set as the i-αppli standby screen, as presence of the unread mails and messages, appearance of the icons for in/out of service area and status of the battery level and Manner mode may be sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet in the same way as your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, there is a possibility that the information may be disclosed to a third party.

◆If this function is set to “OFF”, some programs that require icon information may not work.

Adjusting volumes when running i-αppli programs

<i-αppli vol.>

You can adjust volumes for i-αppli programs.

1 (MENU)▶ Settings▶“i-αppli settings”▶“i-αppli vol.”

The “i-αppli vol. setting” screen appears.

2 Set volume

NOTE

◆You can set the i-αppli volume to “Silent” or “Level 1 to 6” (default: Level 4).

◆You can adjust volume for some programs. However, if “i-αppli vol.” is set to “Silent”, the sound is not played regardless of the volume set for the program.

◆The volume level for i-αppli programs while in Manner mode is specified according to the Manner mode settings. When Manner mode is set to Original manner mode, the i-αppli volume is specified by “i-αppli vol.” under the Manner mode setting.

Checking i-αppli information

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶ −(FUNC)▶“Software info”▶Check the i-αppli information



NOTE

◆Program names shown by this function cannot be changed.

◆On the software list screen, program types and settings can be checked by the following icons.

: i-αppli DX→p.290

: Mail-connected i-αppli

: “Auto start time” has been set.→p.299

: “Set i-αppli stand-by” has been set.

: “Auto start time” and “Set i-αppli stand-by” have been set.

: “i-αppli To setting” can be set.

: “Set i-αppli stand-by” can be set.

: “i-αppli To setting” and “Set i-αppli stand-by” can be set.

: Downloaded from an SSL page

: Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli→p.308

: The data can be saved to the miniSD memory card.→p.357

Checking the security error history

When an i-αppli or i-αppli DX attempts to run a function that is not permitted, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

1 (MENU)▶ i-αppli▶“i-αppli action info”▶“Security error history”

The “Security error history” screen appears.



Security error history

Function menu➡p.294

Function menu (Security error history screen)

Copy info	Copies the security error details.
Delete info	Deletes the security error information.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Launching another program from an active program

You can launch another program from a currently active program. Downloading a program that launches the specified program enables you to launch that program without having to return to the software list screen.

- Specify the program to launch if it is not specified.
- If the specified program is not stored on a FOMA terminal, you must download the program beforehand.

1 Select an item for selecting a program▶"YES"

NOTE

◆If an item to launch a program includes the URL of the program, a message asking whether to launch the specified program appears. Select "YES" to quit the currently active program and launch the specified one. To return to the active program, select "NO".

Pre-installed programs

The FOMA terminal comes with 8 pre-installed programs ("ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン" (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon), "ダービースタリオン" (Derby Stallion), "カメラでケンサク！ERサーチ" (Camera de kensaku! ER search), "ゼンリン🏠地図＋ナビN" (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N), "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE program guide remote control), "電子マネー「Edy」" ("Edy" electronic cash), "ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」" (iD credit payment service) and "「DCMX」クレジットアプリ" ("DCMX" credit application)).

- Looking at the display for extended periods of time may cause eye strain.
- If you want to restore a pre-installed i-αppli program after it is deleted, download it from "みんなNらんど" in "ケータイ電話メーカー".
  Accessing "みんなNらんど"→p.214
  If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply.→p.38
- The "Software setting" items for pre-installed programs are set as follows at the time of purchase:

	Stand-by display	Network set	Stand-by net	Icon info	Change mld./img.	See P.book /hist
ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon)	—	ON	—	—	×	×
ダービースタリオン (Derby Stallion)	×	×	×	×	×	×
カメラでケンサク！ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)	—	ON	—	—	×	×
ゼンリン🏠地図＋ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)	—	ON	—	—	—	ON
Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program guide remote control)	—	ON	—	—	—	—
電子マネー「Edy」("Edy" electronic cash)	—	ON	—	—	—	—
ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」(iD credit payment service)	—	ON	—	—	—	—
「DCMX」クレジットアプリ ("DCMX" credit application)	—	ON	—	—	—	—

● Playing ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon)

Here is the latest volume of the "不思議のダンジョン" series that feature popular characters and monsters of Dragon Quest.
Collect various items and make your way through dungeons varying each time you play in the roll playing game.

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶"ドラクエダンジョン" (Dra-que Dungeon)



■ **To exit the game**
▶⊖(終了 (Exit))▶"はい" (Yes)

■ **To adjust the volume or message speed**
▶⊖(設定 (Set))▶Change the settings

2 "START"
The game starts.

■ **To display how to play in detail**
▶On the game screen▶⊖(メニュー (Menu))▶"さくせん" (Strategy)▶"冒険の心得" (Adventure tips)

Continued on next page

■ **To save and exit the game**
▶On the game screen▶●(メニュー(Menu))▶“中断” (Quit)
The next time you select “START”, the saved data is reloaded.

■ **ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon) Official i-mode site version**
Reload the saved data of “ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン” (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon) preinstalled on the FOMA terminal onto the official i-mode site version, and continue to enjoy the results of your play for the preinstalled version.
For more details, visit the “ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン” (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon) Official i-mode site or special site. (Information and packet communication charges will apply to download the official i-mode site version.)

● Playing ダービースタリオン (Derby Stallion)

You shall breed, raise and break in racehorses to run in a race. With studying bloodline and breaking, breed much stronger horses and go for winning money.

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶“ダービースタリオン (Derby Stallion)”▶“ドコダビ牧場 (Dokodabi Ranch)”

■ **To restart from the initial stage**
▶“やりなおす (Start over)”
You can start from the first stage.



■ **To play BGM**
▶●(♪ON)
Pressing ● (MUTE) stops BGM playback.

2 Use ⊕ to select the menu

■ **To display how to play in detail**
▶On the game screen▶●(HELP)

■ **To save and exit the game**
▶On the ranch screen▶●(中断 (Quit))▶“YES”
When you select “ドコダビ牧場 (Dokodabi Ranch)” at the next play time, the saved data is reloaded.

● Using カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

This program enables you to easily acquire information about shopping, campaigns, etc. by shooting items such as images of magazines, TV commercials, CD sleeves or logos and sending them.

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶“カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ” (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

■ **To display how to use in detail**
▶●(HELP)



2 Select “検索START!” (Start search)▶Select a genre▶“カメラ起動” (Activate camera)

3 Shoot an object▶“OK”
The characteristics of the shot image are sent, and the search result screen of the related information appears. If there are some candidates, the candidate list screen appears.
* The characteristics stated above refer to the numerical values of the image characteristics.

4 Select an item on the search result screen▶“YES”
A website appears.

● Using ゼンリン地図＋ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)

This program shows you the best route to your destination in accordance with weather or your preference (e.g. route including many roofed roads or with few stairs). You can also search routes by foot, train, air or sea, or door-to-door routes.

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶“ゼンリン地図＋ナビN” (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)▶Use ⊕ to select the menu



■ **To display how to use in detail**
▶⊕▶“設定・HELP”

■ **To display the map you viewed the last time**
▶●(地図 (Map))

■ **To display the sub menu while viewing a map**
▶●

● Using Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program guide remote control)

As for “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control), the TV program table and AV remote control functions were set to one.
Refer to “Using the Infrared Remote Control Function” (p.369) for “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control).

● Using “電子マネー「Edy」”

The “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash) service is a simple and straightforward prepaid electronic cash service that anyone can use. The “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash) service is provided by bitWallet, Inc. To use the service, confirm the terms and conditions of use and go through the initial setup procedure.

“What is Osaifu-Keitai?”→p.308

●Service details

Initial Setup/Service Subscription (free)

Charging (credit)

- Edy charging at stores (credit)
- Edy charging via i-mode (credit)*

Paying

- Payments at stores
- Mobile Edy (Payment over the Internet)*

Utilities

- Balance and transaction
- Collection of Edy gifts
- Edy to Edy (Exchange Edy money between the terminals)*

Support

- Phone change procedure on Edy*
- Troubleshooting procedures on Edy*

* Services that require subscription in advance

For detailed information on the “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash) services, the stores where the service can be used, and information on Edy procedures when you change, damage or lose your FOMA terminal, visit the Edy website or i-mode site, or contact the inquiries on p.297.

■ Contact information for Edy service inquiries

bitWallet, Inc.

- For information on Edy, visit the Edy website or i-mode site.
  Website: http://www.edy.jp
  i-mode site: iMenu▶Menu List▶くらしの情報 (Information for daily life)▶生活総合 (Life)▶電子マネー「Edy」(“Edy” electronic cash)
- In the event of difficulties with any of the Edy procedures:
  Edy emergency number: 0570-081-999 (Navidial)
  Operating hours: Weekdays 9:30 am to 7:00 pm/ Saturday, Sunday, National Holiday 10:00 am to 6:00 pm

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing not to make a call to a wrong number.

● Using ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」(iD credit payment service)

ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」(iD credit payment service) allows you to pay or use a cashing service only by holding your Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer unit, without having to take a credit card from your wallet and leave your signature. This makes your shopping easier and more enjoyable.

- To use the iD service, obtain the iD i-αppli, a card compatible with the iD service, and the Card i-αppli provided by the card issuer.
- To use the iD i-αppli for the first time, agree with “ご利用上の注意 (Notes on using the application)”, make the necessary preparations and download the Card i-αppli.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

- The cost for using the iD credit service (e.g. annual fee) varies depending on the card company.
- A packet communication charge is applied for downloading the iD i-αppli or the Card i-αppli released by the card company.
- For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.
- For information on iD, visit the iD website or i-mode site.
  Website: http://id-credit.com
  i-mode site: iMenu▶メニューリスト(Menu List)▶ケータイクレジット「iD」(iD credit payment service)

● Using 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (“DCMX” credit application)

“DCMX” is a credit service that is compatible with “iD” and provided by the NTT DoCoMo group. DCMX is categorized into DCMX mini that will offer a monthly credit line of 10,000 yen, and DCMX and DCMX gold that will offer a cash or revolving credit line and issue a credit card.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

Use this application to subscribe to DCMX mini easily and quickly, and use the mobile credit service immediately.

●Application function

Application/Audit*1

↓

Set card information

↓

Use
No complicated charging!
Hold your mobile phone over the reader/writer unit in a shop, and enjoy shopping without your signature.

Check*2
Check the bill and balance of this month on your mobile phone!

Change
Use this application to update and re-issue your current card!

*1: A simple audit will be performed online at the time of application.
Applications for other than DCMX mini will be connected to the application page on i-mode.

*2: The check function is only available for DCMX mini.

- For details on the service and its application, visit the following:
  Website: http://www.dcmx.jp
  i-mode site:
  iMenu▶メニューリスト(Menu List)▶DCMX(ケータイクレジット)
- For more information on this service, contact “Inquiries” described on the back cover of this manual.

■NOTE

- Agree to “ご利用上の注意” (License Agreement) the first time you launch this application.
- Packet communication charges will apply to use the i-mode communication and this application.
- After you apply for the service or make the settings, the service cannot be launched with this application. To check your usage or change the settings, launch iD then select and launch DCMX simultaneously.

■Notes on Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

- NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the IC card.
- For more details, see “i-mode User’ Manual”.

NOTE

◆Packet communication charges are applied for using i-mode communication such as “初期設定 (Initial setting)” and “主なメニュー (Main menu)” in the i-αppli programs.
◆Even if you changed your FOMA terminal to a new model, the Edy function of the previous phone still can be used. Please be careful when discarding a FOMA terminal capable of using Edy.
◆Note that if you set the i-αppli network setting to “OFF”, i-mode communication is not available and you cannot use the functions on “主なメニュー (Main menu)” in the i-αppli programs as well as “初期設定 (Initial setting)”.
◆If you set the Unsolicited mail settings (Receive/Reject option) to reject to receive Internet mail, register “bitwallet.co.jp” as a domain separately because you need to receive a transaction-start message from the Edy center when using Mobile Edy (Payments over the Internet).
◆NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on a FOMA terminal.

Launching an i-αppli Automatically

Use this function to launch a program automatically at the specified date and time or any intervals.

Enabling automatic launching

<Auto start set> Default setting: OFF

- You can set automatic startup times for up to 3 programs.

1 MENU ▶ i-αppli ▶ **“Auto start set”▶“ON” or “OFF”**

Setting the launch date/time

<Auto start time> Default setting: All OFF

Use this setting to specify the date and time when a program is automatically launched.

- A program does not start up automatically in the following situations:
  - When a FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - During communication
  - When an alarm clock, schedule, To Do list or software update alarm is set for the same time as automatic launching

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶(FUNC)▶“Auto start time”▶Use to select a checkbox (□)

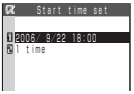
■ **To enable the time interval set for a program**
▶Check the “Time interval set” checkbox



■ **To set the launch date and time**
▶Check the “Start time set” checkbox

2 (Finish)▶Set the launch date and time

■ **To set the launch date and time**
▶Select a date and time
▶Enter the launch date and time



■ **To set the automatic launch repetition**
▶Select an item for the “repeat” setting▶“Daily” or “Weekly”
If you selected “Weekly”, use to select a checkbox (□) and press (Finish).

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆If you set the “Time interval set” and “Start time set” for the same program and those automatic launch times are less than 10 minutes apart, the program will launch automatically for the first launch time but not for the second.

Checking whether an i-αppli launched automatically

Use this procedure to check whether an i-αppli automatically started up at the specified time. You can also check programs that failed to start up from the IC card function.

1 MENU▶i-αppli▶“i-αppli action info”▶“Auto start info”

The screen shows information such as the program name, automatic launch time and whether or not the program was launched. “Start ○” indicates that the program started up automatically, “Start ×” indicates that it did not start up automatically and “Start-” indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.



NOTE

◆If a program could not be launched automatically, the “ (Not run soft)” desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Select the icon to view the auto start info screen. Select the program to launch it. Desktop icons→p.148

◆Information is also stored when an program could not be launched automatically because you are using i-mode or running another application.

◆“Auto start info” may include the information for the program you did not realize its launch.

<i-αppli To function>

Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail

Use this function to launch an i-αppli from functions other than i-αppli, such as an i-mode site or mail.

Enabling program launching with i-αppli To <i-αppli To setting>

Default setting: All activated

Use this setting to specify whether to launch an i-αppli from i-mode sites, mails, the Infrared data exchange function, Bar code reader or IC card function.

- This setting can be specified separately for each i-αppli program.

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶(FUNC)▶“Set i-αppli To”▶Select an item▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)

You can select any items from “Site “i-αppli To””, “Mail “i-αppli To””, “Ir “i-αppli To””, “Bar code “i-αppli To”” or “IC card “i-αppli To””.

Launching an i-αppli from a site

When an i-αppli launch is specified on an i-mode site, you can download the i-αppli from the site.

- This function is unavailable with some sites.

1 Sites screen (p.214)▶Select an item for launching a program▶"YES"

NOTE

<i-αppli that is launched immediately from a site>

◆Unlike ordinary i-αppli programs, some i-αppli programs are immediately launched from i-mode sites.
- This type of program is not stored on a FOMA terminal even if you download it from an i-mode site. This program is not listed even on the Software list screen.
- A message asking whether to start communication may appear while a program is running.
- After a program quits, a message asking whether to store the program may appear.
- Some programs cannot be stored in a FOMA terminal.

Launching an i-αppli from a mail

When an i-αppli launch specification is pasted into a received i-mode mail, you can launch the i-αppli program from the i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.265)▶Select an item for launching a program▶"YES"

NOTE

◆If multiple data are pasted into a mail, the pasted data themselves may not be displayed.

◆When you replay with a quote or forward an i-mode mail, an i-αppli launch specification is not quoted. You cannot also quote a launch specification when forwarding a mail using the Data Link Software or Infrared data exchange function.

◆i-αppli programs cannot be launched from i-mode mails in Secret folders.

Launching an i-αppli from the Infrared data exchange function

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli when receiving the i-αppli launch signal during Infrared data exchange.

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶"Receive Ir data"▶"Receive"▶Receive the i-αppli launch signal

Launching an i-αppli using the Bar code reader

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli using the Bar code reader when a scanned bar code includes the i-αppli launch specification.

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶"Bar code reader"▶"New"▶Scan a bar code

2 Select an item for launching a program▶"YES"

Launching an i-αppli using the IC card function

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli using the IC card function by holding the FeliCa icon on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit.

- A program does not start up in the following situations:
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - When the program to launch is not installed
- When IC card lock is set, you cannot launch an i-αppli with the IC card function. When you launch an i-αppli with other function than IC card while IC card lock is set, you cannot use the IC card function with the i-αppli.

1 Hold the FeliCa icon "" on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit

<i-αppli stand-by display>

Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen

Use this function to set a selected i-αppli program as the standby screen on your FOMA terminal. When the i-αppli standby screen appears, the "" or "" icon appears at the bottom of the screen.

- Only one i-αppli program can be set as the i-αppli standby screen.
- Some programs cannot be set as the standby screen.

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶(FUNC)▶"Software setting"▶"Stand-by display"▶"ON"▶(Finish)

NOTE

◆The "" icon appears for the program set as the standby screen.

◆ If a program that communicates is set as the i-αppli standby screen, it may not run correctly due to poor signal quality, etc.
◆ If you select "OFF" for "Stand-by net" in "Software setting", you may not be able to receive timely information.
◆ When the i-αppli standby screen is set, the image set for "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" (p.136) does not appear.
◆ Even if the i-αppli standby screen is set, the screen set in "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" appears when you switch tasks to show the standby screen.
◆ If the power is cycled while the i-αppli standby screen is set, a message asking whether to launch the i-αppli standby screen appears.
◆ If "Lock all" (p.159) or "PIM lock" (p.165) is set while the i-αppli standby screen appears, the screen quits. To redisplay the i-αppli standby screen, release "Lock all" or "PIM lock".

Running the i-αppli standby screen

Use this procedure to run the program set as the i-αppli standby screen.

1 On the i-αppli standby screen▶CLR

The i-αppli starts up and the "α" or "α" icon at the bottom of the screen changes to a flashing "α" or "α" icon.



Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen

<Deactivate i-αppli standby screen>

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while running an i-αppli

1 While running an i-αppli▶CLR (1 second or longer) or PWR

Cancel	Cancels the i-αppli standby screen deactivation.
Ended	Quits the i-αppli standby screen without deactivating it and returns to the i-αppli standby screen.
Terminated	Deactivates the i-αppli standby screen.

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while it appears

1 MENU▶Settings▶"i-αppli settings"▶"End stand-by display"

2 "Terminate"▶"YES"

■ **To not deactivate the i-αppli standby screen**
▶"End"

NOTE

◆ If you deactivate the i-αppli standby screen, the image set for "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" appears on the standby screen.

Checking the i-αppli standby screen exit information

If an error occurred and the i-αppli standby screen was deselected, the name of the program which had the error, the time when the error occurred and the reason are logged so that you can check them.

1 MENU▶i-αppli▶"i-αppli action info"▶"End stand-by info"

The "End stand-by info" screen appears.



End stand-by info

Function menu➡p.301

Function menu (End stand-by info screen)

Copy info	Copies the i-αppli standby screen exit information data.
Delete info	Deletes the i-αppli standby screen exit information data.

NOTE

◆ No information is logged if the i-αppli standby screen ends normally.

Organizing an i-αppli

Upgrading an i-αppli <Upgrade>

Use this procedure to upgrade a downloaded i-αppli program when the new version is available on a site.

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶(FUNC)▶"Upgrade"▶"YES"

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆You cannot upgrade mail-connected i-αppli programs that change the mail folder names when:
- Mail security is set
- Folder security is set
- Inbox or Outbox folder for the mail-connected i-αppli to be upgraded is being used

Deleting an i-αppli <Delete i-αppli>

Use this procedure to delete programs individually or delete all programs.

1 Software list screen (p.292)▶(-)(FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted i-αppli program.
Delete selected	▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶(-)(Finish)▶"YES" Deletes multiple i-αppli programs.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶"YES" Deletes all the stored i-αppli programs.

NOTE

◆If you try to delete the program set as the i-αppli standby screen (marked with "  "), the one set to launch automatically (marked with "  ") or the one set as the i-αppli standby screen with the automatic launch function (marked with "  "), the status of the program and a message asking whether to delete the program appear.

◆ If you try to delete a mail-connected i-αppli, a message asking whether to delete the corresponding folders for the mail-connected i-αppli appears. Select "NO" to delete only the i-αppli, or "YES" to delete the i-αppli and folders. Even if selecting "YES", you cannot delete the folders when the folder are being used, security is set for the folders or they contain a protected mail.

◆ When a mail-connected i-αppli is deleted, a new i-αppli mail received during the selection of an i-αppli to be deleted may also be deleted.

◆ Some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli programs may require you to launch the program and delete the data on the IC card before deleting the program itself. You cannot delete this type of program even if performing "Delete this". (Performing "Delete selected" or "Delete all" deletes other programs.) Delete the IC card data before deleting the program.

◆ Some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli programs cannot be deleted.

Displaying the i-αppli data stored in the miniSD memory card <miniSD data>

Use this procedure to show the folder name list of the i-αppli data (miniSD) stored in the miniSD memory card.

1 (MENU)▶(i-αppli)▶"miniSD saved data"

The "miniSD data list" screen appears.

Function menu (miniSD data list screen)

Display info	Shows the information about the i-αppli data (miniSD) stored in the miniSD memory card.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted i-αppli data file (miniSD).
Delete selected	▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶(-)(Finish)▶"YES" Deletes multiple i-αppli data files (miniSD).
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶"YES" Deletes all the i-αppli data files (miniSD) stored in the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

◆ Some i-αppli data saved to the miniSD memory card (i-αppli data (miniSD)) may not be used in other FOMA terminals.

◆ Use "Software info" (p.294) to check that the i-αppli data (i-αppli data (miniSD)) will be saved to the miniSD memory card.

● Data information

You can check the following:

Maker	Who created the i-αppli If there is no information, "None" appears.
Available Software	Name of the i-αppli that can use the miniSD memory card If there is no information, "None" appears.
Use saved data	Whether there is a reason the i-αppli cannot use the miniSD memory card If at least one reason is indicated under "Reason", "OFF" appears. If not, "ON" appears.
Reason	
• **Software restriction**	There is no i-αppli available*
• **UIM restriction**	The FOMA card was not used when the i-αppli was run*
• **Model restriction**	The FOMA card was not used when the i-αppli was run*
• **Series restriction**	The i-αppli was run on other than 902iS series (miniSD)*

* : If there is no reason the i-αppli cannot use the miniSD memory card, the option is grayed out.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

i-channel

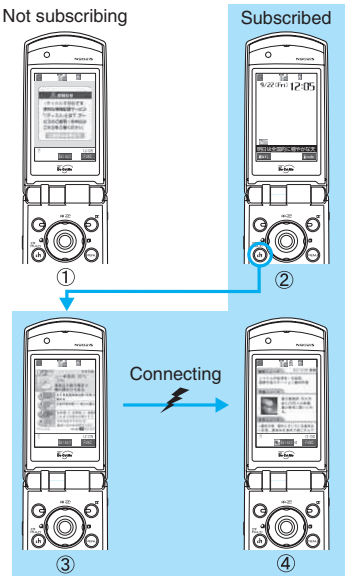
What is i-channel? 304
Accessing a Site from the Channel List 305
Making the i-channel Settings..... i-Channel setting 306

What is i-channel?

i-channel is a service whereby news, weather and other information is sent as graphical information to i-channel compatible terminals from DoCoMo or IPs (information service providers). Information is periodically received and the latest information appears as telop text on the standby screen. Pressing the i-channel key (ch) displays the channel list (p.305). Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information.

This service provides only Japanese channels.

- For precautions or details on how to use i-channel, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.



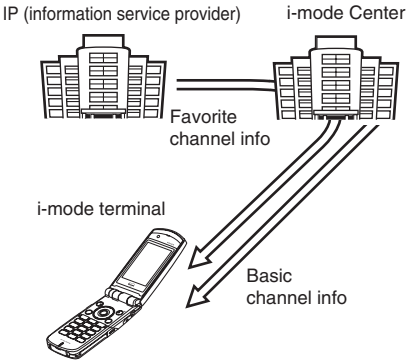
* The above is only an image. The actual screens will look different.

① You have not subscribed to i-channel.
② After you subscribe to i-channel, telop text automatically appears on the standby screen when you receive information or open the channel list.
③ Pressing (ch) on the standby screen displays the channel list. The list displays information delivered on each channel.
④ Selecting a channel allows you to view detailed information on that channel.

■ Channel types

The channels are categorized into two types: “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel”. “Basic channel” is provided by NTT DoCoMo and registered at the time of purchase, so that you can view the channels from when you start subscribing to i-channel. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the “Basic channel” is included in the i-channel service charge. “Favorite channel” is provided by IPs (information service providers) other than NTT DoCoMo. You can select and register any channels of your liking. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the “Favorite channel” is not included in the i-channel service charge.

Only the “Basic channel” information can appear as telop text on the standby screen.



* i-channel is a pay service you need to subscribe to (To subscribe to the i-channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand).

- How to operate→p.305
- Compatible models: 701i, 702i, 902i, 902iS series, P851i, D851iWM

NOTE

- ◆An information charge may be made for viewing some “Favorite channel”.
- ◆For some “Favorite channel”, you may need to apply to the IP (information service provider) that offers these channels in order to view them.
- ◆A packet communication charge is made for viewing detailed information on “Basic channel” and on “Favorite channel” from the channel list.

■ Trial service

If you have subscribed to i-mode and use an i-channel-compatible terminal but have never subscribed to i-channel, you can try the “Basic channel” free of charge for a given time. A packet communication charge will be made for viewing detailed information from the channel list.

- For cautions and details on how to use the trial service, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

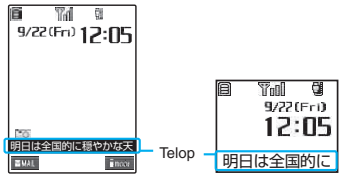
NOTE

◆As a rule, the trial service will automatically start after a given time when the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted to start using the i-channel-compatible terminal. If it does not start automatically, press ch to start it.
◆You can use the trial service only once per subscriber line.
◆The trial service will end automatically after a given time. To quit the service before the expiration, see "i-mode User's Manual".

● Telop text on the standby screen/image display

If you subscribe to i-channel, delivered information will automatically appear as telop text on the standby screen or image display.

- flashes while i-channel information is being delivered.
- You can set the telop display mode in "i-Channel setting".→p.306



NOTE

◆Telop text appears even if i-motion or i-αppli is set as the standby screen background.
◆Telop text does not appear in Public mode (Driving mode), in Power saver mode, or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.
◆The standby screen can display telop text even in Self mode.

Accessing a Site from the Channel List

A channel list is available for accessing the i-channel information site.
The channel screen can display up to 15 channels including official ones and general ones.

1 On the standby screen▶ch

The "channel list" screen appears.
Selecting "i-Channel" from the i-mode menu also opens the i-channel list screen.



Channel list

Function menu➡p.305

2 Select a channel item

NOTE

◆If you have not subscribed to i-channel, launching the i-channel displays an announcement that you have not subscribed to i-channel. Selecting "ご説明&お申込" (Help & Applications) on the screen introduces you to i-channel and prompts you to subscribe to i-channel. Depending on the communication status, a message may appear indicating that you have not subscribed to i-channel, and the previous screen may reappear.
◆In some cases, you may receive information when displaying the channel list.
◆Receiving information does not sound a ring tone or vibrate the FOMA terminal. The incoming call lamp does not light or flash.
◆You can change the i-channel host, though it usually does not need changing.→p.228
◆A message may appear indicating that channel information cannot be delivered if:
- A call or message is incoming
- The FOMA terminal was initialized
- The FOMA card (UIM) was exchanged
- The host was changed

Function menu (Channel list screen)

Add desktop icon	Pastes a desktop icon for opening the channel list screen onto the standby screen. "Using Desktop Icons"→p.148
Retry	Shows the current channel list screen from the top.
Sound effect	Sets whether to sound a tone (ON/OFF) on the channel list screen.

NOTE

◆"Sound effect" set for the channel list screen affects "Sound effect" under "i-mode settings" (p.228).

<i-Channel setting>

Making the i-channel Settings

Default settings	Telop display setting: ON (Image display OFF) Telop speed setting: Normal

Set whether to display telop text on the standby screen or on the image display. Also set the scrolling speed.

- Setting the Telop display setting to “Receiving” displays telop text twice when the latest information is delivered.
- Selecting “ON” for the image display displays telop text as follows:
  - Setting the Telop display setting to “ON” displays telop text twice on the image display each time the latest information is delivered or the FOMA terminal is folded.
  - Setting the Telop display setting to “Receiving” displays telop text twice when the latest information is delivered.
  - The Power saver mode is not set while telop text appears on the image display.

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶“i-mode settings”▶“i-Channel setting”▶Select any item

Telop display setting	Sets whether to display channel information as telop text on the standby screen (ON/Receiving/OFF). If you select “ON” or “Receiving”, additionally set whether to display on the image display when the FOMA terminal is folded (ON/OFF).
Telop speed setting	Sets the telop scrolling speed (Normal/High/Low).

NOTE

◆The i-Channel setting cannot be changed in Public mode (Driving mode) or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.

<Telop display setting>

◆If you unsubscribe from i-mode before unsubscribing from i-channel, or after you unsubscribe from i-channel, the Telop display setting remains unchanged but telop text will not automatically appear.

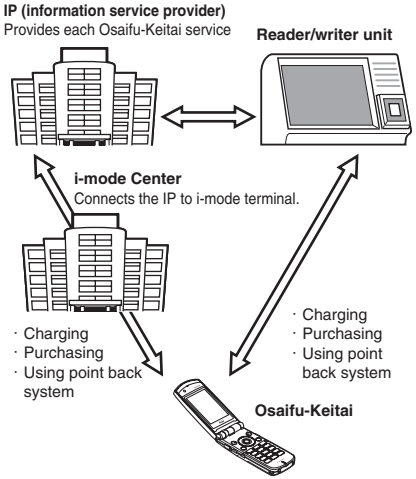
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai? 308
Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli 308
What is ToruCa? ..... ToruCa 309
Acquiring ToruCa ..... Acquire ToruCa 310
Viewing ToruCa ..... ToruCa viewer 310
Making the ToruCa Settings ..... ToruCa settings 312
Locking the IC Card Functions ..... IC card lock 312
Using Face Authentication ..... Face authentication 313

What is Osaifu-Keitai?

"Osaifu-Keitai" refers to a useful IC card function of an i-mode terminal (i-mode FeliCa) or to an i-mode terminal equipped with an IC card.
FeliCa is a type of contactless IC card technology that allows you to read/write data simply by holding the card over a reader/writer unit*.
Simply hold the Osaifu-Keitai over the reader/writer unit in a shop to use your phone as electronic cash to make payments, as an airline ticket or point card. The FOMA terminal makes your life more convenient.
Osaifu-Keitai is more useful than the existing FeliCa-compatible contactless IC cards in that you can even transmit electronic cash into the IC card of your Osaifu-Keitai or check the account balance or transaction history.

*: A unit that reads data from and writes data to IC cards.



* To use the IC card functions, download Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli supporting the IC card function.

- The ways to subscribe to or use the Osaifu-Keitai services depend on your IP (information service provider). Check with them directly. For cautions on using the services, see "i-mode User's Manual".
- Take notes of the names or contact numbers of the Osaifu-Keitai services. Osaifu-Keitai malfunction, repair, model change, etc., may erase or alter data stored on the IC card. (In case of repair, you will be asked to erase the data by yourself.) Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on the IC card. The way to erase the data stored on the IC card and the warranty in the case of loss or alteration of the data depends on the Osaifu-Keitai services. Check with your IP (information service provider) beforehand.
- In case of a model change or exchange due to a malfunction, data stored on the IC card cannot be copied to your new phone. The measures to be taken depend on the Osaifu-Keitai services. Check with your IP (information service provider) beforehand.
- Take great care not to lose your Osaifu-Keitai. If you have lost your Osaifu-Keitai, check with your IP (information service provider) for information on the Osaifu-Keitai services you have used. IC card functions can be restricted by Omakase Lock or IC card lock. →p.159, 312

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli to read/write IC card data

Launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli from the software list screen. Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli allows you to read/write data on the IC card and use useful functions, e.g. charging electronic cash or transportation tickets, or viewing the account balance or transaction history on your mobile phone.

- Take care not to let others know your security codes and passwords for services.
- Data exchange between the software and the IC card is interrupted in the following cases. When this happens, data that has been exchanged is discarded. Operations to be performed after you finish talking depend on the services you have used:
  - There is an incoming call while an i-αppli is launched
  - The battery runs out

1 MENU ▶ i-αppli ▶ **"Software list"**
The "Software list" screen appears.

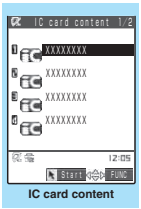
2 Select the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli
The Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli is launched.

● Viewing Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

You can view the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

1 (MENU) ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ **“IC card content”**

The “IC card content” screen appears.



IC card content

■ **To launch an application**

▶Select an application to launch

Function menu (IC card content screen)

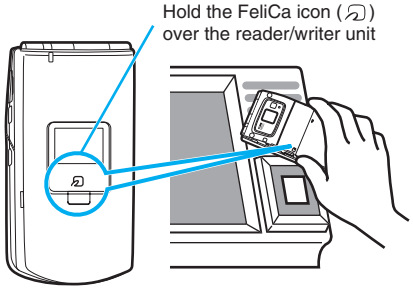
See the “Software list” function menu as the options are the same. →p.293

Using the Osaifu-Keitai

Holding the FeliCa icon “” on the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit allows you to use the FOMA terminal as electronic cash or as a train ticket. To use this function, there is no need to launch an application.

- While you are talking on the phone, you cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli but can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding the FeliCa icon over the reader/writer unit.

1 **Hold the FeliCa icon “” over the reader/writer unit to use your desired service**



NOTE

- Attach the battery pack when using the Osaifu-Keitai. Even when the power is turned off or the battery is low, you still can use the IC card functions by holding the FeliCa icon over the reader/writer unit (cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli). Not using the battery pack for a long time or failing to charge the battery when the battery alarm sounds may make the IC card functions unavailable for use when needed, so be sure to charge the battery pack.
- Do not subject the FOMA terminal to strong shocks when holding the FeliCa icon over the reader/writer unit. If the reader/writer unit does not recognize the FeliCa icon, get the FOMA terminal closer to the unit and move it a little in parallel to the surface of the unit.
- While the IC card lock is set, you may be unable to download, upgrade or uninstall the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.
- Holding the FeliCa icon over a reader/writer unit may launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

<ToruCa>

What is ToruCa?

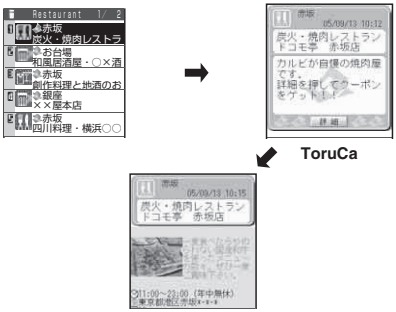
ToruCa is an electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an ad, restaurant card, coupon, etc.

ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or downloaded from a site, and can be easily exchanged via mail, infrared data exchange or external memory.

- The compatible models are 902i, 902iS series and F702iD. For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

ToruCa usage flow


Hold Osaifu-Keitai over the reader/writer to acquire ToruCa.



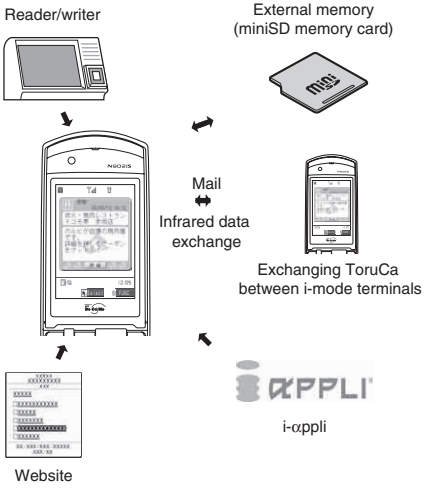
ToruCa

Details

Select ToruCa from the list. Pressing the “詳細” (Detail) button displays the detailed information.

Continued on next page

How ToruCa is acquired



NOTE

◆A separate packet communication charge will be made for downloading ToruCa and ToruCa details from a site.

<Acquire ToruCa>

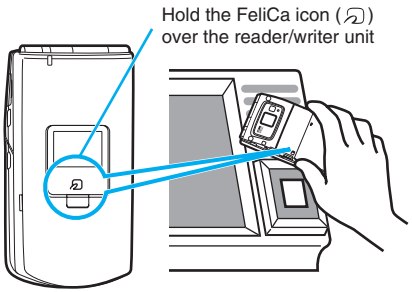
Acquiring ToruCa

● Acquired ToruCa is saved to "ToruCa" under "LifeKit".

Acquiring data via a reader/writer unit

1 Hold the FeliCa icon "" over the reader/writer unit

The ToruCa acquisition tone sounds, and the Shooting indicator lamp lights for about 10 seconds. The "New ToruCa" desktop icon appears on the screen.



NOTE

◆The acquisition screen does not appear when another function is running.
◆ToruCa acquired via a reader/writer unit is saved to the "ToruCa" folder.
◆Up to 100 ToruCa can be stored. The maximum size of ToruCa that can be stored is 1K bytes each. The maximum size of ToruCa detail that can be stored is 100K bytes each.
◆You cannot change the ToruCa acquisition tone.
◆The volume of the ToruCa acquisition tone is the same as that specified in "Phone" under "Ring volume". If "Step" is set, the tone sounds at volume "Level 4".
◆The ToruCa acquisition tone does not sound in Manner mode.
◆ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit while Lock all or PIM lock is set.
◆You cannot acquire ToruCa via a reader/writer unit while IC card lock or Omakase Lock is set.
◆Setting Lock all does not affect the IC card lock settings. However, you cannot set or release "IC card lock".

<ToruCa viewer>

Viewing ToruCa

1 (MENU) ▶ LifeKit ▶ "ToruCa"

The ToruCa folder list screen appears.

2 Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa

The ToruCa display screen appears.

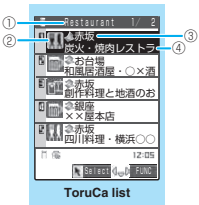


ToruCa folder list

Function menu➡p.311

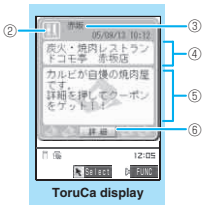
Guide to ToruCa list screen/ ToruCa display screen

ToruCa appears as follows:



ToruCa list

Function menu➡p.311



ToruCa display

Function menu➡p.312

① The folder titles appear.
② The ToruCa category icons appear.
③ The places, etc. (Index) appear.
④ The ToruCa titles appear.
⑤ The ToruCa contents appear. You can use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function.
⑥ More details appear.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

NOTE

- You cannot use the Mail To function if there are already 20 draft mail messages.
- The Phone To, Mail To or Web To function may be unavailable for some ToruCa.
- The “詳細” (Detail) button may not appear for some ToruCa.

Function menu (ToruCa folder list screen)

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** You can add up to 20 folders. A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on the FOMA terminal. As for the miniSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	**▶Enter a folder name** A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on the FOMA terminal. As for the miniSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Search all*	**▶“Index” or “Title”▶Enter text to search for▶●**
Filter all*	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria (“Unread”, “Read”, “Category”). If you select “Category”, use ⊕ to select a category icon.
Display all*	Cancels displaying “Search all” and “Filter all”.
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”**
No. of ToruCa	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.

* : The option does not appear if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Add folder>

- A newly created folder will appear above the “miniSD” folder.

<Edit folder name>

- You cannot change the names of “ToruCa” and “miniSD”.

<Delete folder>

- You cannot delete “ToruCa” or “miniSD”.

Function menu (ToruCa list screen)

Move	
• **Move this**	**▶Select a folder▶“YES”** Moves the highlighted ToruCa to another folder.
• **Move selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶ ⊖(Finish)▶“YES”** Moves ToruCa you select to another folder.
• **Move all**	**▶Select a folder▶“YES”** Moves all displayed ToruCa to another folder.
Copy	
• **Copy this**	**▶Select a folder** Copies the highlighted ToruCa.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶ ⊖(Finish)▶“YES”** Copies ToruCa you select.
• **Copy all**	**▶Select a folder** Copies all displayed ToruCa.
Search[*1]	**▶“Index” or “Title”▶Enter text to search for▶●**
Disp all in folder[*1*2]	Cancels displaying “Search”, “Filter” and “Sort”.
Sort[*1]	Sorts ToruCa by specified criteria.
Filter[*1]	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria (“Unread”, “Read”, “Category”). If you select “Category”, use ⊕ to select a category icon.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the selected ToruCa attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243
Send Ir data[*1]	“Transferring one Data at a Time” →p.367
Copy to miniSD[*3]	
• **Copy this**	**▶Select a folder** Copies the highlighted ToruCa to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶ ⊖(Finish)▶“YES”** Copies ToruCa you select to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶ Select a folder▶“YES”** Copies all displayed ToruCa to the miniSD memory card.
No. of ToruCa	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
ToruCa info	Displays the ToruCa information.

Continued on next page

Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted ToruCa.
• Delete selected	▶Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶ー(Finish)▶“YES” Deletes ToruCa you select.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all displayed ToruCa.

*1 : The option does not appear if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card.
*2 : “Display all” appears instead when “Search all”, “Filter all” or “Display all” works on the ToruCa folder list screen.
*3 : “Copy to phone” appears instead if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card. When “Copy to phone” appears, a folder is not to be selected.

Function menu (ToruCa display screen)

Move	▶**Select a folder** Moves the displayed ToruCa to another folder.
Copy	▶**Select a folder** Copies the displayed ToruCa.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the displayed ToruCa attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243
Send Ir data[*1]	“Transferring one Data at a Time” →p.367
Copy to miniSD[*2]	▶**Select a folder** Copies the displayed ToruCa to the miniSD memory card.
Update[*1*3]	Updates the displayed ToruCa detail.
Save image[*1*3]	Saves the displayed ToruCa detail. Select “Normal image” or “Background image”.
Add to phonebook[*1]	Adds a phone number or mail address contained in the displayed ToruCa to the phonebook.→p.111
Delete	Deletes the displayed ToruCa.

*1 : The option does not appear if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card.
*2 : “Copy to phone” appears instead if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card. When “Copy to phone” appears, a folder is not to be selected.
*3 : The option can be selected when the ToruCa details appear.

NOTE

◆You may be unable to perform attachments to a message, send data via infrared data exchange, or copy to miniSD depending on the data size of ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-αppli, etc.

<Copy to miniSD>
◆The ToruCa (detail) is copied as ToruCa without detailed information. To reacquire the detailed information, recopy the ToruCa copied to the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the copied ToruCa.

<Compose message>
◆The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detailed information.→p.252
The detail data can be acquired on the recipient side. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the received ToruCa.

<Send Ir data>
◆The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detailed information. The detail data can be acquired on the recipient side. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the received ToruCa.

<ToruCa settings>

Making the ToruCa Settings

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“ToruCa settings”▶Select any item

Receive from R/W (default: Accept)	Sets to acquire ToruCa (Accept) or not to acquire ToruCa (Reject) when you hold the FeliCa icon over a reader/writer unit.
Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects “1 line”, “3 lines” or “5 lines” for the number of scrolling lines on the ToruCa display screen.

<IC card lock>

Locking the IC Card Functions

Default setting: OFF

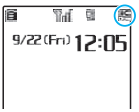
Lock the IC card functions in order to prevent other people from using the functions without your consent.
● Turning off the power does not unlock the IC card functions.

Setting/releasing IC card lock

● If SimpleLock is set to “ON”, you can easily set/release the IC card lock on the standby screen.→p.313

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Lock/Security”▶“IC card lock”▶Enter your security code

IC card lock is set and “” appears on the screen.



■ **To release IC card lock**
▶Repeat Step 1
IC card lock is released and “” disappears from the screen.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Using face authentication to release IC card lock

If your face photo is registered for “Face authentication”, the face authentication is performed to identify that you are the owner of the FOMA terminal.

- If the face authentication fails, enter a name registered as a keyword for “Face authentication” to release IC card lock.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “IC card lock”

The “Face authentication” screen appears.

■ **If “SimpleLock” is set to “ON”**

▶On the standby screen▶3 (for 1 second or longer)

2 Position your face so that the whole appears on the display



Face authentication

■ **If the face authentication fails**

▶Enter the image name▶●

3 Enter your security code

IC card lock is released and “” disappears from the screen.

NOTE

- ◆IC card lock cannot be set/released while you are talking on the phone or another function is running.
- ◆Removing the battery pack sets the IC card lock automatically. In this case, attaching the battery pack releases the IC card lock automatically.
- ◆Even if the battery runs out and the power is then turned off, the current IC card lock remains unreleased.

Setting/releasing IC card lock easily <SimpleLock>

Default setting: OFF

- Set/release IC card lock easily on the standby screen.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “SimpleLock” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “ON”

■ **To invalidate the lock**

▶“OFF”

Using SimpleLock to set IC card lock

1 On the standby screen▶3 (1 second or longer)

■ **To release IC card lock**

▶On the standby screen▶3 (1 second or longer)▶Enter your security code

<Face authentication>

Using Face Authentication

Default setting	Image: Not registered

Take a photo of your face to identify you when releasing IC card lock. Register a name of the image as a keyword used in case that the authentication fails.

- If the front camera lens is dirty, misoperation may occur. Wipe off the dirt with a soft cloth before use.
- Whether you are properly identified depends on the face status. The following measures may be available:

Condition	Measures
There is a big contrast between bright and dark, e.g. because the light is too strong or you are under incandescent light in a dark place	Move to a place where the whole is equally bright.
The light shines on your face and the whole face looks white	
Hair, glasses, mask, etc. hides the characteristics of your face (eyes, nose, mouth, eyebrows, etc.)	Do up your hair or take off your glasses or mask so that your eyes, nose, mouth and eyebrows can be seen clearly.

- The face authentication technology does not guarantee complete identification. NTT DoCoMo shall not be liable for any losses or damages to you arising from use by a third party or misauthentication.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Face authentication” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “New image” ▶ “OK”

The “New image” screen appears. Read the cautions carefully.

■ **To delete an image**

▶“Delete image”▶“YES”

■ **To edit an image name**

▶“Edit image name”▶Enter an image name

Continued on next page

2 Adjust your eyes to the guide frame▶●



New image

The shot is repeated three times. Each shot is saved.
If the save or shot is not completed or the shooting is canceled before three images are saved, the already saved shot is deleted, so that no image is stored.
When three shots are completely saved, the “Edit image name” screen appears.

■ **To stop shooting halfway**
▶CLR▶“YES”

3 Enter an image name▶“YES”

The entered image name will be used as a keyword in case of misauthentication.
An image name can contain 2 to 8 double-byte or 4 to 16 single-byte characters.

■ **To edit an image name**
▶Select “NO” or the image name

NOTE

◆Keep a separate note of the registered image name, which is required in case of misauthentication. To prevent others from knowing it, use a character combination that cannot be easily guessed.
◆If the same image is used for a long period of time, the authentication may fail because your face changes due to age, sunburns or scars. To prevent misauthentication, you are recommended to update your image occasionally.

Full Browser

Displaying Website Designed for PC ..... Full Browser 316
Setting Full Browser..... Full Browser settings 320

i-mode is not available to use home URL, bookmark and other data registered in full browser. Furthermore, the settings performed in full browser are invalid for i-mode.

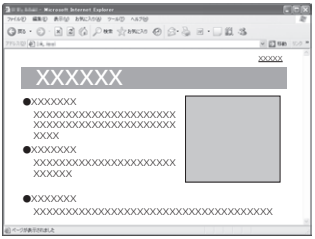
Displaying Website Designed for PC

You can enjoy viewing websites designed for PC with the full browser function. Some websites incompatible with i-mode can be displayed correctly. However, such websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly depending on the site.

- The packet communication fee for using full browser is charged separately from “Pake-Houdai”.
- You can view website composed of frames*1. You can also select a frame to display it. →p.319
- You can view TLS/SSL*2-compliant websites in full browser.

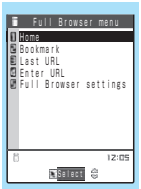
*1 : The “frame” used in this chapter refers to each of separated sections that constitute a website page and differs from that used for framed photography.

*2 : TLS and SSL are authentication/encryption technology to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a TLS/SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site spoofing or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer.



1 (i-mode)▶"Internet (Full Browser)"

The "Full Browser menu" screen appears.



Full Browser menu

2 Select any item

Home	Shows the website with the URL registered as home URL. If no home URL is registered, the screen for registering the home URL appears.
Bookmark[*1]	Shows the website registered as bookmark.
Last URL	Shows the website you visited last.
Enter URL[*2]	Enters a URL to display the website.
Full Browser settings	Performs or shows the full browser settings. →p.320

*1 : For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation. →p.220

*2 : For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. →p.219

■ When the confirmation message asking whether to use full browser appears

The default setting of "Access setting" (setting whether to use full browser) is "OFF".

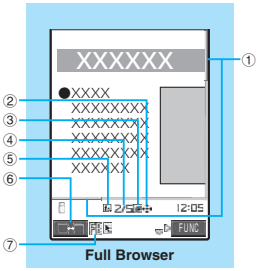
When "OFF" is set for "Access setting", the confirmation message asking whether to use full browser appears. Read the given notes carefully and perform the setting.

When you select "Yes" on the confirmation message, "ON" is set for "Access setting" (p.320) and the setting will be retained.

NOTE

- ◆It may take time to open some websites.
- ◆You cannot save a page displayed in full browser as a screen memo.
- ◆Websites displayed in full browser cannot be viewed in i-mode.
- ◆Full browser does not support Flash movie and PDF.
- ◆The Phone To function is unavailable in full browser.
- ◆Be sure to insert the FOMA card (UIM) before setting "Access setting".
- ◆You cannot view the home URL site in full browser even if pressing (Home) on the standby screen.
- ◆When "Access setting" is set to "ON" and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, the "Access setting" changes to "OFF".

Full Browser screen



Full Browser

Function menu➡p.319

① Scroll bar
Indicates the current location in the displayed page. →p.318

② Full scale mode
Appears when the Full scale mode is used. →p.317

③ Selected frame display icon
Indicates that the selected frame (p.319) appears.

④ 2/5 Number of activated multi windows
Indicates the order and number of activated windows. →p.318

⑤
"" flashes when another frame is in communication while the selected frame is shown (p.319). "" flashes when another frame is in communication while multiple windows are active (p.318).

⑥ Change window icon
Pressing (Change window) switches pages when multiple websites are open.

⑦ FB
Appears during connection to the Internet in full browser mode.

● Changing display mode

You can switch the display mode between Normal and Full scale on the Full Browser screen.

- The default mode can be set in "Full Browser settings" (p.320).
- You can switch the current display mode between Normal and Full scale by using the function menu.
- The display mode is retained when full browser is exit. The same display mode is applied the next time full browser is activated.

■ Normal mode

Websites are displayed in the width of a FOMA terminal display. Only vertical scrolling is required for viewing websites (horizontal scrolling is not needed).

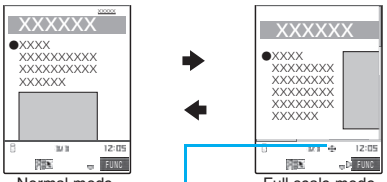
Continued on next page

■ Full scale mode

Websites are displayed in the similar size to the display of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high on a PC. You can view websites by scrolling vertically and horizontally.

1 Full Browser screen (p.317)▶ (FUNC)▶"Change disp. mode"

The display mode is switched from Normal to Full scale, or vice versa.
When the display mode is switched, the top of the current page is shown in the Normal mode and the upper left area is shown in the Full scale mode.



Normal mode　Full scale mode

Full scale mode
Indicates that you can scroll in 4 directions of up, down, left or right.

● Scrolling

When the whole page is not displayed on the Full Browser screen, you can view the remaining part by scrolling the screen.

■ To scroll using

Press to scroll down, and to scroll up on the Full Browser screen (in Normal mode and Full scale mode).
Press to scroll right, and to left on the Full Browser screen (only in Full scale mode).
The screen is scrolled continuously in the direction you press.

■ To scroll using (Home) or (Memo/Check)

Press (Memo/Check) to scroll down one screen, or (Home) to scroll up one screen on the Full Browser screen. Furthermore, pressing (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer enables you to jump to the bottom of the page and (Home) for 1 second or longer to jump to the top of the page.

■ To scroll using the Neuropointer

Slide to move the cursor to the direction you want to scroll. When the cursor reaches the edge of screen, the cursor changes to "" (depending on the scroll direction).
In Normal mode, you can scroll a screen in 2 directions of up and down.
In Full scale mode, you can scroll a screen in 4 directions of up and down, or right and left.

■ To switch to scroll mode

Select "Scroll mode" from the Full Browser function menu (p.319) to switch to scroll mode. In scroll mode, the screen is scrolled in the direction where is slid. When the cursor continues to be moved, the screen is scrolled continuously.
In Normal mode, the screen can be scrolled in up and down directions.
In Full scale mode, the screen can be scrolled in all directions (8 directions).
Scroll mode can also be set/released by pressing on the full browser screen.

● Returning to the previous page/ going to the next page

Press to return to the page previously shown before the current page. To go back to the original page, press (only in Normal mode).
Use the function menu to return to the previous page or go to the next page in Full scale mode.
→p.320

● Using multi window

You can open up to five websites simultaneously in full browser.

- Switch the multi-opened websites one by one.

NOTE

◆You cannot arrange the multi-opened websites side-by-side.

1 Full Browser screen (p.317)▶ (FUNC)▶"Open new window"▶Select any item

Bookmark*1	Shows the website registered as bookmark.
Enter URL*2	Enters a URL to display the website.
Display home	Shows the website registered as home URL.
Link	Opens the link selected (highlighted) in a website.

*1 : For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation.
→p.220
*2 : For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode.
→p.219

The website specified opens with a new window.

■ To display other pages

Press ( ) to change pages to display.

■ To close a page

▶Display the page you want to close ▶(FUNC)▶"Close window"▶"YES"

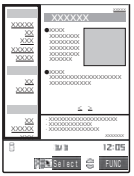
NOTE

◆You can change websites to display from the function menu.
▶Full Browser screen (p.317)▶(FUNC)▶"Change window"▶Select the title of the page you want to display
◆Some websites contain a link set to open the websites using new windows. When you select such link, the website will open with a new window.

Displaying a page composed of frames

You can view websites composed of frames that are designed for PC.
● You can select a frame to display it.

1 Full Browser screen (p.317)▶Display a page composed of frames



2 Use to select a frame ▶

The selected frame appears.
Neuropointer is also available to select frames.



All frames　　Selected frame

■ **To return to the all-frames screen**
▶(FUNC)▶"All frames"
Pressing CLR also returns to the all-frames screen.

NOTE

◆For a website including several frames, all the frames may not be displayed (resulting in frames without characters or images).

Uploading images

Upload JPEG or GIF images stored in your FOMA terminal to websites.
● Procedure for uploading images depends on websites. Follow the procedure described on the website you visit.

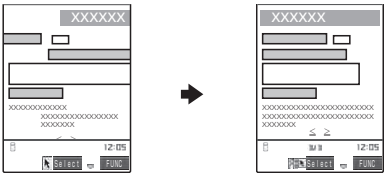
NOTE

◆You cannot upload multiple images that exceed 80K bytes in total or data in which the selected image and other data exceed 100K bytes in total.
◆Some websites may not support uploading function.
◆You cannot upload images that are not allowed to be output to a device other than the FOMA terminal.

Switching from i-mode to full browser

Switch to full browser to display websites incompatible with i-mode.

1 Website screen displayed in i-mode▶(FUNC)▶"Switch to FB"▶"YES"



Switch to full browser to correctly display websites incompatible with i-mode (e.g. websites designed for PC). Some websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly.

NOTE

◆Websites displayed in full browser cannot be viewed in i-mode.
◆If the display mode is changed to full browser during character entry, the entered characters are cleared.
◆The packet communication fee for using full browser is charged separately from "Pake-Houdai".

Function menu (Full Browser screen)

Add bookmark[*1]	Adds the site to the bookmark list.
Bookmark[*1]	Opens the Bookmark folder list screen.
Save image	**▶Use to select an image, then press (Set)▶"YES"▶Select a folder** Saves the image in the displayed page. When selecting an image in Full scale mode, press to go down, or to go up.
Enter URL[*2]	Enters a URL to display the website.
Scroll mode	Switches to scroll mode. "To switch to scroll mode"→p.318

Continued on next page

Open new window	Opens a website with a new window. “Using multi window”→p.318
Close window	Closes the displayed window.
Change window	Switches windows when multiple websites are open.
All frames	Returns to the all frames screen.
Change disp. mode	Switches the Full Browser screen display mode between Normal and Full scale. →p.317
Compose message	Pastes the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” →p.243
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Retry	Plays an animation in the displayed page from the beginning.
Home	
• **Set as home URL**	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home page. One URL can be stored.
• **Display home**	Displays the home page.
History back	Takes one page back from the page currently displayed.
History forward	Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing “History back”.
Site info	
• **Title**	Displays the title of the displayed page.
• **URL**	Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• **Certificate**	Displays the TLS/SSL certificate details when the displayed page supports TLS/SSL.
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When “OFF” is set, “ ” appears instead of images.
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page displayed incorrectly.
Cookie	
• **Cookie settings**	“Setting Cookie”→p.321
• **Delete Cookies**	“Deleting Cookie”→p.321
Referer setting	“Setting Referer”→p.321

*1 : For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation. →p.220

*2 : For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. →p.219

NOTE

<Scroll mode>

◆Pressing [ ] on a site screen also switches to/cancels Scroll mode.

Setting Full Browser

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.317) ▶“Full Browser settings”▶Select any item

Access setting	Sets whether to use full browser. →p.317
Home URL	Sets the home page.
Scroll	Sets scroll speed and whether to display linked pages.
• **Speed**	Selects the speed for scrolling pages from “High speed” and “Low speed”.
• **During scroll in focus**	Select “ON” or “OFF” to set whether to display the pages (linked pages) selected when scrolling a website.
Font size	Selects any of “Standard”, “Small” and “Large” for the size of characters displayed on the Full Browser screen.
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When “OFF” is set, “ ” appears instead of images.
Cookie settings	“Setting Cookie”→p.321
Delete Cookies	“Deleting Cookie”→p.321
Referer setting	“Setting Referer”→p.321
Display Mode setting	“Changing display mode”→p.317
Script setting	▶**“Valid” or “Invalid”** Sets whether to validate JavaScript* when a website is displayed. Some websites may be displayed incorrectly unless “Script setting” is set to “Valid”.
Window Open Guard	▶**“Valid” or “Invalid”** Sets whether to automatically open a new window by using JavaScript*. Setting to “Valid” does not open a window automatically.
Check settings	Enables confirmation of “Full Browser Settings” contents.
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. No “last URL” remains after this operation is performed.
Reset	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Returns the full browser settings to default.

* : JavaScript is a programming language that can be included on web pages to make them more interactive.

Cookie

Default setting
Valid

Using Cookie* enables you to effectively access the websites that you have seen once.

- You can set or delete Cookie from the Full Browser settings or function menu on the Full Browser screen.

* : Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and your other information. The information is sent from server, saved temporarily in your FOMA terminal and used for contents service. If Cookie is sent, the information such as date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Cookie. However, some websites and contents services require you to validate the Cookie setting for their correct display and use.

Setting Cookie

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.317) ▶"Full Browser settings"▶"Cookie settings"▶Select any item

Valid	Always validates Cookie. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent or received.
Invalid	Always invalidates Cookie.
Notify (sending)	Enables you to choose whether to send Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is received and the information is saved in your FOMA terminal.
Notify (receiving)	Enables you to choose whether to receive Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent.
Notify (send/recv.)	Enables you to choose whether to send or receive Cookie every time you connect to a page.

NOTE

◆Expired Cookies are deleted in the ascending order of no use when the number and size of Cookies exceed the maximum limit.
◆All Cookies stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted when "Reset" is performed.
◆When "Notify" is set, some websites may continuously display message screens asking whether to send and receive (update) Cookie.

Deleting Cookie

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.317)▶"Full Browser settings"▶"Delete Cookies"▶Enter your security code ▶"YES"

All Cookies stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted. (You cannot delete them separately.)

Referer

Default setting
Send

You can set whether to send Referer*.

* : Referer is a source of link information. Sending Referer transfers information such as the page from which you access the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer. However, you may not access the linked pages in some websites unless Referer is sent.

Setting Referer

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.317) ▶"Full Browser settings"▶"Referer setting"▶Select any item

Send	Sends Referer.
Unsend	Does not send Referer.
Notify	Confirms whether to send Referer.

NOTE

◆When "Notify" is set, the message asking whether to send Referer appears continuously depending on the website.

Display/Edit/Organization/ Music Playback

Mastering still images
Data Box 324
Displaying Still Images..... My picture 325
Editing Images..... Edit image 335

Mastering movies
Playing Movies/i-motion..... i-motion 337
Editing Movies ..... Edit movie 343
Moving Movies/i-motion to the miniSD Memory Card
..... Move contents 346

Mastering Chara-den
What is Chara-den?..... Chara-den 346

Mastering melodies
Playing Melodies..... Melody 350

Mastering memory cards
miniSD Memory Card 353
Copying Data Stored on the FOMA Terminal to the miniSD Memory Card 357
Previewing Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card ... SD-PIM 358
Copying Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card to the FOMA Terminal..... 360
Managing the miniSD Memory Card 361
Using the FOMA Terminal as miniSD Reader/Writer..... 361

Mastering various data
Working with Folders and Files..... 363
Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding..... Forwarding image 364

Transferring data via infrared data exchange/cable connection
Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/ Cable Connection ..... Infrared data exchange/OBEX 364
Transferring one Data at a Time 367
Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time 368
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function 369

Mastering PDF viewer
Viewing PDF Data ..... My document 370

Printing a still image
Printing Stored Images ..... PictBridge print 375

Listening to music
Using Music Player..... Music player 377
Using Assist Key to Operate Music Player..... 380

Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box, and still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or data downloaded from messages or websites are categorized into the folders.

- The following are the maximum numbers of files that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (phone):
  My picture: 720 including images you shoot
  i-motion: 100 including movies you shoot
  Melody: 400
  Chara-den: 10 including characters preinstalled at the time of purchase
  My document: 400 PDF documents
  Up to 100 data, up to 1,200K bytes can be stored in Secret under My picture, and up to 10 data, up to 1,000K bytes in Secret under i-motion.
- Up to 20 folders can be added to My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document, respectively.
- Data stored in My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document can be moved to another folder in the same item.

My picture

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	All images can be saved here. Images copied from the miniSD memory card or transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox. Still images shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Camera		
Decomail-picture		Deco-mail images preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Pre-installed		Preinstalled images and animations for the standby screen or wake-up are stored.
Secret*2		Stores images that you want to prevent others from viewing.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Original animation	—	Animations created in Continuous mode or original animations are stored.
miniSD Picture	JPEG, GIF	Still images you shot, JPEG images/GIF images copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.
miniSD Image Box	JPEG, GIF	GIF animations copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored. →p.355
Frame	IFM	Frames preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Frames downloaded or acquired via ToruCa will be saved.
Stamp	IFM	Marker stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Marker stamps downloaded or acquired from ToruCa will be saved.
Face stamp	FSD	Face stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded face stamps will be saved.

i-motion

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	MP4	All movies or i-motion can be saved here. Movies or i-motion copied/moved from the miniSD memory card or transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox. Movies shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Camera		
Pre-installed		i-motion preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
Secret*2		Stores movies or i-motion you want to prevent others from viewing.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Movies and i-motion can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
miniSD SD Video*3	MP4, ASF*4	Movies you shot, movies or i-motion copied from the FOMA terminal, or movies saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.
miniSD Multimedia*5		
Movable contents	MP4	Movie or i-motion moved from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card (stored on the miniSD memory card) will be stored in this folder.
Playlist*6	—	—

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Melody

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	SMF, MFi	All melodies can be saved here. Melodies copied from the miniSD memory card transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to Inbox.
Pre-installed	MFi	Melodies or sound effects preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	SMF, MFi	Melodies can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
Voice announce	—	Messages recorded using Voice announce are stored.
miniSD	SMF, MFi	Melodies copied from the FOMA terminal or saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.
Playlist*6	—	—

Chara-den

Folder	File format	Content
—	AFD	Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded Chara-den characters will be saved.

My document

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	PDF	PDF documents preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. All PDF documents can be saved here. PDF documents copied from the miniSD memory card transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to Inbox.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		PDF documents can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
miniSD		PDF documents copied from the FOMA terminal or saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.

Music

Folder	Content
—	Music data transferred from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.

*1 : SWF is a file format for Flash movies.
*2 : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. The folder cannot contain images/i-motion stored at the time of purchase.
*3 : Movies or i-motion with video will be saved.
*4 : ASF format is play-only.
*5 : Voice-only movies or i-motion without video will be saved.
*6 : Playlist is a folder used for playlist playback. The folder cannot contain data and cannot be deleted.

Important

- It is recommended to copy data stored in the Data box to the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the miniSD memory card or by using the Data Link Software (p.472) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional). (Images, movies or melodies that are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal cannot be stored on the miniSD memory card or transferred to a PC.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for data loss. Save the data to the miniSD memory card, or use the Data Link Software to save the data to your PC just in case.

<My picture> MENU46

Displaying Still Images

Still images shot with the built-in camera, downloaded from websites or stored on the miniSD memory card appear in My picture under the Data box.

- An image cannot be displayed if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 1,200K bytes. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be displayed.
  Progressive JPEG image→p.223

1 MENU ▶ Data box ▶ "My picture"

The "Folder list" screen appears.
The "Secret" folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.
Content in My picture→ p.324



Folder list

Function menu➡p.363

2 Select a folder

The "Image list (Picture list)" screen appears.
Image list screen→p.326



Image list

Function menu➡p.328

Continued on next page

3 Select an image

The “My picture” screen appears.
Use ⊙ to view the previous or next image.
If the image is larger than 240 dots wide × 270 dots high, use ● to switch between actual size and large size.
Use the Neuropointer to scroll the image.



My picture

Function menu➡p.330

NOTE

- If an image is displayed in the actual size, you cannot use ⊙ to view the previous or next image, or use the function menu.
- Original animation, GIF-formatted animation or Flash movie cannot be displayed in the actual size.
- It may take some time to display images if a lot of data are stored on the FOMA terminal or on the miniSD memory card.
- Flash movies are played at the volume set in “Phone” under the “Ring volume” settings. If “Step” is set, Flash movies are played at volume “Level 2”.

Displaying images stored on the miniSD memory card

1 Folder list screen (p.325)▶“miniSD”▶“Picture” or “Image Box”

The “miniSD folder list” screen appears.



Example: miniSD folder list (Picture)

Function menu➡p.363

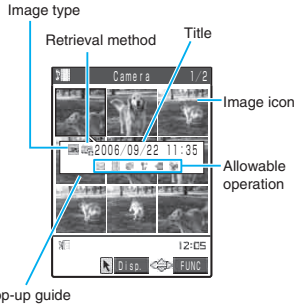
2 Select a folder▶Select an image

Guide to the Picture list and Title list

■ Picture list

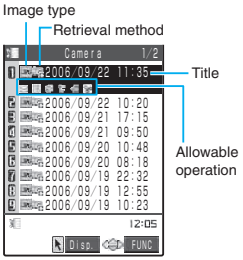
Nine images* stored on the FOMA terminal appear on the screen at a time, and the title of the selected image appears in a popup guide. Popup icons show the image type, the image acquisition method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

* : Four images appear simultaneously as for the images stored on the miniSD memory card (Picture).



■ Title list

Titles of nine images are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image type, the image acquisition method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.



■ Image type icons

Icon	Description
JPG (Pale blue)/ JPG (Blue)/ JPG (Navy blue)	JPEG-formatted image (Can be attached to a normal message/ Can be attached to a large message/Can be compressed then attached to a large message (if it becomes 500K bytes or smaller after compressed))*1
GIF (Pale blue)/ GIF (Blue)/ GIF (Navy blue)	GIF-formatted image (Can be attached to a normal message/ Cannot be attached to a message (10,001 to 100K bytes)/Cannot be attached to a message (larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high, larger than 100K bytes))*1
	GIF (IFM) frame, marker stamp*1
	FSD facestamp
	SWF Flash movie

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Icon	Description
	MP4 movie/i-motion*1
(Note in blue)	MP4 i-motion with sound effects*1
(Note in orange)	ASF i-motion
	MP4 i-motion with playback restrictions*2
	MP4 i-motion with sound effects and playback restrictions*2
*3/*4 (Note in green)	i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (phone)*5
*3/*4 (Note in blue)	Sound-effected i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (phone)*5
/	i-motion that is not allowed to be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
	AFD Chara-den characters
	Image to which the FOMA card operational restriction applies

*1 : "" is added to icons for data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal. The data cannot be transferred via mail or infrared data exchange, except if it was shot with the FOMA terminal and file restrictions are set.

*2 : "" turns to "" when the playback count reaches the limit or playback period expires.

*3 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA card being used was also used to save the i-motion.

*4 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA model and FOMA card being used were also used to save the i-motion.

*5 : "" appears for i-motion with playback count and playback period restrictions. "" turns to "" when the playback count reaches the limit or playback period expires.

■ Acquisition method icons

Icon	Description
No icon	Data stored at the time of purchase
	Data downloaded from a site, messages or ToruCa, or acquired from i-αppli
	Data shot with the camera
	Data copied from the miniSD memory card or a PC, acquired via infrared data exchange or Bar code reader
	Chara-den shots
	Frame/Marker stamp/Facestamp
	Data clipped from PDF document

■ Allowable operation icon

The icon does not appear if the data is stored on the miniSD memory card (Image Box).

Icon	Description
QVGA	Movies/i-motion of QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high). Appears only in folders under i-motion.

Icon	Description
/ /	Can be attached to an i-mode message (10,000 bytes or smaller/ 500 to 10,001K bytes/larger than 500K bytes) If the data size exceeds 500K bytes, you need to reduce the size to be attached to a message. "Reducing the image size to be attached to a message" →p.332 "Clipping a movie to be attached to a message" →p.345
	Can be inserted into a Deco-mail message
	Can be set to the screen
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Can be transferred via infrared data exchange
	Can be copied to the miniSD memory card
	Can be edited
*1/*2	i-motion that can be moved to the miniSD memory card
	Larger than 800K bytes. Appears only in the miniSD folder. Can be played from the point where playback was ended last time.

*1 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA card being used was also used to save the i-motion.

*2 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA model and FOMA card being used were also used to save the i-motion.

■ Titles and file names

- Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or recorded with Chara-den are automatically titled and named.
  Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
  (Year/Month/Day Time)
  File name: yyyymmddhhmmxxx
  Date and time
  (xxx is replaced with a 3-digit number for still image.)
  * Still image: the time when the data is saved; Movie: the time when the shooting is finished. If the "Auto save set" is set to "OFF", the time when the movie is saved appears.
- Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion and Chara-den characters.
- The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.
- The title appears on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.
- The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.
- The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.
- If a file name you attempted to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "imagexxx" or "moviexxx".

Setting the image list display mode <Viewer settings>

- Original animations and miniSD memory cards (Image Box) are always listed by title.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Display" ▶ "Viewer settings" ▶ Select any item

Picture (default)	Changes to the picture list.
Title	Changes to the title list.

Function menu (image list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	"Editing Images"→p.335
Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted image. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters. As for miniSD memory card (Picture), the title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Display image	Displays the selected image (displays the My picture screen).
Set as display	★ appears for items to which the image is set. **■To set to screens such as standby, dialing or receiving ▶Select an item** **■To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶Select an item▶Check the image▶●▶"YES"**
Image info	"Image information"→p.331
Compose message	
• **Attach image**	"Composing a message with an image attached"→p.331
• **Insert image**	"Composing a Deco-mail message"→p.332
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time"→p.367
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.148
Copy to miniSD	"Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card"→p.334
Add image to PB	Saves the selected image to the phonebook.→p.111
Size for mail	"Reducing the image size to be attached to a message"→p.332
Positioning	"Setting the position when setting an image"→p.332
Clipping area	"Setting the area when setting an image"→p.332
Edit file name	**▶Edit a file name** Edits the file name of the highlighted image. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "_" cannot be used.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted image.
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Move	
• **Move this**	**▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Moves the highlighted image to another folder.
• **Move selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.363
• **Move all**	**▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Moves all images stored in the folder to another folder.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted image.
• **Delete selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.363
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all images from the folder.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on the miniSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort	Sorts images by specified criteria.
Title name, Picture	Switches between Picture and Title name.
Composite image	"Making a composite image out of 4 images"→p.333
PictBridge print	Prints JPEG images using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to connect the FOMA terminal to your printer.→p.375
Store at DSC	"Saving images to the Data Security Center"→p.330
Keep in secret*1	"Hiding Various Data"→p.163
Facestamp demo*2	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow facial movements, "" appears. If not, "" appears.
Copy to phone*3	"Copying images stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→p.335

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

DPOF setting[*3]	“Setting how to print images stored on the miniSD memory card” →p.377
Copy[*3]	Copies an image to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand. →p.363
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted image to another folder.
• **Copy selected**	“Selecting multiple data” →p.363
• **Copy all**	Copies all images to another folder.

*1 : The option appears in “Secret mode” or in “Secret data only mode”. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. →p.163
*2 : The option appears only when the folder is Face stamp.
*3 : The options appear only for images stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit title>
◆You may be unable to edit a title if there is little space available on the miniSD memory card.
◆You cannot edit the titles of images preinstalled at the time of purchase.

<Set as display>
◆Images stored in the Inbox, Camera or User-created folders can be set to the following screens:
- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Holding
- Record message
- VP voice memo
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving
- On hold
- Substitute image
- Preparing VP msg

◆Images stored in the Pre-installed folder can be set to the Stand-by display or Wake-up display.
◆You cannot set an image to the screens if:
- It is larger than 640 dots wide × 640 dots high
- The file size exceeds 100K bytes

◆Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.
◆Some images cannot be set to screens.

<Add image to PB>
◆You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
◆You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Edit file name>
◆You cannot edit the file name of the image if it is:
- An image stored at the time of purchase
- A still image of Chara-den character with “File restricted”
- Not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

◆You cannot use single-byte spaces for file names.

<File restriction>
◆You cannot restrict an image if it is:
- Neither JPEG nor GIF
- A still image of Chara-den character with “File restricted”

<Delete>
◆You cannot delete images stored at the time of purchase.
◆If you attempt to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select “YES” to delete the item, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:
- The screens restore to default.
- Original animation is released.
- The Schedule alarm screen turns to the one to which “” was set.

<Memory info>
◆The displayed size is only an approximation. The amount in the Secret folder appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

<Sort>
◆“By source” sorts images in the following order:
①Images stored at the time of purchase
②Images downloaded or acquired via i-αppli or ToruCa
③Images shot with the camera
④Images copied from the miniSD memory card or acquired via infrared data exchange
⑤Chara-den shots
⑥Images clipped out of PDF documents

Saving images to the Data Security Center <Data Security Service>

Save images stored in the Inbox, Camera, Deco-mail-picture and user-created folders under “My picture” to DoCoMo’s Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to subscribe to “Data Security Service”.
- If you have not subscribed to “Data Security Service”, a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. Access the site from the screen to subscribe to the service. Data Security Service→p.125, 175

1 Image list screen (p.325)▶ (FUNC)▶“Store at DSC”

2 Use to select images▶ (Finish)

Up to 10 images can be selected.

3 Enter your security code▶“YES”

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the images.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

◆You cannot save an image if the size exceeds 100K bytes, if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal or it is a decomail-picture stored at the time of purchase.

Retrieving images

Images stored at the Data Security Center can be retrieved to the FOMA terminal. To retrieve, connect to i-mode. For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

Function menu (My picture screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	“Editing Images”→p.335
Set as display	▶**Select an item** Sets the selected image to the standby screen, etc.
Image info	“Image information”→p.331
Compose message	
• **Attach image**	“Composing a message with an image attached”→p.331
• **Insert image**	“Composing a Deco-mail message”→p.332
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time”→p.367
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).
• **Normal** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Copy to miniSD	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the displayed image.
Add image to PB	Saves the displayed image to the phonebook.→p.111
Positioning	“Setting the position when setting an image”→p.332
Clipping area	“Setting the area when setting an image”→p.332
Delete this	Deletes the displayed image.
Retry	Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.
PictBridge print	Prints JPEG images using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to connect the FOMA terminal to your printer.→p.375
Facestamp demo[*1]	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow facial movements, “” appears. If not, “” appears.
Copy to phone[*2]	Copies the displayed image.
DPOF setting[*2]	“Setting how to print images stored on the miniSD memory card”→p.377

*1 : The option appears only when the folder is Face stamp.
*2 : The option appears only for images stored on the miniSD memory card.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

NOTE

<Set as display>

◆An image can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Holding
- Record message
- VP voice memo
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving
- On hold
- Substitute image
- Preparing VP msg

◆You cannot set an image to the screens if:

- It is larger than 640 dots wide × 640 dots high
- The file size exceeds 100K bytes

◆Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.

◆Some images cannot be set to screens.

<Add image to PB>

◆You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

◆You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Delete this>

◆If you attempt to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens restore to default.
- Original animation is released.
- The Schedule alarm screen turns to the one to which "" was set.

◆Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.

Image information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format The format of Flash movies does not appear.
File size	The file size in K bytes
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
Transfer for Repair*1	Whether stored data can be backed up at DoCoMo's repair center when your FOMA terminal is repaired (Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable even if the data cannot be transferred or if any loss or damage occurs to the data). "Permitted" appears for downloaded images/melodies/PDF documents that are allowed to be moved.
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired
Move to miniSD*1	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the miniSD memory card.
Move to phone*2	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
Set as display*1	Where the image is set When no image is set, "No set" appears.
DPOF setting*3	
• **Prints**	The specified number of prints When it is not set, "No set" appears. When 100 or higher is specified, "＊＊" appears.
• **Date**	Whether or not the date is specified

*1 : The option appears only for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The option appears only for images stored on the miniSD memory card.

*3 : The option appears only if the image is stored on the miniSD memory card (Picture).

Composing a message with an image attached

- If an image cannot be attached, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached.

1 Image list screen (p.325)▶(FUNC)▶"Compose message"▶"Attach image"

■ If the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes

▶Select any item▶Check the resized image

Attach mail	Attaches an image without changing the size.*
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.*
QVGA trim away	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio, then clips and attaches the center.*

* : If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.

2 Compose an i-mode message

Composing and sending an i-mode message
→p.243

NOTE

◆Whether "Attach image" appears depends on the image size/file size.

◆"QVGA trim away" cannot change where to be clipped. The center is to be clipped.

◆JPEG image from 10,000 bytes to 500K bytes is called Large image. A large image sent to the FOMA terminal is resized at the i-shot Center so that it can be received by i-mode terminals.

Continued on next page

◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
- There are already 20 draft messages stored
- Flash movie is to be attached
- The image is GIF whose size exceeds 10,000 bytes
- The image is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal

Reducing the image size to be attached to a message

● Resize an image so that it can be attached to an i-mode message if the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes. You cannot operate this function if the image is not the above.

1 Image list screen (p.325)▶(FUNC)▶"Size for mail"▶Select any item

Attach mail	Attaches an image without changing the size.*
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.*
QVGA trim away	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio, then clips and attaches the center.*

* : If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.

2 Check the edited image▶●▶"YES"

NOTE

◆The resized image is newly saved to the folder where the original is stored.
◆"QVGA trim away" cannot change where to be clipped. The center is to be clipped.
◆The following show the title and file name of the saved image:
- Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
- File name: yyyymmddhhmmXXX (XXX: 3-digit number)

Composing a Deco-mail message

● If an image cannot be inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be inserted.

1 Image list screen (p.325)▶(FUNC)▶"Compose message"▶"Insert image"

■ If the JPEG image is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or if the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message
▶Select any item▶Check the resized image

Insert mail	Inserts an image without changing the size.*
SubQCIF scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and inserts the resized image.*
SubQCIF trim away	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio, then clips and inserts the center.*

* : If the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message, it is also reduced.

2 Compose a Deco-mail message
Composing and sending a Deco-mail message
→p.247

NOTE

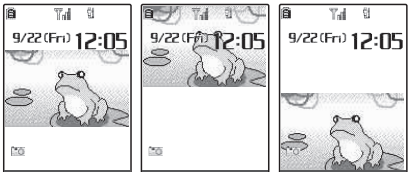
◆Whether "Insert image" appears depends on the image size/file size.
◆"SubQCIF trim away" cannot change where to be clipped. The center is to be clipped.
◆You cannot compose a Deco-mail message when:
- There are already 20 draft messages stored
- The image is GIF whose size exceeds 9,000 bytes

Setting the position when setting an image

Position an image when it is smaller than the image display area.

1 Image list screen (p.325)▶(FUNC)▶"Positioning"
Select "Center", "Upper" or "Lower".

<Example: The standby screen>



Displayed in the center　Displayed at the top　Displayed at the bottom

NOTE

◆The position is effective for the following screens. However, the specified display position may not function for some image sizes.
- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

Setting the area when setting an image

Set the area where an image appears when it is larger than the image display area.

1 Image list screen (p.325)▶(FUNC)▶"Clipping area"
Select "Center", "Upper" or "Lower".

<Example: Calling>



Center part displayed　Upper part displayed　Lower part displayed

NOTE

◆The clipping area is effective for the following screens. However, the specified clipping area may not function for some image sizes.

- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

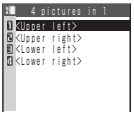
● Making a composite image out of 4 images

● An image cannot be set if the size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

1 Image list screen (p.325)▶(-)(FUNC)▶"Composite image"

2 Select a position▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶Repeat to select four images in total

■ **To cancel a specified image**
▶Select an image to cancel▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen



3 (-)(Finish)▶(●)

■ **To retry creating a composite image**
▶(-)(Cancel)

NOTE

◆The created composite image is saved to the folder used to create the image.
◆Four images are synthesized without changing the aspect ratio. The original images are not resized.
◆Pressing (-)(Play) on the selection screen allows you to check the selected image, which cannot appear in the actual size.

Creating animations

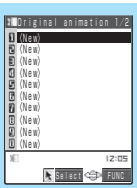
<Original animation>

Use stored images to create an animated cartoon consisting of up to 20 frames.

● You can create up to 20 animations.

1 (MENU)▶(Data box)▶"My picture"▶"Original animation"

The "Original animation list" screen appears.



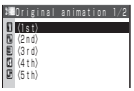
Original animation list

Function menu➡p.333

2 "<New>"

3 Select a frame▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶Repeat to select images

■ **To cancel a specified image**
▶Select a frame to cancel
▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen



4 (-)(Finish)

NOTE

◆Pressing (-)(Play) on the selection screen allows you to check the selected image.
◆Only frames with an image specified are played in order.
◆You can specify a JPEG image whose size is 640 dots wide × 640 dots high or smaller as original animation.

Function menu (Original animation list screen)

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted original animation. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Org. animation	Newly creates an original animation when "New" is highlighted. The created original animation is edited if it is highlighted.
Display image	Plays the highlighted original animation (Displays the original animation playback screen).

Continued on next page

Set as display	**▶Select an item** Sets the highlighted original animation to the standby screen, etc.
Image info	Checks the settings of the original animation set as display. Whether no animation is set, "Not set" appears.
Release animation	Releases the highlighted original animation.

NOTE

<Set as disp.>

◆An image can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

Playing an original animation

1 Original animation list screen (p.333)▶Select an original animation

The "original animation playback" screen appears.

If there are two or more original animations, use ⊙ to play the previous or next animation.



Original animation playback

Function menu➡p.334

Function menu (Original animation playback screen)

Set as display	**▶Select an item** Sets an animation being played to the standby screen, etc.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).
• **Normal** (default)	Displays an animation in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an animation to the display size.
Retry	Plays an animation from the beginning.

NOTE

<Set as disp.>

◆An animation can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Copy images stored in the Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture and user-created folders under My picture to the miniSD memory card.

- Icons on the image list screen show which images can be copied.

<Example: Image list screen for Inbox, Camera, User-created folders>

1 Image list screen (p.325)▶(−)(FUNC)▶"Copy to miniSD"▶Select any item

Copy this	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the selected image.
Copy selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶Select images▶(→)(Finish)▶"YES"** Copies images you select.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Copies all images.

NOTE

◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.

◆The following shows the file name after copied:

- File name: NEC_mmmm (mmmm = 0001 ~ 9999)

◆You cannot copy an image to the miniSD memory card if:

- It is stored at the time of purchase
- It is neither JPEG nor GIF
- It is a still image of Chara-den character with "File restricted"
- It is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
- There is little space available on the miniSD memory card
- The miniSD memory card is not supported
- An error occurs on the miniSD memory card
- The file size exceeds 1,200K bytes after copied
- The miniSD memory card is being inserted

◆Copying an image to the miniSD memory card may increase the file size.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Copying images stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy images stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- Copied images are saved to the Inbox folder under My picture.

<Example: Image list screen for the miniSD folder (Picture)>

1 Image list screen (p.325)▶(-)(FUNC)▶"Copy to phone"▶Select any item

Copy this	Copies the selected image.
Copy selected	**▶Select images▶(-)(Finish)▶"YES"** Copies images you select.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all images.

NOTE

- ◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆You cannot copy Flash movies.
- ◆You cannot copy an image whose file size exceeds 1,200K bytes.
- ◆An image cannot be copied if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots or if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be copied.
  Progressive JPEG image→p.223
- ◆The name of the copied file is that of the one stored on the miniSD memory card.

<Edit image>

Editing Images

Edit still images you shot or images copied to the phone.

- The following are the editing methods and image sizes:

Method	Size of editable file
Frame • Frames an image.→p.336	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high*1 Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high*1
Retouch • Applies special effects such as sepia tone to an image.→p.336	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high
Marker stamp • Pastes a marker stamp such as heart into an image.→p.336	2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high*2 1,728 dots wide × 2,304 dots high*2 2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high*2 1,536 dots wide × 2,048 dots high*2 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high*2 1,212 dots wide × 1,616 dots high*2 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high*2 960 dots wide × 1,280 dots high*2 Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high*3 Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high*3
Character stamp • Pastes a stamp of entered text into an image.→p.337	
Trim away • Clips an image to the desired size.→p.337	
Brightness • Adjusts the image brightness.→p.336	
Rotate • Rotates an image clockwise or counterclockwise by 90 or 180 degrees.→p.336	
Change size • Resizes an image.→p.336	
Correct backlight • Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.→p.336	Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high
Refresh skin tone • Corrects the skin parts.→p.336	

*1 : You cannot frame an image if the size is not 352 × 288, 288 × 352, 240 × 320, 320 × 240, 240 × 345, 345 × 240, 176 × 144, 144 × 176, 128 × 96 or 96 × 128 (dots wide × dots high).

*2 : An image will be editable after reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

*3 : Some editing methods may not function due to the image size.

- Editable images→p.327
- When "Edit image" is selected from the image checking function menu, only "Frame", "Retouch", "Correct backlight" and "Refresh skin tone" are available.

1 My picture screen (p.326)▶(-)(FUNC)▶"Edit image"

The Edit image function menu (p.336) appears.

2 Select an editing method

3 Check the edited image▶●

The "Edit image" screen appears. To edit further, press (-)(FUNC) to select a method.



Edit Image

Function menu➡p.336

Continued on next page

4 ●▶"YES" or "NO"

Selecting "YES" overwrites the original image. Selecting "NO" saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.

NOTE

◆Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.
◆Some images may hardly reflect the editing effects.

Function menu (Edit image screen)

Frame	"Adding frames"→p.336
Retouch	Applies effects to an image.
• **Sharp**	Sharpens the outline of an image.
• **Blur**	Softens the outline of an image.
• **Sepia**	Makes a sepia-tone image.
• **Emboss**	Impresses an image in relief.
• **Negative**	Makes a negative image.
• **Horizontal flip**	Reverses the left and right of an image (mirroring).
Marker stamp	"Pasting marker stamps"→p.336
Character stamp	"Pasting character stamps"→p.337
Trim away	"Trimming"→p.337
Brightness	**▶Use ⊛ to adjust the brightness** Selects the brightness among 5 levels from "－2 to ±0 to ＋2".
Rotate[*1]	Rotates an image. Select "90° to right", "90° to left" or "180°".
Change size	Resizes an image to the selected size, keeping the aspect ratio. Select "VGA(640 × 480)", "CIF(352 × 288)", "QVGA(320 × 240)", "QCIF(176 × 144)", "SubQCIF(128 × 96)", "Stand-by(240 × 320)", "Screen(240 × 345)", "VGA Vert.(480 × 640)", "CIF Vert.(288 × 352)", "QCIF Vert.(144 × 176)" or "SubQCIF Vert.(96 × 128)".[*2]
Correct backlight	Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.
Refresh skin tone	Corrects the skin parts.
Compose message	"Composing a message with an image attached"→p.331
Save	Saves the edited image.

*1 : Rotating may change the aspect ratio.
*2 : Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

Adding frames

● You can use downloaded frames in addition to frames stored at the time of purchase (p.456).

1 My picture screen (p.326)▶ ⊖(FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Frame"▶Select a frame

The image appears in the selected frame. Use ⊛ to try another frame.

■ **To rotate a frame 180°**
▶⊖(Rotate)

■ **To cancel the selected frame**
▶⊖(FUNC)▶"Cancel"

NOTE

◆The orientation of a downloaded frame is portrait or landscape. An image can be framed only if the size of the frame is the same as that of the image.
◆If the size of an image that was clipped or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed. The quality of the resized and framed image may deteriorate.

Pasting marker stamps

● You can use downloaded marker stamps in addition to marker stamps stored at the time of purchase.
● You can rotate or resize marker stamps.

1 My picture screen (p.326)▶ ⊖(FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Marker stamp"▶Select a marker stamp

■ **To edit a marker stamp**
▶⊖(FUNC)▶Select any item

90° to right	Rotates 90° clockwise.
90° to left	Rotates 90° counterclockwise.
180°	Rotates 180°.
Scale up	Doubles the size.
Scale down	Halves the size.

2 Position the marker stamp▶●

Use ⊕ or Neuropointer to position the marker stamp.

■ **To use another marker stamp**
▶⊖(Add)▶Repeat Steps 1 to 2



NOTE

◆You can use downloaded stamps of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller. Larger stamps are regarded as GIF images.
◆You can repeatedly resize a marker stamp.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

◆A marker stamp cannot be larger than an image to edit. You cannot reduce the size of a marker stamp to less than 1 dot.

● Pasting character stamps

Default setting	Character color: Black Font: Gothic style Font size: Standard size

- A character stamp can contain up to 3-15 double-byte or 6-30 single-byte characters. The number of characters that can be entered depends on the image size and font size.
- You can change the color, font and size of a character stamp.

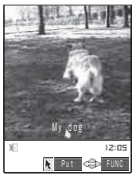
1 My picture screen (p.326)▶ ⊖(FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Character stamp”▶ Enter text

■ To edit a character stamp
▶⊖(FUNC)▶Select any item

Character input	▶**Enter text** Reenters text.
Character color	▶**Use ⊕ to select a color** Sets the color of a character stamp. To use another color palette, press ⊖(Change).
Font	Selects “Gothic style” or “Pop style” as the font setting.
Font size	Selects “Enlargement size”, “Standard size” or “Reduction size” as the character size.

2 Position the character stamp▶●

Use ⊕ or Neuropointer to position the character stamp.



NOTE

◆The font thickness is specified in the “Font” setting.

● Trimming

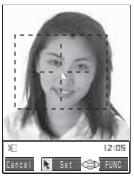
1 My picture screen (p.326)▶ ⊖(FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Trim away”

Select “CIF(352 × 288)”, “QVGA(320 × 240)”, “QCIF(176 × 144)”, “SubQCIF(128 × 96)”, “Standby(240 × 320)”, “Screen(240 × 345)”, “CIF Vert.(288 × 352)”, “QCIF Vert.(144 × 176)”, “SubQCIF Vert.(96 × 128)”, “Background(240 × 270)”, “Menu icon(64 × 63)” or “Chat(80 × 80)”.*

* : Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

2 Determine where to clip▶●

Use ⊕ or Neuropointer to position the clipping frame.



<i-motion>

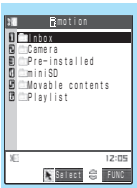
Playing Movies/i-motion

Movies that you have shot or that are stored on the miniSD memory card and i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or Internet website can be played in i-motion under Data box. Movies of QVGA (320 × 240) or smaller can be rotated and played on the landscape screen.

- To download i-motion to the FOMA terminal →p.235
- After you perform “Set repeat play” to start playing a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. →p.341

1 MENU▶Data box▶“i-motion”

The “Folder list” screen appears.
The “Secret” folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.
Content in the i-motion folder →p.324



Folder list

Function menu➡p.363

2 Select a folder

The “movie list” screen (Preview) appears.
Movie list screen →p.338



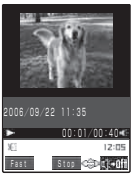
Movie list (Preview)

Function menu➡p.338

Continued on next page

3 Select a movie

Press ● to play on the portrait screen, or ◔(Wide) to play on the landscape screen.
The "i-motion" screen appears to play the movie.
Operation during playback →p.340

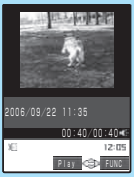


■ If the message "Play continue? YES/NO" appears

- Selecting "YES" plays the movie from the point where it was stopped last time.
- Selecting "NO" plays the movie from the beginning.



When playback ends, the "i-motion stopped" screen appears.



Function menu➡p.341

NOTE

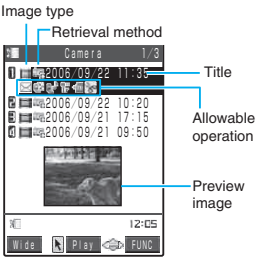
- ◆If you attempt to play a movie or i-motion with sound in manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play it. Selecting "YES" plays it with sound. Selecting "NO" plays it without any sound. If you attempt to play a voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) or if the turn of voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) comes around during continuous playback or playlist playback, the playback will be canceled or stopped.
- ◆Video or sound in a movie or i-motion may be interrupted if you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF during playback.
- ◆A movie may not be properly played if it was not shot with FOMA N902iS.
- ◆The following movie or i-motion can be played from the point where it was stopped last time (it may not be played from the exact point):
  - Movie or i-motion larger than 800K bytes that is stored on the miniSD memory card and that was stopped by an incoming call, etc., or by pressing CLR or ☎.

Guide to Preview and Title list

- Icons for image types, acquisition methods and available settings →p.326
- Titles and file names →p.327

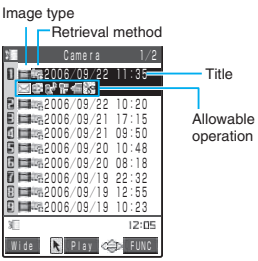
■ Preview

The screen shows four movies listed by title and the preview image of the selected movie appears below the titles. Popup icons show the image type, image acquisition method, and settings that can be specified for the movie.
A preview image does not appear for voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice).



■ Title list

Titles of nine movies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the movie type, movie acquisition method, and settings that can be specified for the movie.



Function menu (movie list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit i-motion	"Editing Movies"→p.343
Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted movie. ■**Inbox, Camera, User-created folders** The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters. ■**miniSD memory card** The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Select ring tone	Sets the highlighted movie as a ring tone. →p.128
Stand-by display	Sets the highlighted movie to the standby screen. →p.138
i-motion info	“i-motion information” →p.340
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted movie attached. →p.243
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time” →p.367
Copy to miniSD	“Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card” →p.343
Move to miniSD	“Moving Movies/i-motion to the miniSD Memory Card” →p.346
Move	
• **Move this**	▶**Select the destination folder**▶**“YES”** Moves the highlighted movie to another folder.
• **Move selected**	“Selecting multiple data” →p.363
• **Move all**	▶**Select the destination folder**▶**“YES”** Moves all movies stored in the folder to another folder.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” →p.148
Edit file name	▶**Edit a file name** Edits the file name of the highlighted movie. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols (“-”, “_”). Symbols other than “-” or “_” cannot be used.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted movie.
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted movie.
• **Delete selected**	“Selecting multiple data” →p.363
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Deletes all movies from the folder.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on the miniSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort	Sorts movies by specified criteria.

List setting	Specifies how to list movies.
• **Title***1	Changes to the title list.
• **Title+image***1 (default)	Changes to the preview display.
• **Name***2 *3	Changes to the title list (or file name list).
• **Name+image***2 *3 (default)	Changes to the preview display.
• **Title, File name***3	Switches between File name and Title.
Keep in secret*4	“Hiding Various Data” →p.163
Copy to phone*3	“Copying movies stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal” →p.343
Move to phone*5	“Moving i-motion stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal” →p.346
Copy*3	Copies a movie to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand. →p.363
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted movie to another folder.
• **Copy selected**	“Selecting multiple data” →p.363
• **Copy all**	Copies all movies to another folder.

*1 : The option appears only for movies stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2 : The name is either file name or title.
*3 : The option appears only for movies or i-motion stored on the miniSD memory card.
*4 : The option appears in “Secret mode” or in “Secret data only mode”. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. →p.163
*5 : The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored in the Movable contents folder.

NOTE

<Select ring tone>

◆A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is “Available”. Refer to the “i-motion info” to check whether it is “Available” or “Unavailable”.

◆If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is set as a ring tone, an i-motion image does not appear on the screen.

◆A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice) can be set as a ring tone for Push-to-Talk.

<Stand-by display>

◆You cannot set a movie or i-motion to the standby screen when:
- The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)

◆Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.

◆You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To functions from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

Continued on next page

<Compose message>

◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:

- There are already 20 draft messages stored
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- It is a movie of Chara-den character with “File restricted”
- The i-motion is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

◆If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is to be attached, a message appears asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176 × 144).

<Sort>

◆“By source” sorts movies in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected “By source”.

①i-motion downloaded or acquired via i-αppli
②Movies shot with the built-in camera
③Movies copied from the miniSD memory card or acquired via infrared data exchange
④Chara-den movies

● i-motion information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
Format	The file format
Default title	The original title
Creator	Who created the file If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
Copyright	Copyright information on the file If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired
Description	The file description If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted”
Replay restriction	
• **If there are count restrictions**	Remaining play count and total play count
• **If there are period restrictions**	Date of play period
• **If there are span restrictions**	“Playable date ~ Date of play span”
• **If there are no play restrictions**	“Not restricted”
Video	“Included”/“Not included”/“Unplayable” for video
Audio	Audio information “AMR”/“AAC”/“Not included”/“Playable”/“Unplayable(MP4)”/“Unplayable(ASF)”
Text	“Included”/“Not included”/“Unplayable” for text
Moved to miniSD[*1]	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the i-motion can be moved/copied to the miniSD memory card.[*2] “Yes (Same model only)” indicates that the i-motion can be exchanged only between the same models.
Moved to phone[*3]	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the i-motion can be moved/copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone). “Yes(Same model only)” indicates that the i-motion can be exchanged only between the same models.
Ring tone	Whether a ring tone is “Available” or “Unavailable” The setting appears when a ring tone is set.
Receive display	Whether a receive display is “Available” or “Unavailable” The setting appears when a receive display is set.

*1 : The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2 : If the i-motion is launched from a running i-αppli, the indicated information is only intended as an approximate guide.
*3 : The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored on the miniSD memory card.

Operation during i-motion playback

You can perform the following operations during i-motion playback:



During playback　When tickers are displayed　When adjusting the volume

Control keys	Operation
●	Pauses/resumes playback
○ (▲), ○ (▼)	Adjusts volume
○	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion[*1]
○	Winds forward
○	Mutes (disabled when there is no audio)
○ for 1 second or longer	Skips backward[*2]
○ for 1 second or longer	Skips forward[*2]

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Control keys	Operation
● to pause playback, then ➡	Advances frame (moves forward one frame each time it is pressed)
● to pause playback, then “Slow” from the function menu	Plays slow
CLR	Ends

*1 : You cannot operate these if you play it from the data acquisition screen (p.235).
*2 : The operations may be unavailable for some i-motion.

NOTE

◆The volume for i-motion is set to “Level 4” at the time of purchase. The volume can be selected between “Level 0” and “Level 6”, and the setting is retained next time an i-motion is played.
◆The volume set for i-motion does not affect ring volumes set in “Ring volume”.
◆Seek (skip backward/forward) can be operated while a movie is played (including slow playback and fast forward) or while a movie is paused.
◆Sound is muted during seeking (skip backward/forward).
◆Seek (skip backward/forward) is unavailable when:
- A streaming-type i-motion is played
- The i-motion can be played during downloading
- There are no seek points in the i-motion
- The interval between seek points is too long
- A seek point exists only at the beginning of the i-motion
- The i-motion is a voice-only ASF file with no seek data

◆Tickers cannot be played during seeking (skip backward/forward) or during frame advance.

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

- You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.226) if:
  - An underlined phone number, mail address or URL appears on the screen after playback is ended or stopped
  - A phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running telop text then you select “Select link” from the function menu
- If you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Mail To function, the data can also be saved to the phonebook. When playback ends, select “Add to phonebook” from the function menu.
- Adding information to phonebook
  “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.111
  “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.112



Phone To function　Mail To function　Web To function

Function menu (i-motion stopped (pause) screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the displayed image or selected folder, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Normal play	When playback is paused, the i-motion is replayed from the paused point.
Slow	Plays slow. To return to normal playback, press ➡ or select “Normal play” from the function menu while it is paused.
Fast	Plays fast. To return to normal playback, press ➡ or select “Normal play” from the function menu while it is paused.
Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the movie list screen.
Position to play	▶●▶**Select a point where playback is to start** Starts playback from the specified point.
Select link	You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.226) if a phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running telop text.
Edit i-motion	“Editing Movies”→p.343
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the current i-motion attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243
Select ring tone	Sets the current i-motion as a ring tone.→p.128
Stand-by display	Sets an i-motion being played to the standby screen.→p.138
Set repeat play (default: OFF)	Specifies whether to play an i-motion continuously in file order in the folder (to play repeatedly on the FOMA terminal). After starting to play a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. Select “ON” (play repeatedly) or “OFF”.
i-motion info	“i-motion information”→p.340
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time”→p.367
Copy to miniSD	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the displayed movie.
Copy to phone*	Copies the displayed movie.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for i-motion.
• **Normal** (default)	Displays an i-motion in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an i-motion to the display size.

* : The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored on the miniSD memory card.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Slow>
- An i-motion is muted during slow playback.
- You cannot play slow a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Fast>
- An i-motion is muted during fast playback.
- You cannot play fast a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Position to play>
- You may be unable to select a playback point for some movies or i-motion.

<Select ring tone>
- A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is “Available”. Refer to the “i-motion info” to check whether it is “Available” or “Unavailable”.
- A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice) can be set as a ring tone for Push-to-Talk.

<Compose message>
- You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
  - There are already 20 draft messages stored
  - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - It is a movie of Chara-den character with “File restricted”
  - The i-motion is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
- If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is to be attached, a message appears asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176 × 144).

<Stand-by display>
- Deleting a movie or i-motion that was set to the standby screen restores the standby screen to the screen set at the time of purchase.
- You cannot set a movie or i-motion to the standby screen when:
  - The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
  - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)
- Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.
- You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Set repeat play>
- The Set repeat play settings are retained after playing i-motion.
- If Set repeat play is set to “ON”, data that cannot be played are automatically skipped. Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are unavailable from i-motion.
- If you attempt to play i-motion whose playback is restricted, a message may appear indicating the restriction, and the repeat play may be stopped.

Playing movies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>

Select and register up to 10 i-motion or movies, and play them consecutively.

1 Folder list screen (p.337)▶Highlight “Playlist” and press (FUNC)▶“Edit playlist”▶Select No. for the movie▶Select a folder▶Select a movie▶Repeat to add

■ **To release an added movie**
▶Select a movie to release▶Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen▶“YES”



2 (Finish)

The i-motion folder list screen appears.
Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered movies are played repeatedly.

NOTE
- Deleting a movie or i-motion that has been added to a playlist removes the file from the playlist.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

1 Highlight “Playlist” on the i-motion “folder list” screen (p.337) and press (FUNC)▶Select any item

Add folder	**▶Enter a title** Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	You cannot rename the Playlist folder.
Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all movies/i-motion from the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders. i-motion stored in the Secret, Movable contents or miniSD folder are not deleted.
Edit playlist	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. “Playing movies in your preferred order”→p.342
Release playlist	Releases a playlist.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Copy movies stored in the Inbox folder, Camera folder or user-created folders under i-motion to the miniSD memory card.

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera, User-created folders>

1 Movie list screen (p.337)▶ (FUNC)▶"Copy to miniSD"▶Select any item

Copy starts.
It may take long to copy a large amount of data. Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process.

Copy this	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the highlighted movie.
Copy selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Copies movies you select.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Copies all movies.

NOTE

- ◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆The following shows the file name after copied:
  - File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001 to FFF: hexadecimal)
- ◆You cannot copy a movie when:
  - It is a Chara-den character with "File restricted"
  - It is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
  - There is little space available on the miniSD memory card
  - The miniSD memory card is not supported
  - An error occurs on the miniSD memory card
  - The miniSD memory card is being inserted

Copying movies stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy movies stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- Copied movies are saved to the Inbox folder under i-motion.

<Example: Movie list screen for the miniSD folder>

1 Movie list screen (p.337)▶ (FUNC)▶"Copy to phone"▶Select any item

Copy starts.
It may take long to copy a large amount of data. Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process.

Copy this	Copies the highlighted movie.
Copy selected	**▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Copies movies you select.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all movies.

NOTE

- ◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆You cannot copy a movie when:
  - It is not MP4
  - It is MP4 but unplayable
  - * You may be unable to copy some movies even when none of the above applies.
- ◆Movies larger than 800K bytes are truncated to the first 800K bytes and then copied. However, a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) whose file size exceeds 800K bytes cannot be truncated, which means that it cannot be copied.

<Edit movie>

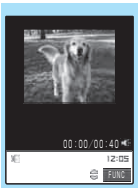
Editing Movies

- You cannot use the multi-task function while editing a movie.
- Editable movies→p.327

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera, User-created folders>

1 Movie list screen (p.337)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit i-motion"

The "edit movie" screen appears.



Edit movie
Function menu➡p.344

2 (FUNC)▶Select an editing method →p.344

NOTE

- ◆Editing a movie may impair the movie quality or increase/decrease the file size.

Continued on next page

◆While checking an edited movie, if you receive a call or fold the FOMA terminal or if the battery runs out, information currently fixed is saved. However, the information is not saved if the memory for movies is full.
◆The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

Function menu (edit movie screen)

Trim i-motion	"Clipping a part of a movie"→p.344
Trim for image	▶●▶**Press ● when you want to clip a frame**▶−**(Set)**▶**"YES"**▶**Select a folder** Clips the selected frame as a still image.
Rerecord sound	Erases the sound so that new sound can be recorded. "Rerecording sound"→p.344
Edit ticker	"Subtitling movies"→p.344
Trim for mail	"Clipping a movie to be attached to a message"→p.345
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the edited movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.243
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the edited movie.
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE

<Compose message>
◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
- The file size of the edited movie exceeds 500K bytes
- There are already 20 draft messages stored
- The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)

Clipping a part of a movie

1 Edit movie screen (p.343)▶−(FUNC)▶"Trim i-motion"▶−(Start)

Clipping starts.

■ **To start clipping from your desired frame**
▶●▶Press ● when you want to start clipping▶−(Start)

2 Press ● when you want to finish clipping▶−(End)

The clipped section of the movie is played. Playback stops automatically when it ends.

■ **To check the clipped section again**
▶−(Play)

3 ●▶●▶"YES"

NOTE

◆The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.
◆Clipping i-motion may lengthen playback duration.
◆A movie of QVGA (320 × 240) cannot be clipped.

Rerecording sound

Add new sound to a movie.

1 Edit movie screen (p.343)▶−(FUNC)▶"Rerecord sound"▶−(Start)

Recording starts.

■ **To start recording from your desired point**
▶●▶Play a movie until you want to start recording▶−(Start)

2 Press −(End) to finish recording

Movie playback continues. Press −(Start) and −(End) to record again.

3 Press ● to finish rerecording

■ **To check the rerecorded movie**
▶−(Play)

4 ●▶●▶"YES"

NOTE

◆Rerecording sound onto a movie with subtitles deletes the subtitles.
◆You may be unable to rerecord a movie if it was not shot with the built-in camera.

Subtitling movies

Default setting	**Character color: Black, Background color: White, Font size: Normal, Word alignment: Left, Blink/Underline/Scroll: OFF**

Add new subtitles (text displayed during playback) to a movie or edit the existing subtitles.
● You can edit up to 5 subtitles per movie. Each subtitle can contain up to 20 double-byte characters.

1 Edit movie screen (p.343)▶−(FUNC)▶"Edit ticker"▶"New"

2 −(Start)▶Enter subtitles

■ **To show subtitles from your desired point**
▶●▶Press ● when you want to show subtitles▶−(Start)

3 Set subtitle effects

Select "Finish setting" when you finish setting.

Font color	▶**Use ✣ to select a color** Sets the text color. To use another color palette, press −(Change).
Background color	▶**Use ✣ to select a color** Sets the background color. To use another color palette, press −(Change).

Font size	Selects “Normal” or “Large” as the font size.
Word alignment	Sets the text position. Select “Left”, “Center” or “Right”. This setting may be unavailable depending on the Scroll setting.
Blink	Specifies whether to flash subtitles.
Underline	Specifies whether to underline subtitles.
Scroll	Sets the scrolling mode.
• **OFF**	Cancels scrolling.
• **Scroll in** • **Scroll out** • **Scroll in&out**	**▶Select “Right to left”, “Left to right”, “Bottom to top” or “Top to bottom” as the scrolling direction**
Finish setting	Exits the subtitle effects settings.

4 ●▶Press ● when you want to finish subtitles▶−(End)

Repeat Steps 2 to 4 to add another subtitle.

■ **If the subtitle list appears**
▶−(Finish)
Go on to Step 6.

■ **To check the subtitled movie**
▶−(Play)

■ **To edit subtitles**
▶−(Edit)
Editing subtitles→p.345

5 Press −(FUNC) when you finish editing▶“Finish editing”

■ **To check the subtitled movie**
▶−(Play)

■ **To edit subtitles**
▶−(Edit)
Editing subtitles→p.345

6 ●▶●▶“YES”

NOTE

◆If you edit subtitles, the edited data cannot be specified as a ring tone.
◆The scrolling speed is set automatically to match the time from the start point to the end point.
◆Subtitle effects unsupported by FOMA N902iS may be deleted or altered.
◆You may be unable to edit subtitles if the movie was not shot with the built-in camera.

● Editing registered subtitles

● If you attempt to edit subtitles already added to a movie, a message appears warning you that the subtitle data may be deleted.

1 Edit movie screen (p.343)▶−(FUNC)▶“Edit ticker”▶“YES”▶“Edit”

The subtitle list screen appears.



■ **To check subtitle details**
▶Select a subtitle▶Check the details▶CLR

2 −(FUNC)▶Select any item

Change text	Edits subtitle text.
Change effect	Changes subtitle effects such as the font color, background color and scroll.
Change start po.	Resets the subtitle start point.
Change end point	Resets the subtitle end point.
Add ticker	**▶“<Available>”▶Add a subtitle**
Delete ticker	Deletes the highlighted subtitle.

3 Press −(Finish) when you finish editing

4 ●▶●“YES”

NOTE

◆You cannot edit a subtitle when no subtitles have been added.

● Clipping a movie to be attached to a message

● A movie whose size is larger than 290K bytes, which is shot with the built-in camera, can be clipped using this function.

1 Edit movie screen (p.343)▶−(FUNC)▶“Trim for mail”▶Select any item

Mail(L)	Clips a movie larger than 490K bytes to 490K bytes or smaller.
Mail(S)	Clips a movie larger than 290K bytes to 290K bytes or smaller.

2 ●▶Press ● when you want to start clipping▶−(Start)

Clipping starts.
Playback stops automatically when the size becomes the maximum that can be attached to a message.

■ **To check the clipped movie**
▶−(Play)

3 ●▶●▶“YES”

NOTE

◆A movie with subtitles inserted cannot be clipped with the subtitles remaining.
◆The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.
◆“Trim for mail” is unavailable for a movie of QVGA (320 × 240).

<Move contents>

Moving Movies/i-motion to the miniSD Memory Card

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the move process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction. In addition, data being moved may be deleted.

Moving i-motion stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Move movable i-motion with copyrights to the miniSD memory card. Moved i-motion are saved to the "Movable contents" folder (p.324) under i-motion.

1 Movie list screen (p.337)▶(FUNC)▶"Move to miniSD"▶Select any item

Move this	**▶Select the destination folder▶●** Moves the highlighted i-motion.
Move selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶●▶Use ◇ to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Moves i-motion you select.
Move all	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶●▶"YES"** Moves all listed movable i-motion in the folder (except for unmovable i-motion).

NOTE

◆To check whether an i-motion can be moved, see "allowable operation icon" (p.327).

◆If you press (Cancel) during the move to the miniSD memory card, the operation may not be canceled depending on the timing.

Moving i-motion stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Move i-motion stored in the "Movable contents" folder under i-motion (p.324) to the FOMA terminal.

- Moved i-motion are saved to the Inbox folder under i-motion.

1 Folder list screen (p.337)▶"Movable contents"▶Select a folder▶●

The "movie list" screen (p.337) appears.

2 (FUNC)▶"Move to phone"▶Select any item

Move this	Moves the highlighted i-motion.
Move selected	**▶Use ◇ to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Moves multiple i-motion you select.
Move all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Moves all listed movable i-motion in the folder (except for unmovable i-motion).

NOTE

◆Some i-motion cannot be moved to the FOMA terminal.

◆To check whether an i-motion can be moved, see "Image type icons" (p.326).

<Chara-den>

What is Chara-den?

Chara-den is a function that allows you to send a cartoon character, instead of your image, to the other party's FOMA terminal during a videophone call.

You can check actions available during a videophone call, or use a still image or movie as a character.

Displaying Chara-den characters

Default setting	Set image disp.: Fit in display Substitute image: ブンブン (Dimo)

- Downloading Chara-den characters →p.226
- The following are Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase:



ブンブン (Dimo)

©BVIG



ビーンズ (Beans)



サンデー (Sunday)

1 MENU▶Data box▶"Chara-den"

The "Chara-den list" screen appears.
Guide to the Chara-den list →p.347



Chara-den list

Function menu➡p.347

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

2 Select a Chara-den character

The “Chara-den player” screen appears.
Controlling a Chara-den character→p.347



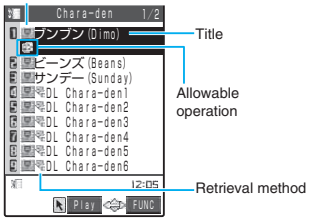
Chara-den player

Function menu➡p.348

Guide to the Chara-den list

- Icons for image types, acquisition methods and available settings→p.326
- Titles and file names→p.327

Image type (Chara-den)



Titles of nine Chara-den characters are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image (Chara-den) type, Chara-den acquisition method, and settings that can be specified for the Chara-den.

Using Chara-den characters

You can control a Chara-den character by selecting from preinstalled actions.

1 Chara-den player screen (p.347)▶Control a Chara-den character

■ To check the action list

▶(*)

Actions shown in the list depend on the character type. No. such as “1” or “#1” appearing on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.



■ To check the action details

▶Highlight an action▶●(Detail)▶Check the details▶●(Exit)

■ To change the action mode

▶●(Parts) or ●(Whole)

The mode is Parts action when appears and Whole action when appears.

(Whole):

The whole body of a Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

(Parts):

The parts (head, hands, feet, etc.) of a Chara-den character move.

■ To use keys to select actions during Chara-den playback

Press the following keys to perform character actions:

“Whole”:
1-digit number on the right side of the action name (1 to 9) or # 1 to # 9
“Parts”:
2-digit number on the right side of the action name (1 1 to 9 9)

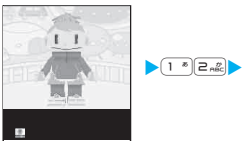
<Example: “怒る” (Angry) in Whole action mode>
* A Chara-den character is displayed normally (not mirror).

▶●(Whole)▶



<Example: “顔アップ” (Face close up) in Parts action mode>

▶●(Parts)▶



■ To have a character’s mouth synchronize your voice



Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if it were talking.
If you use the function menu or press one of the keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.

Function menu (Chara-den list screen)

Chara-den call	▶**Enter a phone number**▶ or ● Makes a videophone call with the highlighted Chara-den character set as an alternative image. Use ✣ to search a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the highlighted Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Rec.Chara-den	“Saving Chara-den character as image or movie”→p.348
Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted Chara-den character. The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.

Continued on next page

Chara-den info	“Chara-den information”→p.348
Memory info	Displays the amounts of Chara-den data stored and available space.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted Chara-den character.
• **Delete selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.363
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Deletes all Chara-den characters.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
• **Actual size**	Displays a character in the actual size.
• **Fit in display** (default)	Enlarges a character to the display size.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.

NOTE

<Memory info>

◆The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Delete>

◆If you attempt to delete a Chara-den character that has been set as an alternative image for videophone calls, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If “YES” is selected to delete the character, the preinstalled Chara-den “ブンブン(Dimo)” is set as an alternative image. If you have already deleted “ブンブン(Dimo)”, a preinstalled still image is transmitted as an alternative image.

◆If you attempt to delete a Chara-den character stored in the phonebook, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If “YES” is selected to delete the character, the one stored in the phonebook is also deleted.

Function menu (Chara-den player screen)

Chara-den call	▶**Enter a phone number**▶ or Makes a videophone call with the displayed Chara-den character set as an alternative image. Use to search a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Rec.Chara-den	“Saving Chara-den character as image or movie”→p.348
Switch Chara-den	▶**Select a character** Switches a Chara-den character to display.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change action	Changes the action mode.→p.347
Chara-den info	Displays information about the displayed Chara-den character.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
• **Actual size**	Displays a character in the actual size.
• **Fit in display** (default)	Enlarges a character to the display size.

Chara-den information

You can check the following:

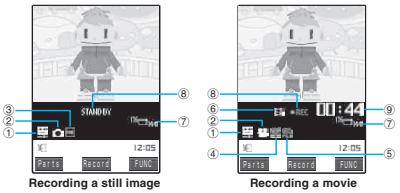
Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted” An unrestricted Chara-den character becomes restricted after it is downloaded.
Rec.File Restriction	“File restricted”/“Not restricted”
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired A blank appears here for a Chara-den character preinstalled at the time of purchase.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Move to miniSD	Always “No”
Substitute image	Where the alternative image is set When no image is set, “No setting” appears.

NOTE

◆“Rec.File Restriction” indicates whether or not the restrictions apply when an image or movie shot using Chara-den is edited, copied to the miniSD memory card or attached to a message.

Saving Chara-den character as image or movie <Rec.Chara-den>

■ Guide to the Rec.Chara-den screen



Recording a still image　Recording a movie

① Shows the currently selected action mode.

: Whole

: Parts

② Shows the shooting mode.

: Photo mode

: Movie mode

③ Shows the “Storage setting” (image).

NOR: Normal

FINE: Fine

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

: Super Fine

④ Shows the “Storage setting” (movie).

: Normal
: Prefer img qual
: Prefer time
: Prefer motion spd

⑤ Shows the “File size setting”.

: Restricted(Short)
: Restricted(Long)
: Local playback

⑥ Shows the “Movie type set”.

: Video + voice
: Video

⑦ Shows the size selected in “Select size”.

: QCIF(176 × 144)
: Small(117 × 96)

⑧ Shows the shooting status.

: Stand-by
: Shooting

⑨ Shows the remaining shooting time in the “min:sec” format (not shown until shooting starts).

Shooting still images

1 Chara-den player screen (p.347)▶●(FUNC)▶“Rec.Chara-den”

The “Rec.Chara-den” (image) screen appears.



Record Chara-den (image)

Function menu➡p.349

2 Perform an action▶●

Performing an action→p.347

■ **To perform a Parts action**

▶●(Parts)

■ **To compose an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted**

▶●(MAIL)▶Select “Attach image” or “Insert image”

■ **To retake the shot**

▶CLR

3 ●

The still image is saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

NOTE

◆No shooting tone is sounded when:

- “Phone” under Ring volume is set to “Silent”
- The ring volume is set to “Silent” e.g. in manner mode

Function menu (Rec.Chara-den screen)

Switch Chara-den	**▶Select a Chara-den character** Changes a Chara-den character to shoot.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change action	Changes the action mode. →p.347
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
• **Actual size**	Displays a character in the actual size.
• **Fit in display** (default)	Enlarges a character to the display size.
Movie mode*1	Switches between Photo mode and Movie mode.
Select size*2	Sets the size of character to shoot.
• **QCIF (176 × 144)** (default)	Shoots a character in 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF).
• **Small (117 × 96)**	Shoots a character in 117 dots wide × 96 dots high.
Movie type set*3	Sets the movie shooting mode.
• **Video + voice** (default)	Shoots a movie including sound.
• **Video**	Shoots a movie without any sound.
Storage setting*3	Sets the image quality and duration for movie shooting.
• **Normal** (default)	Shoots a movie with the typical quality and duration.
• **Prefer img qual**	Shoots a movie with quality higher. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
• **Prefer time**	Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
• **Prefer motion spd**	Shoots a movie with smoother motion.
Storage setting*2	Sets the file size for storing an image of QCIF (176 × 144) or Small (117 × 96). File size→p.187
File size setting*3	Sets the file size for shooting a movie.
• **Restricted (Short)** (default)	You can shoot up to 290K bytes. Select this option to shoot a typical movie and attach it to an i-mode message.
• **Restricted (Long)**	You can shoot up to 490K bytes. Select this option to shoot a large-sized movie and attach it to an i-mode message.
• **Local playback**	You can shoot up to 800K bytes.

*1 : When you are using Movie mode, “Photo mode” appears here. Photo mode is selected at the time of purchase.
*2 : The option cannot be set in Movie mode.
*3 : The option cannot be set in Photo mode.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Switch Chara-den>

◆Changing the Chara-den character sets the action mode to Whole.

● Shooting movies

1 Rec.Chara-den (image) screen (p.349)▶(FUNC)▶"Movie mode"

The "Rec.Chara-den" (movie) screen appears.



Record Chara-den (movie)

Function menu➡p.349

2 ▶Perform an action▶

Performing an action→p.347

■ **To perform a Parts action**

▶(Parts)

■ **To compose an i-mode message with a movie attached**

▶(MAIL)

■ **To check the movie**

▶(FUNC)▶"Check w/ playing"

■ **To retake the shot**

▶CLR

3

The movie is saved to the Camera folder under i-motion.

NOTE

◆Only QCIF(176×144) can be selected for the image size, which cannot be changed.

◆No shooting tone is sounded when:

- "Phone" under Ring volume is set to "Silent"
- The ring volume is set to "Silent" e.g. in manner mode

◆When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, a sound is recorded according to the "Select microphone" settings.

◆Performing an action during shooting may record key-pad sounds.

<Melody> MENU16

Playing Melodies

Preinstalled melodies, sound effects or melodies downloaded from sites can be played in the Melody folder under Data box.

Melodies stored on the miniSD memory card cannot be played. To play them, copy them to the phone beforehand.

1 MENU▶Data box▶"Melody"

The "folder list" screen appears.



Folder list

Function menu➡p.363

2 Select a folder

The "melody list" screen appears.

Melody list screen→p.350



Melody list

Function menu➡p.351

3 Select a melody

The "Melody" screen appears to play the melody.

Operation during playback →p.351



Melody

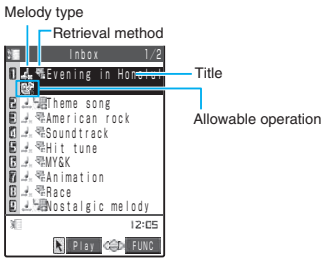
Function menu➡p.352

NOTE

◆Melodies are played at the volume set in "Phone" under the "Ring volume" settings. They are played at "Level 2" when "Silent" or "Step" is set.

◆You can enjoy rich-sound melody with 3D sound compatible melody.→p.130

Guide to the melody list



Titles of nine melodies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the melody type, melody acquisition method, and settings that can be specified for the melody.

■ Melody type icon

	MFi/SMF*1*2

*1 : "▮▮▶✕" is added to icons for melodies that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

*2 : A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. The entire melody can be played in "Melody" under Data box. You can also change the file names and titles of those melodies.

■ Acquisition method icons

No icon	Stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from site
	Copied from the miniSD memory card or a PC, acquired via infrared data exchange or Bar code reader

■ Allowable operation icon

	Can be attached to an i-mode message (10,000 bytes or smaller)
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Can be transferred via infrared data exchange
	Can be copied to the miniSD memory card

■ Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies.
The title appears on the melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.
The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.
If a file name you attempt to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "melodyxxx" (xxx: 3-digit number).
The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

Operation during melody playback

You can perform the following operations during melody playback:

Control keys	Operation
	Plays the previous or next melody
 (),  ()	Adjusts volume*1*2
 to  ,  ,  ,  ,	Stops playback
	Ends

*1 : After you adjust the volume, if you press ● or wait for about 2 seconds, the screen turns to the melody screen.
*2 : Adjusting the volume during playback is only a temporary change. When playback ends, the volume is restored to the level specified in "Ring volume".

Function menu (Melody list screen)

The melody list function menu varies depending on the folder containing the melody.

- Melody list function menu for Inbox, miniSD or user-created folders→p.351
- Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce→p.352

■ Melody list function menu for Inbox, user-created or miniSD folders

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted melody. The title can contain up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters.
Edit file name*2	**▶Edit a file name** Edits the file name of the highlighted melody. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "_" cannot be used.
Play melody*2	Plays the highlighted melody (Displays the melody screen).
Ring tone*2	Sets the highlighted melody as a ring tone.→p.128
File restriction*2	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted melody.
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Add desktop icon*2	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.148
Compose message*2	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted melody attached. →p.243
Send Ir data*2	"Transferring one Data at a Time" →p.367
Copy to miniSD*2	
• **Copy this**	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the highlighted melody.
• **Copy selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.363
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Copies all melodies.
Copy to phone*1	Copies a melody stored on the miniSD memory card to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted melody.
• **Copy selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.363
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all melodies.
Melody info	"Melody information"→p.352
Memory info	Displays the amounts of melody data stored and available space.

Continued on next page

Copy[*1]	Copies a melody to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand.→p.363
• **Copy this**	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the highlighted melody.
• **Copy selected**	Copies melodies you select.
• **Copy all**	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies all melodies.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted melody.
• **Delete selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.363
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Delete all melodies in the folder.
Sort[*2]	Sorts melodies by specified criteria.
Move	
• **Move this**	▶**Select the destination folder**▶**“YES”** Moves the highlighted melody to another folder.
• **Move selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.363
• **Move all**	▶**Select the destination folder**▶**“YES”** Moves all melodies stored in the folder to another folder.

*1 : The option appears only for melodies stored on the miniSD memory card.
*2 : You may be unable to attach ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-αppli, etc., depending on the data size.

NOTE

<Edit file name>
◆You cannot edit the name of a file-restricted melody but can edit the one transferred via infrared data exchange or OBEX.

<Compose message>
◆A MFi-formatted melody cannot be attached regardless of the acquisition method or the File restriction setting.
◆You cannot attach a melody whose file size exceeds 10,000 bytes.

<Melody info>
◆You may be unable to attach a melody to a message even if the file is unrestricted.

<Memory info>
◆The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Delete>
◆If you attempt to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the melody. If “YES” is selected to delete the melody, the corresponding ring tone or alarm tone is restored to default.

<Sort>
◆If you exit a sorted melody list, sort is released.
◆“By source” sorts melodies in the following order. Melodies with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected “By source”.
①Melody downloaded or acquired via i-αppli
②Melody acquired via infrared data exchange

■ Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce

Play melody	Plays the selected melody.
Ring tone	Sets the selected melody as a ring tone.→p.128

Function menu (Melody screen)

Ring tone	Sets the currently played melody as a ring tone.→p.128
Set repeat play[*1]	Plays melodies continuously in the folder.
Add desktop icon[*2]	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Compose message[*2]	Composes an i-mode message with the currently played melody attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243
Copy to miniSD[*2]	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies a melody to the miniSD memory card.
Melody info[*2]	“Melody information”→p.352

*1 : The option does not appear for the Voice announce folder.
*2 : The option does not appear for the Pre-installed or Voice announce folder.

● Melody information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File size	The file size in K bytes
File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted”
File classification	Melody file type “MFi” or “SMF”
Transfer for Repair[*1]	Whether or not the file can be moved when an error occurs→p.331
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Move to miniSD[*1]	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the document can be copied to the miniSD memory card.
Move to phone[*2]	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
Vibrator linkage	“ON”/“OFF” of Vibrator linkage
Illumination linkage	“ON”/“OFF” of Illumination linkage

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Ring tone*1	Where the ring tone is set When no melody is set, “No set” appears.

*1 : The option appears only for melodies stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2 : The option appears only for melodies stored on the miniSD memory card.

● Playing melodies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>

Select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them consecutively.

1 Folder list screen (p.350)▶Highlight “Playlist” and press (FUNC)▶“Edit playlist”▶Select No. for the melody▶Select a folder▶Select a melody▶Repeat to add

■ **To release an added melody**
▶Select a melody to release▶Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen



2 (Finish)
The melody folder list screen appears.
Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered melodies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

◆The playlist is released once you change the title and file name of one of the registered melodies or delete data.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

1 Highlight “Playlist” on the melody “folder list” screen and press (FUNC)▶Select any item

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	You cannot rename the Playlist folder.
Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all melody files stored in the Inbox, user-created, Voice announce and Playlist folders.
Edit playlist	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. “Playing melodies in your preferred order”→p.353
Release playlist	Releases a playlist.

miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card can be used as an external memory on the FOMA terminal. In addition, you can insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card adapter and use it on a PC, etc. that supports an SD memory card.
The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. N902iS supports up to 1G-byte miniSD memory cards (commercially available) (As of May, 2006).

- You can copy data such as phonebook entries, messages, bookmarks and still images or movies shot with the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, or copy data stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. Still images and movies stored on the miniSD memory card can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- Downloaded movies/i-motion that are stored on the FOMA terminal can be copied to the miniSD memory card if the data provider allows you to copy.
- When you operate or copy data on the miniSD memory card, the incoming call lamp flashes green (the lamp may not flash depending on the function).
- Visit the following site for the latest miniSD memory card:
NEC ワイワイもばいる
(WaiWai Mobile):
http://www.n-keitai.com/

Notes

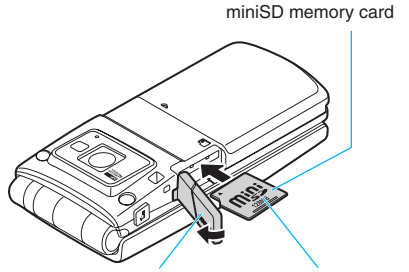
* Format the miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A miniSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal.→p.361

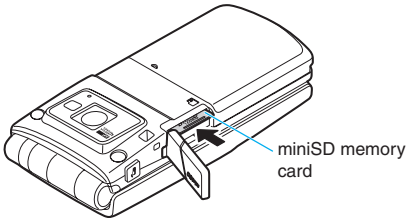
- Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting or removing the miniSD memory card.
- Do not put a label or sticker on the miniSD memory card.

Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card

Inserting

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting the miniSD memory card.





1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover

2 Insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card slot and push it in until it locks into place

Insert the miniSD memory card straight and slowly with the printed side upwards.
Fully inserting locks the card into place.

3 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

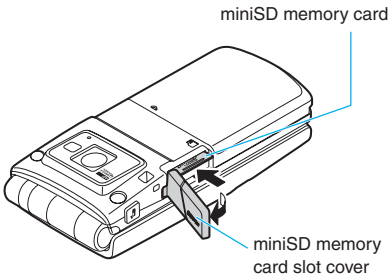
After you insert the miniSD memory card then turn on the FOMA terminal, "SD" appears on the screen.

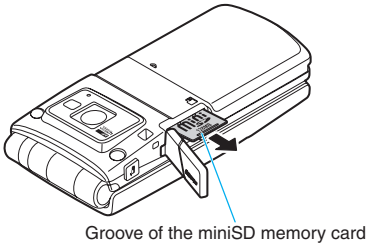
NOTE

◆If an error occurs on the miniSD memory card or if it is incorrectly formatted, "SD" appears on the screen.

Removing

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before removing the miniSD memory card.





1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover

2 Gently push the miniSD memory card inwards

When you push the miniSD memory card in then release it, the card pops out slightly.
Note that the card may fly out of the slot.

3 Slowly pull the miniSD memory card out of the slot

Grip the groove in the edge of the miniSD memory card and slowly pull the card out.

4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

NOTE

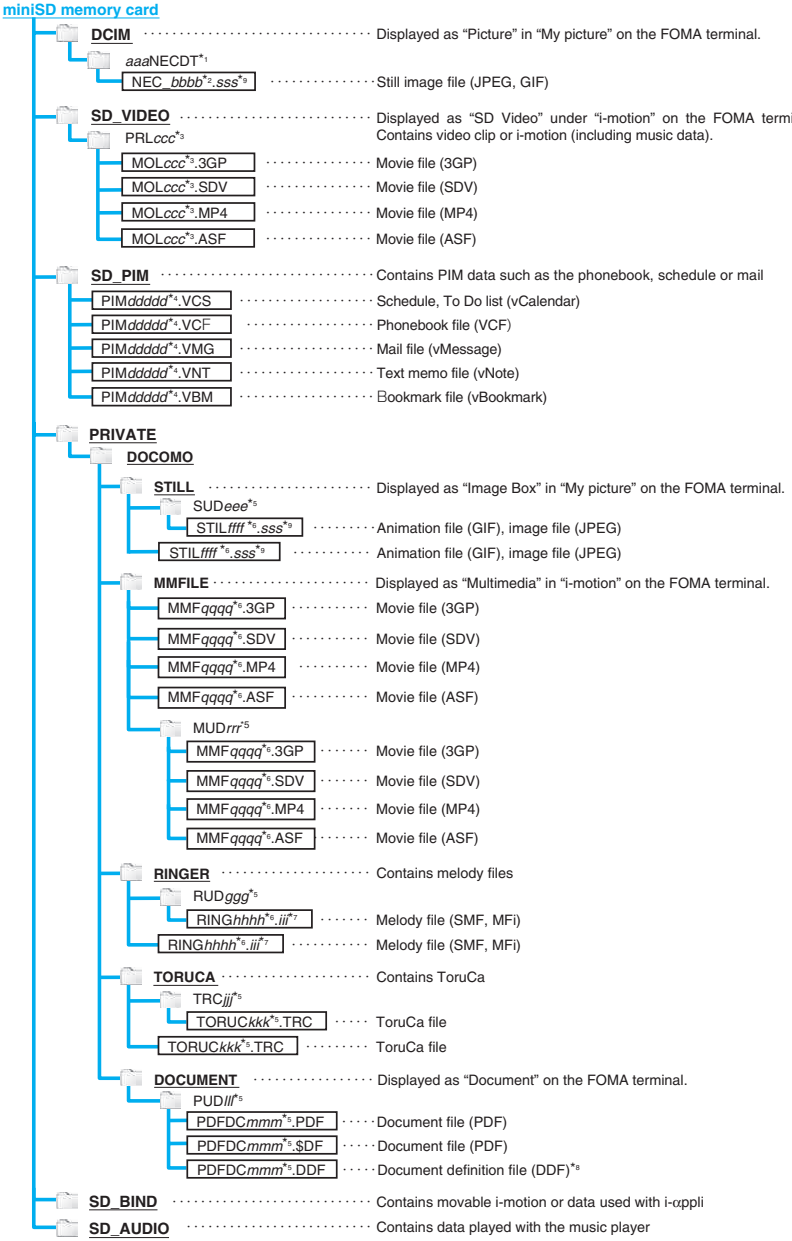
◆Do not insert or remove the miniSD memory card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. Doing so may damage the miniSD memory card or destroy data on the card.
◆The miniSD memory card could spring out of the FOMA terminal during insertion or removal.
◆After removing the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, keep the card in the protective case that came with the product. Storing the miniSD memory card in another case may cause the miniSD memory card to become unusable.
◆Check that the miniSD memory card is facing in the right direction, and hold it straight as you insert it into the FOMA terminal (Inserting the miniSD memory card at an angle may damage the card).
◆It may take long to select or display data stored on the miniSD memory card.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Folder tree on the miniSD memory card

If data are copied from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, the folders shown below will be created and the data will be saved to the corresponding folder. Under the folders, files and subfolders are automatically named as shown below.

- When copying data from a PC or another device to the miniSD memory card, create and name the folders and files as shown below:



Continued on next page

*1: “*aaa*” is a 3-digit number between 100 and 999. “NECDT” can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
*2: “*bbbb*” is a 4-digit number between 0001 and 9999. “NEC_” can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
*3: “*ccc*” is a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF, using 0 to 9 and A to F.
*4: “*ddddd*” is a 5-digit number between 00001 and 65535.
*5: “*eee*”, “*ggg*”, “*jjj*”, “*kkk*”, “*lll*”, “*mmm*” or “*rrr*” is a 3-digit number between 001 and 999.
*6: “*ffff*”, “*hhhh*” or “*qqqq*” is a 4-digit number between 0001 and 9999.
*7: “*iii*” is a file extension, MLD or MID.
*8: The folder appears only if it is viewed on a PC, etc.
*9: “*sss*” is a file extension, JPG or GIF.

NOTE

- The SD_PIM folder does not appear until you copy PIM data such as the phonebook.
- If two or more data are copied to the SD_PIM folder, “yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm” (year/month/day hour:minite) is automatically added to the title names.
- On some PCs, folder names and file names may appear in lower case.
- A file edited on a PC then saved to the miniSD memory card may not be displayed or played correctly on FOMA N902iS if you name the file using different characters from the folder/file names shown on p.355.
- If the miniSD memory card is formatted and SDVIDEO.DAT or DCIM.DAT is deleted, the settings of the destination folder are canceled. To reset the settings, launch “Select to save” (p.186, p.193). Turning off the FOMA terminal or inserting/removing the miniSD memory card does not cancel the settings.
- Do not use a PC to delete or move folders stored on the miniSD memory card. Doing so may prevent FOMA N902iS from reading the miniSD memory card.
- FOMA N902iS cannot recognize data that are stored on the miniSD memory card but are unsupported by FOMA N902iS.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from another device to the miniSD memory card. Also, another device may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card.
- Before purchasing the miniSD memory card reader/writer or PC card adapter, ask the manufacturer of the miniSD memory card if it is available on your FOMA terminal.
- A miniSD memory card formatted on a device other than FOMA N902iS may not function correctly.

Number of files storable on the miniSD memory card

The number of files storable on the miniSD memory card varies depending on the memory capacity of the miniSD memory card. The following table shows the maximum number of folders that can be created and the maximum number of files that can be saved to each folder. If a folder is added to change the copy destination, more files can be stored on the miniSD memory card. Note that the maximum number of files storable may vary depending on the file sizes.

Folder	Max. number of folders	Max. number of files storable in each folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999
MMFILE	999	9,999
DOCUMENT	999	999
RINGER	999	9,999
TORUCA	999	999

Use the “Categories function menu” (p.358) to check the memory capacity and available capacity of the miniSD memory card. The displayed memory capacity will be lower than the one described on the miniSD memory card.

- If there is insufficient space left on the miniSD memory card and you attempt to copy phonebook entries, own number, schedule entries, To Do list entries, text memo, messages or bookmarks, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be copied due to lack of space. In cases of images, movies and i-motion, “Copy to miniSD” and “Move to miniSD” on the function menu are grayed out. In this case, insert another miniSD memory card or delete any unnecessary data from the card, then retry to copy the data.
- Music data cannot be copied from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card (SD_AUDIO folder).
- When the number of files in the folder to which a file is to be copied has already reached the limit then you attempt to copy:
  - Data to other than the SD-PIM folder, a new folder is automatically created and the file will be saved to the folder except if a still image shot with the built-in camera is directly saved to the miniSD memory card.
  - Data to the SD_PIM folder, a message appears indicating that the folder is full of data, and the file cannot be copied to the miniSD memory card.
- When the miniSD memory card is full, you cannot add another folder for images, movies or i-motion, or edit titles. Delete any unnecessary data and retry.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

The following table shows data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card:

Data type	Details
Still image	JPEG and GIF data stored in Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, miniSD and user-created folders
Movie	MP4 data stored in Inbox, Camera, miniSD and user-created folders
Phonebook	Name, Reading, Phone number, Mail address, Memo, Address, Birthday, Image, Memory number*1, Secret store*2, Group number*3, Group name*3, PushTalk phone number*3, PushTalk group number*3, PushTalk group name*3
Schedule	Date(from), Date(to), Summary, Contents, Secret store*2, Category*4, Alarm, Repeat
To Do list	Contents, Category*5, Completion date, Period, Change status, Priority, Alarm
Text memo	Make date, Last modify date, Category, Contents
Received message*6, Sent message*6, Draft message, SMS	Unread/read, Message type, Saved in, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/send date, Message, Attach
Bookmark*6 *7	URL, Title
PDF data	PDF documents stored in Inbox, miniSD and user-created folders
Melody	MFi/SMF melodies stored in Inbox, miniSD and user-created folders
ToruCa	ToruCa stored in ToruCa, miniSD and user-created folders

*1 : Data cannot be copied by “Copy & add this”.
*2 : Secret store shows if it is stored as a secret data.
*3 : Data can be copied by “Copy all”.
*4 : Category is the icon information setting that was set in Schedule.
*5 : Category is set in To Do list.
*6 : Folder names remain unchanged after you copy all of received messages, sent messages and bookmarks to the miniSD memory card.
*7 : An i-mode bookmark copied from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal is saved to the “Bookmark” folder under “i-mode menu”. A full browser bookmark is saved to the “Bookmark” folder under “Internet(Full Browser)”.

NOTE

- If a schedule with a user icon set is copied, the “Category” information is not transferred.
- A data cannot be copied if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal. However, a “File restricted” data on the FOMA terminal can be copied.

Copying Data Stored on the FOMA Terminal to the miniSD Memory Card

Copy one or more data stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card.
“Copy this”, “Copy selected” and “Copy all” are the methods to copy data stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. →p.353
- To copy a still image or movie, see p.334 and 343.

■ To copy one data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select “Copy to miniSD” then “Copy this” from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy. Alternatively, select “Copy to miniSD” from the function menu on the detail screen of the data.

■ To copy two or more data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select “Copy to miniSD” then “Copy selected” from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored in a folder on the FOMA terminal (received messages, sent messages, bookmarks)

Select “Copy to miniSD” then “Copy all” from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select “Copy from phone” from the function menu on the category list screen. →p.358
You can also copy all data in the following methods:

- Phonebook, schedule, To Do list, Draft mail, Text memo
  Select “Copy to miniSD” then “Copy all” from the function menu on the list or detail screen of the data you want to copy.
- Recieved mail, Sent mail, Bookmark
  Select “Copy all to miniSD” from the function menu on the folder list screen.

NOTE

- If you copy a message that includes the i-αppli launch settings, the settings are deleted from the message.
- If you copy a secret data (phonebook, schedule), the secret is released.
- If all data are copied to the miniSD memory card, secret data (phonebook, schedule) are also copied, except data stored in the Secret folder.
- If all phonebook data are copied, the “Own number” data and all PushTalk phonebook data are also copied.

Continued on next page

◆If one phonebook data is copied, PushTalk phonebook data are not copied.
◆"Copy all" cannot be selected from the phonebook detail screen or message detail screen.
◆Copying messages may delete some types of files attached.
◆While copying SD-PIM data such as the phonebook, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call, use i-mode or use data communication.
◆If you copy one entry in "Own number" but do not "Display all data", the name, reading, own number and the first stored mail address are saved as phonebook. If you "Display all data" to copy one data, all the stored data are saved as phonebook.
◆Receiving a call, message or alarm notification cancels copying still images or movies to the miniSD memory card.
◆You may be unable to copy depending on the data size of ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-αppli.
◆When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and data are saved to the new folder.
◆When you attempt to copy data stored in Data Box to the miniSD memory card while i-αppli is writing data to the miniSD memory card, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be copied.

<SD-PIM>

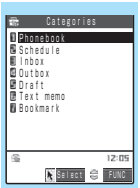
Previewing Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card

Display and check data stored on the miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.353
- While running SD-PIM or displaying the data details, you cannot launch another function.
- Previewing images and playing movies →p.325, 337

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ "SD-PIM"

The "Categories" screen appears.

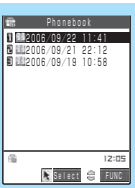


Categories

Function menu➡p.358

2 Select any item

The "file list" screen appears.



File list

Function menu➡p.359

3 Select a file

The "Data list" screen appears.



Data list

Function menu➡p.359

4 Select a data

The "Data detail" screen appears.



Data detail

Function menu➡p.359

NOTE

◆A Deco-mail message appears without decoration.
◆"" appears for a bookmark added on the i-mode browser screen, and "" for the one added on the full browser screen.

Function menu (Categories screen)

miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.→p.361
Copy from phone*	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data stored in the highlighted item to the miniSD memory card.
miniSD format	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Formats the miniSD memory card.
Check miniSD	Checks the miniSD memory card. Checking the miniSD memory card may fix problems.

* : If "Schedule" is selected, you can select "Schedule", "To Do list" or "All". If "Bookmark" is selected, you can select "i-mode brw.", "Full brw." or "All".

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

NOTE

<Check miniSD>

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during Check miniSD. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot check unformatted or incompatible miniSD memory cards.
- The incoming call lamp flashes green during Check miniSD.
- If you press (Quit) or or receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call, the Check miniSD is stopped and "" appears.
- If the Check miniSD is interrupted, some data may remain to be recovered. Check miniSD again.
- It may take long to check the miniSD memory card depending on the amount of data.
- Some data may not be recovered depending on the miniSD memory card.
- If Check miniSD is performed, the titles of data stored on the miniSD memory card are renamed to the file names.
  Titles and file names →p.327

Function menu (file list screen)

- Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW select/Copy & OW all) overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the miniSD memory card.
  Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted file. The title can contain up to 15 double-byte or 31 single-byte characters.
Copy & add	Copies data to the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy & add this**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data in the highlighted file.
• **Copy & add select**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶(Finish)▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data in the selected files.
• **Copy & add all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data in all files.
Copy & overwrite*1	Overwrites data on the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy & OW this**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Overwrites all data in the highlighted file.
• **Copy & OW select**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶(Finish)▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"▶"YES" or "NO" for phonebook** Overwrites all data in the selected files.
• **Copy & OW all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"▶"YES" or "NO" for phonebook** Overwrites all data in all files.
Copy from phone*2	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data stored in the selected item from the FOMA terminal.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted file.
• **Delete selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.363
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all files stored in the selected item.
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

*1 : In case of Schedule, To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).
*2 : If "Schedule" is selected, you can select "Schedule", "To Do list" or "All". If "Bookmark" is selected, you can select "i-mode brw.", "Full brw." or "All".

NOTE

<Delete this> <Delete selected> <Delete all>

- If a file to delete is read-only, a message appears asking whether to delete the file.

Function menu (data list/detail screen)

- Copy & OW all overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the miniSD memory card.
  Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Copy & add this	Copies the highlighted or displayed data to the FOMA terminal.
Copy & add all*1	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data stored in a file to the FOMA terminal.
Copy & OW all*1	**■Phonebook** **▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"▶"YES" or "NO"** **■Schedule*2, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Text memo, Bookmark** **▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"** Copies and overwrites all data stored in a file to the FOMA terminal.
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

*1 : Only the data list screen appears.
*2 : To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).

Copying Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card to the FOMA Terminal

Copy, add or overwrite data stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.353

Copying to the FOMA terminal

To add all data stored in a file

"Copy & add" - "Copy & add this" from the "file list function menu"→p.359

"Copy & add all" from the "data list function menu"→p.359

To add all data stored in the selected files

"Copy & add" - "Copy & add select" from the "file list function menu"→p.359

To add all data stored in all files

"Copy & add" - "Copy & add all" from the "file list function menu"→p.359

To add one selected data

"Copy & add this" from the "data list/detail function menu"→p.359

Overwriting to the FOMA terminal

To overwrite all data stored in a file

"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW this" from the "file list function menu"→p.359

"Copy & OW all" from the "data list function menu"→p.359

To overwrite all data stored in the selected files

"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW select" from the "file list function menu"→p.359

To overwrite all data stored in all files

"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW all" from the "file list function menu"→p.359

NOTE

◆When copying a large image that is attached to a received or sent message, it is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding message. If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.

◆When copying a movie that is attached to a received or sent message, it is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding message. If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.

◆You cannot copy data in the phonebook while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.

◆It may take long to read or write data on the miniSD memory card if there are many files stored.

◆If the memory of the FOMA terminal becomes full of data during the copy process, the copy is interrupted. Already copied data are saved.

◆While copying SD-PIM data such as the phonebook, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call, use i-mode or use data communication.

◆If you receive a call, message or alarm notification during the still image copy process, the copy continues. If you receive a call, message or alarm notification during the movie copy process, the copy is interrupted.

<To use the file list function menu to copy>

◆If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add select/Copy & add all) or Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW select/Copy & OW all) is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not registered when "Copy & add" is selected.

◆If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add select/Copy & add all) is selected but group names on the miniSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to Group 00 in the phonebook.

◆"Copy & add" (Copy & add this/Copy & add select/Copy & add all) cannot copy:

- A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
- A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one

<To use the data list/detail function menu to copy>

◆If Copy & add all or Copy & OW all is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not registered when "Copy & add all" is selected.

◆If Copy & add all is selected but group names on the miniSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to Group 00 in the phonebook.

◆"Copy & add this" and "Copy & add all" cannot copy:

- A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
- A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one

◆If one phonebook data is copied, PushTalk phonebook data are not copied.

◆When the Outbox is full, copying one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected message.

◆When the Inbox is full, copying one received message overwrites the oldest unprotected read message.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Managing the miniSD Memory Card

Format the miniSD memory card or check how data are used.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.353

Formatting the miniSD memory card

* Format the miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A miniSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal.

Format the miniSD memory card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- Formatting the miniSD memory card deletes all data stored on the card. Before formatting the card, make sure that the stored data are not important to you.

1 Categories screen (p.358)▶ (FUNC)▶"miniSD format"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

NOTE

◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the format process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
◆Data saved to the miniSD memory card are not guaranteed if the format was interrupted.
◆The incoming call lamp flashes green during the format process.
◆If you press (Quit) or or receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call, the format is stopped and " " appears. Format the card again.

Checking how the miniSD memory card is used

Check the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.
Number of files storable on the miniSD memory card→p.356

1 Categories screen (p.358)▶ (FUNC)▶"miniSD info"

Using the FOMA Terminal as miniSD Reader/Writer

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the miniSD memory card inserted, and you can read/write data stored on the miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.353
- To use the FOMA terminal as miniSD reader/writer, you need the following:

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB Cable (optional)
PC	PC with USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1 based) supporting FOMA USB Cable (optional)
Operating System	Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)

1 USB mode setting screen (p.362)▶"miniSD mode"

If "miniSD mode" is set, " " appears.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via the FOMA USB Cable

" " will appear when miniSD mode is set, the miniSD memory card is inserted and the FOMA USB Cable is connected.
The miniSD memory card appears in the My Computer window on a PC as storage memory (external storage device).
To remove the FOMA USB Cable, follow the Windows safe removal procedure.

NOTE

◆You cannot change the USB mode setting or access the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal while data is being transferred between a PC and the miniSD memory card. You cannot access the miniSD memory card from a PC while data is being transferred between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card.

■Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while the incoming call lamp is flashing to indicate that data is being exchanged between a PC and the FOMA terminal. Doing so may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.

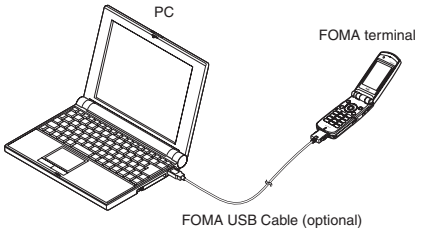
Setting USB Mode

<USB mode setting> Default setting: Communication mode

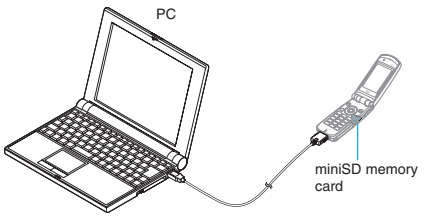
Set USB mode to use various functions by connecting the FOMA terminal to your PC or printer.

- USB mode is categorized into “Communication mode”, “miniSD mode” and “Print mode”.

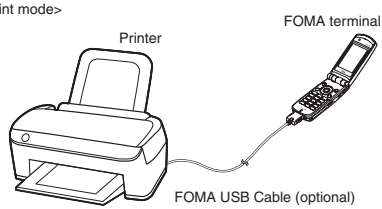
<Communication mode>



<miniSD mode>



<Print mode>



1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “External connection” ▶ “USB mode setting”

The “USB mode setting” screen appears.



USB mode setting

2 Select any item

Communication mode	Uses the external connector for packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange via cable connection. • “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC • “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected and data are ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC
miniSD mode	Uses the external connector as a miniSD memory card reader/writer. • “ ” : The FOMA USB Cable is not connected • “ ” : The FOMA USB Cable is connected (You cannot transfer data between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, display data in memory or format the miniSD memory card)
Print mode	Uses the external connector for PictBridge print. • “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be printed • “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable is connected and data are ready to be printed

NOTE

◆Communication mode is set when you remove/insert the battery pack.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Working with Folders and Files

Add folders on the folder/miniSD folder list screens of My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document to organize the files.

Creating, editing and deleting folders

Function menu (folder list screen)

- Function menu appearing when highlighting a folder under i-motion or Melody→p.342, 353

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	**▶Edit a folder name** Edits the name of the added folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** You can delete a folder containing data.
Delete all*	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all data you have stored. However, data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted.

* : "Delete all image" appears for My picture, and "Delete all" for i-motion and Melody.

NOTE

<Edit folder name>

◆You can rename only user-created folders.

<Delete folder> <Delete all image> <Delete all>

◆You can delete only user-created folders.

◆If you attempt to use "Delete folder", "Delete all image" and "Delete all" to delete an image or movie that has been set to a screen, an original animation or a user icon for Schedule, or if you attempt to use "Delete folder" or "Delete all" to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set to a play-list or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens, ring tones or alarms restore to default.
- Original animation or playlist is released.
- The Schedule alarm notification screen is replaced with the one to which "🕒" was specified.

◆Even if the original image is deleted by "Delete folder" or "Delete all image", the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.

◆If the original movie is deleted by "Delete folder" or "Delete all", the same one attached to a message is also deleted.

Function menu (miniSD folder list screen)

For ToruCa, see "ToruCa folder list function menu" (p.311).

- The following function menu also appears on the Movable contents folder list screen (p.324) under i-motion.

Edit folder name*1	**▶Edit a title** Edits a folder title. The title can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.*2
Create folder*1	**▶Edit a title** Creates a folder. The folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.*2
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes the highlighted folder.
DPOF Print*1 *3	"Printing Stored Images"→p.375

*1 : The option does not appear for "Image Box".
*2 : The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for "Melody".
*3 : The option does not appear for "i-motion", "Melody" or "My document".

NOTE

<Create folder>

◆You cannot create a folder in the "Image Box" on the FOMA terminal but on your PC.

◆The Movable contents folder can contain up to 65,535 folders, each of which can contain up to 65,535 files.

<Delete folder>

◆A message appears asking whether to delete a folder if the folder:

- Is read-only on a PC, etc.
- Contains a file

Selecting multiple data

Delete multiple images or movies at the same time, or move them to another folder within the item.

1 Image list (Picture list) function menu, etc.

■ **To delete**
▶"Delete"▶"Delete selected"

■ **To move**
▶"Move"▶"Move selected"▶Select the destination folder

■ **To copy**
▶"Copy to miniSD" ("Copy to phone"/"Copy")▶ "Copy selected"▶Select the destination folder (When "Copy to phone" appears, a folder is not to be selected)
The multi-selection screen appears.

Continued on next page

2 Use ◉ to select an image▶● ▶−(Finish)▶“YES”

If it is the Title list, use ◉ to select a checkbox (□), and press ●.



Multiple-choice

Function menu➡p.364

Function menu (multi-selection screen)

Select all	Selects all images and movies.
Release all	Deselects all the selected images and movies.
Title name, Picture*	Switches between Picture and Title name.

* : The option appears only when the folder is “My picture”.

When there is insufficient memory or when there are too many items stored

When you attempt to save still images or movies or download an image, melody, i-motion or Chara-den character from a site, if there is insufficient memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full, a message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary data to save new data.

1 Select “YES” on the message

■ **To cancel saving the data**

▶“NO”

2 Select a folder▶Select data to delete

Selecting multiple data→p.34, 363

3 −(Finish)▶“YES”

−(Finish) does not appear until enough memory is allocated to save the data.

NOTE

◆When you attempt to delete an image or movie that has been set to a screen or a melody that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the file. If “YES” is selected to delete the file, the corresponding screen or ring tone is restored to default.

<Forwarding image>

Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting: ON

Prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent when copying phonebook data to the miniSD memory card or transferring phonebook data via infrared data exchange or data exchange (OBEX).

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶“Forwarding image”▶“OFF”

■ **To transfer**

▶“ON”

<Infrared data exchange/OBEX>

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/Cable Connection

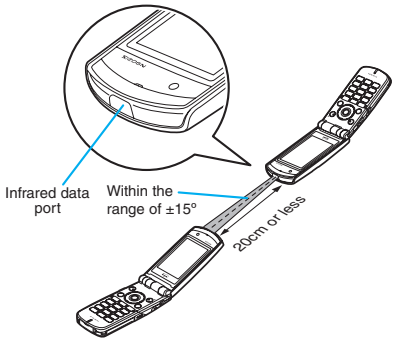
The infrared data exchange or cable connection allows the FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received messages with another FOMA terminal or a PC.

- The infrared data exchange with another FOMA terminal or a PC supporting the feature allows you to transfer one data at a time or multiple data at the same time. “” appears during infrared data exchange.
- Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can receive one data at a time from the PC via OBEX (protocol for data communication), or exchange multiple data at the same time between the FOMA terminal and the PC. “” appears while a cable is connected.
- You can transfer the following:
  - Received mail
  - Sent mail
  - Draft mail
  - i-mode bookmark
  - Full browser bookmark
  - Phonebook
  - PDF data*
  - ToruCa*
  - Own number data
  - To Do list
  - Text memo
  - Schedule
  - Image*
  - Movie (i-motion)*
  - Melody*

* : You cannot send all data via infrared data exchange.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Transferring data via infrared data exchange



- Set the receiving FOMA terminal to standby, and keep 20cm or less between the FOMA terminals.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared data ports are aligned on the same level and facing each other.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals during data exchange.
- Do not place anything between the FOMA terminals or cover the infrared data ports.
- If data exchange is finished unsuccessfully, adjust the positions then retry the exchange.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed under direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.

Transferring data via cable connection

- To transfer data, you need the software such as “FOMA N902iS Data Link Software”.
  “Data Link Software”→p.472
- Before transferring data, set “USB mode setting” to “Communication mode”.→p.362

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Install the N902iS communication setting file (driver).→p.423
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal’s battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal’s battery is fully charged. Also check the PC’s power.
- All data on the FOMA terminal may be deleted if an error occurs while transferring all from a PC to the FOMA terminal. Before transferring all, check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal’s battery level and the PC’s power.

Note on transferring data

Before data transfer

- You cannot transfer data while another function is running. Exit all other functions before transferring. You cannot run another function while transferring data.
- You cannot transfer data while making/receiving a voice call/videophone call/Push-to-Talk call or using i-mode, packet communication or 64K data communication.→p.470
- You cannot transfer data while Lock all, Self mode or Omakase Lock is set.
- You cannot receive data stored in the phonebook while “Restrict dialing” is set. However, you can send data with “Restrict dialing” and data in “Own number”.
- Whether you can transfer data may depend on the status of the other party’s FOMA terminal. If you transfer with the terminal whose model is different from yours, it may not reflect the settings of received messages or bookmark folder tree, or may not receive a Deco-mail message correctly.
- The data transfer function via infrared data exchange or cable connection conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard. You may be unable to exchange data with the terminal or a PC that does not conform to IrMC1.1. Some data may not be transferred correctly even if the terminal or application of the other party conforms to IrMC1.1.
- When transferring a still image, melody, movie/i-motion, PDF document, PushTalk phonebook or ToruCa via cable connection, which does not comply with IrMC, you need the transferring software compatible with FOMA N902iS.
- You may be unable to transfer data via infrared data exchange if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected.

During data transfer

- The FOMA terminal is out of range, which means that you cannot make/receive a voice call/videophone call/Push-to-Talk call or use i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication or 64K data communication. However, the FOMA terminal may receive an incoming call or message immediately after starting data transfer. In this case, the transfer will be canceled. After the transfer is finished, the out of range status may continue for a while.
- Infrared data exchange will be canceled and a message appears asking whether to continue the communication when:
  - The receiving device does not receive data within 30 seconds or so
  - The sending device cannot find the receiving device

  Select “YES” to retry the communication. Select “NO” to cancel the communication.
  If you do not select “YES” or “NO” within 30 seconds or so, the infrared data exchange will be automatically finished.

Continued on next page

- It may take long to transfer a large amount of data. The receiving device may be unable to receive a large amount of data. It may take long to transfer the phonebook because stored images are also transferred. To shorten the sending time, you can set “Forwarding image” to “OFF”, so that images stored in the phonebook are not transferred.

Data to be transferred

- Data received by the FOMA terminal are saved as follows:

Data	Destination/Order	
Still image/ image	The first in the Inbox folder.	
Movie/ i-motion		
Melody		
PDF data		
ToruCa	The first in the ToruCa folder.	
Phone-book[*1]	The lowest memory number available between “010” and “699”. If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the lowest memory number available between “000” and “009”.	
Own number data	The lowest memory number available between “010” and “699”.	
Schedule	In date order of received schedules.	
To Do list	The first in the To Do list.	
Received mail	(Receive one)	The Inbox folder in date order of received messages.
	(Receive all)	User-created folders or Trash box folder according to the folder tree on the sender.
Sent mail	(Receive one)	The Outbox folder in date order of sent messages.
	(Receive all)	User-created folders according to the folder tree on the sender.
Draft mail	The Draft folder in date order of draft messages.	
Text memo	The first <Not recorded>.	
i-mode bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under i-mode menu.
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under i-mode menu in the same order as on the sender.[*2]
Full browser bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under Internet (Full Browser).
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under Internet (Full Browser) in the same order as on the sender.[*2]

*1 : The order in the PushTalk phonebook cannot be transferred via infrared data exchange or cable connection. The entries are registered in received order, which means that the memory number order will apply.

*2 : The entries may not be registered in the same order, depending on the sender’s model.

  - Receiving all still images deletes all the images stored in the phonebook.
  - Receiving all the entries of the phonebook saves still images stored in the phonebook you received to the Inbox folder under “My picture”. However if the amount of data exceeds the storage limit of “My picture”, the exceeding images are deleted to create a phonebook, and a message appears indicating that some images could not be saved.
  - Titles of still images, movies, i-motion or PDF documents can contain up to 9 double-byte characters or 18 single-byte characters. Titles of melodies can contain up to 50 single-byte characters. If the length of a title exceeds the maximum, the exceeding part will be truncated.
  - The FOMA terminal may not properly receive some symbols or pictographs entered in a message or phonebook.
- You cannot send or receive:
  - UIM phonebook, SMS
  - Data stored in the Secret folder
  - Frame data (can be received only), Flash movie
  - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document with FOMA card operational restriction
- You cannot receive:
  - Image other than JPEG or GIF
  - Movie other than MP4 or 3GP
  - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document whose size is beyond the capacity of the FOMA terminal
- You cannot save if:
  - You receive a bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
  - You receive a schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
  - You receive a schedule or To Do list data while the clock is not set
  - The number of data stored has already reached the limit or there is no memory available and you receive the same type of data
- Note the following when you transfer phonebook data:
  - The data to be transferred are name, reading, phone number, mail address, ZIP code, address, memo, birthday, still image and icon info setting. When more than one phone numbers and addresses are stored on the phonebook, all the phone numbers and mail addresses are transferred.
  - The Secret code cannot be transferred.
  - If a phonebook entry stored as a secret data is transferred via infrared data exchange, the Secret is released before the transfer.
  - When all phonebook entries are transferred, they are sent in the memory number order.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

- The “Own number” data is sent when all phonebook entries are transferred. The personal data of “Own number” stored on the receiving device are overwritten (excluding the phone number).
- Some pictographs or symbols in a phonebook entry may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
- When one data is transferred at a time, only UIM phonebook entries are transferred. When all data are transferred, PushTalk phonebook entries are also transferred.

● Note the following when you transfer messages:
- A large image acquisition information or i-αppli launch information is deleted when you send a message. A file-restricted data is also deleted. Some still images are deleted depending on the format. However, even a file-restricted data can be sent if it is a sent message or draft message received via cable connection or copied from the miniSD memory card.
- If there is no enough space in the Inbox folder, messages in the Trash box folder are deleted and the received one is saved to the Inbox. If the size of the received message is larger than the available space, the message overwrites the oldest unprotected message that has been already read.
- If there is no space available in the Outbox folder, receiving one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected sent message in the Outbox folder.
- Receiving all messages deletes all existing messages and user-created folders before reception.
- You cannot transfer the Inbox folder or Outbox folder for a mail-connected i-αppli. All messages in the folder are saved to the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- Some pictographs or symbols in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
- If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.
- You cannot transfer data inserted into an i-mode message.
- The “Color coding” setting set on the Inbox screen or Outbox screen cannot be transferred.

● Note the following when you transfer ToruCa data:
- The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detailed information. The detail data can be acquired on the recipient side. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the received ToruCa.
- You may be unable to transfer depending on the data size of ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-αppli.

Transferring one Data at a Time

Exchange one data at a time between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

● You cannot send a data at a time from the FOMA terminal to a PC via cable connection.
● The progress bar indicates the amount of data that has been sent. Transferring a PDF document may pop up the bar twice even if the data is properly transferred.

Sending one data at a time via infrared data exchange <Send Ir data>

Select “Send Ir data” from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: Send one phonebook data>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶(−)(FUNC)▶“Send Ir data”

2 Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶“YES”

Make sure that the other party is set to standby.
Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶“NO”

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶(−)(Quit)

Receiving one data at a time via infrared data exchange <Receive Ir data> MENU 79

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶“Receive Ir data”

The “Receive Ir data” screen appears.



Receive Ir data

2 “Receive”▶Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶Receive data from the other FOMA terminal

Data transfer starts.
The progress bar may not appear depending on the other party.

3 “YES”

A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored.
The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 30 seconds or so after the data are received.

■ **To cancel saving received data**
▶“NO”

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆Even if you select “Receive”, you may receive all Ir data if the other party sends all. In this case, the FOMA terminal performs the Receive all operation.

◆Selecting “Add desktop icon” from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Receiving one data at a time via cable connection <Write one>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

1 Use the transferring software on a PC to send one from the PC

2 Send data from a PC

A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator showing the communication speed.

3 “YES”

A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed. The received data will be discarded if you do not operate your FOMA terminal at all for 30 seconds or so after you receive the data.

■ **To cancel saving received data**

▶“NO”

Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time

Exchange all data between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- Transferring all data overwrites the data stored on the FOMA terminal. The stored data, including protected messages or secret data such as phonebook and schedule, are deleted. However, frames, Flash movies or secret data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted. Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.
- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. “Session number”→p.368
- The progress bar indicates the number of data that has been sent. A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator, or it may seem different between the parties even if the data are being transferred successfully.
- Transferring all may change the order of data on the recipient side.

Session number

- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. Before sending or receiving all, the sender and recipient should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number then both enter the same number.

Sending all data via infrared data exchange <Send all Ir data>

Select “Send all Ir data” from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: Send all phonebook data>

1 Phonebook list screen (p.115)▶ −(FUNC)▶“Send all Ir data”

2 Enter your security code▶Enter the session number

“Session number”→p.368

3 Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶“YES”

Make sure that the other party is set to standby.
Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ **To cancel the transfer**

▶“NO”

■ **To exit during transfer**

▶−(Quit)

Receiving all data via infrared data exchange <Receive all Ir data>

1 Receive Ir data screen (p.367)▶“Receive all”

2 Enter your security code▶Enter the session number

“Session number”→p.368

3 Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶“YES”

■ **To cancel the transfer**

▶“NO”

4 Press “YES” on the Overwrite confirmation screen

■ **To cancel the transfer**

▶“NO”

5 Receive all data from the other FOMA terminal

Data transfer starts.

■ **To exit during transfer**

▶−(Quit)

NOTE

◆Selecting “Add desktop icon” from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Transferring all data via cable connection <Write all/Read all>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

<Example: Send all data from the FOMA terminal to a PC>

1 Use the transferring software on a PC to send all data from the FOMA terminal

It is also required to enter the session number on the PC.
Enter a 4-digit number as the session number.

2 Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal▶Enter the session number on the FOMA terminal

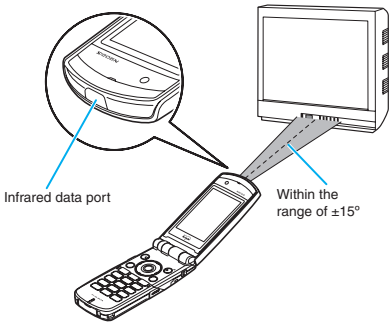
Data are transferred. A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
“Session number”→p.368

Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

- Download the software appropriate for the product you want to control. Even the correct software may not support the product, which cannot be controlled by the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot use the infrared remote control in Self mode.

Using remote control

- Direct the infrared data port of the FOMA terminal at the remote control sensor on TV, etc. The remote control is effective within 4 meters away from the product. This may vary depending on the ambient light level.



Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program guide remote control)

“Gガイド番組表リモコン” is a useful application equipped with the program guide and AV remote control function, which can be used free of charge.
Get information about analog or digital TV programs easily anytime and anywhere. You can find a program title, contents, time, etc.
If you want to watch a program, access the Internet to reserve recording on a DVD recorder (You need an HD DVD recorder compatible with a remote reservation function. To use the function, make the initial settings of this application). You can search for information by any keywords such as a genre or your favorite TV personality. You can control a TV, video or DVD player remotely (Some models are not compatible).

- Agree to the license agreement and make the initial settings the first time you use “Gガイド番組表リモコン”.
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.
- For overseas use, set Japan Standard Time on the FOMA terminal.
- For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.



* The screen is only an image and may look different from the actual one. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

● Remote reservation function

If you have a DVD recorder compatible with a remote reservation function, you can access the Internet to use this application’s program guide and reserve recording remotely. To reserve remotely, make the initial settings of this application.

- Making the initial settings
  ①Make the Internet access settings of the DVD recorder (see the DVD recorder’s User Guide).
  ②Launch this application and select “リモート録画予約” (Remote reservation) from the menu. Follow the on-screen instructions.
- Reserving a program
  After making the initial settings, select a program then リモート録画予約 (Remote reservation) from the menu. You will be connected via the Internet to the DVD recorder selected with this application, and the program will be reserved.
  * If another reservation is made for the same time period, a message appears on the program guide.
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.

<My document>

Viewing PDF Data

Use PDF Viewer to view PDF documents that have been downloaded from sites and saved. You can also view documents stored on the miniSD memory card.

- Downloading from sites→p.224

1 (MENU)▶Data box▶"My document"

The "folder list" screen appears.



Folder list

Function menu➡p.363

2 Select a folder

The "PDF list" screen appears.

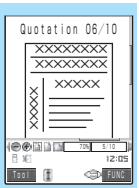


PDF list

Function menu➡p.373

3 Select a PDF document

The "PDF data" screen appears.



PDF data

Function menu➡p.374

■ If the password entry screen appears

Enter the password set to the document.

■ If a message appears indicating that data may be downloaded

You are attempting to open a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on. →p.225

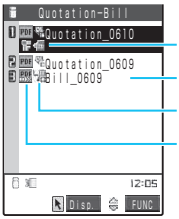
■ If a message appears asking whether to download all remaining data

You are attempting to open a document, only a part of which has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. The remaining pages must be downloaded.→p.225

NOTE

- ◆It may take long to display a document.
- ◆A document may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
- ◆While viewing a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page, if you attempt to view a page that has not been downloaded yet, download starts. You can download the remaining pages all together. →p.225
- ◆To transfer a document from a PC to the miniSD memory card, use the specified folder tree/name and file name.→p.355
  A document cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal if the folder tree/name or file name is different from the specified one.
- ◆You cannot attach a PDF document to an i-mode message.
- ◆The FOMA terminal cannot receive a message sent from a PC with a PDF document attached.
- ◆The incoming call lamp continues flashing while you view a document stored on the miniSD memory card (even if you fold the FOMA terminal).

Guide to the PDF list



■ PDF type icon

Icon	Description
(Pale blue)/ (Pale blue)*1	All the pages have been downloaded. The file size of a document with a blue icon (, *1) displayed exceeds 2M bytes, which cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.
(Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on.*2→p.225
(Pale blue)*3/ (Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages*2 (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).→p.225

*1 : An icon including "▪▪▪▪" indicates that the document is file-restricted, which cannot be transferred via infrared data exchange or cable connection, or copied to the miniSD memory card.

*2 : If all the remaining pages are downloaded and saved, the pale blue icon " ", " " or " " will change to " " or " ".

*3 : A document cannot be transferred via infrared data exchange or cable connection.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

■ Acquisition method icons

Icon	Description
No icon	Preinstalled
	Downloaded from a site, etc.
	Acquired from the miniSD memory card, a PC, etc.

■ Allowable operation icon

The icons do not appear if the document is stored on the miniSD memory card.

Icon	Description
	Can be transferred via infrared data exchange
	Can be copied to the miniSD memory card

NOTE

◆A document stored on the miniSD memory card, which appears with a blue icon "PDF" or "PDF", cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

Operations on the PDF screen

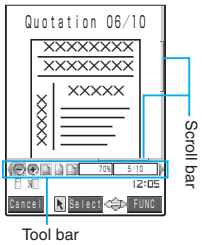
Use the scroll bar and tool bar to view a document.

■ Scroll bar

The scroll bar appears on the screen to indicate the location of the displayed page in the document.

■ Tool bar

Use icons on the tool bar to view a document. You can zoom in/out or rotate the pages.



■ To use icons on the tool bar

▶(Tool)

To cancel using the icons, press (Cancel).

Use to select an icon.

As for the tool bar itself, you can:

- Use to change the display.
- Use Neuropointer to select an icon.

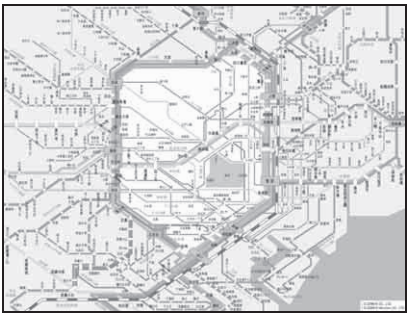
■ Icons on the tool bar

Zoom	Indicates the zoom factor. Specify a zoom percentage to display pages in the specified percentage. ▶●▶**Enter a 4-digit number** For example, enter "0070" to specify 70%.
Page	Indicates the current page number. Specify a page number to go to the page. ▶●▶**Enter a 4-digit number** For example, enter "0005" to jump to p.5.
	Zooms out.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the entire page.
	Displays a page at 100%.
	Adjusts the page width to the display.
	Displays the first page.
	Displays the previous page.
	Displays the next page.
	Displays the last page.
	Searches for text in the document.
	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
	Copies text. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →p.436 Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
	Clips a part of the document as an image.→p.373
	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
	Displays a single page on the screen.
	Displays the document in double-page spread.
	Displays the Bookmark list screen.

● PDF documents stored at the time of purchase

The route map PDF documents by ZENRIN are already stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

- The Inbox folder under My document contains 札幌路線図 (Sapporo route map), 仙台路線図 (Sendai route map), 東京都心路線図 (Tokyo metropolitan route map), 中部路線図 (Chubu route map), 関西路線図 (Kansai route map) and 博多路線図 (Hakata route map).



東京都心路線図
(Tokyo metropolitan route map)

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆To restore route map PDF documents after deleting them, download them from “みんなNらんど” in “ケータイ電話メーカー”.
Accessing “みんなNらんど”→p.214
If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply.→p.38

● NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF (N901iS, N902i, N902iS supported as of May 2006).

- “NEC Mobile PDF”→p.473

Functions available on the PDF screen

You can zoom in/out and rotate a page and change page display modes. You can also set i-mode bookmarks and marks, or clip and save a page.

- The tool bar is useful to change display modes of the PDF screen.
- The keys are also available to change page display modes.→p.373
- Some bookmarks are already placed in a document. You can also use “i-mode bookmark” as if you put a sticky note to immediately jump to the page or location you want to view.

● Scrolling

■ Use ⊕ to scroll

Use ⊕ on the PDF screen to scroll in the direction you select.

■ Use 1 3 to scroll

Press 1 to scroll up and 3 to scroll down.

■ Use the Neuropointer to scroll



Press the Neuropointer in the direction you want to scroll on the PDF screen. You can scroll in eight directions. The cursor is fixed in the center of the document, and the eight scroll directions appear.

NOTE

◆You cannot use the Neuropointer to operate the scroll bar.

● Showing/hiding tool bar and scroll bar

Press 8 TUV to show/hide the tool bar and scroll bar.

● Changing page display modes

1 PDF data screen (p.370)▶(−)(Tool)▶Select an icon

Use ⊕ to select an icon.

2 Perform any operation

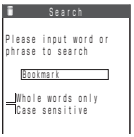
To finish operating the tool bar, press (−)(Cancel).
Icons on the tool bar→p.371
The PDF data screen reappears.

● Searching for text

1 PDF data screen (p.370)▶(−)(Tool)▶🔭▶●▶Enter text to search for

You can enter up to 8 double-byte characters or 16 single-byte characters. However, some special characters may not be searched for.

2 Select the checkbox (☐) of the condition▶(−)(Search)



When the text is found, a page containing the text appears.
Press * Panel to search from the current position to the beginning of the page under the same condition.
Press # 拼 to search from the current position to the end of the page under the same condition.

● Using a bookmark to view a document

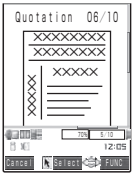
■ To use a “bookmark” placed in a document

- If bookmarks are placed in a document, follow the steps below to jump to the location (page) where a bookmark is placed.

1 PDF data screen (p.370)▶(−)(Tool)▶📑▶Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

Selecting a bookmark displays the location (page) where the bookmark is placed.
If there are no bookmarks in the document, a message appears notifying that no bookmark was found.





Press (−)(📑) with + bookmark highlighted, and other bookmarks appear under the bookmark.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

■ **To use “i-mode bookmark”**

- i-mode bookmark allows you to place a bookmark anywhere you like so that you can immediately jump to any page or location (up to 10 bookmarks available for one document).
- To jump to the location (page) where you placed a bookmark, follow the steps below:

1 PDF data screen (p.370)▶(FUNC)▶“i-mode bookmark”▶Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

The location (page) appears in the same display mode (zoom, etc.) as the one when you placed the bookmark.

■ **To add an i-mode bookmark**

▶(Add)▶“YES”▶Enter a title of the i-mode bookmark

The current display mode (page, zoom, etc.) is saved as an i-mode bookmark.

■ **To edit a title of the i-mode bookmark**

▶(FUNC)▶“Edit title”▶Edit a title

■ **To delete an i-mode bookmark**

▶(FUNC)▶“Delete”▶“YES”

■ **To delete all i-mode bookmarks placed in a document**

▶(FUNC)▶“Delete all”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”

Clipping a page

You can clip a part of the document to save as a JPEG image.

1 Display a page to clip▶(Tool)▶▶●▶“YES”▶Select the destination folder

The clipped page is saved.

NOTE

◆An image clipped out of a PDF document cannot be output from the FOMA terminal, e.g. attached to a message or copied to the miniSD memory card.

◆You may be unable to clip an image if it is prohibited to copy the document.

Using keys to change page display modes

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
1	Zooms out.
2 ABC	Displays the entire page.
3 DEF	Zooms in.
4 GHI	Displays the previous page.
5 JKL	—
6 MNO	Displays the next page.
7 PQRS	Searches for text in the document.
8 TUV	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar.→p.372
9 WXYZ	—
0	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
#	Searches next.→p.372
*	Searches previous.→p.372

Function menu (PDF list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit title	Edits a document title.
Display document	
• **From the last**	Displays a page that was displayed last time.
• **First page**	Displays the first page of a document.
• **i-mode bookmark**	Displays a page where the selected bookmark is placed.
Document info	Displays information such as File name, File classification, File size, Source and Transfer for Repair. Transfer for Repair shows whether the file can be transferred when an error occurs.→p.331
DL remaining data	Downloads all remaining pages of a document, only a part of which has been downloaded.→p.225
Add desktop icon[*1]	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Send Ir data[*1]	Transfers documents between the FOMA terminals.→p.367
Copy to miniSD[*1]	
• **Copy this**	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the selected document to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.363
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶“YES”** Copies all documents to the miniSD memory card.

Continued on next page

Move	
• **Move this**	**▶Select the destination folder ▶"YES"** Moves the selected document to another folder.
• **Move selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.363
• **Move all**	**▶Select the destination folder ▶"YES"** Moves all documents to another folder.
Memory info	Displays the sizes of used and free spaces in memory.
Sort[*1]	Sorts documents by specified criteria.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected document.
• **Delete selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.363
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all documents in the folder.
Copy to phone[*2]	Copies a PDF document stored on the miniSD memory card to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy this**	Copies the selected document to the Inbox folder.
• **Copy selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.363
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all documents to the Inbox folder.
Copy[*2]	Copies a PDF document to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand.→p.363
• **Copy this**	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the selected document to another folder.
• **Copy selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.363
• **Copy all**	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies all documents to another folder.

*1 : The option does not appear for the PDF list screen of the miniSD memory card.
*2 : The option does not appear for the PDF list screen of the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

<Copy to miniSD>
◆A document cannot be copied if only a part has been downloaded by page ("") or if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.

<Sort>
◆"By source" sorts documents in the following order:
①Downloaded from a site
②Acquired via infrared data exchange or from the miniSD memory card

<Copy to phone>
◆A document cannot be copied if the file size exceeds 2M bytes.

Function menu (PDF data screen)

Zoom out	Zooms out a page.
Zoom in	Zooms in a page.
View types	
• **Zoom to**	Specifies a zoom factor to display a page.
• **Fit page**	Adjusts the page size to the display.
• **Actual size**	Displays a page at 100% (in the actual size).
• **Fit width**	Adjusts the page width to the display.
Go to	
• **First page**	Displays the first page.
• **Previous page**	Displays the previous page.
• **Next page**	Displays the next page.
• **Last page**	Displays the last page.
• **Specified page**	**▶Enter a page number you want to view** Displays the specified page.
Search	
• **Search**	**▶Enter text▶ (Search)** Searches for text.→p.372
• **Previous result**	Searches previous.→p.372
• **Next result**	Searches next.→p.372
Page layout	
• **Single page**	Displays a single page on the screen.
• **Continuous-Facing**	Displays the document in double-page spread.
Display link	Selects a URL, phone number or mail address to access, make a call or compose an i-mode message. The scroll and tool bars do not appear when you display the link destination in the document. Press CLR to display the PDF data screen.
Hide tool/ scr.bars[*1]	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar.→p.372
Rotate view	
• **Clockwise**	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
• **Counter-clockwise**	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
Bookmark	Jumps to the location (page) where a bookmark is placed if bookmarks are placed in the document.→p.372
Copy	Copies text. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→p.436 Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
i-mode bookmark	Sets (Adds/Deletes) "i-mode bookmark". Jumps to the location (page) where "i-mode bookmark" is placed.→p.373

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Mark	Puts (up to 10) marks on your desired positions.
• **Add**	Adds a mark.
• **Change**	Edits a mark.
• **Delete**	Deletes a mark.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all marks.
Capture screen	Clips an image out of a document. →p.373
Add desktop icon*2 *3	"Using Desktop Icons" →p.148
DL remaining data*2	Downloads all remaining pages of a document, only a part of which has been downloaded. →p.225
Save	Saves a downloaded document.
Help	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
Document property	Displays the document properties.
End	Closes the PDF data screen.
Document info	"Document information" →p.375
Delete this*3	Deletes the displayed document.

*1 : If the tool bar and scroll bar are currently hidden, "Show tool/scr.bars" appears. The tool bar and scroll bar are set to be shown at the time of purchase.
*2 : The option does not appear if the document is stored on the miniSD memory card.
*3 : The option does not appear while browsing a document on a site.

NOTE

◆"i-mode bookmark" or "Mark" set on the FOMA terminal is unavailable on a PC.

● Document information

You can check the following:

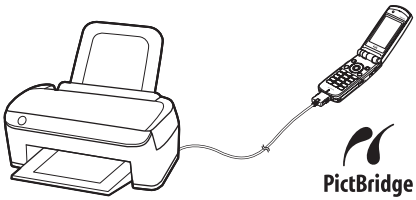
File name	The file name
File classification	The file format
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
Transfer for Repair*1	Whether or not the file can be moved when an error occurs →p.331
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Move to miniSD*1	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the miniSD memory card.
Move to phone*2	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*1 : The option appears only for PDF documents stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2 : The option appears only for PDF documents stored on the miniSD memory card.

<PictBridge print>

Printing Stored Images

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PictBridge-compatible printer via the FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can directly print JPEG images without using a PC.



"Mobile Printing Ready" (PictBridge, miniSD)
*This Mobile Printing Ready product is designed to provide easy printing from mobile phones.
This product follows Mobile Imaging and Printing Consortium (MIPC) guidelines version 1.0 for PictBridge, Memory Cards.

- Only JPEG images can be printed (Images shot with the built-in camera are JPEG-formatted).
- Some printers cannot properly print images if they were not shot with the built-in camera.
- Check that your printer supports the PictBridge print before connecting the printer and the terminal.
- You can set how to print images stored on the miniSD memory card. →p.377
- You cannot print images that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.
- Charge the battery fully for PictBridge print. You may be unable to print if the battery is low.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while communicating with the printer. "" appears during communication.
- The print mode (layout, sheets, etc.) specified on the FOMA terminal may be unavailable on some printers.

1 USB mode setting screen (p.362)▶"Print mode"

If "Print mode" is set, "" appears.
Set "Print mode" before connecting the FOMA USB Cable, or you may be unable to print.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a printer via the FOMA USB Cable

Turn on the printer before connecting.

Continued on next page

3 Image list screen (p.325) or Title list screen (p.326)▶Select an image to print, and press (FUNC)▶"PictBridge print"

DPOF Print is available from the "image list screen" or "title list screen" on the miniSD memory card.
It is not required to highlight an image if you print multiple images or print DPOF.

■ **To print from the "My picture" screen**

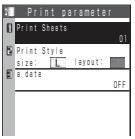
One image is printed if you select from the "My picture" (p.326) function menu. Go on to Step 5.
▶(FUNC)▶"PictBridge print"

4 Select the print type

Selecting "DPOF Print" prints an image by following the print settings specified in "DPOF setting" (p.377) and the paper size and layout specified for the printer (Step 5 and subsequent steps are not required).

Print this	Prints the selected image.
Print Choice	**▶Use to select images▶ (Finish)** If it is the title list, use to select a checkbox (☐), and press (Finish). Prints images you select.
DPOF Print	Prints images stored on the miniSD memory card by following the "DPOF setting". →p.377

5 Set the print settings



■ **Print settings**

Set the following:

Print Sheets*	**▶Enter the number of sheets (01 to 99)**	
Print Style	**• Paper size**	
	Sets the paper size. • L size • A4 • 2L size • Card • 8"×10" • Default • Postcard	
	• Layout	
	Sets the print layout.	
	• 1-up(borderless)	Prints one image on one sheet without a frame.
	• 1-up	Prints one image on one sheet with a frame.
	• 2-up	Prints two images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same two images are printed.
	• 4-up	Prints four images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same four images are printed.
	• 8-up	Prints eight images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same eight images are printed.
	• 16-up	Prints 16 images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same 16 images are printed.
	• Default	Prints in default layout.
a date	Sets whether to stamp the date.	

* : "Print Sheets" can be set only when "Print this" is selected in Step 4.

6 (Finish)

The image is printed.

When an error occurs on the printer

- If the "Error" message appears, an error may have occurred on the printer.
- Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the printer then fix the error.
- After the error is fixed, make sure that "" appears at the top of the FOMA terminal display, then connect the FOMA USB Cable to the printer.

NOTE

◆For information on how to recover from the error, see the printer users guide.
◆Up to 100 copies can be selected at a time in Print Choice.
◆Selectable paper size and layout for Print this or Print Choice vary depending on the printer. DPOF Print prints an image using the paper size and layout set on the printer.
◆When you select to add the date, the shooting date and time are stamped if there is the information. If the image does not contain the date/time information, the "Saved at" information shown on the Image info screen will be stamped. However, even if you select to add the date, it may not be stamped in some layout settings.
◆An image cannot be printed if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 1,200K bytes. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be printed.
Progressive JPEG image →p.223
◆The Multitask function is unavailable for PictBridge print.
◆While printing, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call or use i-mode.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Setting how to print images stored on the miniSD memory card <DPOF setting>

Set Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) for printing images stored on the miniSD memory card.

- DPOF is a format for setting the print mode for images shot with a digital camera.
- Save still images shot with the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, and specify still images to print, the number of sheets, etc. The images can be printed on a DPOF-compatible printer or in a print service shop.
- Printing DPOF-set still images on a PictBridge-compatible printer→p.375

1 Folder list screen (p.325)▶"miniSD"▶"Picture"▶Select a folder▶Highlight an image▶(-)(FUNC)▶"DPOF setting"▶Select any item

DPOF set One	Sets the print settings for the selected image.
DPOF set Choice	▶**Select an image** Sets the print settings for images you select.

2 "Print"▶Specify "Print Sheets" (2-digit number from 01 to 99) and "a date" (whether to stamp the date)▶(-)(Finish)

■ **To cancel print settings for the displayed image**
▶"Print OFF"

■ **To cancel print settings for all stored images**
▶"All print OFF"

NOTE

◆You can set the DPOF setting for up to 999 images. However, the specified copies may not be printed on some printers.
◆DPOF cannot be set if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 1,200K bytes.
◆You may be unable to set the DPOF setting if there is little space available on the miniSD memory card.
◆You cannot set DPOF for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
◆The specified number of sheets can be checked in "Image info".

<Music player>

Using Music Player

Store and play music data on the miniSD memory card.

- Use "i-motion" (p.337) to play music data downloaded from i-mode sites (voice-only i-motion without video, e.g. a singer's voice).
  Voice-only i-motion without video, e.g. a singer's voice (Chaku-motion)→p.209
- Enjoy stereo sound coming out of the built-in stereo speaker or flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional).
- When an earphone is connected, sound only comes out of the earphone regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- When a commercially available hands-free device is connected, sound may only come out of the hands-free device.
- If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.

* You can enjoy music stored on the miniSD memory card within personal use. Take great care not to infringe the third party's intellectual property right such as copyright.

Saving music data to the miniSD memory card

Use "SD-Jukebox" stored in the bundled "N902iS CD-ROM" to save music data acquired from a CD or via music delivery service to the miniSD memory card.

- The following are data format, number of playlists and number of tracks that are available on the FOMA terminal:

File format	MPEG2-AAC (LC)/ADTS Stream
Bit rate	16 to 128kbps
Playlist count	Up to 100 (including all track list)
Track count per playlist	Up to 99 (999 for all track list)

1 Prepare the following

- PC that complies with the operating environment for "SD-Jukebox" (p.380)
- miniSD memory card reader/writer compatible with copyright protection function*
- miniSD memory card

* : This is required to copy data from a PC to the miniSD memory card. The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is also available to use the FOMA terminal as a miniSD reader/writer.→p.361

2 Install the data transfer software "SD-Jukebox" on your PC

Installing→p.380

Continued on next page

3 Launch “SD-Jukebox“ on the PC and convert music data stored on a CD, etc. to AAC format

For how to use “SD-Jukebox”, see the “SD-Jukebox” help.
If the data are already converted, go on to Step 4.

4 Create a playlist and save music data to the miniSD memory card

NOTE

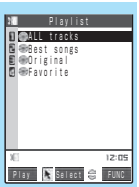
- You cannot use the FOMA terminal to create a playlist, move, copy or edit a folder/music data stored on the miniSD memory card. Use a PC to perform these.
- To see the “SD-Jukebox” help, Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Visit the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Playing music with Music Player

1 Insert the miniSD memory card containing music data into the FOMA terminal

2 (MENU)▶(Data box)▶“Music”

The “Playlist” screen appears.



Playlist

■ **To view all tracks in the list**
Select “ALL tracks”

■ **To check information about the playlist**
▶(-)(FUNC)▶“Playlist info”
Check the playlist name, number of tracks and playback time.

3 Select a playlist

The “music list” screen appears.



Music list

Function menu→p.379

■ **To play tracks in a playlist at random (Random play)**
▶(-)(Random)

4 Highlight a track▶●(Play)

The music player screen appears.
Tracks in the playlist are played in display order.



Music Player

Function menu→p.379

■ **To play repeatedly**
▶(-)(Repeat)
Repeat/Repeat 1/OFF are switched each time (-) is pressed.

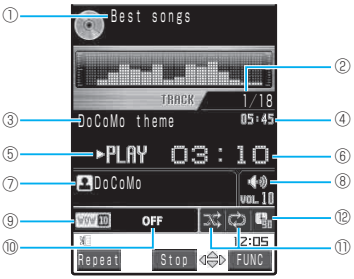
■ **To end playback**
▶(CLR)

When playback ends, the “music list” screen reappears.

NOTE

- When an earphone is connected, sound comes out of the earphone even in manner mode. If the earphone is removed in manner mode, playback is paused.
- When a hands-free device is connected, sound only comes out of the hands-free device.
- Folding the FOMA terminal does not interrupt playback. The image display shows information on a track being played. →p.381
- When you make/receive a voice call, videophone call, Push-to-Talk call, 64K data communication or packet communication, playback is paused.
- If “Receiving display” is set to “Alarm preferred”, receiving a message, MessageR or MessageF pauses playback.
- If “Alarm setting” is set to “Alarm preferred” and you receive an alarm for “Schedule”, “Alarm clock” or “To Do list”, playback is paused.
- A file that cannot be played with music player is skipped during playback.

● Guide to the music player screen



①Playlist name
②Track No. (in the playlist)
③Track name
④Track time (Minute:Second)
⑤Playback status
PLAY: Playing PAUSE: Pausing
FF: Skipping forward REW: Skipping backward
⑥Time elapsed (Minute:Second)
⑦Artist
⑧Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. MUTE appears during mute.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

⑨Sound effects
Sound effects level from 0 to 20.

⑩Sound quality
Sound quality set in “Equalizer set.” (p.379).

OFF: OFF
Bass: Bass Treble: Treble
Treble Reducer: Treble Reducer
Pop/Jazz/Rock/Techno/Classical: Each genre
Speech: Speech

⑪Playback mode
: Playing at random
: Playing all repeatedly
: Playing one repeatedly

⑫Off timer
Time set in “Off timer” (p.379).

Operations on the music player screen

Control keys	Operation
●	Pauses/resumes playback
−	Repeatedly plays tracks in a playlist (Repeat/Repeat 1/OFF)→p.378
⏱, (Home)Ⓠ, (Memo/Check)	Adjusts volume
(Home) for 1 second or longer	Plays the previous track in the playlist During random playback, the previously played track is played when the key is pressed, regardless of the order in the playlist.
⟳ (or (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer)	Plays the next track in the playlist During random playback, the order in the playlist is ignored.
⟲	Plays from the beginning of the track
⟲ for 1 second or longer	Skips backward
⟳ for 1 second or longer	Skips forward
CLR	Ends playback

NOTE

◆The volume set on the music player screen does not affect ring volumes set in “Ring volume”.

Function menu (track list screen)

Music Info	Displays information about the highlighted track. “Music information”→p.379
Artist name disp., Title disp.	Specifies whether to display the artist name or title name (track name).
Off timer (default: 90 minutes)	Stops playback when a given time has elapsed since the start of playback. A star “★” appears next to the selected option (time).

Music information

Item	Contents
Title	Displays the title. If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
Artist	Displays the artist. If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
Album	Displays the album title. If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
File restriction	Displays “File restricted”.
Saved at	Displays the save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes).
Play time	Displays playback time (minutes:seconds) of the file.
Audio	Usually displays “SD-Audio”. If the file format is not supported, “Unplayable” appears.

Function menu (music player screen)

● The settings can be changed during playback.

SRS_WOW (default: Level 10)	Sets sound effects from level 0 to 20.
Equalizer set. (default: OFF)	Selects the sound quality from the following:
• **OFF**	Disables the equalizer setting.
• **Bass**	Emphasizes bass.
• **Treble**	Emphasizes treble.
• **Treble Reducer**	Reduces sound leaking out of the earphone.
• **Pop**	Sets the equalizer for each genre.
• **Jazz**	
• **Rock**	
• **Techno**	
• **Classical**	
• **Speech**	Sets the equalizer for speech.
Repeat setting (default: OFF)	Repeatedly plays tracks in the playlist.
• **OFF**	Does not repeat the currently played (paused) track.
• **Repeat**	Repeats all tracks in the playlist.
• **Repeat 1**	Repeats the currently played (paused) track.

NOTE

◆“SRS_WOW” set on the music player screen does not affect “SRS_WOW” for i-motion (p.130).

Data transfer software (SD-Jukebox)

SD-Jukebox can be used to copy music data from a CD to a PC or save copied music data to an SD memory card or miniSD memory card then play them with an SD-Audio-compatible player.

- Use SD-Jukebox to save music data to the miniSD memory card, so that you can play them on your FOMA terminal.
- For more details on the operating environment, installation and uninstallation of SD-Jukebox, see "sd-jukeboxv5.pdf" stored under "SD-Jukebox" - "SD-JukeboxV5" - "External" - "JP" in "FOMA N902iS CD-ROM". To see "sd-jukeboxv5.pdf" and the SD-Jukebox help (user's guide), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Visit the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Installing SD-Jukebox

- Use a user account with administrator permissions to install the software. If a non-administrative account is used to install, an error occurs. For the administrative settings, check with your PC manufacturer or Microsoft.

1 Start Windows and set "FOMA N902iS CD-ROM"

2 Click "SD-Jukeboxのインストール" (Install SD-Jukebox)

Follow the on-screen instructions.

NOTE

◆When installing SD-Jukebox, it is required to enter the serial number described on the CD-ROM sticker. Keep the serial number in a safe place.

Inquiries about this software
National/Panasonic Customer Service Center
Everyday/Open: 9:00 - 20:00

From ordinary phones: 0120-878-365
From mobile phones or PHSs: 06-6907-1187
FAX 0120-878-236

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
●You can also refer to the web page.
http://panasonic.jp/support/software/

Using Assist Key to Operate Music Player

The "Assist key" is available for operating the music player.

- If "External keys guard" (p.169) is set to "ON" with the FOMA terminal folded, the assist key is unavailable for launching the music player.
- In manner mode, even if you press and hold (Assist key) for 1 second or longer, the music player cannot be launched except when the earphone is attached.

<Example: Launch the music player with the FOMA terminal folded>

1 Press (Assist key) (1 second or longer)

The music player launches to start playback.

Assist key operations on the music player

Playing	▶ **(Assist key)** Pauses ▶ **(Assist key) (1 second or longer)** Ends playback and exits the music player
Pausing	▶ **(Assist key)** Resumes playback ■**To resume playback while another function is running** ▶ **(Assist key) (1 second or longer)**
On the playlist screen	▶ **(Assist key) (1 second or longer)** Starts playback
On the track list screen	▶ **(Assist key)** Starts playback ▶ **(Assist key) (1 second or longer)** Starts playback with the previously played track

Pressing and holding the Assist key for 1 second or longer to start playback

Playback starts with the previously played track. However, if the last playback went through the end of the playlist, the first track is to be played. If the tracks were played at random last time, random playback will go on.

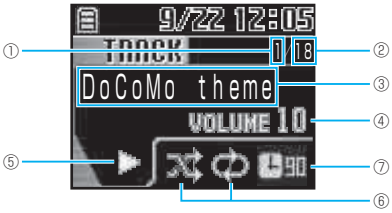
NOTE

◆If a playlist is updated and the order of the previously played track is changed then you use the assist key to start playback, the playback starts from the next track or the first track of ALL tracks.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

● Image display during playback

You can check the status of playback on the image display with the FOMA terminal folded.



①Track No. being played
②Number of tracks
③Track name, artist (telop text)
④Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. MUTE appears during mute.

⑤Playback status
▶: Playing ❚❚: Pausing

⑥Playback mode
: Playing at random
: Playing all repeatedly
: Playing one repeatedly

⑦Off timer
Time set in “Off timer” (p.379).

Other Useful Functions

Multi Access..... Multi access 384
Multitask..... Multitask 385
Using the Assist Key to Read Out Messages or Alarms
..... Assist key 386
Setting Alarm Mode ..... Alarm setting 387
Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock ..... Alarm clock 389
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries
..... Schedule 390
Adding To Do List Items..... To Do list 394
Storing Your Name and Image..... Own number 396
Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice
..... Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo 397
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones
..... Voice announce 398
Checking Call Times and Charges ..... Call data 399
Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm
..... Notice designate calls 400
Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator ..... Calculator 401
Composing Text Memos ..... Text memo 401
Using Dictionaries..... Dictionary 402
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch
..... Earphone/microphone with switch 404
Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone
Connected ..... Auto dial setting 405
Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone Attached
..... Automatic answer 405
Selecting a Microphone to Be Activated When Using an
Earphone/Microphone ..... Select microphone 406
Resetting Function Settings..... Reset settings 406
Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default..... Initialize 407

Multi Access

Multi access is a function that enables you to make voice calls, use packet communication and SMS at the same time. This allows you to receive mails during a voice call or make a voice call while using the i-mode services.
“Multi Access Combination Patterns”→p.469

Communication lines that can be used concurrently

By using the multi access function, a FOMA terminal can concurrently use the three communication lines listed below.

Communication type	Line to use
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-αppli or i-mode mail	1 line for any of the communications
Packet communication via PC	
SMS	1 line

NOTE

- Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- Multi access is not available during a videophone call. However, only SMS can be received simultaneously.
- Multi access is not available during a Push-to-Talk call or 64K data communication. However, only SMS can be sent and received simultaneously.

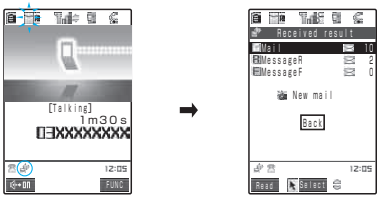
When you receive a call or mail during communication

Receiving i-mode mails during a voice call

When you receive an i-mode mail during a voice call, the in-call screen remains shown. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your call.

1 (MULTI)▶Use (MULTI) or to select “Transmission” and press

The reception results screen for the i-mode mail appears.
Switching tasks→p.386



2 Checking the i-mode mail

Reading i-mode mail messages→p.261

3 (MULTI)▶Use (MULTI) or to select “Talking” and press

The voice in-call screen reappears.

NOTE

- If you receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF during a voice call, the “Mail”, “MessageR” or “MessageF” icon flashes and then lights up without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.
- If no operations are performed on the reception results screen, the in-call screen reappears.

Receiving a voice call during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a voice call while you are using i-mode, receiving or sending an i-mode mail or using packet communication with a FOMA terminal and PC connected, the voice call reception screen appears and you can answer the call without ending i-mode or packet communication.

1

The voice in-call screen appears and you can answer the call.

■ **To return to the i-mode screen without answering a voice call**

▶ (MULTI)▶ Use (MULTI) or to select the i-mode group task icon ( ) and press

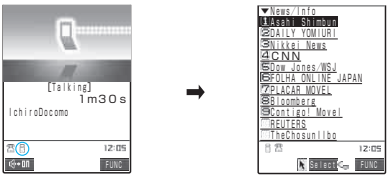
The caller hears ringing without a message.

2 To end the call, press

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ **To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call**

▶ (MULTI) ▶Use (MULTI) or to select the i-mode group task icon ( ) and press



Using two types of communication simultaneously

Another type of communication is available without interrupting the current communication.

- To switch screens during multi access, select the desired function on the task icon display area.
→p.386

Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

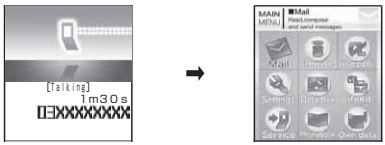
During a voice call, press (MENU) and select the i-mode menu in the main menu to connect to i-mode. →p.213

Sending an i-mode mail during a voice call

During a voice call, press (MENU) and select the Mail menu in the main menu to compose and send an i-mode mail.

1 During a voice call▶(MENU)▶Select the Mail menu

Using menus →p.32



2 Compose an i-mode mail▶Send it

Composing and sending i-mode mail →p.243

3 (MULTI)▶Use (MULTI) or to select "Talking" and press ●

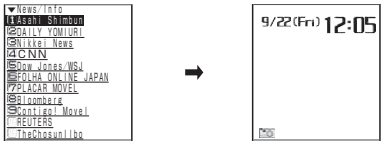
The voice in-call screen reappears.

Making a voice call during i-mode

While connecting to i-mode or receiving/sending a mail, you can make a voice call without ending i-mode.

1 During i-mode▶(MENU) (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears.



2 Make a voice call

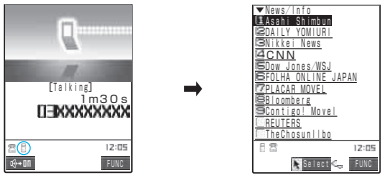
Making voice calls →p.50

3 To end the call, press (PWR)

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ **To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call**

▶(MULTI)▶ Use (MULTI) or to select the i-mode group task icon ( ) and press ●



NOTE

- If you attempt to make a videophone call during i-mode, the "Disconnecting" message appears and then a FOMA terminal dials the videophone call. When the videophone call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.
- When you attempt to make a Push-to-Talk call during i-mode, a message asking whether to disconnect i-mode appears. Select "YES" to disconnect i-mode and make the call. When the Push-to-Talk call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.

<Multitask>

Multitask

Multitask enables you to use multiple functions at the same time. Up to 3 functions can be performed at once, one from each of the Main menu groups shown below.
"Multitask Combination Patterns" →p.470



The running groups are enclosed by frames.

Task icon display area:
The running tasks are expressed by icons.

Group	Main menu item (task)
Mail	Mail
i-mode	i-mode
i-αppli	i-αppli
Settings	Settings and Service
Tools	Data box, LifeKit, Phonebook and Own data

- The voice call charge continues to increase while you are concurrently using another function during a voice call.

Activating tasks (functions)

1 While using a task▶(MENU) (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears. It may not appear depending on the active task.

2 Select a task from a group of which tasks are not currently running

■ **To activate a task from the main menu**

▶(MENU)▶Select a task →p.32

■ **To activate a task using the menu number**

▶(MENU)▶Enter the menu number of the task you want to activate →p.450

■ **To activate a task from the Mail menu**

▶(−)(MAIL) →p.242

Continued on next page

■ **To activate a task from the i-mode menu**

▶●(i-mode)→p.213

NOTE

◆When you try to activate another task from the group in which you are currently editing data, the message "XXX Cancel editing and switch?" (XXX is a task name or group name such as Mail or i-mode) appears. Select "YES" to end the editing and switch tasks. Select "NO" to return to the previous screen. If having no edited data, you can directly activate the selected task.

◆In the following cases, one task is added to compose a mail while viewing another mail. If three tasks are already running and you try to perform one of the operations below, a message notifying that the task cannot run appears. End a task not belonging to the Mail group and then perform the operation. "Ending a Task"→p.386

- Accessing the Mail menu to compose a mail
- Accessing the Mail menu to compose SMS
- Using a template to create a Deco-mail
- Using Reply/Reply with quote/Forward for a received mail
- Editing a sent mail
- Editing a draft mail

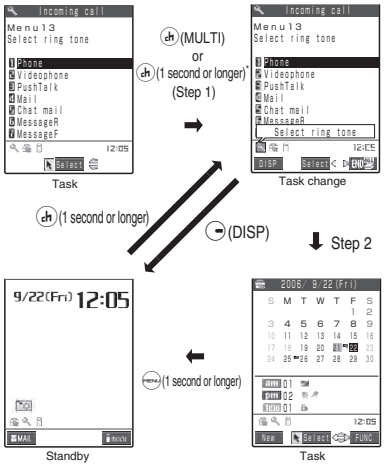
Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can switch them to change an active task.

1 While activating multiple tasks▶ (MULTI) or (1 second or longer) *

The task change screen appears.

2 Use (MULTI) or to select a task icon you want to switch ▶●



* : To switch tasks on the phonebook list screen (tabs) or the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook, press (MULTI) for 1 second or longer to show the task change screen. On the standby screen, you can also switch tasks by selecting a task icon on the task icon display area with the Neuropointer.

Ending tasks

■ **To end a task**

- Open the task screen you want to end▶
- On the task change screen, select a task icon you want to end and press ▶"YES"

■ **To end all tasks**

- On the task change screen▶●(END ALL)▶"YES"

<Assist key>

Using the Assist Key to Read Out Messages or Alarms

When receiving a message or alarm, press (Assist key), so that the FOMA terminal reads out the contents.

- The assist key is also available to operate the music player.→p.380

NOTE

◆Voice reading out text may be heard by those around you. Move to an area where voice will not disturb other people before starting reading out.

◆A FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in "Phone" under "Ring volume". When "Silent" or "Step" is set, mails are read out at the "Level 2" volume.

Reading out mail messages

- Set "Read out received mail" under "Read out setting" to "ON" beforehand. You can select a voice under "Select voice".→p.276
- Messages are read out only when "Select language" is set to "日本語" (Japanese).

Reading out a message when the FOMA terminal is folded

When "✉" appears on the image display, the message can be read out with the FOMA terminal folded.

- To have the folded FOMA terminal read out the data, set "External keys guard" to "OFF" beforehand.→p.169

1 Press (Assist key) with the FOMA terminal folded▶Press (Assist Key) again within 10 seconds

The FOMA terminal reads out the mail or chat mail message.

■ **If "Info notice setting" is set to "OFF"**

Readout starts when (Assist key) is pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.

Reading out a message when the FOMA terminal is opened

Message can be read out when:

- You receive a mail/chat mail message with the FOMA terminal opened and the reception screen appears
- You perform "Check new messages" and the checking result screen appears
- The received mail detail screen appears

<Example: Running Check new messages>

1 Press [ ] (Assist key) while the checking result screen appears

A FOMA terminal reads out the latest mail/chat mail messages.

■ **When multiple new mails or chat mails are received**

A FOMA terminal reads out mails in reverse chronological order of reception date. Pressing [ ] (Assist key) or ⟳ during reading out enables the terminal to read out the next mail. After completing the reading out, the terminal automatically starts reading out the next mail.

NOTE

- When you press [ ] (Assist key) or ⟳ during reading out, a FOMA terminal emits the bleep sound before reading out the next mail. If the terminal has no more mail to read out, it emits the "pipip" tone and ends the reading out.
- After the reception or checking results screen ends and the other screen such as the standby screen appears, message cannot be read out even if [ ] (Assist key) is pressed.
- Opening or folding the FOMA terminal does not interrupt the readout operation.
- MessageR/MessageF cannot be read out.
- A new mail/chat mail message is not read out:
  - When a mail-connected i-αppli mail message or SMS report is received
  - During a call or communication (except packet communication)
  - In manner mode if no equipment such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected
  - While the music player is running
- If the sender's name and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook, the message is read out after the voice notification "○○さんからのメール" (This is from XXX).

Reading out the alarm message during the alarm

When the FOMA terminal is folded and you receive an alarm notification, pressing [ ] (Assist key) during the alarm notification stops the alarm and reads out the alarm message.

1 Press [ ] (Assist key) during the alarm

Readout starts.

The following table shows the contents to be read out:

Alarm type	Contents
Alarm clock	Current time
Schedule	Up to 20 characters of the schedule summary or contents→p.392
To Do list	Up to 20 characters of the event contents→p.395

NOTE

- If you press [ ] (Assist key) during readout, the readout stops.
- Scheduled events stored as secret data are not read out (except in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode").
- The voice reading out an alarm message cannot be changed.
- An alarm message is not read out when the FOMA terminal is opened.

<Alarm setting>

Setting Alarm Mode

Default setting: Alarm preferred

You can select either "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred" as the alarm setting for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list".

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶"Clock"▶"Alarm setting" ▶"Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred"

■ **When Operation preferred is selected**

The alarm sounds only when a screen is standby.

■ **When Alarm preferred is selected**

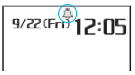
The alarm sounds even when you are operating or talking on a FOMA terminal.

Alarm actions

When you set an alarm for the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" function, the icon showing that the alarm has been set appears on the standby screen. When the specified time is reached, the alarm for the respective function is given.

● When you set an alarm

When you set an alarm for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list", an icon appears on the standby screen.



■ **For alarms set for today (excluding times that have already passed)**

"[ ]" appears.

■ **For alarms set for tomorrow or later**

"[ ]" appears.

NOTE

- If a schedule event or To Do list item is stored with "OFF" selected, neither "[ ]" nor "[ ]" appears.

When the specified time is reached

An alarm is given as follows for each function.



Alarm clock*1



Schedule*1



To Do list*1

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, To Do list
Standby screen shown*2	If “Snooze OFF” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the specified time (01 to 10 minutes). If “Snooze ON” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for one minute, and then repeats the operation up to 5 times at about 5 minute intervals. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display.	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for about 5 minutes, and an animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display.
FOMA terminal turned off	If “Auto power ON” is selected for the “Auto power ON” setting, a FOMA terminal automatically turns on and an alarm is given. If the setting is set to “Auto power OFF”, the terminal does not turn on and no alarm is given. The “Miss” (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear on the screen even after the terminal turns on.	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. The setting remains effective.
A voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call in progress*3	The clock alarm tone (pip-pipipi...) sounds 3 times through the FOMA terminal’s earpiece. An animation appears on the display.	
Receiving or dialing a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call*3	Whether the alarm is given depends on the condition. When an alarm is given, the alarm tone sounds and an animation appears on the display and Image display.	
i-mode or sending/ receiving a mail*3	An alarm is given the same way as for “Standby screen displayed“.	
Infrared data exchange, SD-PIM operation or data exchange in OBEX in progress	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When data communication ends, the “Miss” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. →p.389	
Earphone/ microphone connected*2	■When “Earphone” is set to “Earphone +Speaker” The alarm sounds both through the earphone and speaker. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display. ■When “Earphone” is set to “Earp. (Speaker in 20s)” The alarm sounds through the earphone and then sounds both through the earphone and speaker in approx. 20 seconds. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display. ■When “Earphone” is set to “Earphone(only)” The alarm sounds through the earphone. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display.	
PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON” and the PIN1 code entry screen which is shown after a FOMA terminal is turned on appears.*3	An alarm is given the same way as for “Standby screen displayed“. When the alarm screen is closed, the PIN1 code entry screen reappears.	An alarm is given after the correct PIN1 code is entered.
Lock all/ Omakase lock/ PIM lock set	Regardless of the Alarm setting setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. If a FOMA terminal is turned off, it is not automatically turned on even when the specified time is reached and the “Miss” (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear after unlocking. When PIM lock is set, the “Miss” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. However, when Lock all/Omakase lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking. →p.389	Regardless of the “Alarm setting” setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When PIM lock is set, the “Miss” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. However, when Lock all/ Omakase lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking. →p.389

*1 : The animation shown for the “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm varies depending on the selected icon or category. If an i-motion is set as the alarm tone for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”, the image appears during the alarm.
*2 : i-motion does not appear on the Image display.
*3 : This operation is performed when “Alarm preferred” is set. When “Operation preferred” is set, the “Miss” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. →p.389

NOTE

◆The alarm volume for “Schedule” and “To Do list” follows the “Phone” setting under “Ring volume”.
◆The volume of the clock alarm tone sounded during a call is the same as that specified in “Volume”.
◆Even if “Snooze ON” is set, the snooze function is not activated for the alarm of Alarm clock during a call.
◆Unless “Phone” under “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, both vibration and the alarm tone are given as an alarm.
◆Even if an i-motion is set in “Alarm tone”, the i-motion is not played when it cannot be activated (e.g. during a call). Instead, the clock alarm tone, specified icon and animation corresponding to the category are used for an alarm.

<Alarm priority sequence>

◆Priority is assigned as follows when the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “To Do list” alarms are set to sound at the same time:
①Alarm clock ②To Do list ③Schedule

● To stop an alarm tone

■ Alarm clock

When “Snooze OFF” is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion. If you press any key again, the release tone (“pipip”) sounds and the display is cleared.

When “Snooze ON” is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message “Snooze...” appears. After the “Snooze...” message appears for about 5 minutes, the alarm is given again. If you press [ｽﾇｰｽﾞ] while the “Snooze...” message appears, the release tone (“pipip”) sounds and the snooze setting is released.

■ Schedule and To Do list

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message remains shown. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, pressing any external key with a FOMA terminal folded does not close the alarm screen.

■ If a call arrives during an alarm

The alarm stops and a FOMA terminal receives the call. The “Alarm clock” snooze setting is also canceled.

NOTE

◆Snooze is canceled when:
- A voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call is received
- “Alarm preferred” is selected in “Alarm setting” and then the alarm for Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list is given

◆If “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF”, the release tone does not sound.

Checking details of an alarm that could not be given

If a FOMA terminal was unable to give an alarm, the “Miss” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. You can check the details of the missed alarm (Missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶“Miss”

The missed alarm information for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” appears.

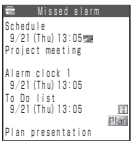


2 Check the details▶[CLR]

The standby screen reappears and the “Miss” (Missed alarm) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

◆If “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarms are set to sound at the same time but a FOMA terminal was unable to give the alarms, the respective missed alarm information appears.



◆To clear the desktop icon “Miss”, press [CLR] for 1 second or longer on the standby screen. Once you clear this desktop icon, you can no longer check the missed alarm information.

<Alarm clock> MENU44

Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock

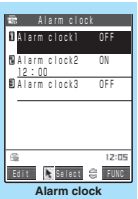
Default setting: All OFF

● You can store up to 3 alarm settings.

Setting the alarm clock

1 [MENU]▶LifeKit▶“Alarm clock”

The “Alarm clock” screen appears.
If you have set the alarm clock before, the previously specified settings appear.



Alarm clock

Function menu➡p.390

2 Select an item to set▶●(Edit)

3 Set the respective parameters

Time setting	▶Enter a time Enters a time when the alarm will sound.

Continued on next page

Repeat	Sets the alarm repetition.
• **1 time**	Sounds the alarm only once.
• **Daily (D)**	Sounds the alarm every day.
• **Select day (W)**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□) ▶ ⊖(Finish)** Sounds the alarm every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat).
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. A "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder in "Melody". "Changing the Ring Tone" →p.128
• **Melody**	▶**Select a folder** Selects a ring tone or melody.
• **i-motion**	▶**Select a folder** Selects an i-motion.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →p.398
• **Random melody**	▶**Select a folder** Automatically selects a ring tone from the selected folder to set it as an alarm tone.
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
Volume	▶**Use ◉ to adjust the volume** Sets the alarm tone volume. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" →p.69
Snooze setting	Specifies whether to set the snooze (repeating) alarm.
• **ON**	Sounds the alarm tone repeatedly for 1 minute and then repeats the operation up to 5 times at about 5-minute intervals.
• **OFF**	▶**Enter the ring time (01-10 minutes)** Sounds the alarm tone continuously for the specified ring time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press ●.
Auto power ON	Specifies whether to automatically turn on a FOMA terminal when the alarm time is reached.

4 ⊖(Finish)

NOTE

◆When "Auto power ON" is set to "ON" and a melody or i-motion downloaded from a site is set as the alarm tone, the "Clock Alarm Tone" sounds because of the FOMA card operational restriction function.

◆Before entering an area such as aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal level and it is prohibited to use a mobile phone, set the "Auto power ON" setting to "OFF" and then turn a FOMA terminal off.

Function menu (Alarm clock screen)

Edit	Edits the alarm clock settings.
Display detail	Changes the display from a list to details.
Finish(Set this)	Enables the highlighted alarm clock setting.
Release this	Disables the highlighted alarm clock setting.
Release all	Disables all the alarm clock settings.

<Schedule> MENU45

Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries

Setting schedule events sounds the alarm tone at the specified dates and times and shows the alarm messages and animations to notify you of the events. You can also set holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule and holiday events can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminal's calendar. You can switch the calendar display mode between 1-month and 1-week to view the number or details of scheduled or To Do list events for a given day. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, e.g. storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a given day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled events, or storing multiple schedule events for the same day.

- You can view or store events from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.
- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holidays and anniversaries, respectively. The national public holidays stored on a FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in those holidays.
- You can store two or more schedule events for the same day, while you can only set one holiday and one anniversary per day.
- Schedule alarms →p.387

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ "Schedule"

The "Schedule" screen appears.



Schedule

Function menu➡p.391

Function menu (Schedule screen)

New	“Adding schedule events”→p.392 “Adding holidays and anniversaries”→p.391
Weekly display, Monthly display	“Changing the schedule display mode”→p.391
Icon display	▶**Select an icon** Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events (D or W) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	“Setting your preferred image as a user icon”→p.393
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.394).
No. of schedules	Shows the numbers of stored schedule events, holidays and anniversaries. In “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, entries stored as secret events also appear.
Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries via Infrared data exchange. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time”→p.368
Delete	
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□) ▶ ⊖(Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶ Select any item▶“YES”** Selects an item to delete. You can select “Schedule”, “Holiday”, “Anniversary” or “All” (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• **Delete past***	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select “Schedule”, “Holiday”, “Anniversary” or “All” (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
Reset holiday	Resets the national public holidays to default.

* : Past means the period prior to the day on which the cursor is positioned on the Schedule screen.

NOTE

◆Selecting “Holiday” or “All” in “Delete all” resets holidays to the default settings.

◆Selecting “Delete past” or “Delete selected” does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.

Changing the schedule display mode

The schedule display mode provides two types: “Monthly display” and “Weekly display”. Use ⊕ to select a date. You can check the number and icons of scheduled and To Do list events stored for the selected date.



Indicates icons and the numbers of schedule and To Do list events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.



Indicates the date, day of the week, icon and event details.

Blue date: Saturday
Red date: Sunday, public holiday or holiday
Pink date: Anniversary
__ : Today
□ : There is an event scheduled for the morning.
■ : There is an event scheduled for the afternoon.
T : There is a To Do list item.

The public holidays are based on “国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律（平成13年法律第59号）” (National Holidays Law & Revised Old-Age Welfare Law (2001 No. 59)). The Spring and Fall Equinox dates for this year are gazetted on the previous February 1st so that they may differ from ones pre-stored in a FOMA terminal. (As of May, 2006)

Adding holidays and anniversaries

<Example: Storing a holiday>

1 (MENU) ▶ (LifeKit) ▶**“Schedule”▶ ⊖(New)▶ “Holiday”**

■ **To store an anniversary**
▶“Anniversary”

2 Set the respective parameters

Date setting	▶**Enter the date** Enters the date of the holiday or anniversary you want to add.
Repeat	Sets the repetition of holiday or anniversary.
• **1 time**	Sets the holiday or anniversary only for that year.
• **Annually ( )**	Sets the holiday or anniversary for every year.

Continued on next page

Contents	▶Enter a message Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.

Adding schedule events

Adding an event such as a trip or appointment to your schedule notifies you of the event using an alarm tone or animation when the specified date and time arrives.

- To add a schedule event, enter the "Contents". You cannot add events without their "Contents".

1 Schedule screen (p.390)▶(New)▶"Schedule"

2 Set the respective parameters

Date(from)*	▶Enter "Start Year", "Start Date" and "Start Time" Enters the starting date and time for the schedule event.
Date(to)*	▶Enter "End Year", "End Date" and "End Time" Enters the finishing date and time for the schedule event.
Repeat	Sets the repetition of the schedule event.
• 1 time	Sets the event only for the specified date and time.
• Daily (D)	Sets the event to repeat every day.
• Select day(W)	▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish) Sets the event to repeat every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat).
Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the starting date and time is reached.
• ON	An alarm is given at the starting date and time.
• ON/Set time	▶Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes before the starting date and time the alarm is given. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press ●.
• OFF	No alarm is given when the starting time is reached.
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. A "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder in "Melody". "Changing the Ring Tone" →p.128
• Melody	▶Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody.
• i-motion	▶Select a folder Selects an i-motion.
• Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →p.398
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
Summary	▶Enter a message Enters the summary of the schedule event. A summary can contain up to 20 double-byte or 40 single-byte characters. The entered summary appears on the screen during the alarm.
Contents	▶Enter a message▶Select an icon Enters the scheduled event details. Contents can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters. If no summary is entered, the contents appear on the screen during the alarm. If both summary and contents are entered, the summary appears first and the contents next.

* : Selecting this option shows the "Date setting" screen on which you can set both (from) and (to) of Date setting.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified date and time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes before the event). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the scheduled event.

◆If you attempt to set an alarm for the same date and time as those for an already stored event during schedule registration, the message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.

◆Schedule events can be stored to give the alarms at the same date and time only when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Select day" and the Repeat setting for another is "1 time" (no repeats). In this case, the event with the "1 time" setting has priority.

◆If the day of the week set as the starting time and the one set in the Repeat setting are different, the one set in the Repeat setting has priority and the schedule event is set to come on the first specified day of the week after the starting time.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

◆If you store a schedule event during a voice call or Push-to-Talk call, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored schedule events by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.472) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of a FOMA terminal may erase the details of the schedule events. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the schedule event details just in case.

Setting your preferred image as a user icon

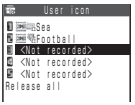
This procedure enables you to set an image or animation stored in "My picture" as a user icon. The specified user icons are shown as "" to "" on the icon selection screen. If a user icon is set, the selected image or animation appears when an alarm is given. Also, "" appears on the Image display.

- You can set up to 5 user icons.

1 Schedule screen (p.390)▶(FUNC)▶"User icon settg."▶"<Not recorded>"

■ To change a user icon already set

▶Choose an item you want to change



■ To cancel all the user icon settings

▶"Release all"▶"YES"

This operation is only available when user icons have already been set.

2 Select a folder including images

Images can also be selected from user-created folders.
Selecting images→p.325



■ To cancel an icon set for schedule events

▶"Release this"▶"YES"

■ To cancel an icon not set for any schedule events

▶"Release this"

3 Select an image to set

The selected image is zoomed in. The screen returns to the user icon list after a while.

■ To preview

▶Select an image to preview▶(Play)

NOTE

◆If you attempt to change or cancel a user icon that is being used for scheduled events, a message asking whether to cancel the icon appears. If you change or cancel a user icon or delete it from My picture, the alarm screen for the scheduled event where the icon was used changes to the one that appears when "" is set.

Checking schedule details

Open the detail screen to check the details of a scheduled event.

1 Schedule screen (p.390)▶Select the date for which the scheduled event to check is stored

The "Schedule list" screen appears.
The following icons appear on the list screen:

: Specified schedule icon indicating that a schedule event is stored

: A holiday is stored.

: An anniversary is stored.

: An alarm is set.

: Repeated daily

: Repeated weekly

: Repeated annually



Schedule list

Function menu➡p.393

2 Select an item to check in detail



Scheduled event detail



Holiday detail



Anniversary detail

Function menu (Schedule list screen)

New	"Adding schedule events"→p.392 "Adding holidays and anniversaries"→p.391
Edit	Edits a schedule entry.
Copy	Copies Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary entry to store it in other dates. If an entry to be copied contains the repeat setting, it is canceled when the entry is copied.
Icon display	▶**Select an icon** Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events (or) appear as a single item.

Continued on next page

User icon settg.	“Setting your preferred image as a user icon”→p.393
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.394).
Release secret	Restore schedule mode to normal from Secret mode or Secret data only mode. “Changing secret data back to normal”→p.163
Compose message	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.243
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.148
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time”→p.367
Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries via Infrared data exchange. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time”→p.368
Copy to miniSD	
• **Copy this**	Copies the selected schedule entry.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶(−)(Finish)▶“YES”** Copies multiple schedule entries.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all schedule entries.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected schedule entry.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶(−)(Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶Select any item▶“YES”** Selects an item to delete. You can select “Schedule”, “Holiday”, “Anniversary” or “All” (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• **Delete past**	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select “Schedule”, “Holiday”, “Anniversary” or “All” (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

NOTE

◆Selecting “Holiday” or “All” in “Delete all” resets holidays to the default settings.

◆Selecting “Delete past” or “Delete selected” does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.

◆If you attempt to use “Delete this” or “Delete selected” to delete scheduled events for which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message asking whether to delete the repeat settings appears. Selecting “YES” deletes all the repeat settings of the scheduled events.

◆When you perform Delete past, all the repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while the others from the selected day are left undeleted.

◆If scheduled events are shown by icon and you select “Delete selected” from the function menu, the Delete selected screen for the list of dates selected on the previous screen appears. You cannot select Delete selected when scheduled events are shown by icon.

<To Do list> MENU95

Adding To Do List Items

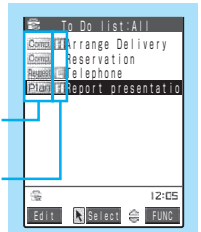
You can manage your schedule by adding items to the To Do list. Alarms can also be set for items.

- You can store up to 100 items in the To Do list.
- To Do list alarms→p.387

Checking items

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶**“To Do list”**

The “To Do list” screen appears.



Shows the entry status. The blue icon turns into red when the specified day has elapsed.

Shows the priority.

To Do list

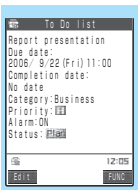
Function menu➡p.395

2 **Select an item to check**

■ **To edit an item**

▶(−)(Edit)

“Adding and editing items”→p.395



To Do list detail

Function menu➡p.395

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Function menu (To Do list screen/To Do list detail screen)

New	"Adding and editing items"→p.395
Edit	
Switch Schedule	Switches to the Schedule screen (p.390).
Change status	Selects a status from "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" and "Substitution". If selecting "Completion", enter the completion date.
Category display	Selects a category from "All", "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting", and shows items by category.
Sort/Filter	Sorts items according to the specified criterion or shows items with specific status.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.148
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time"→p.367
Send all Ir data	Sends all items via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.368
Copy to miniSD	
• **Copy this**	Copies the selected To Do list item.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Copies multiple To Do list items.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Copies all the To Do list items.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected item.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple items.
• **Delete completed**	Deletes a finished item.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all items.

Adding and editing items

- Always enter "Contents". You cannot add To Do list items without "Contents".

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ **"To Do list"**▶ **(New)**

■ **To add a new item when other items have been stored**
▶(FUNC)▶"New"

■ **To edit an already stored item**
▶Select an item to edit▶(Edit)

2 Set the respective parameters

Contents	▶**Enter the details of an item** Enters the details of an item. Contents can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters.
Due date	Sets the due date for an item.
• **Enter date**	▶**Enter the date and time** Enters the date and time.
• **Choose date**	▶**Select a date from the calendar**▶**Enter a time** Selects a date from the calendar.
• **No date**	Does not set a due date.
Priority	Sets priority for an item.
•	Sets high ( ) priority.
•	Sets low ( ) priority.
• **None**	Does not set priority.
Category	Selects a category of an item from "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting".
Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the due date is reached.
• **ON**	An alarm is given on the due date.
• **ON/Set time**	▶**Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes)** Sets how many minutes before the due date the alarm is given. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press ●.
• **OFF**	No alarm is given when the due date is reached.
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. A "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder in "Melody". "Changing the Ring Tone"→p.128
• **Melody**	▶**Select a folder** Selects a ring tone or melody.
• **i-motion**	▶**Select a folder** Selects an i-motion.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"→p.398
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.

Continued on next page

Completion date*	Sets the completion date for an item.
• **Enter date**	▶**Enter the date** Enters the date.
• **Choose date**	▶**Select a date from the calendar** Selects a date from the calendar.
• **No date**	Does not set a completion date.

*：Shown only when you edit an existing item for which “Status” is “Completion”.

3 ●(Finish)

NOTE

◆If “ON/Set time” is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified time before the To Do list item (01-99 minutes before the item). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the To Do list item.

◆If you store an item during a voice call or Push-to-Talk call, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored To Do list items by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.472) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose your data through the damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the To Do list items just in case.

<Own number> MENU 0

Storing Your Name and Image

Default setting: Own number only

You can store your personal information including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Storing personal information allows you to identify your FOMA terminal or to quote the stored data on the Text entry (edit) screen.

- You cannot change or delete your Own number.
- Items other than Own number are stored on a FOMA terminal. Even if a different FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the items stored on your FOMA terminal appear except for Own number.

Showing personal data

This function only shows your name, Own number and the first e-mail address listed.

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶“Own number”

The “Own number” screen appears.
If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can view all the data by selecting “Display all data” from the function menu and entering your security code.



Own number

Function menu➡p.396

Function menu (Own number screen)

Edit	Edits your personal data. “Storing personal data”→p.397
Display all data	▶**Enter your security code**▶**Use ● to check the details**
Copy name	Copies the name stored in the personal data. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text”→p.436
Copy phone number*1	Copies the phone number currently shown. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text”→p.436
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time”→p.367
Copy to miniSD	“Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card ”→p.357
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size for the name displayed.
Delete phone No.*2	Deletes the phone number currently shown.
Reset	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Resets (deletes) the personal data other than your Own number and restores the default settings set at the time of purchase. When you have selected “Display all data” to show the personal data, you do not need to enter your security code.

*1：Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Copy mail add.” appears.
- If you have selected an address, “Copy address” appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Copy birthday” appears.
- If you have selected a memo, “Copy memorandums” appears.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

*2 : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Delete mail add.” appears.
- If you have selected an address, “Delete address” appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Delete birthday” appears.
- If you have selected a memo, “Delete memorandums” appears.
- If you have selected an image, “Delete image” appears.

Storing personal data

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶ “Own number” ▶ (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code

2 Set the respective parameters

Name	**▶Enter your name** Enters your name. The name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
Reading	**▶Enter the reading** Enters the reading of your name. Entering your name sets the reading automatically. Change it if necessary. A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters, consisting of katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Phone number	**▶Enter a phone number▶Select an icon** Adds a phone number other than your Own number and selects an icon. A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Storing a new phone number shows “ <Not stored>” on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.
Mail address	**▶Enter an e-mail address▶Select an icon** Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Storing a new e-mail address shows “ <Not stored>” on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.
Address	**▶Enter a ZIP code▶Enter a street address** Enters a ZIP code and street address. A ZIP code can consist of up to 7 single-byte numbers. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
Birthday	**▶Enter a birthday** Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
Memorandums	**▶Enter a memo** Enters a memo (short note). A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
Image	Sets an image to be shown for your personal data.
• **Photo mode**	Activates the camera to shoot an image. The shot image can be set for your personal data.
• **Select image**	**▶Select a folder** Selects an image.
• **Release this**	Cancels the image set for your personal data.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆Changing your mail address or setting the secret code does not automatically change the mail address stored here until you change it manually.

<Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo>

Recording Your Voice or the Other Party’s Voice

Voice memo provides two types. “Voice memo (in-call)” enables you to record the other party’s voice during a voice call or videophone call. “Voice memo” enables you to record your own voice while the screen is standby.

- You can record either one Voice memo (in call) or one Voice memo, which overwrites the existing memo.
- You can record a memo for approximately 20 seconds.
- Playing and erasing recorded voice memos →p.77

Recording the other party’s voice during a call

1 During a call ▶ (Memo/Check) (1 second or longer)

A FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the in-call screen.



In-call

Continued on next page

■ **To stop recording**

▶●, CLR, 電話帳 or (Memo/Check) (1 second or longer)

Pressing 電話帳 ends the call as well as recording.

Pressing CLR does not stop recording during a videophone call.

NOTE

◆If you receive a call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm, recording stops.

◆You cannot record voice while a videophone call is on hold or you are using a function menu option.

◆While you are holding a voice call, you can activate “Voice memo (in-call)” to record voice by following the steps below:

▶MENU▶LifeKit▶“Voice memo (in-call)”

Recording your voice in standby mode MENU43

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶“Voice memo”▶“YES”▶Record a voice memo

When a FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the “LifeKit” list screen.

■ **To stop recording**

▶●, CLR or 電話帳

Pressing 電話帳 returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

■Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of voice memos.
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of voice memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Voice announce> MENU91

Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

This function enables you to record your voice and set it as an original ring tone or answer message.

- You can make two voice recordings: “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
- You can record voice for approximately 15 seconds.
- Voice recorded here can be set to the following functions:

• Ring tone
• Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID
• Ring tone for Multi Number
• On hold tone
• Holding tone
• Answer message for Record message
• Alarm tone for Alarm clock
• Alarm tone for Schedule
• Alarm tone for To Do list
• Alarm tone for Notice designate calls

Recording voice

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶“Voice announce”▶Select an item for which you want to record voice▶“YES”



Voice announce

Function menu➡p.398

2 Record voice

Speak into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the in-call screen.

■ **To stop recording**

▶●, CLR or 電話帳

Pressing 電話帳 returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

NOTE

◆You cannot record new voice for an option that has already recorded voice. Erase recorded voice to record new voice.

◆If you receive a voice or Push-to-Talk call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm, recording stops.

Playing recorded voice

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶“Voice announce”▶Select an item to play

■ **To stop playback**

▶●, CLR or 電話帳

Function menu (Voice announce screen)

Record	Records voice.
Play	Plays recorded voice.
Erase	Erases recorded voice.

<Call data> MENU61

Checking Call Times and Charges

You can check the previous or total call time/charge for voice/videophone calls, etc.

- If you switch between voice call and videophone call, the total call time of voice call and videophone call appears in the last call duration area, and the charges of voice call and videophone call appear separately in the last call cost area. The shown charge may differ from the actual charge.
- The call time is a total of dialed and received call times, and indicated respectively for voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
- Charges are only indicated for dialed calls. If you call a toll free number or directory assistance (104), "¥0" or "¥✻✻" appears.
- Charge data are accumulated on a FOMA card (UIM). If you insert another FOMA card (UIM), the charge data (starting from December 2004) accumulated on the inserted FOMA card (UIM) are indicated on the Total calls cost line.
  * FOMA terminals released before the 901i series stores charge data on their FOMA cards (UIM) but cannot show the data.
- You can reset call times and charges shown on a FOMA terminal.
- Call times and Total calls cost shown on a FOMA terminal may differ from the actual figures. Consumption tax is not included in charges.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Call time/Charge"▶"Call data"**

You can check the following:

Last call duration	Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown no matter whether you made or received the call.
Last call cost	Shows the approximate charge for the last call. "Talk" shows the charge for voice calls and "Digital" for videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls duration	Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to "0"). "Talk" shows the total duration of voice calls and "Digital" does the total duration of videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls cost	Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset. The approximate total charges are for the total of voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
Total duration reset	Shows the time and date of the last call reset.
Total cost reset	Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

NOTE

- If the last and accumulated voice or digital call time exceeds "199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds", the call time count returns to 0 second.
- Call time and charge are not counted during Push-to-Talk calls, i-mode or packet communication or Chakumoji calls. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "i-mode User's Manual" you received at the time of contract.
- The time when your FOMA terminal is ringing or that when the other party's terminal is ringing is not counted.
- Turning off a FOMA terminal resets the duration and charge shown for the last call to "0" and "¥✻✻" respectively.
- The total duration or charge information will remain if a FOMA terminal is turned off.

Resetting the total call time and total call charges <Reset total> MENU60

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Call time/Charge"▶"Reset total"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item**

Reset total duration	Resets the accumulated duration.
Reset total cost	**▶"YES"▶Enter the PIN2 code** Resets the accumulated charge.

Resetting charges automatically

<Auto reset total cost> Default setting: OFF

You can set the accumulated charge shown in "Call data" to automatically return to zero at 0:00 AM on the 1st day every month.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Call time/Charge"▶"Auto reset total cost"▶Enter your security code**

2 **"Auto reset"▶Select any item**

ON	**▶Enter the PIN2 code** Sets Auto reset. PIN2 code→p.157
OFF	Does not set Auto reset.

NOTE

- The charge is automatically reset even during packet communication.
- If it becomes time to reset charge automatically during a call, Auto reset is performed after the call ends.
- If it becomes time to reset charge automatically while a FOMA terminal is turned off, turn on the terminal again and enter the PIN2 code to reset the charge.
- Setting Auto reset total cost to "ON" and changing the month in "Set time" reset the total call charges automatically.

Continued on next page

◆When Auto reset total cost is set to “ON”, the PIN2 code entry screen appears when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
◆Auto reset total cost is set to “OFF” if:
- You turn on a FOMA terminal without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.
- You press CLR on the PIN2 code entry screen.
- The PIN2 code is locked. →p.157
- The FOMA card (UIM) is failed.

<Notice designate calls>

Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm

Default setting	Cost limit: Not set Notify cost limit: OFF

The standby screen or alarm notifies you when the accumulated charge indicated in “Call data” exceeds the specified cost limit.
- The alarm is given only once when the accumulated charge exceeds the limit set in advance.
- Exceeding the limit does not prevent you from making calls.

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Call time/Charge”▶“Notice designate calls”▶Enter your security code

2 Set the respective parameters

Cost limit setting	Sets the cost limit between ￥10 and ￥100,000 by ￥10.
Notify setting	
• **Notify cost limit**	Specifies whether to give an alarm when the cost limit is exceeded. Setting “OFF” does not given an alarm. Setting “ON” gives an alarm following the settings of “Alarm tone” and “Volume”.
• **Alarm tone**	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option. “Clock Alarm Tone” can be selected from the “Pre-installed” folder. “Changing the Ring Tone”→ p.128
• **Inbox**	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website as a ring tone.
• **Pre-installed**	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
• **Voice announce**	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” for an alarm tone. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones”→ p.398
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
• **Volume**	Use ◯ to set the alarm tone volume. “Adjusting the Ring Volume”→ p.69

3 ●(Finish)

NOTE

◆The alarm volume applied while in original manner mode is the same as that specified in “Phone vol.” under “Original”.
◆The charges for Push-to-Talk calls, i-mode and packet communication and Chaku-moji transmission are not supported by this function. To check i-mode communication charges, see the “i-mode User’s Manual” you received at the time of contract.

● Alarm actions

When the accumulated charge exceeds the cost limit after a call, you are notified as follows:

■ **When Notify cost limit is set to “ON” and Alarm tone is set to other than “OFF”**



When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the alarm starts sounding in three seconds after you finished talking and lasts about five minutes, which opens the screen notifying that the accumulated charge has exceeded the limit. To stop the alarm tone, press any key. After the alarm, pressing CLR or 消去 shows the “¥ MAX” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen.

■ **When Notify cost limit is set to “ON” and Alarm tone is set to “OFF”**

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the “¥ MAX” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Checking the details of “¥ MAX” (Notice designate calls)

Selecting the “¥ MAX” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen shows the details of Notice designate calls.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶“¥ MAX”▶Enter your security code

The alarm information on “Notice designate calls” is shown.



2 Check the details▶●

The standby screen reappears and the “¥ MAX” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

◆The “¥ MAX” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears if the cost limit is changed to the one exceeding the current total calls cost in “Cost limit setting”.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

◆If “Alarm tone” is set to “OFF”, the alarm is not given.
◆If you set the cost limit for the first time to a value lower than the total calls cost and make or receive a call, the alarm of Notice designate calls sounds when you end the call.
◆You can choose the alarm mode between “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” in “Alarm setting”.

<Calculator> MENU 85

Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator

A FOMA terminal performs four basic arithmetic operations (＋ (addition), － (subtraction), × (multiplication), ÷ (division)).

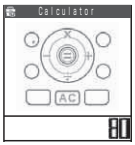
- Up to 10-digit number and up to nine decimal places can be shown.
- A result number consisting of more than 10 figures appears with “.E”.

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ “Calculator” ▶ Calculate

The entered numbers and calculation result appear.

■ To calculate “23 + 57”

2 3 + 5 7 =



■ To use negative numbers in calculation

To calculate using negative numbers, simply insert “－” before the first digit.

－ 2 3 + 5 7 =

NOTE

◆9CLR (AC or C) is available as follows:
- Pressing ＋, －, ×, ÷ or ＝ shows AC. Pressing 9CLR allows you to recalculate from scratch.
- When C appears during a number or decimal point entry, pressing 9CLR allows you to clear a number or decimal point entered wrongly.

<Text memo> MENU 42

Composing Text Memos

The text memo function is available for composing and saving short messages, etc. Composed text memos can be pasted into your schedule or mail.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- A text memo can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters.

Storing a text memo

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ “Text memo”

The “Text memo” screen appears.



Text memo

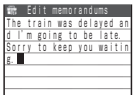
Function menu➡p.402

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

■ To edit a stored text memo

▶Select an item to edit▶(Edit)

3 Compose a memo



NOTE

◆Highlighting “<Not recorded>” on the “Text memo” screen and pressing also enables you to compose a text memo.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the text memos by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.472) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of text memos. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of text memos just in case.

Checking the details of text memos

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ “Text memo” ▶ Select an item to check in detail ▶ Check the details



Function menu (Text memo screen)

Edit	Edits a text memo.
Compose message	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” →p.243
Edit schedule	“Adding schedule events” →p.392
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” →p.148
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time” →p.367
Send all Ir data	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” →p.368
Copy to miniSD	
• **Copy this**	Copies the selected text memo.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶**(Finish)▶“YES”** Copies multiple text memos.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all text memos.
Text memo info	Shows the category or when it was created.
Category	Categorizes a text memo into “None”, “Personal”, “Holiday”, “Travel”, “Business” or “Meeting”.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected text memo.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶**(Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple text memos.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all text memos.

<Dictionary>

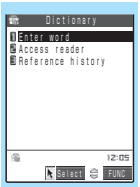
Using Dictionaries

● Using dictionaries from other functions →p.403

Activating a dictionary

1 MENU▶ LifeKit▶“Dictionary”

The “Dictionary” screen appears.



Dictionary

Function menu➡p.402

2 Select any item

Enter word	▶**Enter a word** A word can contain up to 32 double-byte or 64 single-byte characters.
Access reader	▶**“Dic. (Japanese)” or “Dic. (English)”▶Scan text** Enters a word from the access reader.“Scanning Text” →p.201
Reference history	Searches a word from the list of previously retrieved words. “Using reference history” →p.402

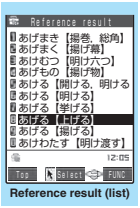
3 Select the dictionary type

The “Reference result (list)” screen appears.

■ **To open the previous or next list**

▶Reference result (list) screen▶⊙





Reference result (list)

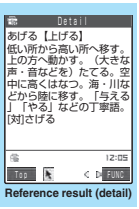
Function menu➡p.403

4 Select a word from the reference result list

The “Reference result (detail)” screen appears.

■ **To view the previous or next word**

▶Reference result (detail) screen▶⊙



Reference result (detail)

Function menu➡p.403

Function menu (Dictionary screen)

Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” →p.148

Using reference history

1 Dictionary screen (p.402)▶“Reference history”

The “Reference history” screen appears.

2 Select a word



Reference history

Function menu➡p.403

Function menu (Reference history screen)

Delete this	Deletes the selected reference history item.
Delete all	Deletes all the reference history items.

Function menu (Reference result (list) screen)

Copy	Copies characters or words. For Japanese-English and Japanese dictionaries, characters in brackets (【】) retrieved as search result are copied. For English-Japanese dictionary, words in search result are copied. The copied word can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.436
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.

Function menu (Reference result (detail) screen)

Copy	Copies the texts selected on the Reference result (detail) screen. The copied texts can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.436
Re-reference	“Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen”→p.403
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.
Refer edit*	Edits texts referring to the searched word. “Changing the Active Window”→p.438

* : Shown only when Refer edit is available.

Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen

1. **Reference result (detail) screen (p.402)▶(−)(FUNC)▶“Re-reference”**
2. **▶Press ● on the first character of the string to search for**
3. **▶Move the cursor to the end of the string to search for, then press ●**
4. **Select the dictionary type**
5. **Select a word from the reference result list**

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select “Refer dictionary” or “Refer dic.” from each function menu on:

- The text edit screen
- The sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message
- A webpage or screen memo

■ When activating a dictionary from the text edit screen

You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.
Selecting “Select area” allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the text edit screen.

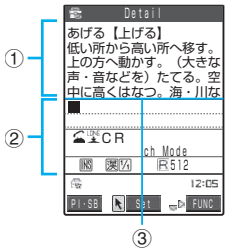
■ When activating a dictionary from the sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message

You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.
Selecting “Select area” allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the sent mail/received mail message or a mail being composed.

■ When activating a dictionary from a webpage or screen memo

You can select “Enter word”, “Site refer(enter)” or “Reference history”.
Selecting “Site refer(enter)” allows you to enter the word you want to look up referring to a webpage or screen memo.

Guide to the dictionary reference screen



Selecting “Refer edit” or “Site refer(enter)” splits the screen into the upper and lower.
Selecting “Change window” from the function menu switches the active window between ① and ②.
Moving the Neuropointer onto a window to activate also enables you to switch the active window.

■ **When you select Refer edit from the Reference result (detail) screen**

① shows the dictionary detail screen.
② shows the text edit screen.
③ draws a border line.
To exit the dictionary, select “Quit dic.” from the function menu or switch to the window ① and press ⓒ (End).

■ **When you select Site refer(enter) from a webpage or screen memo**

① shows the webpage or screen memo.
② shows the word entry screen.
③ draws a border line.
Enter a word and then press ●. The dictionary selection screen appears with the word entered.

<Earphone/microphone with switch>

Using an Earphone/ Microphone with Switch

You can make or receive calls using the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to a FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone terminal cover and insert the earphone/microphone with switch into the socket. →p.24
- The call connection tone or end call tone always sounds when the switch is pressed regardless of the “Keypad sound” setting.
- Note that connecting a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch while a ring tone sounds may accept a voice call or Push-to-Talk call.
- Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the code of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.

Using the switch to make calls

- You can make calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone.

1 Press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when a screen is standby

A FOMA terminal makes a call to the phone number set in “Auto dial setting” (p.405).
Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded also makes a voice call to the phone number set in “Auto dial setting”.

■ **To make calls from the phonebook list screen**

▶Phonebook list screen (p.115)▶Select a phonebook entry▶Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the first phone number listed in the phonebook entry.
You can also make calls from the “Redial/Dialed calls (list)” screen or “Received calls (list)” screen.

■ **To make calls from the phonebook detail screen**

▶Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶Select a phone number▶Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the selected phone number.
You can also make calls from the “Redial/Dialed calls (detail)” screen (p.58) or “Received calls (detail)” screen (p.67).

Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer on the phone number entry screen also allows you to make calls.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

Using the switch to accept calls

1 When a call arrives, press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone

Pressing the switch with a FOMA terminal folded also enables you to answer calls.

■ **To receive voice calls**

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a voice call.

■ **To receive videophone calls**

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a call with the substitute image when the terminal is folded, or with the camera image when the terminal is opened. Selecting “Substitute image” from the function menu switches the camera image to the substitute image.

■ **To answer Push-to-Talk calls**

A FOMA terminal emits the confirmation tone and answers a Push-to-Talk call.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

NOTE

- ◆You can set “Earphone” to make a FOMA terminal emit sound such as a ring tone through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected.
- ◆A ring tone does not sound if “Phone”, “Videophone” or “PushTalk” under “Ring volume” is set to “Silent” or while in manner mode. However, the beeps sound when “Manner mode set” is set to “Original” in which “Phone vol.” is not “Silent”.
- ◆If you subscribe to “Call Waiting”, you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. You can also switch call mode by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer. However, pressing the switch does not end a call.
- ◆Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. Doing so may cause a FOMA terminal to automatically answer a call.

<Auto dial setting>

Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected

Default setting: OFF

Selecting the other party to call allows you to make voice calls simply by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You can specify a phone number stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
- Even when a FOMA terminal is folded, you can make voice calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Auto dial setting” ▶ “ON”

■ **To not dial automatically**
▶“OFF”

2 Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ▶ Show a phone number to set ▶ ●

Searching the phonebook (Selecting the search method) →p.116

NOTE

- ◆You cannot set a phonebook entry containing no phone number, UIM phonebook entry or PushTalk phonebook entry.
- ◆Deleting the phonebook entry set here disallows you to dial using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch even if you set this function to “ON”.

<Automatic answer> MENU94

Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone Attached

Default setting	Automatic answer: OFF Ring time (seconds): 6 sec.

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically accept incoming voice calls, videophone calls or Push-to-Talk calls without having to press the switch when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You cannot automatically accept calls during a voice call, videophone call, Push-to-Talk call or 64K data communication.
- You can automatically accept calls with a FOMA terminal folded.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “External connection” ▶ “Automatic answer” ▶ Select any item

ON	▶**Enter the ring time (001-120 seconds)** Enables the Automatic answer function. A FOMA terminal automatically answers a call after ringing for the specified ring time. Enter the time as a 3-digit number. To set the time currently shown, press ●.
OFF	Disables the Automatic answer function.

NOTE

- ◆When a FOMA terminal automatically answers a videophone call, the caller sees the substitute image. Selecting “My side” from the function menu during a videophone call enables you to switch the substitute image to the camera image.
- ◆The ring time for Automatic answer needs to be different from the one for “Record message” or “Remote monitoring”.
- ◆To give priority to this function when “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is set at the same time, set a ring time shorter than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.
- ◆If the mute time set in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the ring time set for Automatic answer, a FOMA terminal automatically answers calls without ringing. To have the FOMA terminal ring before automatically answering calls, set a longer ring time for Automatic answer than the mute time.
- ◆The shorter of the ring times set in “Ring time setting” and “Automatic answer” is applied for Automatic answer performed when a Push-to-Talk call arrives.
- ◆Connecting an earphone/microphone with switch while a FOMA terminal is ringing does not answer a call automatically. Removing it while a terminal is ringing answers a call automatically.

<Select microphone>

Selecting a Microphone to Be Activated When Using an Earphone/Microphone

Default setting	External microphone

You can select which microphone you want to use when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal on a FOMA terminal.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"External connection"▶"Select microphone"▶Select any item**

Internal microphone	Enables the microphone on a FOMA terminal when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected. Be sure to select this option when connecting an earphone without a microphone.
External microphone	Enables the microphone on the earphone when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected.

NOTE

◆When "Select microphone" is set to "Internal microphone", the microphone sensitivity is set at the same level as when the hands-free operation is set to ON. You need not put the mouthpiece to your mouth when talking on a FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone connected.

<Reset settings> MENU23

Resetting Function Settings

This function allows you to reset function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Do not mistake "Initialize" for "Reset settings". Selecting "Initialize" will delete all data you have stored.→p.407

- If a FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, "USB mode setting" is not reset to default.
- To reset the i-mode functions to default, perform "Reset" in "i-mode settings".→p.228
- To reset the mail functions to default, perform "Reset" in "Mail settings".→p.280
- To reset the full browser functions to default, run "Reset" in "Full Browser settings".→p.320

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Other settings"▶"Reset settings"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"**

■ **To cancel the reset**

▶"NO"

Functions that will be reset

For more information on the functions to be reset, see "Menu Function List" (p.450). In addition to the functions listed in "Menu Function List", the following functions will be reset:

Function	Default setting
My picture	
Image list function menu	
• **Sort**	Chronological ↑
My picture function menu	
• **Set image disp.**	Normal
i-motion	
i-motion	
• **Volume**	Level 4
Movie list function menu	
• **List setting**	Title + image (FOMA terminal (Phone)), Name + image (miniSD)
• **Sort**	Chronological ↑
i-motion stopped (pause) function menu	
• **Set repeat play**	OFF
• **Set image disp.**	Normal
Melody	
Melody function menu	
• **Set repeat play**	OFF
Chara-den	
Chara-den list/Chara-den player/Rec.Chara-den function menu	
• **Substitute image**	ブンブン(Dimo)
• **Set image disp.**	Fit in display
Chara-den list/Chara-den player function menu	
• **Rec.Chara-den**	Photo mode
Rec.Chara-den function menu	
• **Select size**	QCIF (176 × 144)
• **Movie type set**	Video + voice
• **Storage setting**	Normal
• **Storage setting**	Fine
• **File size setting**	Restricted(Short)
My document	
PDF list function menu	
• **Sort**	Chronological ↑

Function	Default setting
Music	
Music player	
• **Volume**	Level 10
• **Playback mode**	Normal
Track list function menu	
• **List setting**	Title
• **Off timer**	90 minutes
Music player function menu	
• **SRS_WOW**	Level 10
• **Equalizer set.**	OFF
• **Repeat setting**	OFF
Camera	
Movie mode	
• **Select size**	QCIF (176 × 144)
• **File size setting**	Restricted(Short)
• **Storage setting**	Normal
• **Image quality**	Photo mode: Portrait White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• **Shutter sound**	Sound 1
• **Select to save**	Phone (Camera folder)
Photo mode	
• **Select size**	CIF (352 × 288)
• **Storage setting**	Fine
• **Select finder**	Front
• **Image quality**	Photo mode: Auto White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• **Shutter sound**	Sound 1
• **Select to save**	Phone (Camera folder)
Movie mode/Photo mode	
• **Camera**	Rear camera
• **Auto timer**	OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.)
• **Auto save set**	OFF
• **File restriction**	File unrestricted
• **Display size**	Actual size
• **Shake correction**	Auto
Setting Continuous mode→p.189	
Schedule function menu	
• **Display**	Monthly display
• **User icon settg.**	Not stored
Phonebook function menu	
• **Discern connect**	All OFF
• **Restrictions**	All OFF
• **Big font, Standard font**	Standard font

Function	Default setting
PushTalk phonebook function menu	
PushTalk setting	
• **Auto answer setting**	OFF
• **Ring time setting**	30 seconds
• **Setting when folded**	Speaker talk
• **Caller ID setting**	OFF
• **Set i-mode arrival act**	PushTalk preferred
• **PushTalk arrival act**	Call Rejection
Own number function menu	
• **Big font, Standard font**	Standard font
Videophone in-call function menu	
• **V.phone settings**	Brightness: 0
• **Display light**	All time ON
Last one function*	
• **Main menu**	Data box
• **Search phonebook**	Search reading
Volume	Level 4
Manner mode	Release
Public mode	Release

* : “Last one function” allows the last selected function to be selected next time you perform the same operation.

<Initialize>

Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default

Performing this function deletes stored data and returns the function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Performing “Initialize” deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images or melodies, i-αppli, PDF data, still images and movies shot with the built-in camera (even protected data).

- If you have deleted the pre-installed Chara-den characters or PDF data, initializing a FOMA terminal restores them.
- Performing Initialize does not delete data that have already been stored at the time of purchase.
- For more information on the default settings to restore, see “Reset settings” (p.406).
- Performing “Initialize” returns the functions and data that are listed below and that can be reset by the “Reset settings” function to default set at the time of purchase:

Continued on next page

- Mail data
- Mail folders
- Template
- Color palette history
- Chat member for chat mail
- i-mode settings
- Home
- Full Browser settings
- Channel list
- Software list
- i-αppli Auto start set
- i-αppli action info*1
- Call data
- Set time (date/time)
- Style mode
- Pause dial
- Security code
- Clear learned under Character input set
- To Do list
- Schedule
- Text memo
- Play/Erase msg.
- Play/Erase VP msg.
- Voice memo
- Voice announce
- Mail settings
- Bookmark
- Screen memo
- Last URL
- Go to location
- Message
- Access reader
- Bar code reader
- Dictionary
- Additional service
- Multi Number (Number Setting)
- Phonebook
- PushTalk phonebook
- Group setting
- Received calls
- Redial/Dialed calls
- Received address
- Sent address
- Mail member
- Chat group
- Own dictionary
- Download dictionary
- Image data saved for Face authentication
- Sent/rec'd Data list (Data Sec. Service)
- Data added by user*2

*1 : The launch information on an i-αppli that had been preinstalled at the time of purchase is not restored to default (except if it is upgraded or it is deleted once and then downloaded).

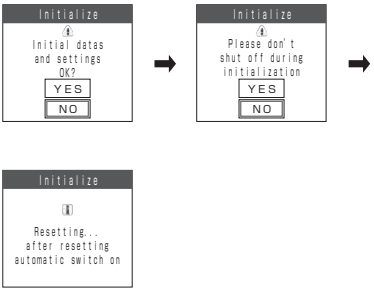
*2 : Saved data, downloaded data, i-αppli programs, still images or movies shot with the built-in camera, etc.

- The group names, folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- Secret data and data stored in Secret folder are also deleted.
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing a FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize a FOMA terminal if the battery is low.
- Do not turn a FOMA terminal off while it is being initialized.
- You cannot use any other functions while a FOMA terminal is being initialized. Also, you cannot receive voice calls, videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls or mails.

◆Performing "Initialize" restores a FOMA terminal to default.
It is recommended to back up your data stored on your FOMA terminal by taking notes or using the Data Link Software (p.472) or miniSD memory card (p.353).

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶"Other settings"▶"Initialize"▶Enter your security code

2 "YES"▶"YES"



Initialization begins.
Initialization may take several minutes.
When initialization ends, a FOMA terminal is automatically restarted.

■ If initialization is failed

▶Press "OK" after turning a FOMA terminal on
Initialization is performed again.

NOTE

◆Performing initialization deletes i-αppli programs if they:
- had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were upgraded
- had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were deleted once and then downloaded
- were downloaded after purchase

You can download the i-αppli programs that had been pre-installed at the time of purchase from the "みんなNらんど" page in the "ケータイ電話メーカー" site. A packet communication charge is applied for download. →p.214

◆After the FOMA terminal functions are reset, i-channel telop text does not appear. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing 4, the telop text appears automatically.

◆Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli and data on the IC card are not deleted.

◆You cannot initialize a FOMA terminal while another function is running.

◆Data saved, stored or set on the FOMA card (UIM) or miniSD memory card are not deleted.

◆Data communication settings specified by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are not deleted.

◆If there are large amounts of data to be deleted, initialization may take some time.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.353

Network Services

Available Network Services 410
Voice Mail Service 410
Call Waiting Service..... 411
Call Forwarding Service..... 413
Nuisance Call Blocking Service..... 414
Caller ID Request Service 414
Dual Network Service 414
English Guidance..... 415
Service Numbers 415
Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call..... 416
Setting Up Remote Control..... Remote Control 417
Multi Number 417
Adding and Using Services ..... Additional service 418

This chapter explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal. For more details, see “Network Services User Guide”. For details on Multi Number, see “Multi Number User Guide”.

Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of useful DoCoMo network services. The table below outlines the available services.

Service	Sub-scrip-tion	Monthly charge	Refer to
Voice Mail	Required	Charged	p.410
Call Waiting	Required	Charged	p.411
Call Forwarding	Required	Free	p.413
Nuisance Call Blocking	Required	Free	p.414
Caller ID Notification	Not required	Free	p.47
Caller ID Request	Not required	Free	p.414
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	p.71
Public mode (Power off)			p.73
Dual Network	Required	Charged	p.414
English Guidance	Not required	Free	p.415
Multi Number	Required	Charged	p.417
SMS (Short Message Service)	Not required	Free	p.285

- This chapter explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal. For more details, see “Network Services User Guide”. For details on Multi Number, see “Multi Number User Guide”.
- When the “ ” icon appears, you cannot use the service that is available when you are connected to the Network service center.
- When DoCoMo makes a new network service available, you can add the new service to the menu (Additional service). →p.418

Voice Mail Service

Subscription Required

Voice Mail service announces to a caller who calls when “ ” appears or the FOMA terminal is turned off, and keeps a message for you.

* As of May 2006, a videophone message cannot be kept using the Voice Mail service.

- 20 messages of up to three minutes each can be recorded. Messages are stored for up to 72 hours.

Basic flow of Voice Mail service

Voice Mail service activated

⬇

Your FOMA terminal receives a voice/videophone call

⬇

You cannot answer the call and it is connected to the Voice Mail service center

⬇

The caller records a message

If the caller is in a hurry and wishes to leave a message without listening to the Voice Mail answering message, he or she can interrupt the answering message and switch to message recording mode immediately by pressing #.

⬇

The Voice Mail service center notifies you that you have a recorded message

⬇

You listen to the recorded message

NOTE

- If you receive a call while the Voice Mail service is activated, the ring tone specified in “Select ring tone” sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the Voice Mail service center. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as “Missed calls” and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- Voice mail cannot be connected via videophone by “32K” communication speed.
- When connecting to the voice mail via Chara-den, you cannot perform DTMF operation. Switch to the DTMF transmission mode using the function menu. →p.83

Using the Voice Mail service

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ “Voice Mail” ▶ Select any item

Play messages	**▶“YES”** The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Then play your recorded messages by following the audio instructions.
Activate	**▶“YES” ▶“YES” ▶Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)** If you set the ring time to 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the “Received calls” record.

Deactivate	▶**"YES"** Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	▶**Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)** Changes the ring time only.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings. • Function menu (Check setting screen) displayed when you select "Check setting"→p.411
Setting	▶**"YES"** Follows the voice instructions to change the settings. The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Hereafter, follow the voice instructions.
Check messages	Checks for voice messages. Afterwards, you receive a message that checking is completed.
Message notification*	▶**"YES"** Sounds the exclusive notification tone when the Voice Mail service center receives another voice message. The volume is fixed to "Level 2".
Erase icon	▶**"YES"** Deletes the icon "1" (Voice Mail).
Activate notice call	When you receive a call while the FOMA terminal is out of service area or is turned off, this service sends you an SMS (p.286) notifying you of the information about the call (the date and time, caller ID) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back into the service area.
• **All Calls**	▶**"YES"** Notifies you of all calls.
• **Calls with Caller ID**	▶**"YES"** Notifies you of only calls with caller ID.
Deactivate notice call	▶**"YES"** Deactivates call notification.
Notice call status	Displays the current call notification settings.

* : The option is available only for voice call messages.

NOTE

<Play messages> <Setting>

◆If you press keys (0 to 9, *, #) following the voice instructions, a call may not end even if ☎ is pressed. In this case, press ☎.

◆To change the settings for the videophone on the voice mail, make a voice call to "1412".

<Activate>

◆To give priority to the Voice Mail service over "Record message", set the ring time of the Voice Mail service shorter than that of "Record message".

◆If the mute time set under "Ring time(sec.)" (p.174) is longer than the ring time of the Voice Mail service, the ring time does not sound and the Voice Mail service launches. To make the ring time sound before the Voice Mail service launches, set the ring time of the Voice Mail service longer than the mute time.

<Check messages>

◆If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice Mail service center, the "1" (Voice Mail icon) and "VM" ("Voice Mail" desktop icon) appear on the standby screen. However, if the videophone messages are stored, an SMS will notify, not the icon.

◆The number in the Voice Mail icon changes according to the number of stored messages ("1", "2", "3" ... "+" (10 messages or more)).
The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages.

◆The number of messages that arrive at the Voice Mail service center after you check for messages may not be included in the number shown in the Voice Mail icon.

<Erase icon>

◆Clearing the icon does not delete the corresponding recorded messages. The Voice Mail icon appears again when you check for messages.

<Activate notice call>

◆Call logs are notified even with "Reject all" set for SMS.

Function menu (Check setting screen)

Activate	Activates the Voice Mail service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	Changes the ring time.

Call Waiting Service

Subscription Required

The Call Waiting enables you to answer a voice call newly received while you are talking on another voice call. You can also use this service to put your current voice call on hold while you make a voice call to someone else.

- To use Call Waiting, select "Answer" in "In-call arrival act" (p.416) beforehand. If other item is set, you will not be able to answer a voice call received during another voice call even with Call Waiting activated.
- If the Call Waiting is activated and "In-call arrival act" is set to "Answer", you can answer another incoming call when receiving a videophone call during voice call or when receiving a voice call or videophone call during videophone call. However, you need to end the current voice call or videophone call (you cannot hold the current call).
→p.416

Using the Call Waiting service

1 (MENU)▶(Service)▶“Call Waiting”▶Select any item

Activate	▶**“YES”** Activates the Call Waiting service.
Deactivate	▶**“YES”** Deactivates the Call Waiting service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

NOTE

<Activate>

◆If you receive a voice call while another voice call is on hold, the hold is released and you return to the first call. If you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), pressing (TALK) or (●) automatically puts the first call on hold and connects to the second caller.

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a newly received voice call

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press (TALK) or (●)

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.



2 Switch back to the first call

■ **To end the call with the second caller**

▶(CLR)▶(TALK) or (●)

This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to the first call.

■ **To put the second call on hold**

▶(TALK)

This puts the second call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing (TALK).

You can also switch the calls by selecting “Change held call” from the function menu.

■ **To end a voice call on hold**

▶(−)(FUNC)▶“End held call”

NOTE

◆If you receive another voice call while the “Multi calling” is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the voice call you are on or held voice call. To end the held voice call and answer an incoming call, press (●), select “End held call” from the function menu and then press (TALK) or (●). To end the voice call you are on and answer an incoming call, press (●), press (CLR) and then press (TALK) or (●).

Ending the current voice call to answer a newly received voice call

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press (CLR)

The first call ends and the ring tone sounds.

2 (TALK) or (●)

The FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

Putting the current voice call on hold to make a new voice call to someone else

You can put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

1 Dial another phone number during a call▶(TALK)

The initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call. You can also make a call by searching the phonebook.

Searching the phonebook →p.115



2 Switch back to the first call

■ **To end the new call**

▶(CLR)▶(TALK) or (●)

This ends the new call and returns you to the first call.

■ **To put the new call on hold**

▶(TALK)

This puts the new call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing (TALK).

You can also switch the calls by selecting “Change held call” from the function menu.

■ **To end a voice call on hold**

▶(−)(FUNC)▶“End held call”

NOTE

◆If you receive another voice call while the “Multi calling” is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the voice call you are on or held voice call. To end the held voice call and answer an incoming call, press (●), select “End held call” from the function menu and then press (TALK) or (●). To end the voice call you are on and answer an incoming call, press (●), press (CLR) and then press (TALK) or (●).

Call Forwarding Service

Subscription Required

If you receive a voice or videophone call when the "" icon appears on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, the Call Forwarding service forwards the call to a previously registered forwarding number such as your home or office phone.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding service

Call Forwarding number registered

⬇

Call Forwarding service activated

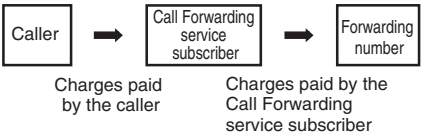
⬇

Your FOMA terminal receives a voice or videophone call

⬇

If you do not answer the voice or videophone call, it is automatically forwarded to the specified number

Call Forwarding service call charges



NOTE

◆Calls are logged in the Received calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Using the Call Forwarding service

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ "Call Forwarding" ▶Select any item

Activate	Register a forwarding number and set the ring time, and then select "Activate".
• **Register fwd number**	**▶Enter a forwarding number** Use ⓞ to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116 Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Register fwd number".
• **Set ring time**	**▶Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)** Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Set ring time". If you set to the ring time to 0 (zero) second, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.
• **Activate**	**▶"YES"** Activates the Call Forwarding service.
Deactivate	**▶"YES"** Deactivates the Call Forwarding service.
Change forwarding No	Changes the forwarding number only. Enter the new forwarding number, select "Change forwarding No" if the Call Forwarding service is already activated, or select "Change No.+Activate" if the service is deactivated.
Fwd number busy*	**▶"YES"** When the forwarding number is busy, a received voice call can be transferred to the Voice Mail service center.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

* : It is required to subscribe to the "Voice Mail service".

NOTE

◆If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for "Register fwd number" and "Set ring time".

◆To give priority to the Call Forwarding service over "Record message", set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service shorter than that of "Record message".

◆To give priority to the Call Forwarding service over "Remote monitoring", set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service shorter than that of "Remote monitoring".

◆If the mute time set under "Ring time(sec.)" is longer than the ring time of the Call Forwarding service, the ring time does not sound and the Call Forwarding service launches. To make the ring time sound before the Call Forwarding service launches, set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service longer than the mute time.

Setting or canceling the Call Forwarding guidance message

1 On the standby screen

▶ 1 あ 4 GHI 2 ABC 9 WXYZ ▶ ☎

Follow the voice instructions.
For more details, see "Network Services User Guide".

Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Subscription Required

The Nuisance Call Blocking service enables you to register specific phone numbers, such as those which make nuisance calls or unwanted sales calls, so that you do not receive any further calls from those numbers. Once you have registered a number, calls from that number are automatically rejected by the network and the call rejection message is sent to the caller.

- When you receive a Push-to-Talk call from a caller registered in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the call rejection message is not sent to the caller, and the call is disconnected.
- Calls barred by the Nuisance Call Blocking service are not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed calls” desktop icon appears.

Using the Nuisance Call Blocking service

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶“Nuisance Call Blk”▶Select any item

Register Caller	**▶“YES”▶“OK”** Adds the last caller to your list of barred callers.
Register number	**▶Enter or quote a phone number ▶“YES”▶“OK”** Directly enters the number or quote it from the phonebook, Redial or Received calls record. • Enter a part of the number then use ↕, and you can enter the number by searching the phonebook. • Use ↕ to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116 • Press ↩ to search the Received calls record, ↪ to search the Redial calls record to enter the number.
Delete last entry	**▶“YES”▶“OK”** Deletes the barred number that was registered last time. Repeating this procedure does not delete any of the preceding barred numbers.
Delete all entries	**▶“YES”▶“OK”** Deletes all the barred numbers in the list.
The number of entries	Checks the number of barred callers.

NOTE

<Register number>

◆You cannot register a phone number searched from the Received calls or Redial record of Push-to-Talk call as a barred caller.

Caller ID Request Service

Subscription Not required

When you receive a voice call from a caller who does not provide his or her phone number (caller ID), the Caller ID Request service sends the caller an audio message for voice calls and a movie announcement requesting caller ID for videophone calls, and then automatically ends the call (As for Push-to-Talk, the announcement is not sent to the caller, and the call is disconnected). This service provides an effective way to prevent problems with calls from unknown callers and enables you to use the FOMA terminal safer.

- Calls rejected by the Caller ID Request service are not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed calls” desktop icon appears.

Using the Caller ID Request service

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶“Caller ID Request”▶Select any item

Activate	**▶“YES”▶“OK”** Activates the Caller ID Request service.
Deactivate	**▶“YES”▶“OK”** Deactivates the Caller ID Request service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

Dual Network Service

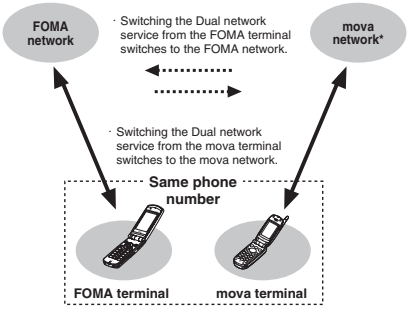
Subscription Required

You can also use a mova terminal with the same phone number subscribed to FOMA. FOMA and mova can be used depending on its service area.

- For accessing from a mova terminal and other details, see “Network Services User Guide”.

Overview of the Dual Network service

- Switching for the Dual Network service can be performed either from a FOMA terminal or mova terminal when it is unable to access the respective services.



* Some services are not available.

- You cannot access the networks from both a FOMA terminal and mova terminal at the same time.

Using the Dual Network service

1 (MENU) ▶ (Service) ▶ “Dual Network” ▶ Select any item

Dual Network switching	**▶“YES”▶Enter your network security code** Switches from mova terminal to FOMA terminal.
Check setting	Checks whether the FOMA terminal can access the services.

NOTE

◆If you use the Dual Network service in a mova terminal after using a FOMA terminal overseas and returning to Japan, turn on the FOMA terminal before use.

<Dual Network switching>

◆End communication in the terminal that can access the services before switching networks.

English Guidance

Subscription Not required

This function enables you to set English as the language used in guidance messages such as the out of area warnings and service information that are given when network services such as “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service are set. This function can also set English as the language used in a guidance message such as the one for “Caller ID Request” that is sent to people who call you.

For the guidance message given during a call between DoCoMo mobile phones, the caller’s setting for outgoing calls takes priority over the receiver’s setting for incoming calls.

The table below lists the available language settings.

Item	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing (including guidance messages for network service settings)	Japanese	Japanese
	English	English
Incoming (guidance messages played for callers)	Japanese	Japanese
	Japanese+ English	Plays in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+ Japanese	Plays in English first and then in Japanese.

Using the English Guidance

1 (MENU) ▶ (Service) ▶ “English Guidance” ▶ Select any item

Guidance setting	Sets the guidance language.
• **Outgoing +Incoming**	Sets the language used for outgoing and incoming calls.
• **Outgoing call**	Sets the language used for outgoing calls.
• **Incoming call**	Sets the language used for incoming calls.
Check setting	Displays the current guidance settings.

Service Numbers

This function provides a quick and simple way to contact the DoCoMo general help desk and service counter for information on faults, etc.

1 (MENU) ▶ (Service) ▶ “Service Numbers” ▶ Select any item

ドコモ故障問合せ	Calls the DoCoMo technical inquiries.
ドコモ総合案内・受付	Calls the DoCoMo general inquiries.
海外紛失等（有料）	Calls the DoCoMo international lost/ stolen help desk.
海外故障（有料）	Calls the DoCoMo international malfunction help desk.

NOTE

◆The contact numbers for the DoCoMo general information desk and service desk may differ or not be displayed depending on the FOMA card (UIM) you are using.→p.39

If they are not displayed, it is recommended to store the contact numbers described on the back cover of this manual on the phonebook.

Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call

You can specify how voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication calls that arrive while on another call are handled.

- If you have not subscribed to “Call Waiting”, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service, you cannot answer an incoming call that arrives while on another call.

Specifying how handling calls received while on another call <In-call arrival act>

Default setting: Answer

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶“In-call arrival act”▶Select any item

Voice Mail*	Transfers a voice call and a videophone call received while on another call to the Voice Mail service center regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Voice Mail” service settings.
Call Forwarding	Transfers a voice or videophone call received while on another call to the forwarding number regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Call Forwarding” service settings.
Call Rejection	Rejects a voice call, videophone call and 64K data communication call received while on another call.
Answer	If you activate “Call Waiting” and receive a voice call while on another voice call, the “Call Waiting” is available. If you are on a voice call with Call Waiting deactivated, or on a videophone call or 64K data communication call, you can handle an incoming call in one of the following ways: • Ending the voice, videophone or 64K data communication call in progress and answering the new voice, videophone or 64K data communication call • Manually handling a voice, videophone or 64K data communication call received while on another call using the function menu. →p.417 • If “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated, calls are handled according to those service settings.

* : As of May 2006, a videophone message cannot be kept using the Voice Mail service.

Activating the handling setting for calls received while on another call <Set in-call arrival>

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶“Set in-call arrival”▶Select any item

Activate	Activates the “Set in-call arrival” setting.
Deactivate	Deactivates the “Set in-call arrival” setting.
Check setting	Shows the current setting.

Ending a call or 64K data communication in progress to answer a new call

When a call in progress and incoming call are the same type

<Example: Ending a voice call in progress to answer a new voice call>

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press 2PQR

This ends the call in progress and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

■ **For videophone or 64K data communication call**

A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the call in progress.

▶●▶2PQR

2 or ●

This accepts the incoming voice call.

■ **For 64K data communication call**

▶Take the call on a PC

When a call in progress and incoming call are different types

If you receive a videophone or 64K data communication call while on a voice call, if you receive a voice or 64K data communication call while on a videophone call, or if you receive a voice or videophone call during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end the call or 64K data communication in progress so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: Ending a videophone call in progress to answer an incoming voice call>

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call and a message* appears, press ●

When you receive a 64K data communication call, a message appears instead of the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps).

* : A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the call in progress.

2 (MULTI) ▶Select "Connecting V-phone" by (MULTI) or , then press ▶

3 or

Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Call Forwarding or Voice Mail service

<Example: When "Set in-call arrival" is set to "Activate" and "In-call arrival act" set to "Answer">

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press (FUNC)

■ **When you receive a call other than voice call while on a voice call**
▶ ▶ (FUNC)

2 Select how to handle the received call

■ **To reject an incoming call**
▶"Call Rejection"

■ **To forward an incoming call to the forwarding number**
▶"Call Forwarding"

■ **To transfer an incoming call to the Voice Mail service center**
▶"Voice Mail"

With any of the above procedures, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote Control>

Setting Up Remote Control

This function enables you to use the "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding" services from a touch-tone general subscriber phone, payphone or DoCoMo mobile phone.

- For how to operate a network service from a payphone, etc., see "Network Services User Guide".

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶**"Remote Control" ▶Select any item**

Activate	▶**"YES"** Activates the remote control.
Deactivate	▶**"YES"** Deactivates the remote control.
Check setting	Displays the current remote control settings.

Multi Number

Subscription Required

Registering up to 2 additional numbers (Additional Number 1 and 2) besides your contracted phone number (Basic Number) enables you to use them depending on the situation.
Additional Numbers are notified when you subscribed to Multi Number.

- For details on Multi Number, see "Multi Number User Guide".
- Selecting a number in Set Multi Number enables you to use the specified phone number for all calls you will make.
- You can also switch phone number each one call. →p.418
- You can receive voice calls, videophone calls or 64K data communication calls that are made to Additional Number 1 or 2. You can also set a ring tone for each number. →p.417

NOTE

◆Selecting "Multi Number" from the function menu to make a call will display the item selected when making a call ("Basic Number" or register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) on the Redial (detail) screen or Dialed calls record (detail) screen even if you have not subscribed to "Multi Number".
If you make a call without using the function menu, only the dialing phone number is displayed in the Redial/Dialed calls.

◆When you search a phone number from the Redial/Dialed calls record to make a call, the call is made from the number (Basic Number, Additional Number 1 or 2) displayed in the record. If only the dialing phone number is displayed in the record, the call is made from the number set in "Set Multi Number" (p.417).

◆When you make a call using Received calls record, the call is made from the number logged in the record regardless of the "Set Multi Number" (p.417) setting.

◆When a call is received by Additional Number 1 or 2, the registered name of the number is displayed on the receiving screen or on the received calls detail screen.

◆In Public mode (Driving mode), if an incoming call is dialed to Additional Number 1 or 2, the operation performed is the same as that of Basic Number. →p.71

Using the Multi Number

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ **"Multi Number" ▶Select any item**

Set Multi Number	Sets a phone number to be used for making a call normally.
• **Basic Number**	▶**"YES"** Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
• **Additional Number1***	▶**"YES"** Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
• **Additional Number2***	

Continued on next page

Check setting	Checks the “Set Multi Number” setting.
Number Setting	**▶Highlight an item to register (or change) an additional number and press (Edit)▶Enter a name ▶Enter an additional number** Registers the additional number you were notified when you applied for Multi Number to the FOMA terminal. A name can contain up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters. An additional number can contain up to 26 digits. • The Multi Number setting function menu displayed when you select “Number Setting” →p.418
Select ring tone	Sets the ring tones for Additional Number 1 and 2. “Changing the Ring Tone” →p.128

* : The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

◆If you insert a different FOMA card, the Multi Number settings (names, numbers, ring tones, etc.) registered to the FOMA terminal may be erased. In this case, register again.

<Number Setting>

◆The name is displayed when you specify the Multi Number settings and select a phone number used for a call.

<Select ring tone>

◆When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. →p.130

Function menu (Multi Number setting screen)

Edit	Sets an additional number.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted additional number.
Delete all	Deletes all the registered additional numbers.

Switching phone number each time making a call

When making a call, you can select a phone number to be used for the call.

1 Phone number entry screen (p.50) ▶(FUNC)▶“Multi Number” ▶Select any item

Basic Number	Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
Additional Number1*	Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
Additional Number2*	
Cancel number	Cancels the setting to restore the “Set Multi Number” setting.

* : The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

◆You can also switch phone number using the procedures above from the function menu of Phonebook detail, Redial/Dialed/Received calls details screen.

◆When you make a call by selecting the “Multi Number” from the function menu, Basic Number suffixed with “✗590#”, Additional Number 1 suffixed with “✗591#” or Additional Number 2 suffixed with “✗592#” is displayed as the dialed number on the dialing screen.

◆When the detail screen of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls shows the Multi Number register name (“Basic Number” or register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) and you would like to make a call using the different number from the displayed Multi Number register name, select any item to be called from “Multi Number” on the function menu.

<Additional service>

Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo provides new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the new services on your FOMA terminal.
When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the “number” or “service code” that you need in order to use the new service. You should store the number or code on your FOMA terminal along with the service name.

- You can add up to 10 new network services.
- Enter a service code in the “Enter USSD number” field on the screen for adding new services.

Adding additional service and response message

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶“Additional service”▶Select any item

Additional service	**▶Highlight “<Not stored>” and (FUNC)▶“Add new service” ▶Enter a service name** Adds a new service. A service name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. • The Add new service function menu displayed when you select “Additional service” →p.419
• **Enter number**	**▶Enter a number▶“YES”** Uses the number to connect. The number can contain up to 20 digits.
• **Enter USSD number**	**▶Enter a code▶“YES”** Uses the service code to connect. The code can contain up to 40 digits.

Additional guidance	**▶Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (FUNC)▶"Add new guidance"▶Enter a command▶Enter a response message▶"YES"** Stores response messages for commands posted from the network when using the service code (USSD) to access an added service. A command can contain up to 20 digits. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. • The Additional guidance function menu displayed when you select "Additional guidance"→p.419

NOTE

<Additional service>

◆To add a service, enter the "number" or "service code" provided by DoCoMo. The "number" is the number used to connect to the service center, while the "service code" (USSD) is the code used for notifying the service center.

Function menu (Additional service screen/Additional guidance screen)

Add new service, Add new guidance	Adds a setting.
Edit	Changes the setting.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted service or message.
Delete all	Deletes all services or messages.

Using the newly added service

1 MENU▶Service▶"Additional service"▶"Additional service"

2 Select a service▶●

Data Communication

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal..... 422
Before Using..... 423
Checking the Procedure..... 423
AT Commands..... 424

For details on data communication, see “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF) in the bundled CD-ROM.
To view the “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Visit the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

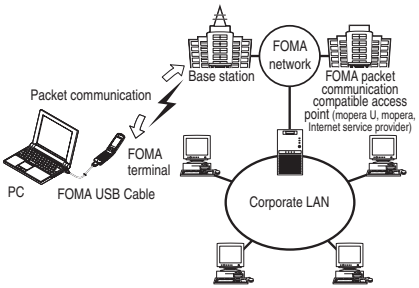
Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and a PC is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

- Packet communication
  Data is received at 384kbps max and sent at 64kbps max. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. The communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.
- 64K data communication
  Data can be sent and received at the stable speed of 64kbps. You are charged for how long the line is maintained regardless of the amount of data.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

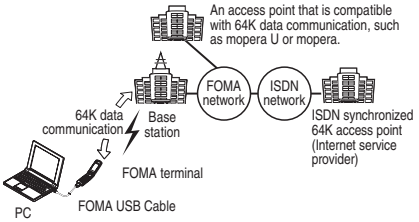
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo Internet service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service to which you need to subscribe. “mopera” is a free service to which you do not need to subscribe.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronous 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the provider or administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

When using FirstPass compliant websites on your browser, you may need FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization. In this case, install the FirstPass PC software included on the CD-ROM that came with this product and make the settings. For more information, refer to the “FirstPassManual” (PDF file) contained in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is provided in Japanese only.)

To view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required.

If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Visit the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

● Data communication glossary

Administrator privilege
If you do not have this privilege on Windows 2000 or Windows XP, access is limited and you are unable to install/uninstall drivers or applications.

APN (Access Point Name)
A string to identify the Internet service provider, a corporate LAN, etc. on packet communication. For example, the mopera U APN is "mopera.net".

cid (Context Identifier)
A registration number used to register a packet communication APN to the FOMA terminal. It is similar to a memory number in a phonebook. Up to 10 numbers from 1 to 10 can be registered.

DNS (Domain Name System)
A system that translates a domain name such as "nttdocomo.co.jp" into an IP address (a complicated string of numbers), so that a computer can easily manage it.

OBEX (Object Exchange)
An international standard protocol of data communication developed by IrDA. Use OBEX-enabled devices or applications to transfer data between various devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)
Service quality about network communication speed. Set the QoS settings on the FOMA terminal to connect at any speed or only at the highest speed.

W-TCP
TCP parameter used to make the most of the TCP/IP transmission capability during packet communication on the FOMA network. This setting is required to make the most of the FOMA terminal's communication capability.

Before Using

Operating environment

The following table shows the operating environment to use data communication:

PC	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) recommended
Operating System*3	• Windows 98*1, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)
Memory	• Windows 98, Windows Me: 32M bytes or higher*2 • Windows 2000: 64M bytes or higher*2 • Windows XP: 128M bytes or higher*2
Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or higher*2

*1 : The FirstPass PC software is not compatible with Windows 98 but with Windows 98SE.
*2 : The required memory and hard disk space may vary depending on the system configuration.
*3 : Operations to be performed are not guaranteed after Operating System is upgraded.

NOTE

◆To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ", update "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ". For information on how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
◆The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
◆The FOMA terminal is not compatible with FAX communication.

Required devices

In addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, the following hardware and software are required:
• FOMA USB Cable (optional)
• "FOMA N902iS CD-ROM"

NOTE

◆Purchase the dedicated "FOMA USB Cable". A USB cable for a PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Checking the Procedure

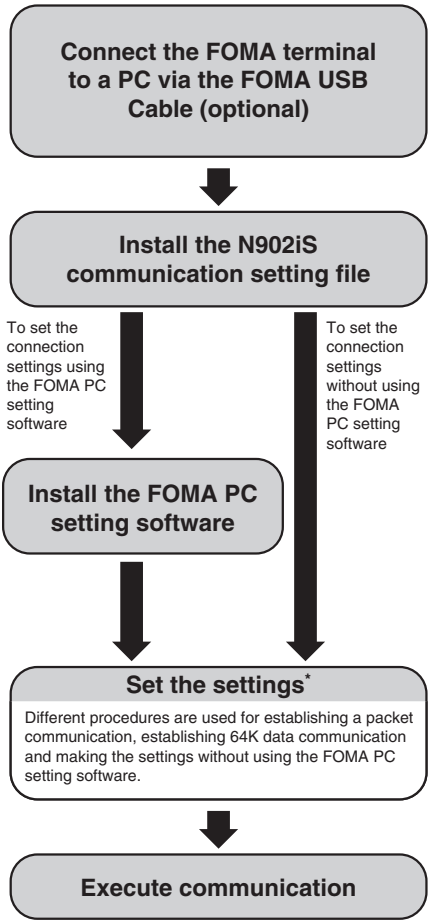
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ Bundled "FOMA N902iS CD-ROM"

- The CD-ROM contains the N902iS communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N902iS communication setting file is the software (driver) required for connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N902iS communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.
  Use the FOMA PC setting software to easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and establish a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes the preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use the Internet with the FOMA terminal and a PC connected, “mopera U” (subscription required) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are only charged for a month when you use the service. “mopera” (no subscription required) allows you to access the Internet immediately.

AT Commands

AT commands are used to control the modem, etc. The FOMA terminal is compatible with AT commands. In addition, the FOMA terminal uses some extended commands and its own AT commands.

To use AT commands to set up the FOMA terminal’s functions on a PC, see “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF) in the bundled CD-ROM.

Entering Text

Entering Text 426
Editing and Storing Common Phrases ..... Common phrases 435
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text 436
Kuten Code 436
Storing Frequently Used Words ..... Own dictionary 437
Resetting the Learning Record ..... Clear learned 437
Selecting a Dictionary to Use ..... Download dictionary 437
Changing the Active Window 438

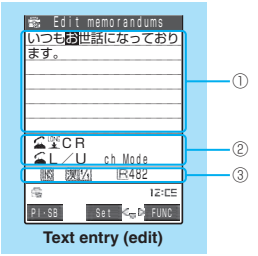
Entering Text

Use dial keys to enter text on the FOMA terminal. The text entry function is used to create a phonebook entry, compose a message, etc.

- The text entry method is divided into “Mode 1(5-touch)”, “Mode 2(2-touch)” and “Mode 3(T9 input)”.

Text entry (edit) screen

The text entry (edit) screen consists of the following areas: ①text entry, ②operation guidance and ③information display. The text entry area shows text being entered, the cursor and the end mark. The operation guidance area shows operations that can be currently performed, such as conversion, search and highlight. The information display area shows information such as text entry mode, input mode and remaining character count.



Text entry (edit)

Function menu➡p.434

① **Text entry area**

■ : Cursor. Text is entered at this location.

◀ : End mark. Text can be entered up to this mark. The location of the end mark varies depending on the function being used.

② **Operation guidance area**

▲▼ CHG: Indicates that ◎ can be used for conversion. →p.430

▲▼ All/ ▲▼ Search: Indicates that ◎ can be used to search on the Search phonebook screen. →p.116

Fix mode/ Fix END: Indicates that Fix mode can be used in “Mode 3 (T9 input)”. →p.429

◀▶▲▼ Area: Appears when you copy (or cut) text. →p.436

CR: Indicates that you can insert a line-feed symbol “↵” by holding down ↵ for 1 second or longer. →p.432

L／U: Indicates that ↵ can be used to switch between upper case and lower case. →p.431

AA→aa: Indicates that “Mode 3 (T9 input)” can be released by pressing ↵. →p.428

aa→Aa: Indicates that “Mode 3 (T9 input)” can be switched to “Shift mode” by pressing ↵. →p.428

Aa→AA: Indicates that “Mode 3 (T9 input)” can be switched to “CapsLock mode” by pressing ↵. →p.428

ﾎｰﾑ Back: Indicates that you can return to the previous character assigned to the same key by pressing ｉ(Home) when the text entry method is “Mode 1(5-touch)”.

ch Mode: Indicates that the Input mode can be switched by pressing ch. →p.427

③ **Information display area**

2 / あ: Indicates that the text entry method is “Mode 2(2-touch)” (p.428) or “Mode 3(T9 input)” (p.428). No icon appears in “Mode 1(5-touch)”.

FIX: Indicates that “Fix mode” is selected in “Mode 3 (T9 input)”. →p.429

INS / OVR: “INS” indicates Insert mode and “OVR” Overwrite mode. →p.431

Ａ / 123 / 漢 / ｶﾅ: Indicates the current input mode when the text entry method is “Mode 1(5-touch)” or “Mode 3(T9 input)”.

区: Appears in “Kuten code input mode”. →p.436

½ / １/１: “1/2” appears when entering single-byte and “1/1” appears when entering double-byte. →p.427, 428

Sm: Appears when entering lower case in “Mode 1 (5-touch)” or “Mode 2 (2-touch)”. →p.431

Shift / CAPS LOCK: Indicates that “Shift mode” or “CapsLock mode” is selected in “Mode 3 (T9 input)”. →p.428

R: Indicates the remaining number of characters that can be entered in bytes. A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes. In other words, a double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.

In: Indicates the number of characters that have been entered when you are composing an SMS or adding entries to the UIM phonebook. No distinction is made between double-byte and single-byte characters.

NOTE

- When you compose an i-mode message, pressing the keypads displays the Text entry (edit) screen and allows you to use functions such as kuten code input and word prediction.
- In addition to the keys, Access reader and Bar code reader are available to enter text.

■ The numbers of characters remaining and entered

Characters shown on the text entry (edit) screen are counted according to the rules listed below. On the text entry (edit) screen, the end mark " ◀ " appears as an approximate guide indicating that you can enter characters up to the location in the current function.

- A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes.
- A double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.

  Double-byte: ＡＢＣＤＥ
  5 characters (counted as 10 bytes)
  Single-byte: ABCDEFGHIJ
  10 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

■ Character combinations

Take care with character combinations when entering text.

<Example> Entering "ﾄﾞｺﾓ" in single-byte kana input mode and "の携帯電話" in Kanji/hiragana input mode

ﾄﾞｺﾓの携帯電話 (9 characters when shown on the screen)
1111222222 (count as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 single-byte characters)

- Single-byte dakuten "ﾞ" and han-dakuten "ﾟ" are each counted as 1 character.

■ Scrolling

On the text entry (edit) screen, use ◉ to scroll by line, and ▮(Memo/Check) and ▮(Home) to scroll by page.

On the conversion candidate list screen, use ◉ to scroll by line, and ◉ or ▮(Memo/Check) and ▮(Home) to scroll by page.

Selecting the text entry method MENU35

Default setting	Input mode: Mode 1(5-touch)

There are three methods to enter text:

- Mode 1(5-touch)→p.427
  Several characters are assigned to a key, and a character being entered changes each time you press the key.
- Mode 2(2-touch)→p.428
  Characters are entered using a combination of two number keys.
- Mode 3(T9 input)→p.428
  Candidates assigned to a key appear each time you press the key, and you can select any of the candidates.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Character input set" ▶ "Input mode" ▶ Select any item

Changing the text entry method while entering text

When the text entry (edit) screen appears, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to change to another method.

- Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once you end the text entry then display the text entry (edit) screen, your preferred text entry method is reselected.
- The text entry method may not be switched for some specific text entry such as zip code.

■ Using the function menu

"CHG input method" under the text entry (edit) function menu→p.434

■ Pressing ⊖(PI・SB) for 1 second or longer

The text entry method changes in "Mode 1(5-touch)" → "Mode 2(2-touch)" → "Mode 3(T9 input)" order each time you press and hold ⊖(PI・SB) for 1 second or longer.

Selecting the font size MENU35

Default setting	CHG input size: Standard

- Select "Small", "Standard", "Large 1" or "Large 2" for the font size used on the text entry (edit) screen.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Character input set" ▶ "CHG input size" ▶ Select any item

Entering text in Mode 1 (5-touch)

- Key Assignment (5-touch input)→p.460

Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426) ▶ ㊧

The input mode changes in "Alphabetic (single-byte)" → "Numeric (single-byte)" → "Kanji/hiragana (double-byte)" → "Kana (single-byte)" order each time you press ㊧ (Selecting "Full pitch" from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).

Switching between double-byte and single-byte

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426) ▶ ⊖(FUNC) ▶ "Half pitch"/"Full pitch"

In the information display area, "1/1" appears for double-byte and "1/2" for single-byte.

You cannot switch between double-byte and single-byte in "Kanji/hiragana input mode".

Entering Text

Text entry example

- To enter “う”, set “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and press 1 3 times.
- To enter “B”, set “Alphabetic input mode” and press 2 twice.

Entering text in Mode 2 (2-touch)

- Key Assignment (2-touch input)→p.461

Switching the input mode (double-byte/single-byte)

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ch

“Single-byte” and “Double-byte” are switched each time ch is pressed (“Half pitch” and “Full pitch” are also available from the function menu).

In the information display area, “1/1” appears for double-byte and “1/2” for single-byte.

Text entry example

- To enter “う”, set “Double-byte input mode” and press 1 3.
- To enter double-byte “B”, set “Double-byte input mode” and press 1 7.
- To enter single-byte “B”, set “Single-byte input mode” and press 1 7.

Entering text in Mode 3 (T9 input)

This mode enables a quick text input with few key operations.

For example, to enter a reading “あした”, you need to press 1 once, 3 twice and 4 once in Mode 1 (5-touch). In Mode 3 (T9 input), you only need to press 1 3 4 corresponding to the keys of columns to which the characters belong.

A column letter is assigned to one key. Every time you press a key, a list of candidates appears from which you select and enter desired readings.

Mode 3 also features 2 input helper functions: “Yomi edit” and “Fix mode”.

“Yomi edit” enables you to edit the entered reading candidates, while you can use “Fix mode” to directly enter desired readings. Linking Mode 3 (T9 input) to the word prediction function (p.429) allows faster and easier text entry.

- Key Assignment (T9 input)→p.462

Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ch

The input mode changes in “Alphabetic (single-byte)” → “Numeric (single-byte)” → “Kanji/hiragana (double-byte)” → “Kana (single-byte)” order each time you press ch (Selecting “Full pitch” from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).

Mode 3 (T9 input) operates in the input modes of “Kanji/hiragana (double-byte)”, “Kana (double-byte)”,“Kana (single-byte)”, “Alphabetic (double-byte)” and “Alphabetic (single-byte)”.

- In the input modes of “Numeric (double-byte)” and “Numeric (single-byte)”, Mode 1 is automatically selected.
- Immediately after “Alphabetic (double-byte)” or “Alphabetic (single-byte)” is set, CapsLock mode is activated. The mode changes in “CapsLock mode” → “Released” → “Shift mode” order each time you press #.
- Entered characters are always uppercase in “CapsLock mode”. In “Shift mode”, only the first character is entered in uppercase, and subsequent characters will be in lowercase. Entered characters are always lowercase when neither mode is selected.
- After a character is confirmed in “Shift mode”, the mode is released.

Entering text

<Example: Entering “春“ in T9 Kanji change mode>

1 ch▶“Kanji/hiragana input mode”

2 Enter characters to be converted

6 (は column), 9 (ら column)

Candidates, which are predicted from a combination of “は column” and “ら column”, appear.



■ **If you press the wrong key**

▶Press CLR to delete the character▶Press the key again

■ **If there are no recognized candidates for the entered characters**

▶Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray▶Use ⊙ to change the range of characters to be converted

■ **To change the conversion candidate display mode (Kanji/Kana/Alphabetic)**

▶#

3 ⊙▶Use ⊙ to select a candidate

The selected conversion candidate appears in the text entry area.



■ **To return to entering characters to be converted**

▶CLR

■ **To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates**

▶−(CHG)▶Use ⊙ to select a candidate

Entering Text

● Editing the conversion candidates

<Example: Entering “らわらわた” and converting it to “爛々と”>

1 Enter characters to be converted

9 (ら column), 0 (わ column), 9 (ら column), 0 (わ column), 4 (た column)

The conversion candidates predicted from “らわらわた” are displayed. In this case, “らんらんと” does not appear.



2 ○(Yomi) or *

The FOMA terminal switches to candidate editing mode and the cursor moves to the first candidate. The “ら column” characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character you want to enter

In this case, press 1 (ら). After you correct the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Use the same procedure to correct the conversion candidates.



■ **If you do not want to correct a conversion candidate**

▶Use ○ to move the cursor to the next character to be corrected

■ **To exit edit mode in mid-operation**

▶○(Return)

The characters corrected before exiting edit mode are displayed as the conversion candidate.

4 Use ○ to select “爛々と”

“爛々と” will be listed at the top of conversion candidates when “らわらわた” is input from the next time.



● Using fix mode to enter conversion candidates

<Example: Entering a reading “はためく”>

1 *(Fix mode)

The input mode changes to Fix mode and “” in the information display area changes to “FIX”.

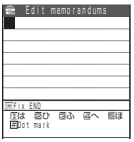


2 Press the key for the column that includes the character you want to enter

In this case, press 6. The “は column” characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character you want to enter

In this case, press 1 (は). Use the same procedure to enter the rest of readings.



4 *(Fix END)

When you press *(Fix END), the conversion candidates appear and you can convert them to kanji or katakana by using ○ then ○(CHG).



● Setting T9 change mode MENU 35

When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Other settings”▶“Character input set”▶“T9 change mode”▶Select any item

T9 Kanji change mode (default)	Converts the entered characters into kanji.
T9 Kana change mode	Converts the entered characters into kana.

Using word prediction MENU 35 Default setting: ON

The FOMA terminal’s word prediction function works by automatically storing character strings that you enter so that the stored character string is included in your list of candidates as well as common phrases the next time you enter the same character string.

- Candidates of word prediction are preinstalled at default.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Other settings”▶“Character input set”▶“Prediction”▶“ON”

■ **To deactivate the word prediction**

▶“OFF”

Entering Text

● Using word prediction to enter text

1 Enter the reading

The predictive candidates are listed in the guidance area.
In Mode 3 (T9 input), entering a character displays the candidates in gray, which can be selected.



2 ◉

The cursor appears in the guidance area and you can choose from the predictive candidates.



■ **To return to reading entry**
▶CLR

■ **If no predictive candidates appear or there are no predictive candidates for the text you want to enter**
▶Enter the reading unchanged

■ **To delete predictive candidates**
▶CLR (1 second or longer)▶"YES"

3 Select a predictive candidate

Once you confirm the text, candidates to follow the text will appear.



4 Select a candidate

■ **If no candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of them**
Enter the next section of text unchanged

Displaying guidance MENU 35

Default setting: ON

Use this procedure to specify whether operation guidance (p.426) is displayed in the Text entry (edit) screen.

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Guidance"▶"ON"

■ **To hide the guidance**
▶"OFF"

Entering text

<Example: Entering "携帯二郎">

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶Enter the hiragana



■ **If you press the wrong key**
▶Press CLR to delete the character▶Press the key again

■ **If you press the keys at the wrong number of times**
▶ (Home)
Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key.

■ **To continuously enter a character assigned to the same key**
▶Press ◉ or the key again for 1 second or longer
Cursor moves and the following character can be entered now.

■ **To confirm the hiragana**
▶●

<Mode 1>

2 4 times, 1 2 times, 4 1 time, 1 2 times
け い た い
3 2 times, # 1 time, 9 5 times, 1 3 times
し ゛(dakuten) ろ う

<Mode 2>

2 4 1 2 4 1 1 2
け い た い
3 2 0 4 9 5 1 3
し ゛(dakuten) ろ う

In Mode 2, entering a single digit and then confirming the input deletes the character.
Always enter 2 digits.

<Mode 3>

2 1 4 1
か column (け) あ column (い) た column (た) あ column (い)
3 # 9 1
さ column (し) ゛(dakuten/handakuten) ら column (ろ) あ column (う)

In Mode 3, use ◉ to highlight sections of text so that the candidates for the desired characters appear and press (Yomi) or * to switch to Yomi edit mode.

2 While in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 2 (2-touch), use ◉ or (CHG) to convert the reading to kanji

The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined (_).



■ **If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji**
▶●
The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

Entering Text

■ **To change the conversion range**

▶Use ⊖ to change the range of characters to be converted

The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there are no kanji to be converted for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.

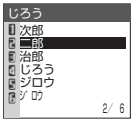
■ **To display the conversion candidates for Alphabet and kana in Mode 1 (5-touch)**

▶⊖(ABC123)

The conversion candidates are displayed for alphanumeric characters or katakana of the highlighted phrase. Pressing the same key continuously changes "き" to "２２" and the numeric conversion candidates is also displayed according to the press count.

3 Use ⊕ to display the conversion candidates

A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.



Conversion candidate list screen

■ **If the readings in the conversion range consists entirely of "あ"-level characters**

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.

4 Select the kanji you want to enter

NOTE

- ◆You can convert readings (hiragana) up to 20 characters long to kanji and convert up to 6 phrases at once.
- ◆If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the character reading to the "on" or "kun" reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- ◆When 2 or more kanji characters cannot be converted at the same time, convert one character at a time.
- ◆If a character still cannot be converted, use Kuten code.→p.436
- ◆Some particularly complex kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- ◆If the converted characters exceed the limit on the number of characters that can be entered, a message appears asking whether to confirm the characters that do not exceed the limit.

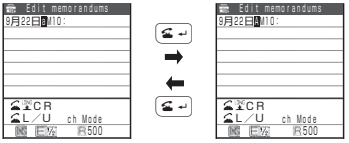
● Switching between upper case and lower case

Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

■ **Pressing ☎↵ to switch the cases of entered characters**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶Move the cursor to the character to be changed and press ☎↵

The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press the key. This method can only be used when "☎ L／U" is displayed in the operation guidance.



■ **Using the function menu before entering**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶⊖(FUNC)▶"Lower case"/"Upper case"

When you change to "Lower case", "Sm" appears in the information display area. No icon appears when "Upper case" is selected.

● Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

When you enter text in "Insert", the new text is inserted into the existing text. In "Overwrite", the new text replaces the existing entered text.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶⊖(FUNC)▶"Insert"/"Overwrite"

When you change to "Insert", "INS" appears in the information display area, and "OVR" appears when you select "Overwrite".

When the Text entry (edit) screen first appears, Insert mode is always selected.

● Inserting text

Select "Insert" and use ⊕ to move the cursor the position immediately to the right of the character, where you want to insert text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.



● Overwriting text

Select "Overwrite" and use ⊕ to move the cursor to the text you want to overwrite. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.



● Entering a space (blank)

- Move the cursor to the next right character to which the space (blank) is to be input. A double-byte space is inserted in double-byte input and a single-byte space is input in single-byte input. A space is counted as a character.

Entering Text

Continued on next page

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ (FUNC)▶"Space"

Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol "↵". There are the following ways to insert a line feed "↵".

■ Press ○ at the end of the sentence

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶Move the cursor to the end of the sentence followed by no letters and press ○

A line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

■ Pressing ⌫ for 1 second or longer

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶Move the cursor to the point where you want to insert the line feed and press ⌫ (1 second or longer)

This method can only be used when "LONG CR" is displayed in the operation guidance.

A line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.



■ Using the function menu

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ (FUNC)▶"Line feed"

A line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

NOTE

- The line feed symbol "↵" can be deleted and overwritten in the same way as normal text.
- The line feed symbol "↵" is counted as 1 double-byte character. However the SMS message input is different for counting.→p.285
- You may not be able to insert a line feed "↵" in an i-mode text box.

Inserting symbols

Use this procedure to enter symbols such as brackets, Greek characters and units.
Note that you cannot enter double-byte symbols in the e-mail address storage display, i-mode mail address input display or URL input display.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ (FUNC)▶"Symbols"▶Select a symbol to be inserted

"Symbols and Special Characters"→p.462

NOTE

- Single-byte symbols are displayed when you can only enter single-byte characters.

Entering face symbols

You can enter the stored face symbols by selecting on the list.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ (FUNC)▶"Face Mark"

The "face mark list" screen appears. The meaning appears under the face mark.



2 Select a face symbol you want to enter

"Smiley Face Symbols"→p.464

NOTE

- If you select the download dictionary for face symbols in "Download dictionary", the face symbols stored in the download dictionary are also displayed.
- The selected face symbol is displayed first next time the face symbol list is displayed.

Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, weather or animal in the Text entry (edit) display for items such as i-mode mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Up to 12 previously entered pictographs are stored in Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 respectively. The stored pictographs are displayed at the start of each row in the respective Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 displays. Pictographs entered by pressing (PI · SB) are also stored.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ (FUNC)▶"Pictograph"▶Select a pictograph

"Pictographs"→p.463
The list changes in "Pictograph 1"→"Pictograph 2"→"Full pitch 1"→"Full pitch 2"→"Half pitch" order each time you press .

■ To set PI · SB input mode

▶(PI · SB)

Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

Display symbol and pictograph candidates so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

- Entering symbols→p.462
- Pictographs→p.463

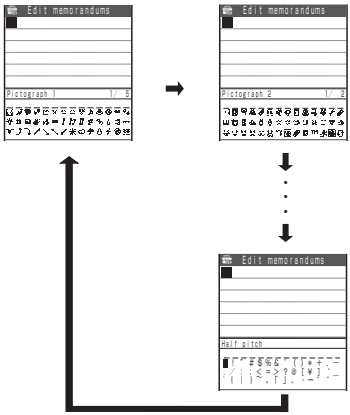
1 Text entry (edit) screen▶ (PI · SB)

The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The "current page/total pages" figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

Entering Text

2 Press ⊖(PI・SB) to switch to a different candidate display

The list changes in “Pictograph 1” → “Pictograph 2” → “Full pitch 1” → “Full pitch 2” → “Half pitch” order each time you press ⊖(PI・SB).



■ **To set the full screen mode**

▶⊖(Full)

3 Select a symbol or pictograph

The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs. Up to 14 symbols and pictographs are displayed on the first line of the symbols and pictographs list.



4 To finish entering, press CLR

Continuous pictograph/symbol input ends.

● Using character conversion to enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs

In “Kanji/hiragana input mode”, you can enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs by entering and converting the corresponding readings.

■ **Entering symbols**

Entering and converting “きごう” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays symbol candidates. You can also enter a symbol by entering and converting a symbol name such as “かっこ” or “さんかく”.

“Symbols in Japanese conversion”→p.463

■ **Entering face symbols**

Entering and converting “かお” or “かおもじ” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays face symbol candidates. You can also enter a face symbol by entering and converting a face symbol name such as “ありがとう” or “さよなら”.

“Smiley Face Symbols”→p.464

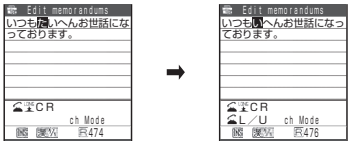
■ **Entering pictographs**

Entering and converting a meaning of a pictograph such as “はーと” or “おんぷ” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays pictograph candidates.

“Pictographs”→p.463

● Deleting text

Use ⊕ to move the cursor to the text you want to delete and press CLR briefly (less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.



■ **When there is no character in the cursor position**

The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

■ **If you press CLR for 1 second or longer**

The character in the cursor position and all the characters to the right of the cursor are deleted.

■ **If you press CLR for 1 second or longer when there are no characters to the right of the cursor**

All the text is deleted.

● Data protection during text entry and edit

When you are entering text in the Text entry (edit) screen and the battery fails or your receive a voice call, the entered text is stored and not cleared from the screen.

■ **If the battery fails**

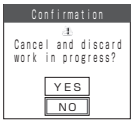
If the low-voltage alarm sounds during text entry, the Text entry (edit) screen is replaced by the “Recharge battery” message screen. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved so that you can continue entering the text when you power the FOMA terminal back up and retrieve the function. However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, unconfirmed text that is being converted is not saved.

Re-editing phonebook entries→p.113

Continued on next page

■ If you press ☎

If you press ☎ while entering text, a message appears asking whether to exit text entry. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.



<To quit without saving text>
Select “YES”. The previous screen or standby screen reappears without saving the entered text. You can also exit the text entry display without saving the entered text by pressing ☎.

<To continue entering text>
Select “NO”. The text entry (edit) screen reappears with the entered text still displayed. You can also return to the Text entry (edit) screen by pressing CLR.

■ When you receive a voice call

If you receive a voice call while entering text, you can answer the call without disturbing the text being entered. When the call ends, the Text entry (edit) screen reappears. During a voice call, you can return to the Text entry (edit) screen by pressing ｄ(MULTI) to display the Task menu screen. →p.386

Function menu (Text entry (edit) screen)

Face Mark	“Entering face symbols” →p.432
Lower case, Upper case	“Switching between upper case and lower case” →p.431
Half pitch, Full pitch	“Switching between double-byte and single-byte” →p.427, 428
Copy	“Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.436
Cut	
Paste	
Common phrases	“Entering common phrases” →p.434
Space	“Entering a space (blank)” →p.431
Line feed	“Inserting a line feed” →p.432
Symbols	“Inserting symbols” →p.432
Pictograph	“Entering pictographs” →p.432
Kuten code	“Kuten Code” →p.436
Overwrite, Insert	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry. →p.431
Quote data	
• **Phonebook**	“Entering text by quoting personal data or phonebook entries” →p.435
• **Own data**	
• **Access reader**	Pastes text data scanned by “Access reader”. “Scanning Text” →p.201
• **Bar code reader**	Pastes text data scanned by “Bar code reader”. “Using the Bar Code Reader” →p.198
Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. “Using Dictionaries” →p.402
Prediction OFF, Prediction ON	Specifies whether to turn the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling) ON or OFF.
CHG input method	Changes the text entry mode to “Mode 1(5-touch)”, “Mode 2(2-touch)” or “Mode 3(T9 input)”.
T9 Kana CHG mode, T9 Kanji CHG mode	When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana. Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once text entry exits and the Text entry (edit) screen reappears, it returns to the setting specified in “T9 change mode” under “Character input set”.
Jump	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.
UNDO	Restores the status of an entered character to previous.
Change window	Switches between windows when the operation display for a function and the Text entry (edit) display are shown concurrently in different windows on the display. “Changing the Active Window” →p.438

● Entering common phrases

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ −(FUNC)▶“Common phrases”▶ Select a folder

“Common Phrases” →p.464

2 Select a common phrase▶●

NOTE

◆Common phrases can be used in the following Text entry (edit) displays:

- Text memo
- Common phrases
- Common phrases folder name
- Schedule
- To Do list
- Wake-up message
- Edit in i-mode text box
- i-mode mail subject
- i-mode mail message
- i-mode mail header
- i-mode mail signature
- i-mode mail quotation mark
- Auto-sort subject
- Search mail subject
- Text edit with i-αppli
- Dictionary

◆Fixed common phrases are displayed (represented) differently depending on the input mode, as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common phrases that have been modified are displayed as stored regardless of the input mode.

- Modes 1 and 3:
  Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/hiragana input mode.
  Displayed as single-byte katakana in other input modes.
- Mode 2:
  Displayed as kanji/hiragana in double-byte input mode.
  Displayed as single-byte katakana in single-byte input mode.
  (In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

Entering Text

● Entering text by quoting personal data or phonebook entries

In the Text entry (edit) screen for an e-mail message or “Text memo”, you can use this procedure to enter the name, readings, phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday or memo stored in the “Phonebook” or in the “Own number”.

- Data cannot be quoted from some Text entry (edit) screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶(FUNC)▶“Quote data”▶“Phonebook” or “Own data”

■ **When “Phonebook” is selected**

▶Select “Search group”, “Search column” or “Search all”▶Search the phonebook for the entry to be quoted

Searching the phonebook (search method specification)→p.116

■ **When “Own data” is selected**

▶Enter your security code

2 Select the item to be quoted



Quoting a phonebook entry

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆When you quote a street address, the zip code “〒” symbol and “-” are not quoted.

<Common phrases> MENU 38

Editing and Storing Common Phrases

This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved from the Text entry (edit) screen later. Common phrases stored at the time of purchase can be edited (changed).

- Common phrases are stored in 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 preset fixed common phrases. You can modify preset common phrases. Folders 3 to 5 will each hold up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.
- Common Phrases→p.464

Composing a new common phrase

1 (MENU)▶(Own data)▶“Common phrases”

The “Common phrases folder list” screen appears.



Common phrase folder list

Function menu➡p.435

2 Select a folder

The “Common phrase list” screen appears.



Common phrase list

Function menu➡p.436

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and press (Edit)▶Enter a common phrase

NOTE

◆Common phrases can contain up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters.

◆When you create an original common phrase to be used in mail subjects, messages, headers, signatures or as a quotation symbol, do not use “single-byte katakana” or “Pictographs” as these may not be displayed correctly (Pictographs can be used when i-mode mail is exchanged).

◆Fixed common phrases are retrieved as kanji/hiragana when the text entry method is “Kanji/hiragana input mode” in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 3 (T9 input) or “double-byte character input” in Mode 2 (2-touch), and as “single-byte katakana” when another text entry method is used.

(In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

Function menu (Common phrases folder list screen)

Edit folder name	▶**Edit a folder name** Changes the selected folder name. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset name	Restores the folder name to default.

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆If there are no characters entered in the folder name to be changed, it returns to the default folder name.

Function menu (Common phrase list screen)

Edit	**▶Edit a common phrase** Edits the selected common phrase.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted common phrase.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all common phrases.

NOTE

◆Deleting any fixed common phrases that has been changed reverts to the default setting. Unchanged fixed common phrases cannot be deleted.

Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

- Only one item of copied or cut data can be stored. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously stored text.

Copying (or cutting) text

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ (FUNC)▶"Copy" or "Cut"

You can also copy using the document function menu (p.374).

2 Highlight the beginning of the text to be copied or cut▶●



3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut▶●

The selected range of the characters are stored. You can store up to 5,000 double-byte characters or 10,000 single-byte characters.

■ If the text was cut

The selected range of the characters are deleted, but stored in the FOMA terminal.

■ If you select the blank spaces including no characters

Two single-byte spaces are inserted in double-byte input mode and one single-byte space is inserted in single-byte input mode.

Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text or turn the FOMA terminal off.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶ (FUNC)▶"Paste"

■ If the text to be pasted includes characters that cannot be entered in the intended Text entry (edit) display

A message appears notifying you that the characters will be replaced with spaces when the text is pasted.

Kuten Code

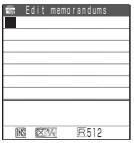
This function provides a way of entering kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit kuten codes.

- Kuten code and characters that can be entered by using kuten codes→p.465
- Actual characters or symbols on the screen may look different from the ones in the Kuten Code list.

<Example: Entering "慶" (kuten code 2336)>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.426)▶

The input mode changes to "Kuten code" and "" appears in the information display area.



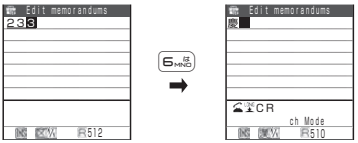
■ When the text entry mode is Mode 3 (T9 input)

▶Text entry (edit) screen▶ (FUNC)▶"Kuten code"

2 Enter the kuten code

2 3 3 6

The character ("慶" in this example) for the entered code appears and the FOMA terminal reverts to the original input mode.



■ If there is no corresponding character for the entered kuten code

A space is entered.

NOTE

◆When the text entry mode is "Mode 1(5-touch)" or "Mode 2(2-touch)", you still switch to kuten code input by selecting "Kuten code" from the function menu.

<Own dictionary> MENU82

Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting
Not stored

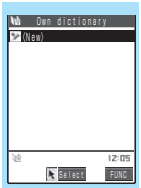
Using this procedure to store frequently used words in an own dictionary under your preferred reading allows you to recall those words by entering and converting the reading in the Text entry (edit) screen.

- Up to 100 words can be stored in the Own dictionary.
- A word can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. A reading can contain up to 10 double-byte hiragana characters.

Adding a new word

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶ **"Own dictionary"**

The "Own dictionary" screen appears.



Own dictionary

Function menu➡p.437

2 **"<New>"▶Enter a word▶Enter the reading**

NOTE

◆You cannot enter line feeds or common phrases as words or their readings.

◆Symbols other than dakuten and han-dakuten (、。・！？) cannot be stored as readings.

Checking words

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶ **"Own dictionary"**



2 **Select a word you want to check**

■ **To edit a word**

▶Select a word you want to edit▶●(Edit)

Function menu (Own dictionary screen)

Edit	Edits a stored word.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted word.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶●(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple words.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all words.

<Clear learned> MENU35

Resetting the Learning Record

The learning dictionary contains character strings that were entered in the past and automatically stored as candidates for character conversion. This procedure resets the learning dictionary to its default status at the time of purchase.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Clear learned"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item**

T9/Expect words/ Pic.	Clears the learning records stored for "Mode 3(T9 input)", "Prediction", "Pictographs" and "Symbols".
Kana/Kanji change/face	Clears the learning record stored for kana-kanji conversion and the sorting order of the face mark screen.

<Download dictionary>

Selecting a Dictionary to Use

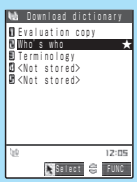
Default setting
Not stored

This function enables you to download dictionaries for Japanese text conversion from the i-mode sites and specify them for use in conversion.

- You can store and activate up to 5 downloaded dictionaries.
- Downloading dictionaries→p.226

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶ **"DL dictionary"**

The "Download dictionary" screen appears.



Download dictionary

Function menu➡p.438

Continued on next page

2 Select a dictionary you want to set

A star "★" appears next to the selected dictionary.

■ **To deselect the selected dictionary**

▶Select a dictionary with a star (★)

The dictionary is deselected and the star "★" disappears.

NOTE

◆If pictographs are registered in the downloaded dictionary, the pictographs can be entered by converting kana-kanji.

◆If you set the download dictionary for face symbols, up to 600 face symbols (including the preinstalled 100 face symbols) can be displayed on the face mark screen when you select "Face Mark" from the function menu during text input.

◆If you add two download dictionaries for face marks and activate both, the face symbols stored in the first-activated download dictionary are displayed as a list.

Function menu (Download dictionary screen)

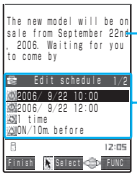
Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Changes the title of the selected download dictionary. A title can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Set dictionary	Selects or deselects a downloaded dictionary. A dictionary is set when it is downloaded.
Dictionary info	Displays information on the selected download dictionary.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted download dictionary.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all download dictionaries.

NOTE

◆If you try to edit a dictionary name and try to set the name when it is completely blank, it reverts to the original title.

Changing the Active Window

Some screens, such as saving schedule entries, are split into 2 windows showing the function operation screen and the Text entry (edit) screen.



Save schedule from the i-mode screen

- The function operation screen and Text entry (edit) screen are shown at the same time in the following situations:
  - Saving schedule entries while referring to an i-mode screen
  - Entering a word to search by activating dictionaries from the i-mode screen
  - Chat screen for Chat mail
  - Editing text while referring to the results of a dictionary search

Changing the active window

When a function operation screen and the Text entry (edit) screen are shown at the same time, you can use any of the 2 methods described below to switch between screens.

■ **Using the function menu**

Select "Change window" from the function menu to change the active window.

■ **Using the Neuropointer**

Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key to display the pointer and then use it to select the active window.

NOTE

◆When you switch to the other screen, the entered text or cursor location in the current screen remains unchanged.

◆You cannot switch screens when entering readings. However, if you press ✱ in alphabetic input mode to enter "http://", etc., you can switch screens. Characters being entered are automatically fixed.

◆If you switch to i-mode screen while an edit screen is shown, you can only scroll the i-mode screen.

◆You cannot switch screens in the Chat screen for chat mail.

Traveling with N902iS

Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING) 440
Available Services 440
Confirmation Before Using Overseas 441
Making a Call Abroad 443
Receiving a Call Abroad 444
Setting the Search Mode of the Provider ..... NW search mode 444
Setting Provider to be Connected by Priority ..... PLMN setting 445
Display the Provider Name During Roaming ..... Operator name display 445
Commencing Roam Guidance ..... Roam. Guidance 446
Setting to Bar Incoming Calls During Roaming ..... Bar incoming when roam 446
Network Services During Roaming ..... Service (Int.) 446

Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service provided by DoCoMo to FOMA users whereby the networks of overseas providers are used to allow communications with calls and i-mode overseas.

- This FOMA terminal allows the overseas use of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that are used in Japan. The FOMA terminal also allows voice calls, videophone calls, i-mode and SMS. Moreover, such convenient network services as voice mail and call forwarding are available.
- It is not necessary to apply for "WORLD WING" in order to use the international roaming service. However, if you have subscribed to the FOMA services prior to August 31, 2005 and not applied for "WORLD WING", you need to apply for this service on a one off basis for the first use.
- In order to use the international roaming service, it is necessary to insert the FOMA card (green) into this FOMA terminal.
- This FOMA terminal can be used only in the overseas DoCoMo roaming area*1. For details on the area and the charge for use, please refer to DoCoMo's "International service web page".
- DoCoMo roaming area is a third generation mobile communication network that is compliant with the global standard criteria 3GPP*2.

*1 : This terminal cannot be used in the GSM/GPRS service area.

*2 : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project) is a regional standardization organization established for the development of standardized technical specifications for the 3rd generation mobile communication system (IMT-2000).

■ Country codes of major countries

The following numbers should be used as the country code that is input when making international calls (p.53) or Int'l dial settings (p.54) (as of April, 2006).

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
United States of America	1	Germany	49
United Kingdom	44	Turkey	90
Italy	39	Japan	81
India	91	New Caledonia	687
Indonesia	62	New Zealand	64
Egypt	20	Norway	47
Australia	61	Hungary	36
Austria	43	Fiji	679
Holland	31	Philippines	63
Canada	1	Finland	358
Korea	82	France	33
Greece	30	Brazil	55
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Switzerland	41	Peru	51
Sweden	46	Belgium	32
Spain	34	Hong Kong	852
Thailand	66	Macao	853
Taiwan	886	Malaysia	60
Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689	Maldives	960
Czech	420	Russia	7
China	86		

* For the country codes of other countries and for details, please refer to DoCoMo's "International service web page".

Available Services

The communication services and functions enabled in this FOMA terminal are different depending on whether used in Japan or used overseas. Moreover, such services and functions also differ by the overseas provider you use.

- For details on the communications services that may be used with international roaming, please refer to the international service guides such as "International Service Use Guide".

■ Communications service overseas

The following communications services are available overseas.*1

- Voice call
- Videophone call*2
- i-mode mail
- i-mode (including full browser)
- SMS (Short Message Service)
- i-channel*1*3

*1 : This may not be usable depending on the provider or area.

*2 : International videophone calls are possible with users of specific overseas provider or FOMA terminals in Japan.

*3 : Auto update is automatically suspended when connected to an overseas provider. In order to resume auto update of the i-channel overseas, it is necessary to reset the i-Channel setting. However, packet communication is charged besides monthly charge.

NOTE

◆During international roaming, reception of MessageF, Chaku-moji transmission, Push-to-Talk calls, "Update" and "Set auto-update" of the scan function and software update cannot be used. However, you can delete possible data that may cause failure or cancel application.

◆Depending on the network condition of the country you stay, the call and standby time may be about half the normal.

On the skillful use of the battery→p.41

■Transmission and reception of SMS

- Transmission and reception between customers of overseas provider other than DoCoMo is possible. Please refer to DoCoMo's "International service web page" on the countries and overseas provider that provide this service.
- The designation of the recipient when transmitting SMS to a party that is using an overseas provider is as shown in the table below. Moreover, in the event there are characters in the main body of the message that are not handled by the recipient side, such characters may not be correctly displayed. Please refer to the international service guides such as "International Service Use Guide" for details.

Recipient	Designation of the recipient of SMS
DoCoMo (FOMA terminal)	As in Japan, simply input the telephone number of the recipient without making any changes.
Other overseas provider*	When transmitting, input by adding "+" and the "Country Code" to the phone number of the recipient. Moreover, it is also possible to transmit by inputting "010", "Country Code" and "the mobile phone number of the recipient". (If the phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the first zero and enter the rest of it. To reply to SMS received from overseas, enter "010" to return SMS.)

* : In the event the phone number begins with a "0", please delete this and input the number.

■Operation for setting the network services

- When using the network service overseas, even if such operations as commence and discontinue are possible, care is required as there may be limits in the content of services or certain services may not be available. Please refer to the international service guides such as "International Service Use Guide" for details.

Name of the Service	Explanation
Chaku-moji	Can be set but not available for service.
Voice Mail→p.410	There may be cases in which this cannot be set in certain service areas.
Call Waiting →p.411	
Call Forwarding →p.413	
Nuisance Call Blk →p.414	
Caller ID Notification→p.47	There may be cases in which this cannot be set in certain service areas. Moreover, there may be cases in which the sender number cannot be correctly notified.
Caller ID Request →p.414	There may be cases in which this cannot be set in certain service areas.
Public mode (Driving mode)	Can be set but not available for service. Please cancel the setting when overseas.
Dual Network	Cannot be set.
English Guidance →p.415	There may be cases in which this cannot be set in certain service areas.
Multi Number →p.417	There may be cases in which this cannot be set in certain service areas. Moreover it is not possible to send using the additional number. It is possible to receive calls using the additional number but there may be cases in which distinguishing which number received the communication will not be possible.
Roam. Guidance →p.446	There may be cases in which this cannot be set in certain service areas.
Bar incoming when roam→p.446	
Voice Mail (Int.) →p.446	Setting and service can be used.
Call Forwarding (Int.)→p.446	
Caller ID req. (Int.) →p.447	
Roam. Guidance (Int.)→p.447	
Remote access (Int.)→p.447	

* With the FOMA network, setting operation for all the above network services is enabled.

Confirmation Before Using Overseas

- When using this service overseas, please also refer to "Network Service Operation Guide" and "International Service Use Guide".
- The charges for use overseas will be invoiced with the monthly charges for use. However, there may be cases in which the invoice will be delayed about a month due to the convenience of the overseas provider.
- When using the service overseas, call charges in "Call data" (p.399) include both incoming and outgoing calls. However, call charges may be different from the actual charges.
- When FOMA terminal is turned on overseas at default, the network will be automatically searched for the accessible provider in the local area. When the user moves outside the service area of the provider that has been set, the FOMA terminal will automatically perform network search for a provider that can be used and the setting will be updated.

Inquiries overseas

For inquiries overseas, refer to the contact information provided on the back cover of this manual and dial the number described in “Lost, stolen, account settlement cearing overseas” and “Malfunctions overseas” followed by “International phone codes for Universal number” and “International access number”, respectively.

International phone code for the universal number (table 1)

Dialing the international phone code for the Universal Number and the telephone that corresponds to this will enable you to make various inquiries overseas.

The international phone codes for the Universal Number in the various countries are as shown below (as of April, 2006).

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Ireland	00	Spain	00
United States of America	011	Thailand	001
Argentina	00	Taiwan	00
United Kingdom	00	China	00
Israel	014	Denmark	00
Italy	00	Germany	00
Australia	0011	New Zealand	00
Austria	00	Norway	00
Holland	00	Philippines	00
Canada	011	France	00
Korea	001	Brazil	0021
Colombia	009	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Hong Kong	001
Switzerland	00	Malaysia	00
Sweden	00	Luxemburg	00

* There may be cases in which this cannot be used.
* The Universal Number can be used only in the countries listed in the table above.
* When calling from a hotel, there may be cases in which a charge for the use of the telephone will be invoiced by the hotel. (This will be to the account of the customer.) Please use the telephone after confirming this matter with the hotel.

International telephone access number for major countries (table 2)

In the event the above international phone code Universal Number cannot be used in making inquiries overseas, the international telephone access number should be used.

The international telephone access numbers of major countries are as shown below (as of April, 2006).

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Ireland	00	Denmark	00
United States of America	011	Germany	00
United Arab Emirates	00	Turkey	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
India	00	Hungary	00
Indonesia	001	Philippines	00
Australia	0011	Finland	00/990
Holland	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0041/0021/0023
Korea	001	Vietnam	00
Greece	00	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Poland	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001
Spain	00	Macao	00
Thailand	001	Malaysia	00
Taiwan	002	Monaco	00
Czech	00	Luxemburg	00
China	00	Russia	810

Preparation before traveling

- FOMA card (green)
- FOMA AC adapter 01 for Global Use (optional)

NOTE

◆“FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use” supports the voltage from 100V AC to 240V AC but the plug form of the attached AC power cord is for 100V AC (specifications for Japan). When using this overseas, a conversion plug adapter that is appropriate for the country visited will need to be used. The conversion adapter may be purchased in large home electronics stores or stores that handle goods for use overseas.
◆Do not recharge the battery using a transformer for use overseas.

Before leaving

- When displaying i-mode overseas, please make the “International Settings” from the “i Menu”.
- To use the overseas network service, set “Remote Control” to “Activate” in advance.*
  To use the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service, subscribe to “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”.
- Depending on the overseas provider, there may be cases in which the setting of the network services cannot be confirmed. Please refer to the “International Service Use Guide” and “Network Service Operation Guide” prior to leaving Japan.

  * : While the “Remote Control” setting can be set overseas, we recommend that you do this prior to leaving Japan.

NOTE

◆For details on preparation and settings, please refer to the “i-mode User’s Manual”, “International Service Use Guide” and “Network Service Operation Guide”.

Use in the local area

Automatic search for the possible overseas provider is performed at default when the FOMA terminal is turned on for the first time after you reach the country. You do not need to worry about the country you stay or the local area to make use of communications services.

Display, Date and Time

During overseas, the name of the provider connected will be displayed in the standby screen.

- The display of the provider being used may be set by "Operator name display" (p.445).
- In order to display the local time in the standby display, you can select the city in the "World watch" (p.47) and "World watch ON" in the "Display type" of "Clock display" (p.147).
- You find out overseas as well as in Japan that the records of Redial, Dialed calls, Received calls, Missed calls and i-mode mail on the sent address list have the date and time set on "Set time" of your FOMA terminal. However, regardless of this "Set time" setting, SMS on the sent address list indicates the date and time when you sent it in local time, while SMS on the received address list indicates the date and time when you received it in Japan time.
- In the event the "Set time" is set to "Auto time set ON" when used overseas, Japanese time will be referenced and used (the data and time of the country in which you are staying will not be referenced).

Troubleshooting

- "" displayed on the screen
  - Set the "NW search mode" to "Auto".
  - Since this FOMA terminal executes international roaming, there may be times when detection of radio waves that can be used is time consuming immediately after turning the power on. "" may remain displayed on the screen during this time.
- The telephone number of the caller is not displayed.
  - Even when the caller makes a call allowing notification of the caller's telephone number, if no caller number is notified by the provider being used, the caller number will not be displayed at the FOMA terminal.

Setting after returning home

Upon returning to Japan, when the power to the FOMA terminal is switched on, the network will be searched automatically and the FOMA network will be set. Please use the "NW search mode" (p.444) to set to "Auto" if the current setting for the provider is "Manual".

Making a Call Abroad

The international roaming service enables you to make voice or videophone calls from the country or local area other than Japan using this FOMA terminal.

- Make sure that the remaining battery power and the reception level are sufficient.

Videophone

If the recipient of the videophone call is using a provider that handles the videophone calls of FOMA, it is possible to use "International Videophone" by pushing (V. phone) after the method of dialing international calls.

- Visit DoCoMo's "International service web page" for countries and providers that are able to provide connectivity for videophone.
- Depending on the terminal for international videophone, the image of the counterpart displayed on the FOMA terminal may be jumbled or the connection itself may not be possible.

Making a call outside the visited country (including Japan)

By registering the country name and country code of recipients of frequent calls in "Int'l dial settings", the dialing operation will be facilitated.

Making a call to the country registered in the "Int'l dial settings"

- You can make an international call from a phonebook, Redial and Dialed calls.

1 Enter a phone number

When calling to an ordinary phone, please dial the long distance code and the telephone number of the recipient. When calling a mobile phone or PHS in Japan, please merely dial the telephone number.

2 (FUNC)▶"Int'l Call"▶Select the name of the country to which the call is to be made▶ or (V. phone)

The codes "+" and the "Country Code" will be added to make the international call (if the telephone number that is input begins with a "0", this will be deleted).

If the recipient of the call is an overseas user of "WORLD WING", "Japan" should be selected as the country name.

■ Making a call to a country for which "Auto" is selected under "Int'l dial settings"

▶ or (V. phone)▶"Dial"

● When making a call to Italy and certain other countries or territories for which the "Int'l dial settings" are not registered

- When making a call to Italy or certain other countries and regions, a "0" may be required at the beginning of the area code.

1 Dial + (0 for 1 second or longer) on the standby screen → Country Code → long distance code → phone number

If the area code starts with a "0", omit the initial "0" to enter. However, "0" may be needed to make a call to a phone number of a country or region such as Italy.
If the callee is an overseas user of "WORLD WING", select "81" (Japan) as the country code.

2 or (V. phone)

NOTE

◆When making a call to the country in which the recipient is staying (including Japan) from the i-mode site or mail detail screen using the "Phone To Function", select "International call" from the "Dialing" screen (p.227) and select "Dial". The code "+" and the "Country Code" will be added to the original telephone number in the transmission. (In the event the telephone number begins with a "0", this will be deleted.) In the case of a country for which the country code is not registered in "Int'l dial settings", it is not possible to make calls using the "Phone To Function". Also when making calls to certain countries and territories such as Italy, there may be cases in which the "Phone To Function" cannot be used.

Making a local call abroad

Just like calling in Japan, you can make a local call simply by dialing a general phone or mobile phone number in the visited country.

- If the callee is an overseas user of "WORLD WING", calls should be made as international telephone calls to Japan even if the callee is in the same country by using the operation for calling countries registered in the "Int'l dial settings" (p.54), operation for calling from the phonebook or operation described in "Making a call outside the visited country (including Japan)" (p.443).

1 Enter a phone number

When calling to an ordinary telephone, please dial the long distance number and the telephone number of the recipient.

2 or (V. phone)

Receiving a Call Abroad

It is possible to receive calls in the normal manner without the need to change the telephone number by using the international roaming service overseas.

1 Press or ● when a call is received

"Receiving a Call"→p.64

■ In the case of videophone call

When receiving a videophone call, press or (V. phone).
When receiving a videophone call using a substitute image, press ●.
"Receiving a Videophone Call"→p.86

Method for the Transmitter to Make a Call

■ When a call is to be made from Japan to the country in which you are staying

In the case a call is to be made from an ordinary phone or mobile phone in Japan to a FOMA terminal in the country in which you are staying, merely dialing the telephone number as when you are in Japan will complete the call.
090 (or 080)- XXXX- XXXX

■ When a call is to be made from a country other than Japan to the country in which you are staying

Whether the country in which you are staying is Japan or overseas, the international access number + "81" (Country Code of Japan) will need to be dialed.
International access number- 81- 90 (or 80)- XXXX- XXXX

NOTE

◆A call charge may be levied when receiving a call overseas.

<NW search mode>

Setting the Search Mode of the Provider

Default setting
Auto (DoCoMo)

In the event the network of the provider being used becomes outside the range of service, connection will be remade automatically to the network of a different communications carrier.

- It is also possible to make the setting to manual selection of connection to the provider rather than automatic search or to remake the connection by searching for a provider other than the carrier to which a connection is currently made.
- It is also possible to prioritize the provider to which connection is to be made in advance using the "PLMN setting" (p.445).
- There may be cases in which this function cannot be set depending on the state of radio waves or the status of the network.

- As of May 2006, no provider other than NTT DoCoMo can be selected in Japan.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Network setting" ▶ "NW search mode" ▶ Select any items

Auto	A provider will be automatically searched and connection will be switched.
Manual	**▶Search for the provider for connection**
New Search	In the event a provider could not be searched when set to "Auto" or when the user desires to switch providers when set to "Manual", this function searches for a network and switches the connection.

<PLMN setting>

Setting the Provider to be Connected by Priority

When commencing international roaming or moving outside the network area, this automatically searches for a provider and makes a connection. When doing this, it is possible to set priority by registering the provider to be prioritized in the PLMN network list.

- A maximum of 20 providers can be registered in the prioritized network list.
- Providers designated by DoCoMo are registered in the priority network list.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Network setting" ▶ "PLMN setting"

The PLMN setting screen will be displayed. A list will be displayed showing the providers with high priority.

2 Highlight providers for which the order of priority is to be changed ▶ (−)(FUNC) ▶ "Change priority"

3 Highlight positions to move to ▶ ●

Move to the highlighted position. Select "last" to move to the end.

4 (−)"Finish" ▶ "YES"

Function menu (PLMN setting screen)

PLMN manual select	**▶Enter the country code and the network number ▶ "YES"** Enter and register the country code and network number manually.
PLMN select	**▶Select the item to be registered ▶ ● ▶ "YES"** Select and register the provider from the list.
Set VPLMN to PLMN	The provider to which connection is currently made will be registered.
Change priority	"Setting the Provider to be Connected by Priority"→p.445
Delete	The provider that is registered will be deleted.
• **Delete this**	The highlighted provider will be deleted.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□) of a provider ▶ (−)(Finish) ▶ "YES"** The selected providers will be deleted as a group.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code ▶ "YES"** All providers will be deleted.

NOTE

- ◆In the event the provider to which connection is made is to be registered in the PLMN network list, if the provider to which connection is currently made is already registered as a PLMN network, the setting cannot be made.
- ◆Depending on the conditions of radio waves and the status of the network, providers may not be prioritized as set in the order of priority.

<Operator name display>

Display the Provider Name During Roaming

Default setting: Display OFF

This sets whether or not the name of the currently connected provider is to be displayed in the standby screen (task icon area).

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Network setting" ▶ "Operator name display"

2 "Display ON"

The name of the provider will be displayed.

■ **To not display the name of the provider**

▶"Display OFF"

NOTE

- ◆If the setting is "Display ON", when in the domestic area (FOMA network), the name of the provider will be displayed as "DoCoMo".
- ◆When the "NW search mode" is set to "Manual", if "圏外" is displayed or when moving into an area outside the service area, regardless of the setting of this function "Select Net" will be displayed.

<Roam. Guidance>

Commencing Roam Guidance

If a voice call or videophone call is received during international roaming, this function allows setting to notify the calling party that the phone terminal is in international roaming mode.

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ "Roam. Guidance" ▶ Select any items

Activate	Roaming guidance will commence or be suspended.
Deactivate	
Check setting	The roaming guidance setting will be displayed.

NOTE

◆If you subscribed to the FOMA service prior to August 31, 2005 but do not subscribe to "WORLD WING", this function cannot be performed.
◆There may be service areas in which this setting is disabled.

<Bar incoming when roam>

Setting to Bar Incoming Calls During Roaming

- It is possible to select whether videophone will be barred or all reception will be barred.

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ "Bar incoming when roam" ▶ Select any items

Activate	This sets reception during international roaming.
• **Bar All incoming**	▶"YES"▶**Enter the network password** All reception will be barred.
• **Data calls Barring**	▶"YES"▶**Enter the network password** Receipt of videophone calls will be barred
Deactivate	▶"YES"▶**Enter the network password** Barring of reception during roaming will be ceased.
Check setting	The setting regarding barring during roaming will be displayed.

<Service(Int.)>

Network Services During Roaming

- Certain network services such as "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding" can be used overseas. Moreover, it is also possible to set the roaming guidance.
- To use "Voice Mail (Int.)" or "Call Forwarding (Int.)", subscribe to "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding" in advance. Also, the "Remote Control" must be set in advance. For details, refer to the "Network Service Operation Guide".
- It is not possible to operate overseas services at places where "" is displayed.
- It is not possible to operate overseas services when the Keypad dial lock is activated.
- When operating overseas, international telephone charges in the country in which the terminal is used will be levied.
- For details on the network services, refer to the guides such as the "Network Service Operation Guide" or "International Service Use Guide".

Operating Voice Mail Service in the visited country <Voice Mail(Int.)>

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ "Service(Int.)" ▶ "Voice Mail(Int.)" ▶ Select any items

Activate	▶"YES" After this, make the settings according to the audio guidance that is provided.
Deactivate	
Play messages	
Set ring time	
Setting	

NOTE

◆For details on the voice mail service, please refer to "Voice Mail" (p.410).

Operating call forwarding service in the visited country <Call Forwarding(Int.)>

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ "Service(Int.)" ▶ "Call Forwarding(Int.)" ▶ Select any items

Activate	▶"YES" After this, make the settings according to the audio guidance that is provided.
Deactivate	
Setting	

NOTE

◆For details on the call forwarding service please refer to "Call Forwarding" (p.413).

Operating roaming guidance in the visited country <Roam. Guidance(Int.)>

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ “Service(Int.)” ▶ “Roam. Guidance(Int.)” ▶ “YES”

After this, make the settings according to the audio guidance that is provided.

Setting remote control in the visited country <Remote access (Int.)>

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ “Service(Int.)” ▶ “Remote access (Int.)” ▶ “YES”

After this, make the settings according to the audio guidance that is provided.

NOTE

◆For details on setting remote control refer to “Setting up Remote Control” (p.417).

Operating Caller ID request service in the visited country <Caller ID req. (Int.)>

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ “Service(Int.)” ▶ “Caller ID req. (Int.)” ▶ “YES”

After this, make the settings according to the audio guidance that is provided.

NOTE

◆For details on the caller ID request service, refer to “Caller ID Req. Service” (p.414).

Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu Function List 450
Data Stored at the Time of Purchase 456
Key Assignment (5-touch input) 460
Key Assignment (2-touch input) 461
Key Assignment (T9 input) 462
Symbols and Special Characters 462
Pictographs 463
Smiley Face Symbols 464
Common Phrases 464
Kuten Codes 465
Multi Access Combination Patterns 469
Multi Task Combination Patterns 470
Services Available for the FOMA terminal 471
Options and Accessories 471
Data Link Software 472
NEC Mobile PDF 473
Movie Playing Software 473

Troubleshooting

Malfunction Checklist 474
If Any Error Message Appears 479
Warranty and After-Sales Service 485
Updating Software ..... Software Update 487
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data ..... Scanning function 491
Specifications 493
Counts for Storage, Register and Protect Enabled on FOMA Terminal 494
Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones 495
Export Administration Regulations 496

Menu Function List

Settings with are restored to default by “Reset” (p.406).

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Mail			(MAIL)			p.242
i-mode			(i-mode)			p.213
i-αppli			—			p.290
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume	MENU 5 JKL 0		Level 4	p.69
		Select ring tone	MENU 1 * 3 DEF	Phone	Melody 1	p.128
				Videophone	Melody 4	
				PushTalk	Melody 1	
				Mail	Melody 2	
				Chat mail	Melody 2	
				MessageR	Melody 3	
				MessageF	Melody 3	
		Sound effect	MENU 6 MNO 4 GHI	Surround	OFF	p.130
				3Dsound	ON	
				SRS_WOW	OFF	
		Vibrator	MENU 5 JKL 4 GHI		OFF	p.131
		Illumination	MENU 8 TUV 9 WXYZ	Set color	Phone: Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1	p.146
				Set pattern	Standard	
				Adjust color	Edit color name: Color 1 to 12 Adjust color tone: Default	
		Manner mode set	MENU 2 ABC 0		Manner mode (Original manner: Default→p.134)	p.134
		Disp. PH-book image	—		ON	p.139
		Answer setting	MENU 5 JKL 8 TUV		Any key answer	p.65
		Mail/Msg. ring time	MENU 6 MNO 8 TUV		ON (ring time: 5 seconds)	p.133
		Ring time(sec.)	MENU 9 WXYZ 0	Set mute seconds	OFF Mute seconds(sec): 1 second (When Set mute seconds is set to “ON”)	p.174
				Missed calls display	Display	
		Info notice setting	MENU 6 MNO 5 JKL		Japanese display: ON English display: ON	p.74
		Record message	MENU 5 JKL 5 JKL	Record message	OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 (When Record msg. is set to “ON”) Ringing time: 8 sec. (When Record msg. is set to “ON”)	p.75
	Talk	Noise reduction	MENU 7 PQRS 6 MNO		ON	p.62
		Quality alarm	MENU 7 PQRS 5 JKL		High tone	p.132
		Reconnect signal	MENU 7 PQRS 7 PQRS		High tone	p.62
		Illumination in talk	—		OFF	p.146
		Set hold tone	—	On hold tone	Tone 1	p.71
				Holding tone	Melody 1	
		Setting when folded	MENU 1 * 8 TUV		End the call	p.66

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Dialing	Pause dial	MENU 8 4		—	p.60
		Sub-address setting	—		ON	p.62
		Prefix setting	—		“WORLD CALL” (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	p.61
		Auto dial setting	—		OFF	p.405
		Int’l dial settings	—	Auto assist setting	Auto	p.54
				IDD Prefix setting	“WORLD CALL” (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	
				Country Code setting	“日本” (Country Code: 81) User setting: Not recorded	
	Videophone	Visual preference	—		Normal	p.88
		Select image	—	On hold	Pre-installed	p.89
				Holding	Pre-installed	
				Substitute image	Chara-den (ブンブン)	
				Record message	Pre-installed	
				Preparing	Pre-installed	
				Voice memo	Pre-installed	
		Auto redial as voice	—		OFF	p.88
		Remote monitoring	—	Other ID	Not recorded	p.94
				Ringing time	5 seconds	
				Set	OFF	
		Display setting	—	Main display	Other side	p.91
				Front camera Reverse	ON	
		Indicate V.phone	—		Indication ON	p.92
		Hands-free switch	—		ON	p.90
		V-phone while packet	—		V-phone priority	p.92
	Display	Display setting	MENU 5 6	Stand-by display	Contrast 1 (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple 1 (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira 1 (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern 1 (Phone color: Pistachio green)	p.136
				Wake-up display	Contrast 2 (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple 2 (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira 2 (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern 2 (Phone color: Pistachio green) Wake-up message: Not stored	
				Dialing	Standard	
				Calling	Standard	
				V.phone Dialing	Standard	
				V.phone Calling	Standard	
				Mail sending	Standard	
				Mail receiving	Standard	
				Check new messages	Standard	
		Backlight	MENU 7 0	Lighting	ON (lighting)+Saver (Light time: 5 minutes)	p.141
				Charging	Standard	
				Area	LCD+Keys	
				Brightness	Level 2	

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Display	Display design	MENU 8 6	Color pattern	Pattern 5 (Phone color: Russet black, Ice silver), Pattern 4 (Phone color: Jewel pink), Pattern 2 (Phone color: Pistachio green)	p.142
				Background 1	OFF	
				Background 2	Pattern 1	
		Image display	MENU 9 3		ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Digital 1 (Phone color: Russet black, Ice silver), Digital 2 (Phone color: Jewel pink), Digital 3 (Phone color: Pistachio green) (Pict: ON) Image set: Pre-installed (Contrast (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern (Phone color: Pistachio green)) Called: ON (Image + Missed call) Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Backlight: OFF) Background i-αppli: OFF	p.140
		Font	MENU 6 6	Type	Font 1	p.147
				Thickness	Medium	
		Desktop icon	MENU 6 3		Photo mode	p.148
		3D display setting	—		ON	p.150
		Select language	MENU 1 * 5		日本語 (Japanese)	p.45
		Original menu	MENU 5 2		Own number Check new messages Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code	p.144
		Menu display set	MENU 5 7	Guidance	Picture & Text	p.142
				Menu display	List	
				Theme	Contrast (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern (Phone color: Pistachio green)	
				Memory focus	ON	
		Viewer settings	—		Picture	p.328
		Automatic display	MENU 4 7		OFF	p.124
		Icons	MENU 3 6		—	p.28
		Icons setting	—		ON	p.151

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Call time/ Charge	Call data	MENU 6 1		–	p.399
		Notice designate calls	–	Cost limit	Not set	p.400
				Notify cost limit	OFF	
				Alarm tone	Clock Alarm Tone	
				Volume	Level 4	
		Reset total	MENU 6 0		–	p.399
		Auto reset total cost	–		OFF	p.399
		Call time display	MENU 4 6		ON	p.147
	Clock	Set time	MENU 3 1		Auto time set ON	p.46
		Clock display	MENU 3 9	Display	Japanese display: 日本語 English display: ON	p.147
				Size	Big	
				Display type	World watch OFF	
		World watch	–	Time zone	GMT+00 (City: London)	p.47
				Summer time	OFF	
		Alarm setting	–		Alarm preferred	p.387
	Lock/ Security	Lock all	–		OFF	p.159
		PIM lock	–		OFF	p.165
					Group and item settings: All selected	
		SimpleLock	–		OFF	p.313
		IC card lock	–		OFF	p.312
		Face authentication	–	New image	Not stored	p.313
		Self mode	–		OFF	p.175
		Keypad dial lock	–		OFF	p.169
		Reject unknown	–		Accept	p.174
		Call setting w/o ID	MENU 1 0		Accept Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display	p.173
		Record display set	–	Received calls	ON	p.170
				Redial/Dialed calls	ON	
		Change security code	MENU 2 9		0000 (4 zeros)	p.157
		PIN setting	–		–	p.157
		Secret mode	MENU 4 0		OFF	p.161
		Secret data only mode	MENU 4 1		OFF	p.162
		Scanning function	–	Set scan	ON	p.491
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	–		60 seconds	p.228
		Set check new messages	–		All checked	p.278
		Host selection	MENU 8 1		i-mode User defined host: Not recorded	p.228
		SMS center selection	–		DoCoMo User setting: Not set	p.287
		Certificate	–		Valid	p.232
		Certificate host	–		DoCoMo User setting host: Not recorded	p.234
	i-αppli settings	Disp. software info	–		Not display	p.292
		End stand-by display	–		–	p.301
		i-αppli vol.	–		Level 4	p.294

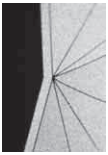
Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	ToruCa settings	Receive from R/W	—		Accept	p.312
		Scroll	—		1 line	p.312
	External connection	USB mode setting	—		Communication mode	p.362
		Earphone	MENU 5 1		Earphone(only)	p.133
		Select microphone	—		External microphone	p.406
		Automatic answer	MENU 9 4		OFF Ring time: 6 seconds (When Automatic answer is set to “ON”)	p.405
	Network setting	PLMN setting	—		Not stored	p.445
		NW search mode	—		Auto	p.444
		Operator name display	—		Display OFF	p.445
	Other settings	Style mode	—		—	p.152
		Keypad sound	MENU 3 0		ON	p.132
		Charge sound	—		ON	p.132
		Battery level	MENU 7 1		—	p.44
		External keys guard	MENU * (1 second or longer)		OFF	p.169
		Character input set	MENU 3 5	Input mode	Mode 1(5-touch)	p.427
				Prediction	ON	p.429
				Guidance	ON	p.430
				T9 change mode	T9 Kanji change mode	p.429
				Clear learned	—	p.437
				CHG input size	Standard	p.427
		Neuropointer	—	Pointer	ON	p.145
				Simple	Normal	
				Pointer icon setting	Contrast (Phone color: Russet black), Ripple (Phone color: Ice silver), KiraKira (Phone color: Jewel pink), Elephant Pattern (Phone color: Pistachio green)	
		Reset settings	MENU 2 3		—	p.406
		Initialize	—		—	p.407
		Software Update	—		—	p.487
Data box	My picture		MENU 4 6		—	p.325
	i-motion		—		—	p.337
	Melody		MENU 1 6		—	p.350
	Chara-den		—		—	p.346
	My document		—		—	p.370
	Music		—		—	p.378
LifeKit	Bar code reader		—		—	p.198
	Receive Ir data		MENU 7 9		—	pp.367, 368
	ToruCa		—		—	p.309
	IC card content		—		—	p.309
	SD-PIM		—		—	p.358
	Camera		—		—	pp.185, 192
	Data Sec. Service		—	PH-book img. Sending	OFF	p.175
	Schedule		MENU 4 5		—	p.390
	Alarm clock		MENU 4 4		OFF	p.389
	To Do list		MENU 9 5		—	p.394

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
LifeKit	Text memo		MENU 4 2		—	p.401
	Calculator		MENU 6 5		—	p.401
	Play/Erase msg.		(Memo/Check)		—	p.77
	Play/Erase VP msg.		—		—	p.78
	Voice memo		MENU 4 3		—	p.398
	Voice announce		MENU 9 1		—	p.398
	UIM operation		—		—	p.120
	Forwarding image		—		ON	p.364
	Access reader		—		—	p.201
	Dictionary		—		—	p.402
Network service	Chaku-moji		—	Create message	5 preinstalled	p.55
				MSG display settings	Calls with Caller ID	
				3D message display	ON	
	Caller ID Notification		MENU 1 7		—	p.47
	Voice Mail		—		—	p.410
	Call Waiting		—		—	p.411
	Call Forwarding		—		—	p.413
	Nuisance Call Blk		—		—	p.414
	Caller ID Request		—		—	p.414
	In-call arrival act		—		Answer	p.416
	Set in-call arrival		—		—	p.416
	Remote Control		—		—	p.417
	Dual Network		—		—	p.414
	English Guidance		—		—	p.415
	Additional service		—		—	p.418
	Service Numbers		—		—	p.415
	Multi Number		—	Select ring tone	Same as ring tone	p.417
	Roam. Guidance		—		—	p.446
	Bar incoming when roam		—		—	p.446
	Service(Int.)		—		—	p.446
Phone-book	Phonebook		—		—	pp.111, 115
	PushTalk		—		—	pp.102, 103
Own data	Own number		MENU 0		—	pp.48, 396
	Received calls		MENU 2 4		—	p.66
	Dialed calls		—		—	p.58
	Mail member		MENU 9 7		—	p.254
	Chat group		—		—	p.283
	Common phrases		MENU 3 6		Default common phrases (Folder name: Folder 1,2)	p.435
	Own dictionary		MENU 6 2		—	p.437
	DL dictionary		—		—	p.437

Data Stored at the Time of Purchase

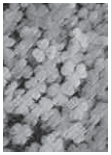
Stand-by display


Contrast 1


Ripple 1

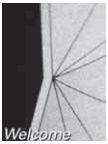

KiraKira 1


Elephant Pattern 1


Clover


Disney


DQ Yangus



Contrast 2



Ripple 2



KiraKira 2



Elephant Pattern 2



SHAPE AND COLOR!


Mickey Mouse

NOTE

◆ The image of “SHAPE AND COLOR !” varies depending on launch.

Frame



Disney


Team Yangus



FEVER


First Kiss


Fruit

Decomail-picture


Hurry



Love-Love


Pun-Pun


Cheers


Erupt


Crying Face


Bell


Gyo!


Impression



Bow



Information



Agreed


Clock


Heart


Bacterium


Lightning


Tears

Sound


Surprise

Question Mark



Chick

OK



Smile



Sorry



Angry



Sleep



Surprise



DOKI-DOKI



Shock!



Bye-bye!



No



Good Idea



Slime



HoimiSlime



Draky



Mickey Mouse 1



Mickey Mouse 2



Donald Duck



Chip & Dale



Minnie Mouse



悲しい



ラブラブ



ムンクの叫び



おどろき



おひるね



花火



海水浴



ライン　星空



ライン　お誕生日



ライン　サッカー



Note



Snow



Balloon 1

Balloon 2



Gee!



What!?



So embarrassing!



Oh, great!



Ichiban!



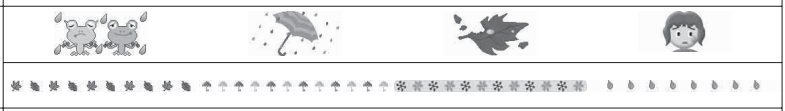
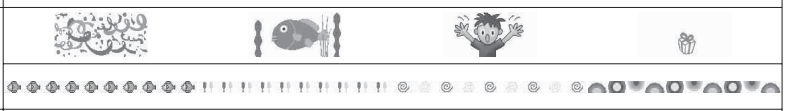
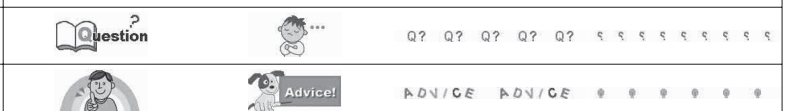
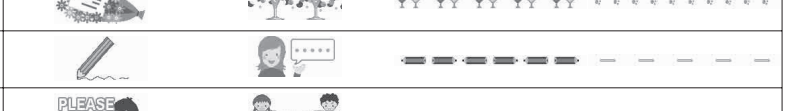
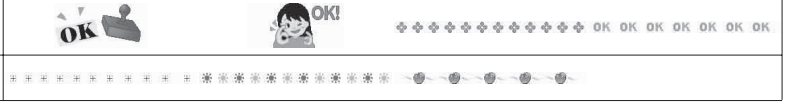
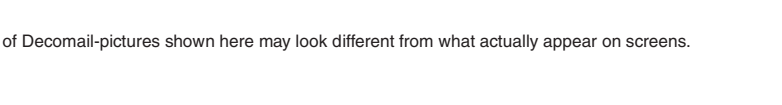
Bull's-Eye!

©BVIG

NOTE

◆ The images of Decomail-pictures shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Auto Decomail-pictures

Emotion	Image
Hurry	
Love	
Hate you	
Happy	
Angry	
Sad	
Fun	
Surprise	
Question	
Advice	
Cheer up	
Join	
Impression	
Please	
Information	
OK	
Reply/ Notice	

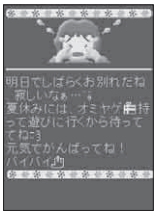
NOTE

◆ The images of Decomail-pictures shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

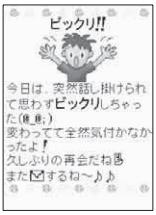
Templates



Irritating



Sad



Surprise!



Thank You!



Urgent



Cheer Up!



Mm-hm



Arghhh!



Come On



Sounds Nice



Happy



DQ Greeting



Mickey & Minnie



Donald & Daisy



Pluto



Goofy



Pete



ブンブン　カフェ



ブンブン　おひるね



ブンブン　フラワー

©BVIG

NOTE

◆ The templates shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Marker stamps

Cross		Heart1		Heart2		Kiss		Tear		Flame		
Lightning		Sorry		Note		Flower		Love	LOVE LOVE	Anger		
Right		Below		Left		Above		Here	ココ	No. 1		
No. 2		No. 3		Party		OK		NG		Person		
Car		Asleep		Question		Surprise		Shine		Whirlpool		
Punch		Nose										

Key Assignment (5-touch input)

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Kana input mode
1	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ
0	わをんーわ	ワヲンーワ*1
*	——— *2	———
#	゛ ゜ 、。 ？ ！ ・ *3	゛ ゜ 、。 ？ ！ ・ *3

Key	Alphabetic input mode	Numeric input mode
1	?!-/¥&＊()＃’’ 💔☎*4	1
2	ABCabc	2
3	DEFdef	3
4	GHIghi	4
5	JKLjkl	5
6	MNOmno	6
7	PQRSpqrs	7
8	TUVtuv	8
9	WXYZwxyz	9
0	———	0＋*5
*	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp*6	＊ .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp*6
#	. @ / ? ! ( ) , − _ : ’ ~*7 & ¥	＃. @ / ? ! ( ) , − _ : ’ ~*7 & ¥

*1 : Lower case “ワ” can be entered in double-byte input mode.
*2 : Pressing * switches “Kanji/hiragana input mode” to “Kuten code”.
*3 : In “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and double-byte “Kana input mode”, “゛” and “゜” appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. “、”, “。”, “？”, “！” and “・” cannot be entered when you enter a reading into the own dictionary or UIM phonebook.
*4 : Valid only when composing SMS messages. You cannot enter “Pictograph” but “💔” and “☎”. Although symbols appear as single-byte characters, “💔” and “☎” always appear as double-byte characters.
*5 : “＋” can be entered when you enter an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.
*6 : These characters do not appear in double-byte mode (except “＊” in numeric input mode).
*7 : This symbol appears as “ ” in double-byte input mode.
: Lower case characters can be entered in the following two methods:
- Enter an upper case character then press ← to convert it to lower case.
- Select “Lower case” from the function menu then enter a character.

Key Assignment (2-touch input)

■ Double-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	た	ち	つ っ	て	と	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z z	?	!	―	／
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		*2	
	8	や ゃ	（	ゆ ゅ	）	よ ょ	＊	＃		*2	*1
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ ゎ	を	ん	゛*3 、	゜*3 。	6	7	8	9	0

■ Single-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	ｱ ｧ	ｲ ｨ	ｳ ｩ	ｴ ｪ	ｵ ｫ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ ｯ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z z	?	!	-	/
	7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		*2	
	8	ﾔ ｬ	（	ﾕ ｭ	）	ﾖ ｮ	＊	＃		*2	*1
	9	ﾗ @	ﾘ /	ﾙ .	ﾚ _	ﾛ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @docomo.ne.jp	5
	0	ﾜ -	ﾝ '		ﾞ ,	ﾟ .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

• A reading entered for a UIM phonebook entry is katakana even in double-byte input mode.

*1 : Upper case input mode (upper) and lower case input mode (lower) are switched each time [あa/Aa] is pressed. You can enter an upper case character then press [確定] to convert it to lower case.

*2 : Valid only when “Pictograph” is available, e.g. when you enter “Text memo” or “Common phrases”. These are always double-byte characters. You cannot enter “Pictograph” but “☎” and “♥” when composing SMS messages.

*3 : In double-byte input mode, “゛” and “゜” appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. In other cases, “゛” and “゜” are replaced with spaces.

: A space is entered.

Key Assignment (T9 input)

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Kana input mode	Alphabetic input mode
1	あ column, 1	ア column, 1	1
2	か column, 2	カ column, 2	A B C a b c 2
3	さ column, 3	サ column, 3	D E F d e f 3
4	た column, 4	タ column, 4	G H I g h i 4
5	な column, 5	ナ column, 5	J K L j k l 5
6	は column, 6	ハ column, 6	M N O m n o 6
7	ま column, 7	マ column, 7	P Q R S p q r s 7
8	や column, 8	ヤ column, 8	T U V t u v 8
9	ら column, 9	ラ column, 9	W X Y Z w x y z 9
0	わ を ん ゎ ー, 0	ワ ヲ ン ヮ[*3] ー, 0	0
#	*1, *2	*1, *2	*4

- For “numeric input mode”, see “Mode 1 (5-touch input)” key assignments.
- Number candidates do not appear when you enter a reading into a UIM phonebook entry or “Own dictionary”.
- Immediately after “Alphabetic (double-byte)” or “Alphabetic (single-byte)” is set, CapsLock mode is activated. The mode changes in “CapsLock mode” → “Released” → “Shift mode” order each time you press .
- Entered characters are always uppercase in “CapsLock mode”. In “Shift mode”, only the first character is entered in uppercase, and subsequent characters will be in lowercase. Entered characters are always lowercase when neither mode is selected.
- After a character is confirmed in “Shift mode”, the mode is released.

*1： Candidates are switched between “゛” (dakuten) and “゜” (han-dakuten) when a reading is entered.
*2： After confirming a reading and characters, “、”, “。”, “？”, “！”, “・”, “゛” and “゜” appear as well as in Mode 1 (5-touch input). “゛” (dakuten) and “゜” (han-dakuten) appear only in single-byte kana input mode or when they can be attached to the previous character.
*3： Lower case “ワ” can be entered in double-byte input mode.
*4： After confirming characters, “.”, “@”, “/”, “？”, “！”, “(”, “)”, “,”, “－”, “_”, “:”, “‘”, “~”, “¯”, “&” and “¥” appear as is in Mode 1 (5-touch).

Symbols and Special Characters

■ Full pitch 1

、 。 , . ・ : ; ? ! ゛ ゜
´ ` ¨ ^ ￣ _ ヽ ヾ ゝ ゞ 〃 仝
々 〆 〇 ― — ‐ ／ ＼ ～ ∥ ｜ …
‥ ‘ ’ “ ” （ ） 〔 〕 ［ ］ ｛
｝ 〈 〉 《 》 「 」 『 』 【 】 ＋
－ ± × ÷ ＝ ≠ ＜ ＞ ≦ ≧ ∞ ∴
♂ ♀ ° ′ ″ ℃ ¥ $ ¢ £ % #
& * @ § ☆ ★ ○ ● ◎ ◇ ◆ □
■ △ ▲ ▽ ▼ ※ 〒 → ← ↑ ↓ 〓
∈ ∋ ⊆ ⊇ ⊂ ⊃ ∪ ∩ ∧ ∨ ¬ ⇒
⇔ ∀ ∃ ∠ ⊥ ⌒ ∂ ∇ ≡ ≒ ≪ ≫
√ ∽ ∝ ∵ ∫ ∬ Å ‰ ♯ ♭ ♪ †
‡ ¶ ○ わ ゐ ゑ ワ ヰ ヱ ヴ ヵ ヶ

Α Β Γ Δ Ε Ζ Η Θ Ι Κ Λ Μ
Ν Ξ Ο Π Ρ Σ Τ ϒ Φ Χ Ψ Ω
α β γ δ ε ζ η θ ι κ λ μ
ν ξ ο π ρ σ τ υ φ χ ψ ω
А Б В Г Д Е Ё Ж З И Й К
Л М Н О П Р С Т У Ф Х Ц
Ч Ш Щ Ъ Ы Ь Э Ю Я а б в
г д е ё ж з и й к л м н
о п р с т у ф х ц ч ш щ
ъ ы ь э ю я — ｜ ┌ ┐ ┘ └
├ ┬ ┤ ┴ ┼ ━ ┃ ┏ ┓ ┛ ┗ ┣
┳ ┫ ┻ ╋ ┠ ┯ ┨ ┷ ┿ ┝ ┰ ┥
┸ ╂

■ Full pitch 2

① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫
⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲ ⑳ Ⅰ Ⅱ Ⅲ Ⅳ
Ⅴ Ⅵ Ⅶ Ⅷ Ⅸ Ⅹ
㎜ ㎝
㎞ ㎎ ㎏ ㏄ ㎡ 平成 〃 〟 No. K.K. TEL ㊤
㊥ ㊦ ㊧ ㊨ (株) (有) (代) 明治 大正 昭和 ≒ ≡
∫ ∮ Σ √ ⊥ ∠ ∟ ⊿ ∵ ∩ ∪

■ Half pitch

! " # $ % & ' ( ) * +
, − . ／ : ; < = > ? @ [
¥] ^ _ ` { | } ～ 。「 」
、 ・ ー ゛ ゜

■ Symbols in Japanese conversion

You can enter symbols by entering and converting "きごう" to display the symbol candidates then selecting from the symbol candidates. You can also enter the following characters then convert the text into the desired symbol.

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
あっと,あっとまーく	@
いこーる	=
えん	¥
おす	↑
おなじ	々
おなじく	〃
おんぷ	♪
かける	×
かっこ	() 〔〕 ［］ ｛｝ 〈〉 《》 「」 『』 【】 “ ” “” () 〈〉 〔〕 ｛｝ ［］

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
から	～
こめ	※
ころん	:
こんま	,
さんかく	△▲▽▼
しゃせん	／＼
しかく	□■◇◆
しめ	〆
たす	＋
どう	ヽゝヾ〃々
ぱーせんと	%

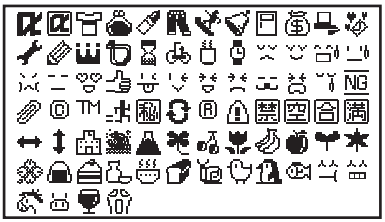
Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
ひく	−
ひしがた	◇◆
ほし	☆★
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	→←↑↓
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

Pictographs

■ Pictograph 1



■ Pictograph 2



NOTE

◆ Some pictographs in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them. Even if the receiving phone is an i-mode terminal, Pictograph 2 may not be displayed properly if it is not compatible with Pictograph 2.

Smiley Face Symbols

■ Smiley Face Symbols

Reading	Face symbol
ありがと (Thanks)	m(_ _)m
ばんざい (Hurrah!)	＼(^o^)／
わーい (Wow!)	(^o^)
わーい (Wow!)	(´∀`)
わーい (Wow!)	(*^□^*)
わーい (Wow!)	o(^▽^o)(o^▽^)o
わーい (Wow!)	(≧▼≦)
おーい (Hey!)	(^o^)／
ぶい (Vvvv!)	(^^)v
ぎゃはは (Ha-ha!)	(^o^)／^
あは (Ah ha!)	(o^o^o)
あは (Ah ha!)	^o^；
にこ (Smile!)	(^-^)
にこ (Smile! smile)	(*^_^*)
にこ (Smile!)	(o‘∀‘o)
にこ (Smile!)	(o^∀^o)
にこ (Smile!)	(’∀’●)
にこ (Smile!)	(●^-^●)
にこ (Smile!)	(o^▽^o)
ちゅ (Kiss!)	(^3^)／
ちゅ (Kiss! Kiss!)	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!
わくわく (I'm excited!)	o(^-^)o
ういんく (Wink)	(^_-)
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(^_^)／~
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(_Д_)／~~
がんば (Cheer up!)	p(^^)q
ね (Isn't it?)	(^^)b
ぽりぽり (Scratch, scratch!)	(^^)ゞ
ひやあせ (Cold Sweats!)	(^o^；
あせあせ (Sweat! Sweat!)	(；^_^A
びくっ (Twitch!)	(*_*)
どき (Shocked!)	((◎)-(◎);)
え (What?)	(@_@;)
めがてん (W'H'A'T?)	(・・;)

Reading	Face symbol
はてな (Wait a minute!)	(・・?)
きらーん (Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆。☆)
しくしく (Shob, sob)	(T_T)
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(T_T)／~
いたた (Ouch!)	(>_<)
いたた (Ouch!)	(><)
えーん (Crying)	(;_;)
えーん (Crying)	(´Д`)
えーん (Crying)	Ω\Å Ω;
えーん (Crying)	(ノД<。)゜。
えーん (Crying)	゜。(p> Λ <q)。゜
えーん (Crying)	(T ω ヽ)
なぜ (Why?)	(?_?)
がーん (Shocked!)	(￣□￣;)!!
がーん (Shocked!)	(____;)
がーん (Shocked!)	Σ(￣□￣;)
えへん (Ahem!)	(￣^￣)
む (Sullen)	(－＿－メ)
む (Sullen)	o(￣^￣o)
いかり (Angry)	(`´)
むか (Offended)	(;-_-+
むか (Offended)	(`へ´)
むか (Offended)	(`ヘ´;)
こそこそ (Whisper)	(・_・|
じーっ (Gaze)	(・_・)
きこえない (Can't hear)	|(-_-)|
こまったもんだ (My goodness!)	(￣～￣)ξ
ぶたー (Pig)	)^o^(
こあら (Koala)	(－Q－)
いっぷく (Taka a break)	(^|^)y~
いっぷく (Taka a break)	(^_^)y-~~~
ほし (Star)	☆彡
ねてる (Zzzz…)	(-_-)zz
ねむい (I'm sleepy)	＼(^o^)／

Reading	Face symbol
ねむい (I'm sleepy)	(o_-)ノ
めも (Memo)	φ(..)
うん (Yeah)	(^_^)(。。)
かんばい (Cheer up!)	(^^)／▽☆▽＼(^^)
ども (Well, well)	＼(^_^)(^_^)／
がまん (Patient)	(; ^∩^)
こんにちは (Hello!)	ゞ(=^▽^=)ノ
こんにちは (Hello!)	(・∀・)ノ
こんにちは (Hello!)	(●´∀`●)／
いいな (You lucky!)	(o>ω<o)
いいな (You lucky!)	(@^▽^@)
いいな (You lucky!)	(m'□'m)
うーん (Hmm)	(￣～￣;)
てれる (Embarrassed)	(／_＼;)
てれる (Embarrassed)	(*/ω＼*)
てれる (Embarrassed)	(//∀//)
てれる (Embarrassed)	(≧ω≦)
しあわせ (Happy!)	°+。(*´∀`)。+°
しあわせ (Happy!)	ヽ(^▽^)／
しあわせ (Happy!)	(*´∀`*)
なかよし (Pal)	^―^)人(^―^
ごめん (Sorry)	(*ｃ*)
いじいじ (Mopey)	φ(.. ;)
いじわる (Wicked)	Ψ(`∀´#)
よろしく (Thank you)	☆＼(▽^*)
こまった (Good god!)	><
やだ (No!)	(◎>_<)
へこむ (Feel down)	(^^)
へこむ (Feel down)	(´ω`)
びっくり (Ack!)	(o Д O;)
びっくり (Ack!)	w(° 0 °)w
だっしゅ (Dash)	ε=┏(・_・)┛

NOTE

◆ Face symbols can be entered from “Face Mark” under the Text entry (edit) function menu. →p.432

Common Phrases

■ Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

■ Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)

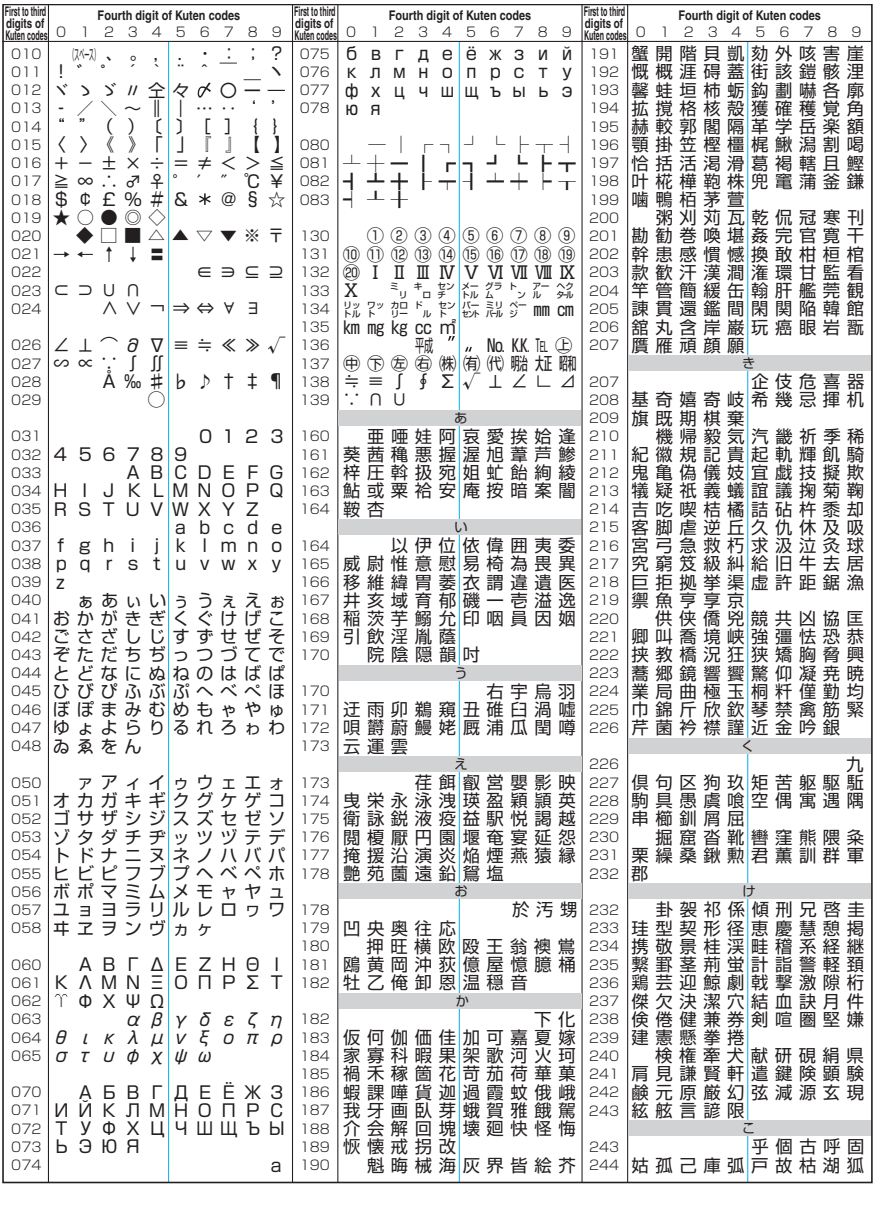
No.	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Kuten Codes

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter “digits 1-3 of the kuten code” then “digit 4”.

● Some kuten codes in the table here may look different from what actually appear on screens.



Continued on next page

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
245	菰	伍	瑚	侯	向	垢	庚	晃	溝	耕
246	糊	互	檎	佼	口	坑	広	昂	港	綱
247	胡	互	檎	佼	口	坑	広	昂	港	綱
248	股	五	梧	交	享	喉	幸	攻	浩	絞
249	股	五	梧	交	行	閣	壕	毅	骨	頃
250	袴	支	悟	鯉	交	后	巷	控	洪	紘
251	拘	巧	拘	江	紅	航	砿	号	告	忽
252	糊	顧	御	乞	効					
253										
254										
255										
256										
257										
258										
259										
260										
261										
262										
263										
264										
265										
266										
267										
268										
269										
270										
271										
273										
273										
274										
275										
276										
277										
278										
279										
280										
281										
282										
283										
284										
285										
286										
287										
288										
289										
290										
291										
292										
294										
295										
296										
297										
298										
299										
300										
301										
302										
303										
304										
305										
306										
307										
308										
309										
310										
311										
312										
313										
314										
315										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
315							筒	推	錘	据
316			厨	翠	嵩	雀	寸			
317			図	粋	崇	顔	摺			
318			酢	睡	髄	萱	澄			
319	須	炊	瑞	椙						
320										
320					世	成	生	逝	威	赤
321					性	牲	請	惜	責	設
322					征	清	誓	席	脊	折
323					姓	正	誠	隻	績	摂
324					勢	栖	西	脆	葛	籍
325					接	蝉	扇	煽		
326										
327										
328										
329										
330										
331										
332										
332										
333										
334										
335										
336										
337										
338										
339										
340										
341										
342										
343										
344										
345										
346										
347										
348										
349										
350										
351										
352										
353										
354										
354										
355										
356										
357										
358										
359										
360										
361										
362										
363										
364										
365										
366										
366										
367										
368										
369										
370										
371										
372										
373										
373										
374										
375										
376										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377	搭	燈								
378	盗	答								
379										
380										
381										
382										
383										
384										
385										
386										
386										
387										
388										
388										
389										
390										
390										
391										
392										
393										
393										
394										
395										
396										
397										
398										
399										
400										
401										
402										
403										
404										
405										
405										
406										
407										
408										
409										
410										
411										
412										
413										
414										
415										
416										
417										
418										
419										
420										
421										
422										
422										
423										
424										
425										
426										
426										
427										
428										
429										
430										
431										
432										
433										
434										
435										
436										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	ま									
436		摩								
437	昧	鱒	毎	亦	万	蔓				
438		枚	桝	麿	漫					
439										
440										
	み									
440					味	未	魅	岬	密	
441	蜜		湊		蓑	脈	妙	眠		
	む									
441										務
442	夢		無		牟	矛	霧	鵡	娚	娘
	め									
442										冥
443	名		命	棉	明	綿	迷	面	牝	滅
444	免						銘	麺	姪	
	も									
444										妄
445								摸	茂	黙
446	孟	目	毛	杢	門		模	儲	木	問
447	目	紋					耗	蒙	貰	
	や									
447						冶				弥
448	矢	鑓			也	約			野	薮
449							夜	訳	柳	
	ゆ									
449							癒	佑	由	
450				愉	愈	揖	誘		宥	猷
451		悠		諭	憂	裕		優	友	融
452		祐					湧	郵	勇	雄
	よ									
452										予
453						預	楊	蓉	容	庸
454					誉	耀	抑		妖	溶
455				与	揺	羊	慾		幼	洋
456						傭	様	要	浴	蘭
	ら									
456						頼	濫		雷	藍
457				来	嵐				落	
458				裸	卵				洛	覧
	り									
458										吏
459						璃	里	流	慮	梁
460						理	裏	略	龍	量
461						離	溜	旅	涼	陵
462						陸	琉	虜	猟	輪
463						離	溜	旅	涼	陵
	る～れ									
464						類	苓	劣	聯	
465						礼	列	練	錬	
466						涙	玲	歴	簾	連
467						塁	怜	暦	蓮	
468						累	令	麗		
469						労	狼	録		
470						露	牢	肋		
	ろ									
470						呂	弄	聾		
471						廊	老		婁	籠
472						朗	蝋			
473										
474						倭	亙		鷲	腕
475										
476										
477										
478										
479										
480										
481										
482										
483										
484										
485										
486										
487										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
488	偃	傀								
489										
490										
491										
492										
493										
494										
495										
496										
497										
498										
499										
500										
501										
502										
503										
504										
505										
506										
507										
508										
509										
510										
511										
512										
513										
514										
515										
516										
517										
518										
519										
520										
521										
522										
523										
524										
525										
526										
527										
528										
529										
530										
531										
532										
533										
534										
535										
536										
537										
538										
539										
540										
541										
542										
543										
544										
545										
546										
547										
548										
549										
550										
551										
552										
553										
554										
555										
556										
557										
558										
559										
560										
561										
562										
563										

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
564										
565										
566										
567										
568										
569										
570										
571										
572										
573										
574										
575										
576										
577										
578										
579										
580										
581										
582										
583										
584										
585										
586										
587										
588										
589										
590										
591										
592										
593										
594										
595										
596										
597										
598										
599										
600										
601										
602										
603										
604										
605										
606										
607										
608										
609										
610										
611										
612										
613										
614										
615										
616										
617										
618										
619										
620										
621										
622										
623										
624										
625										
626										
627										
628										
629										
630										
631										
632										
633										
634										
635										
636										
637										
638										
639										

Continued on next page

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
640		爨	爩	爪	爫	爬	爭	爮	爯	爰
641	爲	爳	爴	爵	父	爷	爸	爹	爺	爻
642	爼	爽	爾	牀	牁	牂	牃	牄	牅	牆
643	牉	牋	牌	牍	牎	牏	牐	牑	牒	牓
644	牔	牕	牖	牗	牘	牙	牚	牛	牜	牝
645	牞	牟	牠	牡	牢	牣	牤	牥	牦	牧
646	牨	物	牪	牫	物	牭	牮	牯	牰	牱
647	牲	牳	牴	牵	牶	牷	牸	特	牺	牻
648	牼	牽	牾	牿	犀	犁	犂	犃	犄	犅
649	犆	犇	犈	犉	犊	犋	犌	犍	犎	犏
650	犐	犑	犒	犓	犔	犕	犖	犗	犘	犙
651	犚	犛	犜	犝	犞	犟	犠	犡	犢	犣
652	犤	犥	犦	犧	犨	犩	犪	犫	犬	犭
653	犮	犯	犰	犱	犲	犳	犴	犵	状	犷
654	犸	犹	犺	犻	犼	犽	犾	犿	狀	狁
655	狂	狃	狄	狅	狆	狇	狈	狉	狊	狋
656	狌	狍	狎	狏	狐	狑	狒	狓	狔	狕
657	狖	狗	狘	狙	狚	狛	狜	狝	狞	狟
658	狠	狡	狢	狣	狤	狥	狦	狧	狨	狩
659	狪	狫	狭	狮	狯	狰	狱	狲	狳	狴
660	狵	狶	狷	狸	狹	狺	狻	狼	狽	狾
661	狿	猀	猁	猂	猃	猄	猅	猆	猇	猈
662	猉	猊	猋	猌	猍	猎	猏	猐	猑	猒
663	猓	猔	猕	猖	猗	猘	猙	猚	猛	猜
664	猝	猞	猟	猠	猡	猢	猣	猤	猥	猦
665	猧	猨	猩	猪	猫	猬	猭	献	猯	猰
666	猱	猲	猳	猴	猵	猶	猷	猸	猹	猺
667	猻	猼	猽	猾	猿	獀	獁	獂	獃	獄
668	獅	獆	獇	獈	獉	獊	獋	獌	獍	獎
669	獏	獐	獑	獒	獓	獔	獕	獖	獗	獘
670	獙	獚	獛	獜	獝	獞	獟	獠	獡	獢
671	獣	獤	獥	獦	獧	獨	獩	獪	獫	獬
672	獭	獮	獯	獰	獱	獲	獳	獴	獵	獶
673	獷	獸	獹	獺	獻	獼	獽	獾	獿	玀
674	玁	玂	玃	玄	玅	玆	率	玈	玉	王
675	玊	玌	玍	玎	玏	玐	玑	玒	玓	玔
676	玕	玖	玗	玘	玙	玚	玛	玜	玝	玞
677	玟	玠	玡	玢	玣	玤	玥	玦	玧	玨
678	玩	玪	玫	玬	玭	玮	环	现	玱	玲
679	玳	玴	玵	玶	玷	玸	玹	玺	玻	玼
680	玽	玾	玿	珀	珁	珂	珃	珄	珅	珆
681	珇	珈	珉	珊	珋	珌	珍	珎	珏	珐
682	珑	珒	珓	珔	珕	珖	珗	珘	珙	珚
683	珛	珜	珝	珞	珟	珠	珡	珢	珣	珤
684	珥	珦	珧	珨	珩	珪	珫	珬	珯	珰
685	珱	珲	珳	珴	珵	珶	珷	珸	珹	珺
686	珻	珼	珽	現	珿	琀	琁	琂	球	琄
687	琅	理	琇	琈	琉	琊	琋	琌	琍	琎
688	琏	琐	琑	琒	琓	琔	琕	琖	琗	琘
689	琙	琚	琛	琜	琝	琞	琟	琠	琡	琢
690	琣	琤	琥	琦	琧	琨	琩	琪	琫	琬
691	琭	琮	琯	琰	琱	琲	琳	琴	琵	琶
692	琷	琸	琹	琺	琻	琼	琽	琾	琿	瑀
693	瑁	瑂	瑃	瑄	瑅	瑆	瑇	瑈	瑉	瑊
694	瑋	瑌	瑍	瑎	瑏	瑐	瑑	瑒	瑓	瑔
695	瑕	瑖	瑗	瑘	瑙	瑚	瑛	瑜	瑝	瑞
696	瑟	瑠	瑡	瑢	瑣	瑤	瑥	瑦	瑧	瑨
697	瑩	瑪	瑫	瑬	瑭	瑮	瑯	瑰	瑱	瑲
698	瑳	瑴	瑵	瑶	瑷	瑸	瑹	瑺	瑻	瑼
699	瑽	瑾	瑿	璀	璁	璂	璃	璄	璅	璆
700	璇	璈	璉	璊	璋	璌	璍	璎	璏	璐
701	璑	璒	璓	璔	璕	璖	璗	璘	璙	璚
702	璛	璜	璝	璞	璟	璠	璡	璢	璣	璤
703	璥	璦	璧	璨	璩	璪	璫	璬	璭	璮
704	璯	環	璱	璲	璳	璴	璵	璶	璷	璸
705	璹	璺	璻	璼	璽	璾	璿	瓀	瓁	瓂
706	瓃	瓄	瓅	瓆	瓇	瓈	瓉	瓊	瓋	瓌
707	瓍	瓎	瓏	瓐	瓑	瓒	瓓	瓔	瓕	瓖
708	瓗	瓘	瓙	瓚	瓛	瓜	瓝	瓞	瓟	瓠
709	瓡	瓢	瓣	瓤	瓥	瓦	瓧	瓨	瓩	瓪
710	瓫	瓬	瓭	瓮	瓯	瓰	瓱	瓲	瓳	瓴
711	瓵	瓶	瓷	瓸	瓹	瓺	瓻	瓼	瓽	瓾
712	瓿	甀	甁	甂	甃	甄	甅	甆	甇	甈
713	甉	甊	甋	甌	甍	甎	甏	甐	甑	甒
714	甓	甔	甕	甖	甗	甘	甙	甚	甛	甜
715	生	甠	甡	產	産	甤	甥	甦	用	甩

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
716	甪	甬	甭	甮	甯	田	甲	甴	甶	甹
717	甽	甾	甿	畀	畁	畂	畃	畄	畅	畆
718	畇	畈	畉	畊	畋	界	畍	畎	畏	畐
719	畑	畒	畓	畔	畕	畖	畗	畘	留	畚
720	畛	畜	畝	畞	畟	畠	畡	畢	畣	畤
721	畦	畧	畨	畩	畫	畬	畭	畮	畯	異
722	畱	畲	畳	畴	當	畷	畸	畹	畺	畻
723	畼	畽	畾	畿	疀	疁	疂	疃	疄	疅
724	疆	疇	疈	疉	疊	疋	疌	疍	疎	疏
725	疐	疑	疒	疓	疔	疕	疖	疗	疘	疙
726	疚	疛	疜	疝	疞	疟	疠	疡	疢	疣
727	疤	疥	疦	疧	疨	疩	疪	疫	疬	疭
728	疮	疯	疰	疱	疲	疳	疴	疵	疶	疷
729	疸	疹	疺	疻	疼	疽	疾	痀	痁	痂
730	痃	痄	病	症	痆	症	痈	痉	痊	痋
731	痌	痍	痎	痏	痐	痑	痒	痓	痔	痕
732	痖	痗	痘	痙	痚	痛	痜	痝	痞	痟
733	痠	痡	痢	痣	痤	痥	痦	痧	痨	痩
734	痪	痫	痬	痭	痮	痯	痰	痱	痲	痳
735	痴	痵	痶	痷	痸	痹	痺	痻	痼	痽
736	痾	痿	瘀	瘁	瘂	瘃	瘄	瘅	瘆	瘇
737	瘈	瘉	瘊	瘋	瘌	瘍	瘎	瘏	瘐	瘑
738	瘒	瘓	瘔	瘕	瘖	瘗	瘘	瘙	瘚	瘛
739	瘜	瘝	瘞	瘟	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘣	瘤	瘥
740	瘦	瘧	瘨	瘩	瘪	瘫	瘬	瘭	瘮	瘯
741	瘰	瘱	瘲	瘳	瘴	瘵	瘶	瘷	瘸	瘹
742	瘺	瘻	瘼	瘽	瘾	瘿	癀	癁	療	癃
743	癄	癅	癆	癇	癈	癉	癊	癋	癌	癍
744	癎	癏	癐	癑	癒	癓	癔	癕	癖	癗
745	癘	癙	癚	癛	癜	癝	癞	癟	癠	癡
746	癢	癣	癤	癥	癦	癧	癨	癩	癪	癫
747	癬	癭	癮	癯	癰	癱	癲	癳	癴	癵
748	癶	癷	癸	癹	発	登	白	百	皀	皁
749	的	皃	的	皅	皆	皇	皈	皉	皊	皋
750	皌	皍	皎	皏	皐	皑	皒	皓	皔	皕
751	皖	皗	皘	皙	皚	皛	皜	皝	皞	皟
752	皠	皡	皢	皣	皤	皥	皦	皧	皨	皩
753	皪	皫	皬	皭	皮	皯	皰	皱	皲	皳
754	皴	皵	皶	皷	皸	皹	皺	皻	皼	皽
755	皾	皿	盀	盁	盂	盃	盄	盅	盆	盇
756	盈	盉	益	盋	盌	盍	盎	盏	盐	监
757	盒	盓	盔	盕	盖	盗	盘	盙	盚	盛
758	盜	盝	盞	盟	盠	盡	盢	監	盤	盥
759	盦	盧	盨	盩	盪	盫	盬	盭	目	盯
760	盱	盲	直	盵	盶	盷	相	盹	盺	盻
761	盼	盽	盾	盿	眀	省	眂	眃	眄	眅
762	眆	眇	眈	眉	眊	看	眍	眎	眏	眐
763	眑	眒	眓	眔	眕	眖	眗	眘	眙	眚
764	眛	眜	眝	眞	眠	眡	眢	眣	眤	眥
765	眦	眧	眨	眩	眪	眫	眬	眭	眮	眯
766	眰	眱	眲	眳	眴	眵	眶	眷	眸	眹
767	眺	眻	眼	眽	眾	着	睁	睂	睃	睄
768	睅	睆	睇	睈	睉	睊	睋	睌	睍	睎
769	睏	睐	睑	睒	睓	睔	睕	睖	睗	睘
770	睙	睚	睛	睜	睝	睞	睟	睠	睡	睢
771	督	睤	睥	睦	睧	睨	睩	睪	睫	睬
772	睭	睮	睯	睰	睱	睲	睳	睴	睵	睶
773	睷	睸	睹	睺	睻	睼	睽	睾	睿	瞀
774	瞁	瞂	瞃	瞄	瞅	瞆	瞇	瞈	瞉	瞊
775	瞋	瞌	瞍	瞎	瞏	瞐	瞑	瞒	瞓	瞔
776	瞕	瞖	瞗	瞘	瞙	瞚	瞛	瞜	瞝	瞞
777	瞟	瞠	瞡	瞢	瞣	瞤	瞥	瞦	瞧	瞨
778	瞩	瞪	瞫	瞬	瞭	瞮	瞯	瞰	瞱	瞲
779	瞳	瞴	瞵	瞶	瞷	瞸	瞹	瞺	瞻	瞼
780	瞽	瞾	瞿	矀	矁	矂	矃	矄	矅	矆
781	矇	矈	矉	矊	矋	矌	矍	矎	矏	矐
782	矑	矒	矓	矔	矕	矖	矗	矘	矙	矚
783	矛	矜	矝	矞	矟	矠	矡	矢	矣	矤
784	知	矦	矧	矨	矩	矪	矫	矬	短	矮
785	矯	矰	矱	矲	石	矴	石	矶	矷	矸
786	矹	矺	矻	矼	矽	矾	矿	砀	码	砂
787	砃	砄	砅	砆	砇	砈	砉	砊	砋	砌
788	砍	砎	砏	砐	砑	砒	砓	研	砕	砖
789	砗	砘	砙	砚	砛	砜	砝	砞	砟	砠
790	砡	砢	砣	砤	砥	砦	砧	砨	砩	砪
791	砫	砬	砭	砮	砯	砰	砱	砲	砳	破

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
792	砵	砶	砷	砸	砹	砺	砻	砼	砽	砾
793	础	硁	硂	硃	硄	硅	硆	硇	硈	硉
794	硊	硌	硍	硏	硑	硒	硓	硔	硕	硖
795	硗	硘	硙	硚	硛	硜	硝	硞	硟	硠
796	硡	硢	硣	硤	硥	硦	硧	硨	硩	硪
797	硫	硬	硭	确	硯	硰	硱	硲	硳	硴
798	硵	硶	硷	硸	硹	硺	硻	硼	硽	硾
799	硿	碀	碁	碂	碃	碄	碅	碆	碇	碈
800	碉	碊	碋	碌	碍	碎	碏	碐	碑	碒
801	碓	碔	碕	碖	碗	碘	碙	碚	碛	碜
802	碝	碞	碟	碠	碡	碢	碣	碤	碥	碦
803	碧	碨	碩	碪	碫	碬	碭	碮	碯	碰
804	碱	碲	碳	碴	碵	碶	碷	碸	碹	碻
805	碽	碾	磀	磁	磂	磃	磄	磅	磆	磇
806	磈	磉	磊	磋	磌	磍	磎	磏	磐	磑
807	磒	磓	磔	磕	磖	磗	磘	磙	磚	磛
808	磜	磝	磞	磟	磠	磡	磢	磣	磤	磥
809	磦	磧	磨	磩	磪	磫	磬	磭	磮	磯
810	磰	磱	磲	磳	磴	磵	磶	磷	磸	磹
811	磺	磻	磼	磽	磾	磿	礀	礁	礂	礃
812	礄	礅	礆	礇	礈	礉	礊	礋	礌	礍
813	礎	礏	礐	礑	礒	礓	礔	礕	礖	礗
814	礘	礙	礚	礛	礜	礝	礞	礟	礠	礡
815	礢	礣	礤	礥	礦	礧	礨	礩	礪	礫
816	礬	礭	礮	礯	礰	礱	礲	礳	礴	礵
817	礶	礷	礸	礹	示	礻	礼	礽	社	社
818	祁	祂	祃	祄	祅	祆	祇	祈	祉	祊
819	祋	祌	祍	祎	祏	祐	祑	祒	祓	祔
820	祕	祖	祗	祘	祙	祚	祛	祜	祝	神
821	祟	祠	祡	祢	祣	祤	祥	祦	祧	票
822	祩	祪	祫	祬	祭	祮	祯	祰	祱	祲
823	祳	祴	祵	祶	祷	祸	祹	祺	祻	祼
824	祽	祾	祿	禀	禁	禂	禃	禄	禅	禆
825	禇	禈	禉	禊	禋	禌	禍	禎	福	禐
826	禑	禒	禓	禔	禕	禖	禗	禘	禙	禚
827	禛	禜	禝	禞	禟	禠	禡	禢	禣	禤
828	禥	禦	禧	禨	禩	禪	禫	禬	禭	禮
829	禯	禰	禱	禲	禳	禴	禵	禶	禷	禸
830	禹	禺	离	禼	禽	禾	禿	秀	私	秂
831	秃	秄	秅	秆	秇	秈	秉	秊	秋	秌
832	秎	秏	秐	秒	秓	秔	秕	秖	秗	秘
833	秙	秚	秛	秜	秝	秞	租	秠	秡	秢
834	秣	秤	秥	秦	秧	秨	秩	秪	秫	秬
835	秭	秮	积	称	秱	秲	秳	秴	秵	秶
836	秷	秸	秹	秺	秼	秽	秾	秿	稀	稁
837	稂	稃	稄	稅	稆	稇	稈	稉	稊	稌
838	稍	稏	稐	稑	稒	稓	稔	稕	稖	稗
839	稘	稙	稚	稛	稜	稝	稞	稟	稠	稡
840	稢	稣	稤	稥	稦	稧	稨	稩	稪	稫

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Newly established communication / Current communication	Voice call		Videophone call		i-mode*7	i-αppli	i-mode mail	
	Making	Receiving	Making	Receiving			Sending	Receiving
During a voice call	△*1	△*2	×	△*3	○	×	○	○
During a videophone call	×	△*3	—	△*3	×	×	×	×*4
During i-mode*7	○	○	△*5	△*11	—	○	○	○
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	×	×	×	△*6	×	×*4
During 64K data communication	×	△*3	×	△*3	×	×	×	×*4
During a PTT call	×	△*10	×	×	×	×	×	×*4

Newly established communication / Current communication	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication		Push-to-Talk	
	Sending	Receiving	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming	Making	Receiving
During a voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△*3	×	×*12
During a videophone call	×	○	×*12	×	×	△*3	×	×
During i-mode*7	○	○	×	×	×	×	△*8	△*9
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	—	—	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△*3	×	×
During a PTT call	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated. △: Can be activated depending on situation. —: Functionally incompatible.

*1 : If you have subscribed to “Call Waiting”, you can hold the current voice call to make another call.

*2 : If you have subscribed to “Call Waiting”, you can hold the current voice call to answer an incoming call. If you have subscribed to “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”, you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. →p.416

*3 : If you have subscribed to “Call Waiting”, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”, you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. →p.416

*4 : An i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF is not received, but is stored in the i-mode center. You can receive a stored i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF by performing “Check new messages” after the current communication ends.

*5 : Make a videophone call after disconnecting the current i-mode.

*6 : You cannot communicate via i-αppli software.

*7 : Includes i-channel site view and communication via Full Browser or ToruCa.

*8 : Make a PTT call after disconnecting the current i-mode.

*9 : When “PushTalk preferred” is set on the “Set i-mode arrival act” menu under “PushTalk setting” (p.106), answering an incoming PTT call disconnects i-mode communication.

*10 : If “PushTalk arrival act” is set to “Answer”, answering an incoming voice call ends PTT communication.

*11 : If “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, answering an incoming videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.

*12 : It is logged as a missed call.

Multi Task Combination Patterns

Function / Currently	Mail	i-mode menu/ i-channel list	i-αppli	Set-tings	Data box	LifeKit	Network service	Phone book	Own data	Original menu
Launching Mail group	○*1	○	○	○*3	○	○*5	○*16	○*10	○	○
Launching i-mode group	○	×	○	○*3	○	○*5	○*16	○*10	○	○
Launching i-αppli group	○	○	×	○*3	○	○*5	○*16	○*10	○	○
Launching Settings group	○	○	○	×	○	○*5	×	○*10	○	○
Launching LifeKit group*15	○	○	○*14	○*3	×	×	○*16	×	×	○
During a voice call	○*2	○*2	×	×*4	×	×*7	○*2*9 *16*17	○*2*10	○*2*11	○*2
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×*6	×	×	×	×
During a PTT call	○	○	×	○*4	×	○*8	○*9*16 *17	○	○*11	○
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	○	○*3	○*13	○*5	○*16	○*10	○	○
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×*4*12	×	×*8	○*9*16	○*10	○*11	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

*1 : “Compose message” and “Compose SMS” cannot be used simultaneously.

*2 : It is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.

*3 : Some functions are unavailable.

*4 : Only “Pause dial” and “Keypad sound” are available.

*5 : “Received Ir data”, “SD-PIM”, “Voice announce” and “UIM operation” are unavailable.

*6 : “Voice memo(in-call)” is available only when you press and hold (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer. However, it is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.

*7 : Only “Bar code reader”, “ToruCa”, “Camera”, “Data Security Service”, “Schedule”, “To Do list”, “Text memo”, “Calculator”, “Voice memo(in-call)”, “Access reader” and “Dictionary” are available. However, while the lists and details of data scanned by the “Access reader” and “Bar code reader” can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. In addition, only “Photo mode” and “Continuous mode” are available in “Camera”.

*8 : Only “Bar code reader”, “ToruCa”, “Camera”, “Data Security Service”, “Schedule”, “To Do list”, “Text memo”, “Calculator”, “Access reader” and “Dictionary” are available. However, while the lists and details of data scanned by the “Access reader” and “Bar code reader” can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. In addition, only “Photo mode” and “Continuous mode” are available in “Camera”.

*9 : “Voice Mail” messages cannot be played. Special numbers (p.418) cannot be dialed (but can be dialed using USSD).

*10 : “Restrictions” is unavailable.

*11 : “Common phrases”, “Own dictionary” and “Download dictionary” are unavailable.

*12 : Only “Indicate V.phone” is available.

*13 : “Music player” is unavailable.

*14 : i-αppli cannot be used while a track is played on the music player.

*15 : The function is unavailable when “Receive Ir data”, “SD-PIM” or “UIM operation” is selected.

*16 : “Chaku-moji” is unavailable.

*17 : “Caller ID Notification” cannot be used.

Services Available for the FOMA terminal

Available service		Phone number
Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)		(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay) (A phone number that is not listed in the directory cannot be provided)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)		(No area code) 117
Weather (pay)		Area code for weather forecast you want + 177
Police emergency		(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency		(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)		(No area code) 171

NOTE

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)). (As of May, 2006)
- When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with impaired vision or disability or the arms or hands. For further details call NTT inquiries on 116 from general subscriber phones. (As of May, 2006)
- When calling 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, the location from which the call is sent cannot be established. Therefore, first say you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number, and state your location clearly so that the police or fire department can call you back. Also, do not move around when making the call, so that you are not disconnected. Do not turn off the FOMA terminal immediately after ending the call, but leave it turned on for more ten minutes or so, so that you can receive a call.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.
- If you are using a “Call Forwarding” service from a general phone and if a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of a general phone or a mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, out of range or turned off.
- Other services such as 116 (NTT inquiries), Dial Q2, message (Dengon) Dial, and Credit Call Service are not available (However, Credit Call Service calls can be made from public or general subscriber phones to the FOMA terminals).

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, the FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available in some areas. For more information, contact the DoCoMo service counter. For details on options and accessories, see each User Guide.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*1/P002*1
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*1
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder N10
- Battery Pack N11
- Back Cover N13
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*2
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- In-Car Holder 01
- FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01*3
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carrying Case S 01

*1 : To connect to FOMA N902iS, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.
*2 : To connect to FOMA N902iS, the FOMA In-car Hands-free Cable 01 is required.
*3 : For overseas use, the compatible conversion plug adapter is required.

Data Link Software

The “FOMA N902iS Data Link Software” allows you to transfer data such as phonebook entries, schedules, messages, melodies, still images, movies and i-motion.
Download the Data Link Software for the FOMA N902iS from the NEC Internet website:

NEC ワイワイもばいる (WaiWai Mobile)
http://www.n-keitai.com/

N902iS Data Link Software is available only in Japanese version.

Visit the website above or see the help of the Data Link Software for more details on downloading method, transferable data, operating environment, operating method and restrictions.

The software cannot be downloaded by the site access function of the FOMA terminal. Use a PC to download. You can use the software free of charge. A communication charge is made for downloading.

■ Operating environment and notes

The “FOMA USB Cable (optional)” is required to connect to a PC. It is unavailable for infrared data exchange. For other environments, see “ソフトウェアのご紹介”【動作環境】on the download page.
Since the Data Link Software uses OBEX (Object Exchange) for data transfer, also see “Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/Cable Connection” (p.364).
Information downloaded using i-mode/i-αppli is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal even if you use the Data Link Software, according to the copyright law. In addition, you cannot transfer data that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.

■ Operating System

Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)
* PC/AT compatible model on which one of the Operating Systems above runs

■ Before using the product

- NEC Corporation (hereinafter referred to as “our company”) does not guarantee performance on licensed programs, compatibility, accuracy or reliability for the result of use, or is not liable for defects whatsoever. You will be responsible for any problems or difficulties arising on the licensed programs and will bear any costs arising.
- Our company shall not take any responsibility for your lost profits, any damages arising in special situations (including ones that this company could forecast), or damages you are liable for, claimed by a third party. Moreover, you shall not make any claim against our company.

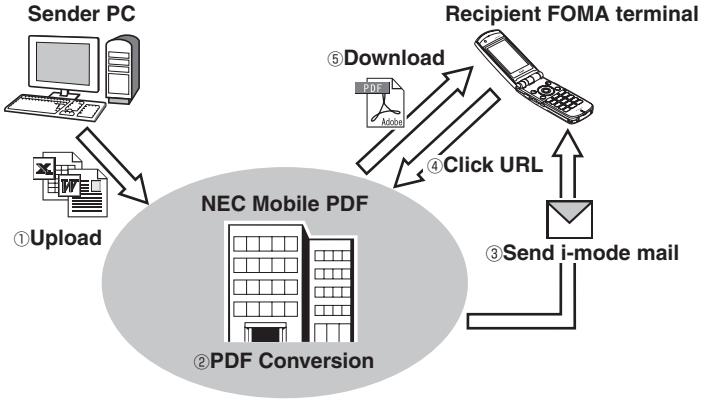
Inquiries about Data Link Software and Music Player Data Transfer Software
NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)
0120-102-001 (in Japanese only)
Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)
* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF.
(N901iS, N902i, N902iS supported As of May, 2006)

- Some files cannot be converted to PDF data, depending on the format or content.
- This service may terminate without notice.

NEC Mobile PDF flow



Visit the following site for the service details:
NEC ワイワイもばいる (WaiWai Mobile)
http://www.n-keitai.com/

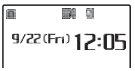
Inquiries about NEC Mobile PDF
NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)
0120-102-001 (in Japanese only)
Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)
* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Movie Playing Software

- To play a movie (MP4-formatted file) on a PC, install QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or above (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP) by Apple Computer, Inc.
- Download QuickTime from the following webpage:
  http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/
  - To download, you need a PC to access the Internet. A communication charge is made for downloading.
  - See the webpage above for more details on the environment, how to download or how to operate.

Malfunction Checklist

● Check first whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software. "Updating Software"→p.487

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used)	● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery run out?	p.40 p.44
The animation shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds	● The battery has run out. Charge the battery. 	p.44
The "" icon appears and I hear a busy tone	● Are you out of range or is the reception poor? 	p.45
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys	● Is Keypad dial lock set? ● Is Restrict dialing set?	p.169 p.171
I dialed a number and initiated a call, but all I hear is a busy tone	● Did you start dialing before hearing the dial tone? ● Did you forget to dial the area code? ● Is "" displayed? ● Is "Please wait" displayed?	p.50 p.50 p.45
I cannot receive calls or I cannot hear the ring tone	● Is any of the following functions set? Restrictions · Call rejection · Call acceptation · Call forwarding · Voice Mail Ring time(sec.) · Set mute seconds Reject unknown Call setting w/o ID · Unknown: Reject · Payphone: Reject · User unset: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal in manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Public mode (Driving mode)? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service set to "0"? ● Is Caller ID Request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the Dual Network service? ● Is the ring volume set to "Silent"?	p.171 p.174 p.174 p.173 p.133 p.71 p.175 p.410 p.413 p.414 p.414 p.69
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sounds when receiving a call	● Is "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.)" set to longer time (e.g. 99 seconds)? Set "Set mute seconds" to shorter time.	p.174
The records of Dialed calls/ Received calls, Redial, Received address/Sent address disappear automatically	● Is "Keypad dial lock" set? ● Is "Restrict dialing" under "Restrictions" set?	p.169 p.171
The neuropointer does not move quickly	● Adjust the slide setting.	p.145
The ring tone sounding when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.	p.130
The image appearing when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.	p.139

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
When receiving a voice call or videophone call, the color or pattern of the incoming call lamp flashing is different from what I set up	● When the illumination settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.	p.146
A PDF document is not properly displayed	● A document may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.	—
It takes long to display a PDF document	● It may take long to display a large-sized PDF document.	—
Cannot copy a PDF document to the FOMA terminal	● Does the file size exceed 2M bytes?	p.370
Cannot copy a PDF document to the miniSD memory card	● Was the document downloaded by page?	p.370
The screen or ring tone for an incoming call or message is the default setting	● Depending on the combination of receiving screen and ring tone or the priority sequence, either the receiving screen or ring tone may be restored to default.	—
The ring tone sounding when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. ● If you have received two or more messages, the tone set for the last received mail address sounds. ● If you have received two or more messages including a chat message, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for the chat message. ● If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, a distinctive ring tone set in Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook sounds.	p.130 p.123 p.123
A string appears instead of image or i-motion	● The following indicate that the image or i-motion cannot be selected for the function. Select an image or i-motion that will not display the following: "Not available", "Expired file", "No preview data"	p.325 p.337
The color of the illumination flashing when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	● When the incoming lamp settings are duplicated, the priority applies. ● If you receive two or more messages, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the illumination under Mail (recv.) that is set to the last received mail address. ● If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set distinctive illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, distinctive illumination set in Illumination under Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook flashes.	p.146 p.123 p.123

Continued on next page

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
Cannot charge the FOMA terminal (the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal does not light)	● Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal? ● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket? ● Are the adapter and the FOMA terminal correctly connected (is the AC adapter firmly connected to the FOMA terminal or the desktop holder)?	p.40 p.42 p.43
The key does not sound when I press it	● Is “Keypad sound” set to “OFF”? ● Is the FOMA terminal in manner mode?	p.132 p.133
I cannot use Any key answer to answer a voice call/videophone call/Push-to-Talk call	● Is “Answer setting” set to “Quick silent” or “OFF”? ● You cannot use Any key answer to answer a videophone call.	p.65
The other party’s voice is difficult to hear during a call	● Is the earpiece speaker properly placed against your ear? ● Is anything e.g. a sticker obstructing the earpiece speaker? ● Is anything obstructing the speaker in hands-free mode? ● Did you change the “Volume” setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.24 p.69
The other party’s voice is too loud during a call	● Did you change the “Volume” setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.69
Pressing the external keys does not operate the folded FOMA terminal	● Is “External keys guard” set to “ON”?	p.169
Pressing (Assist key) does not check missed calls, etc. when the FOMA terminal is folded	● Is “Info notice setting” set to “OFF”? ● Is “External keys guard” set to “ON”?	p.74 p.169
The date is displayed in Japanese	● Is “Japanese” selected as the language?	p.147
The display is dim	● Is the brightness of the backlight set to “Level 1”?	p.141
The backlight of the display, image display or keypad does not turn on	● Is Lighting of the backlight set to “OFF”? ● Press and hold 5 for 1 second or longer to turn the backlight on or off. Note that pressing and holding 5 for 1 second or longer will turn off the backlight e.g. while composing a message.	p.141
Receiving an incoming call immediately after turning on the power displays the phone number but does not display the name stored in the phonebook	● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The phonebook function may not be available then.	—
It takes some time for the power to turn on after pressing and holding 2 for 1 second or longer	● Data checking may take time e.g. if the phonebook is full of data.	p.122
Nothing appears on the display, but and are flashing	● The FOMA terminal is in power saver mode. Press any key to release the power saver mode.	p.141
Nothing appears on the image display	● Is “Image display” set to “OFF”?	p.140
The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a call	● The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) until the set time is reached, when receiving a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook or from a caller who does not notify his/her caller ID and if “Set mute seconds” under “Ring time(sec.)” is set to “ON”.	p.174
The figure of the accumulated charge does not increase	● The figure does not increase if it has already reached the limit. Perform “Reset total”.	p.399
Receiving an SMS does not display the sender’s name stored in the phonebook	● Did you correctly store the sender’s phone number on the phone number line ( ) of the phonebook?	p.111
A message is not automatically filtered	● If the sender’s mail address is “(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp”, save only the phone number in the Auto-sort settings. ● If the sender’s mail address is not “(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp”, save the entire address including the domain in the Auto-sort settings.	p.269
A message is not automatically received	● If you have set “Receive option setting” to “ON”, set it to “OFF”.	p.257 p.276
Cannot install the N902iS communication setting file (driver) or make data communication	● If you have set USB mode setting to “miniSD mode” or “Print mode”, set it to “Communication mode”.	p.362

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
i-mode, i-mode mail, i-αppli and i-channel cannot be connected	● Is “Host selection” set to “i-mode”? ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	p.228 —
The FOMA terminal does not perform receiving message operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a message	● Is “Mail/Msg. ring time” set to “OFF”? ● Is “Receiving display” set to “Operation preferred”?	p.133 p.276
A sent message is not saved to the Outbox	● Is “Sort all” set to the folder of mail-connected i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-αppli then select “Open folder” from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.262 p.269
A received message is not saved to the Inbox, and “ ” (white) does not disappear	● Does “ ” appear on the folder of mail-connected i-αppli in the Inbox? Or is “Sort all” set to the folder of mail-connected i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-αppli then select “Open folder” from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.262 p.269 p.290
The message “添付ファイル削除” (Attached file deleted) appears on a mail message	● You cannot receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted in the i-mode center and you receive only the message.	p.240
I was disconnected while sending a message, then received an SMS A message appears when I retry	● SMS interrupts communication and notifies you that a large amount of data is being transferred within a given time. Follow the contents of SMS and the displayed message.	—
A file attached to a message sent from a PC was deleted	● If the image file is GIF-formatted, which was attached to a message sent from a device other than the FOMA terminal, only up to 10,000 bytes can be received.	—
Images taken with the rear camera are flickered	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the “Image tuning” setting may suppress flickering.	p.194
Still images or movies shot with the rear camera look too bright	● You may shoot them outside or in a bright place with “Image tuning” set to “Mode 1(50Hz)” or “Mode 2(60Hz)”. Restore the tuning to “Auto” if it is not.	p.194
Still images or movies look blurred	● Set a mode suited to the scene being shot.	p.194
Attempting to display an image displays “ ” or Attempting to play for demonstration or see a preview displays “ ”	● “ ” may appear when the image data is corrupted.	—
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed	● It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the FOMA terminal or if you exchange large data by using the miniSD reader/writer function.	—
Chance capture shooting shortens the shooting time	● Chance capture shooting saves control data together with movie data, which may shorten the shooting time.	—

Continued on next page

■ For overseas use

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
“  ” or “Select net” does not disappear from the screen, and international roaming service cannot be used	● Are you out of international roaming service area or is the reception poor? ● See the international service guide such as “International Service User Guide” to check if the area or provider is available. ● Launch “NW search mode” to search for a compatible provider. ● Turn off the FOMA terminal then turn it back on the first time you use the service after you move from Japan to overseas.	— — p.444 —
A voice call or videophone call cannot be received	● Is “Bar incoming when roam” set to “Activate”? ● Is “V-phone while packet” set to “V-phone priority”?	p.446 p.92
The other party’s caller ID is not notified The notified caller ID is not the other party’s The FOMA terminal does not perform operations using phonebook data or Caller ID Notification	● If the used network or provider does not notify caller ID, even notified caller IDs do not appear on the FOMA display. Depending on the used network or provider, the notified caller ID may be different from the other party’s.	p.443

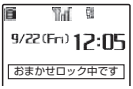
* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

If Any Error Message Appears

● Numbers enclosed in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used to distinguish errors sent from the i-mode center.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Invalid UIM Auto start not possible”	● This message appears when you attempt to automatically launch i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.38
“Invalid UIM Requested service not available”	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function. ● This message appears when you select a screen memo, MessageR or MessageF protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.38
“Invalid UIM Requested software failed to start”	● This message appears when you attempt to select and launch i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.38
“Reading UIM Cannot start”	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation related to the FOMA card (UIM) while the FOMA card (UIM) is being read. Retry later.	—
“Insert UIM”	● This message appears when the FOMA card (UIM) is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that the FOMA card (UIM) is correctly inserted.	p.37
“Data in IC card is full Replace?”	● This message appears when you attempt to download Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli but the space is not enough on the IC card. Select “YES” to display already registered Osaifu-Keitai services and the space (bytes) on the IC card. Check the size required, select services to remove, and launch i-αppli to remove them.	—
““i-αppli To” function is not set”	● When you attempt to launch software from a site, message, the infrared data exchange function, the Bar code reader or the IC card, it does not launch because the specified software is not permitted to be linked.	p.299
“Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?”	● This message appears when the number of communications that are using i-αppli and have been established in a given time is extremely large. Select “YES” to continue to make i-αppli communication, or “NO” to quit the communication. To quit using an i-αppli program, select “Terminate i-αppli”.	—
“Continue using i-αppli and transmit data?”	● This message appears when you select “NO” or “Terminate i-αppli” in response to the message “Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?”. Select “YES” to continue i-αppli communication. To quit using an i-αppli program, select “Terminate i-αppli”.	—
“Check new messages is set all OFF”	● New messages cannot be checked because none of the items is selected in “Set check new messages”. Select items to check in “Set check new messages”.	p.278
“Insert miniSD”	● This message appears when the miniSD memory card is not inserted correctly or may be damaged. Check that the miniSD memory card is properly inserted into the FOMA terminal.	p.354
“Replace with a new one or check the disk”	● Check the miniSD memory card.	p.358
“PIN1 code blocked”	● This message appears when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press ● to display the PUK code entry screen, then enter the PUK code correctly to release the lock.	p.158
“PUK blocked”	● This message appears when you attempt to power on or perform operations related to the FOMA card (UIM) when the PUK code is blocked. Contact the DoCoMo service counter.	p.157
“SSL session cannot be established”	● This message appears when a connection to an SSL site or website was not established. Retry connection.	—
“SSL session failed”	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for an SSL connection.	—

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Root certificate is not valid”	● This message appears when you receive an SSL certificate with the “Certificate” set to “Invalid”. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	p.232
“TLS/SSL session failed”	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for a TLS/SSL connection.	—
“Root certificate is not valid”	● This message appears when you receive a TLS/SSL certificate with the “Certificate” set to “Invalid”. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	p.232
“URL is too long to register”	● The URL exceeds 256 single-byte characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.	—
“Invalid URL”	● This message appears when you select “OK” without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with “http://” or “https://”) when setting the Home URL on the “Home URL” screen or entering a URL on the “Enter URL” screen. Enter a URL correctly.	p.219 p.228 p.317
“Failed to Copy this“	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new miniSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
“No response (408)”	● No response has been received from the site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	—
“おまかせロック中です”	● Omakase Lock is set. While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/videophone call and turning the power on/off. 	p.160
“No data”	● This message appears when there is no phonebook entry that matches the search conditions when you perform Phonebook search.	p.115
“Error in image Does not work correctly”	● This message appears when a Flash movie cannot be played due to an error found in the data.	—
“No Switch”	● This message appears when you cannot switch to a videophone call during a voice call because the other party is establishing a packet communication (including i-mode). Check the other party’s status and retry.	p.52
“Terminal and UIM ID will be sent”	● This message may appear while you are viewing a site or website. Select “YES” to send your mobile phone manufacturer number. Otherwise, select “NO”.	p.216
“Out of service area”	● This message appears when you attempt to use an i-mode service out of range or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. Move until “ ” appears, then use the i-mode service.	p.213
“This data can no longer be replayed”	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion with no playback count remaining.	—
“Replay period has expired”	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion whose playback period has expired.	—
“Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay”	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain a streaming-type i-motion while “i-motion type” is set to “Standard type”.	p.236
“Unable to support this card”	● The FOMA terminal does not support this miniSD memory card. Use a compatible miniSD memory card.	p.353
“This UIM cannot be recognized”	● This message appears when the inserted FOMA card cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. Make sure that the correct FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.	p.37
“Certificate is rejected (tampered)”	● This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. An SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
“Certificate is rejected (tampered)”	● This message appears when an altered TLS/SSL certificate has been received. A TLS/SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“This site is not certified Do you connect?”	● This message appears when you receive an unsupported SSL certificate. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”.	p.232
“This certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”. ● This message appears when you attempt to access an SSL website but the “Set time” setting is not made. Make the “Set time” setting.	p.232 p.46
“Cannot set this schedule”	● This message appears when you execute “Copy & add this” for a schedule with the same data and time as an existing schedule entry or when you receive it via infrared data exchange or cable connection.	—
“Root certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”. ● This message appears when you are asked to send a client certificate while accessing an SSL website.	p.232 p.215
“This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?”	● This message appears when the CN (name) of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”.	p.232
“The data may not be replayed”	● This message appears when the format of the acquired i-motion is not MP4 (Mobile MP4).	—
“Function cannot operate any more”	● Exit another function before operating.	—
“Service is not registered”	● The i-mode service is not available because you have not subscribed to the service. A separate subscription is required to use the service. ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	—
“This data can no longer be replayed Delete?”	● This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion with no playback count remaining. Select “YES” to delete the i-motion.	—
“Replay period has expired Cannot play”	● The i-motion cannot be played because the playback period has expired.	—
“Replay period has expired Delete?”	● This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion whose playback period has expired. Select “YES” to delete the i-motion.	—
“Size of this page is not supported”	● The size of the data downloaded from a website (via i-mode or full browser) or Internet webpage exceeds the maximum of one page. The download is interrupted, and only the downloaded data is displayed. ● This message appears when the limit is exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den character.	—
“Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)”	● This message appears when the size of the data to be downloaded exceeds the maximum and cannot be downloaded.	—
“Frame number of this page is not supported”	● The webpage cannot be displayed because the frame count exceeds the maximum that can be displayed on Full Browser.	—
“URL address changed (301)”	● The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.	p.148 p.220 p.228 p.317
“Connection failed (403)”	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
“Some attached file will be deleted”	● It is prohibited to attach to a message or output from the FOMA terminal the file attached to an i-mode message that you attempt to forward. Press ● to delete the file that cannot be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.	—
“Data is too long A part is deleted”	● The size of address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum, and the Compose message screen appears with the excess part deleted.	—
“Page is not found (404)”	● The site is not found. It may not exist.	—
“No content is available (204)”	● This message appears when there is no data to display on the site.	—

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“No requested software”	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for already deleted i-αppli. ● This message appears if there is no corresponding software when the i-αppli is launched from a mail message, the infrared data exchange function, the bar code reader or the IC card.	–
“Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)”	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	–
“Invalid address”	● The address contains a “,” and is invalid. Delete any “,”. ● The address of the received message contains more than 50 single-byte characters, and you cannot reply to it. ● SMS cannot be sent because the address contains a space or character other than numbers, “#” and “✗”. Delete any spaces or characters other than numbers, “#” and “✗”.	–
“Activating restrict dialing”	● This message appears when you attempt to perform a prohibited operation when the restrict dialing is set.	p.171
“Please wait”	● The voice line or packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the voice line/packet communication network may be congested. Attempt to use a voice call, videophone call or i-mode later. You can still make an emergency call (110, 119 and 118). However, you may not be connected depending on the condition.	–
“Please wait for a while (packet)”	● The packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the packet communication network may be congested. Retry later.	–
“Other function active Cannot start” “Other function active Cannot operate”	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an unavailable operation but another function is running.	–
“i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error” “Software terminated due to security error”	● This message appears when the i-αppli or the i-αppli standby screen (including the i-αppli DX) terminated because you attempted to perform an unauthorized operation.	p.294 p.301
(During infrared data exchange) “No response Retry?”	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. Place the terminals so that their infrared data ports face each other. Select “YES” and press ● to try again.	p.365
“Connection interrupted”	● i-mode connection was interrupted due to poor reception. Move to a location where the reception is good before using the i-mode service. ● If this message appears even when the reception is good and “ ” appears, the site you are accessing is busy. Retry later.	p.213 –
“Connection failed”	● This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in “Host selection” under Connection setting. ● The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	p.228 –
“Connection failed”	● Set “Caller ID Notification” to “ON” and retry.	p.47
“Time out”	● Accessing a site or sending a message was interrupted because the time, which is set in “Set connection timeout”, has elapsed. Retry later.	p.228
“Failed to Copy all”	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new miniSD memory card then retry to copy.	–
“Some addresses is invalid”	● This message appears when you attempt to reply to two or more addresses but not all addresses are valid.	–
“This software contains an error” “This software contains an error Unable to download”	● This message appears when the software data contains an error and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	–
“Software is stopped because of error”	● This message appears when you are running a program and an error occurs preventing further operation.	–
“This software is not supported by this phone”	● This message appears when the software you attempt to download is incompatible with the FOMA terminal and cannot be downloaded.	–
“Not correspond contents”	● Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents unsupported by the FOMA terminal.	–

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder”	● The software cannot be launched because the mail-connected i-αppli corresponding to the selected mail folder is deleted. Select a message contained in the folder from the function menu.	p.262 p.268
“Activating keypad dial lock”	● This message appears when you attempt to perform a prohibited operation while the keypad dial lock is set.	p.169
“Download failed”	● This message appears if a communication error occurs or a data contains an error when you attempt to download data such as a melody, Chara-den character or download dictionary.	—
“Usage is currently restricted Try again later”	● This message appears when you have subscribed to i-mode Pake-Houdai flat-rate service and then a large amount of data is exchanged in a given time. You may not be able to access for a while. Use i-mode later.	—
“Wrong security code” “Security code is 4 to 8 digits”	● This message appears when you need to enter the security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct security code.	p.157
“Receiving failed Channel information cannot display”	● This message appears when you display the channel list screen for the first time after purchase or when you attempt to display the channel list screen after changing the i-channel host URL, initializing the FOMA terminal or exchanging the FOMA card (UIM), and then if i-channel information cannot be obtained. Move until “ ” appears, then retry to display the channel list screen.	p.305
“Data transmission is frequent Press CLR and confirm data transmission”	● This message appears when the number of communications established from the i-αppli standby screen in a given time is extremely large. Press 9CLR to select whether to permit communication from the i-αppli standby screen or whether to exit the i-αppli standby screen.	p.300
“Talking now Cannot start” “Talking now Cannot operate”	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation that cannot be performed during a call.	p.385 p.469 p.470
“Unable to receive”	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain data and a data error or communication error occurs.	—
“Error Register forwarding number”	● This message appears when you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service and attempt to forward an incoming call by selecting “Call Forwarding” from the function menu without setting the forwarding number.	p.413
“Attached file is deleted”	● This message appears when an i-mode message received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. It also appears if it is prohibited to attach the file to a message or output the file from the FOMA terminal when you attempt to forward an i-mode message. Press ● to delete the attached file.	—
“Cannot save attached file”	● This message appears when you receive a mail message with an unsavable file attached via infrared data communication, OBEX communication or copy from the miniSD memory card.	—
“Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls”	● You can make a PTT call to a maximum of four people at the same time.	—
“Too much data was entered”	● Too many characters are entered, and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.	p.217
“Input error (205)”	● This message appears after you enter data on a website and send the data. Press ● to reset the entered text (The setting or entry made is sent. This operation does not cancel sending).	—
“Authentication type is not supported (401)”	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through. Press ● to return to the previous page.	—
“Authentication canceled (401)”	● This message appears when you press “Cancel” on the authentication screen.	—
“Enter correct Network Security Code”	● This message appears when you need to enter the network security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct network security code.	p.156
“Wrong password”	● This message appears when you enter a wrong password on the password entry screen in viewing or downloading a PDF document.	p.224 p.370

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Password is not correct (401)”	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through on the “Authentication” or “Re-authentication” screen. To re-authenticate, select “YES”.	—
“This data is not supported by this phone”	● This message appears when you attempt to acquire unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.	—
“Editing now Cannot delete”	● This message appears when you attempt to delete a mail message that is stored in the Draft and being edited.	—
“Format miniSD for your phone”	● There is an error e.g. the miniSD memory card is not formatted. Reformat the miniSD memory card.	p.361
“Cannot edit message”	● The text cannot be edited because the size of the attached file is 10,000 bytes or more.	p.252
“Syntax error” “Syntax error (XXX)”	● The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in “XXX”.	—
“Activating mail security Unable to delete”	● You cannot delete mail-connected i-αppli or its folder because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-αppli is protected. To delete both the mail-connected i-αppli and its folder, release the mail security. To delete a mail-connected i-αppli only, select “NO” when you receive a message asking whether to delete a folder used for the mail-connected i-αppli.	p.170
“Activating mail security Cannot download”	● You cannot download or upgrade the mail-connected i-αppli because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-αppli is protected. To download or upgrade the mail-connected i-αppli, release the mail security.	p.170
“Memory No. XXX Cannot overwrite”	● This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry added as secret data while the mode is not secret mode or secret data only mode. ● This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry set to Automatic display. Press ● to return to the Edit phonebook screen. Select “No”, and enter an available memory number or use ⊖ to select Auto to add it.	p.161 p.119
“Memory shortage”	● This message appears when the software cannot be launched due to memory shortage.	—
“Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu”	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ● to return to the i-mode menu.	—
“Memory shortage Quit”	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. When composing an i-mode message, you may be unable to enter up to 5,000 double-byte characters depending on the condition such as the number of tasks running or the combination of character types.	—
“Memory shortage Return to Full Browser menu”	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ● to return to the Full Browser menu.	—
“Memory shortage Return and edit again”	● You can insert up to 10 images to a Deco-mail message. However, in some operations, this message may appear even when less than 10 images are inserted. Select “YES” to exit the Compose message screen.	—
“Message too long to add header & signature”	● This message appears if the header/signature cannot be automatically added when you forward an i-mode message because the character count exceeds 5,000 double-byte with the header/signature added.	—
“Data is too long Please delete message”	● The total length of the message text and quotation mark characters in the i-mode message to be quoted in a reply exceeds 5,000 double-byte characters. Delete some of the text to reduce the character count to 5,000 double-byte characters or fewer.	—
“Message too long to add signature”	● This message appears when the character count of the text and signature in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the signature cannot be added.	—

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Message too long to add header”	● This message appears when the character count of the text and header in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the header cannot be added.	—
“You have no certificate Do you connect?”	● The user certificate has not been downloaded. Select “YES” to view the site. Some sites cannot be viewed without the certificate.	p.233
“Your certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● The site requests the user certificate, but the validity period has expired. Select “YES”, and you may be able to continue. It is recommended to download a new certificate.	p.233
“Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?”	● The site requests the user certificate. Select “YES” to send the certificate, otherwise “NO”.	—
“Memory full Cannot move”	● This message appears when you transfer data to or from the Secret folder and the destination folder is full of data. Delete unnecessary data stored in the destination folder and retry transfer.	p.163
“Could not read”	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new miniSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
“Activating record display OFF”	● You cannot use “Received calls”, “Redial/Dialed calls”, “Received address” or “Sent address” because “Record display set” is set to “OFF”. To access these records, set “Record display set” to “ON”.	p.170

NOTE

◆ Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.

◆ Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

● Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check the contents, the information about “the shop or date of purchase”, etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty period is one year from the date of purchase.

● The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.

● Stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data just in case. In the course of repairs on your FOMA terminal, data downloaded via i-mode or i-appli are not transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law.

* You can store data on your FOMA terminal such as a phonebook in the external memory card.
* You can move movie or i-motion to the external memory card from your FOMA terminal.
* Using the Data Security Service which is a pay service requiring subscription allows you to store data on the FOMA terminal such as a phonebook in the Data Security Center.
* If you have a PC (Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP), you can transfer the data to your PC by using the dedicated Data Link Software (p.472) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional), then back up the data on the PC.

After-sales service

If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before requesting repairs, see the “Malfunction Checklist” in this manual.
If you still have problems, call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Take your warranty card with you.

During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired free of charge in accordance with our written warranty policy.
- Take the warranty card with you when requesting repairs. Even during the warranty period, charges will apply for repairs if you cannot show the warranty card or if the malfunction or damage has resulted from improper use.
- Even during the warranty period, charges will apply for repairs if the malfunction has resulted from the use of devices or consumable goods that are not specified by NTT DoCoMo.

The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired

The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired if the water reaction is found on the seal, if corrosion is found to result from water exposure, condensation or perspiration, or if the internal board is damaged or deformed. Even if the FOMA terminal can be repaired, charges will apply as the repair is not under warranty.

After the warranty period has expired

You can request repairs although charges will apply.

Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock basically for a minimum of six years following the termination of production. However, note that depending on the failure part repairs may not be able to perform owing to lack of repair parts. Repairs may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

Important

- Do not attempt to adapt the FOMA terminal or its accessories by yourself.
  - Doing so may cause fire, injury or malfunction.
  - To prevent cross talk or network failure, the technical standard of the FOMA terminal or FOMA card is provided by law. You are not allowed to use the FOMA terminal or FOMA card that does not comply with the standard.
  - If you have adapted the FOMA terminal (a part has been replaced, adapted, coated, etc.) by yourself, repairs can be accepted only if you restore the FOMA terminal to default (the factory settings). Repairs may be rejected depending on the adaptation.
  - Even during the warranty period, charges will apply for repairs if the malfunction or damage has resulted from adaptation.
- Do not peel off the model name seal put on the FOMA terminal.
  The model name seal is used as a certificate verifying that the FOMA terminal complies with the technical standard. If the seal has been peeled off or replaced then cannot be confirmed, the technical standard conformity cannot be verified, and repairs may be rejected.
- The function settings or information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to malfunction or repair of the FOMA terminal. In this case, make the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for the following parts of the FOMA terminal. A cash card (ATM card, bank card), etc, which is easily affected by magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components: Neuropointer key, speaker, earpiece speaker
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to a repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired depending on the condition.

Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data.
- Upgrading the model or repairing your mobile phone may alter or erase data that you have created, copied or downloaded. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may replace your mobile phone with the substitute instead of repairing, when most of the data cannot be transferred to the substitute. As for your FOMA terminal, images or melodies downloaded from the official i-mode site will be transferred in the course of repairs. (Some contents cannot be transferred. Data may be unable to be transferred depending on the malfunction.)

<Software Update>

Updating Software

Check whether it is required to update software on the FOMA terminal. Download and update the software via packet communication if necessary.
You will be notified of the update in the DoCoMo website or in “お知らせ&ヘルプ” (News & Help) of iMenu.

- No charges will be made for packet communication to update software.
- There are two methods to update:
  Now update: Updates immediately.
  Reserved update: Updates automatically on the set date and time.
- You can update software if the i-mode host is set to the user defined host.
- Updating (downloading and installing) software may take some time.
- When you update software, an SSL connection is established with the server (the software update server managed by DoCoMo). Validate the certificate beforehand (Default setting: Valid. Setting procedure →p.232).
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before updating software.
- It is recommended to update software without moving in a place where the reception is good (the signal strength indicator shows three bars).
  * If the reception becomes poor and then the download is interrupted, attempt to update again in a place where the reception is good.
- Updating software with the “PIN1 code entry set” set to “ON” displays the PIN1 code entry screen in the automatic restart after installing the software. You cannot receive a call or message until you enter the correct PIN1 code.
- You cannot update software:
  - When the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
  - When the FOMA card (UIM) is used incorrectly
  - While PIN lock is set
  - When the PUK code is locked
  - When the date and time are not set
  - When you receive a call
  - When you receive a message or SMS
  - During a voice call
  - During a videophone call
  - During a PTT call
  - During i-mode communication
  - During 64K data communication
  - During packet communication
  - While Lock all or Omakase Lock is set
  - While Self mode is set
  - While PIM lock is set
  - When you are out of range
  - When packet dialing is restricted
  - During international roaming
  - When you are using mova terminal for the Dual Network service
  - When you are using a miniSD reader/writer
  - While another function is running
- You cannot use another function while updating software. However, you can receive a voice call during download.
- If the software has already been updated, the message “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” appears when you check for new software updates.
- After updating software, the i-mode center storage status icon disappears. In addition, if the receive option is set to “ON” and a message is received while updating software, the message notification screen may not appear after the software has been updated.
- When you update software, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, product number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is used only for updating software.
- You can update software without affecting data such as phonebook entries, camera images and downloaded data. However, be aware that depending on the state of your FOMA terminal (malfunction, damage or exposure to water) you may be unable to protect data.
- It is recommended to back up important data (Note that you cannot back up some data, e.g. downloaded data).

Continued on next page

● If the software update fails, the message “Rewrite failed” appears and you cannot operate the FOMA terminal. In this case, take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop.

NOTE

◆ Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.

◆ When the software update is completed but you do not confirm it, the desktop icon “ ” (Update complete) appears on the standby screen. Select “ ” and enter the security code to see the detailed results of the update.

Checking whether software update is required

1 MENU▶ Settings▶“Other settings”▶“Software Update”▶Enter your security code

2 Check the notes▶Check whether software update is required

Now it is required to send mobile phone-specific information to the server.



3 The check result appears

■ **When “Update is needed” appears**

▶Select “Now update” or “Reserve”

Select “Now update” to update the software immediately.→p.488

Select “Reserve” to update on the set time.→p.489



Check result

■ **When “No update is needed” appears**

▶●

Continue using the FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.

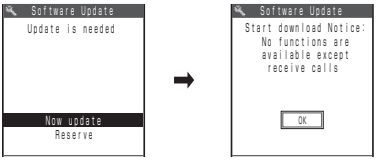


Updating software immediately <Now update>

1 Check result screen (p.488)▶“Now update”▶Press ● when “Start download” appears

Download will start immediately.

Download will start after a while even if you do not press ●.



2 After download is finished and the message “Download is complete Rewrite software” appears, press ●

Software update will start.
Rewrite will start after a while even if you do not press ●. It may take long to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting.
Completing the rewrite will automatically restart the FOMA terminal.
After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check that the update has been completed. When the message “Software update is complete” appears, press ●. Now software update is completed.



NOTE

- If you interrupt the download, data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- Once you start downloading, the update starts automatically hereafter without having to select any menus.
- The screen on the right may appear if the server is busy.
  In this case, select “Reserve” to perform the reserved update.



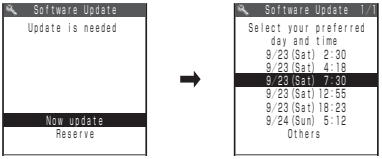
Selecting the date and time to update software <Reserved update>

If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can beforehand select the time to start software update by communicating with the server.

<Example: Reserving 7:30 on September 23 (Saturday)>

1 Check result screen (p.488)▶“Reserve”▶Select date and time

■ **If you do not want to reserve any of the times shown**
▶“Others”→p.490

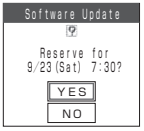


Continued on next page

2 Check the selected date and time▶“YES”

Software update is reserved.

■ **If you want to change the date and/or time**
▶“NO”





The screen on the right appears at the reserved time and the FOMA terminal starts updating software automatically. Charge the battery fully, put the FOMA terminal in a place where the reception is good, and set the FOMA terminal to standby before the reserved time. Hereafter, operate in the same steps as “Updating software immediately <Now update>” (p.488).



NOTE

- The reserved time for software update will be based on the server’s time.
- When the reserved time for software update is the same as the alarm time, the software update is given priority.
- Software update may not launch at the scheduled time if another function is running.
- If the scheduled time is reached during communication or while you are on the phone or receiving a message, software update launches after you finish talking or receiving a message.
- If you perform “Initialize” (p.407) after the reservation procedure is completed, software update does not launch at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

● If you select “Others”

You can select the desired date and time if you select “Others” in Step 1 on p.489.

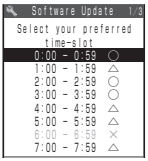
1 Select a desired date

On the selection screen, it is shown as below how the hours are reserved for each day:
○: Available
△: Almost full
None: Full



2 Select an hour

On the selection screen, it is shown as below if each hour is available:
○: Available
△: Almost full
×: Full
Selecting an hour communicates with the server again to display the candidates.



3 Confirm the software update time

Checking the selected time and selecting “YES” will communicate with the server again. Software update is reserved.



● Checking the reservation

<Example: Canceling the reservation after checking it>

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Other settings”▶“Software Update”▶Enter your security code

2 “Cancel”

■ **To accept the reserved date and time**
▶“OK”

■ **To change the date and time**
▶“Change”
After sending mobile phone-specific information to the server, follow the steps taken in selecting “Others”.→p.490



3 When the message “Cancel this reservation?” appears, select “YES”

Now send mobile phone-specific information to the server.
NTT DoCoMo will never disclose or forward your mobile phone-specific information (model and product number) to a third party.
When the message “The reservation is canceled” appears, press ●. The reservation is canceled.



<Scanning function>

Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data

Firstly update the pattern data.

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode messages, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program launch where the data or program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used for the check. Update the pattern data when it is upgraded because a problem has been detected.→p.492
- The scanning function prevents data that causes some problems from invading your FOMA terminal when viewing a site or receiving a message. If the pattern data that fixes the error is not installed on your FOMA terminal or if the pattern data does not exist, the scanning function cannot prevent the error from occurring.
- The pattern data varies depending on the model of the FOMA terminal. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may discontinue to distribute pattern data for the model if three years have passed since it was first released.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.
- When you set the auto-update or update the pattern data, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for pattern data updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is used only for the scanning function.
- The pattern data update will be suspended if a voice call is received or if the terminal moves out of range.

Setting the scanning function <Set scan>

Default setting: ON

Setting the scanning function to “ON” will check data and programs automatically when they are executed.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Lock/Security”▶“Scanning function”

The “Scanning function” screen appears.

2 “Set scan”▶“ON”

■ **If a message appears asking whether to change the settings**
▶“YES”

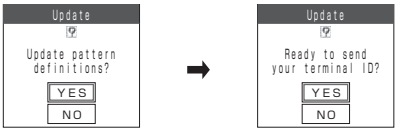
* If you enable the scanning function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed at one of the five warning levels.→p.492



Scanning function

Updating pattern data <Update>

1 Scanning function screen (p.491)▶“Update”▶“YES”▶“YES”



* If no pattern data update is required, the message “Pattern definitions are up-to-date” appears. Continue using the current pattern data.

NOTE

◆ Even if the update is informed via the network, the pattern data cannot be automatically updated during i-mode, packet communication or international roaming, or while another function is running.

Automatically updating pattern data <Set auto-update>

1 Scanning function screen (p.491)▶“Set auto-update”▶“ON”▶“YES”▶“YES”

Viewing the scan results

■ Viewing scanned problems



The scanning function detects up to five problems and displays a list of them, starting with the highest-level problem. If six or more problems were detected, the names of sixth and subsequent problems are omitted.
The rest of the problem elements (sixth and subsequent), whose names are omitted, appear as follows:
1 - 9998 : The remaining count appears as it is.
9999 or more : “Other:9999” appears regardless of the count.

■ Viewing the scan results

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
				
OK · · · Continues operation.	YES· · · Cancels and ends operation. NO · · · Continues operation.	OK · · · · Cancels and ends operation.	YES · · Deletes data and ends operation. NO · · · Cancels and ends operation.	OK· · · · Deletes data and ends operation.

Checking the Pattern Definitions Version <Version>

1 Scanning function screen (p.491)▶“Version”

Specifications

Items			FOMA N902iS
Size			Height 104mm × Width 51mm × Thickness 23mm (When closed)
Weight			Approx. 114 g (Battery pack attached)
Color LCD	Type		Display (Internal): TFT LCD 262,144 colors Image Display (External): TFT LCD 65,536 colors
	Size		Display (Internal): 2.5 inches Image Display (External): 1.0 inch
	Pixels		Display (Internal): 240 × 345 dots Image Display (External): 120 × 90 dots
Continuous Standby Time			Stationary: Approx. 540 hrs. In transit: Approx. 420 hrs.
Continuous Talk Time			Voice communications: Approx. 160 min. Videophone: Approx. 120 min.
Maximum Output			0.25W
Battery Type			Lithium-ion
Battery Voltage			3.8V
Battery Capacity			850mAh
Charging Time			AC Adapter/DC Adapter: Approx. 120 min.
Image Sensor	Type		Front Camera: CMOS Rear Camera: Super CCD Honeycomb
	Size		Front Camera: 1/8 inches Rear Camera: 1/2.7 inches
Camera	Effective Pixels		Front Camera: 0.33 mill. pixels Rear Camera: 2 mill. pixels
	Maximum Recorded Pixels		Front Camera: 0.31 mill. pixels Rear Camera: 4 mill. pixels
	Digital Zoom		Front Camera: Up to approx. 2X Rear Camera: Up to approx. 9X
Record	Still Image	Shooting Size	4M (2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high) QXGA (2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high) UXGA (1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high) SXGA (1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high) VGA (640 dots wide × 480 dots high) CIF (352 dots wide × 288 dots high) Screen (240 dots wide × 345 dots high) Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high) QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high) SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)
		File Format	JPEG
	Movie	Movie Shooting Size	QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high) SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)
		Movie File Format	MP4
		Frame Rate	Up to 30 fps

- Continuous talk time is an estimate of the talk time when radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal. In certain circumstances, talk (or communications) and standby times may drop to as low as half the times shown due to the battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio reception in the area (weak or no reception). Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you use i-mode. These times will also be less when you compose an i-mode mail, run downloaded i-αppli, launch the i-αppli standby display or play music even without making calls or using i-mode.
- Continuous standby time in stationary is an average time for use in stationary condition allowing normal reception of the radio waves when folding the FOMA terminal.
- Continuous standby time in transit is an average time for use in various condition of “stationary”, “moving” within the area allowing normal reception of the radio waves and “out of service area” when folding the FOMA terminal.
- Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you insert the miniSD memory card, run data communications or multi access, or use the camera or light.

Counts for Storage, Register and Protect Enabled on FOMA Terminal

Item		Storage/Register	Protect
Phonebook		700 max.*1*2	—
Schedule	Schedule	100	—
	Holiday	100	—
	Anniversary	100	—
ToDo		100	—
Mail (SMS + i-mode)	Received mail	1,000 max.*1*3*4	500 max.*1
	Sent mail	400 max.*1*3*4	200 max.*1
	Draft mail	20	—
Deco-mail template		45*5	—
Message	MessageR	100 max.*1	50 max.*1
	MessageF	100 max.*1	50 max.*1
Bookmark	i-mode	100*6	—
	Full browser	100*6	—
Screnn memo		100 max.*1	50 max.*1
i-αppli		200 max.*1	—
	mail-connnected i-αppli	5	—
ToruCa		100 max.*1	—
Image (still image)		720 max.*1*4	—
Movie/i-motion		100 max.*1*6	—
Chara-den		10*5	—
Melody		400 max.*1	—
PDF data		400 max.*1	—

*1 : Actual storable or registerable counts may be decreased depending on the data size.
*2 : Up to 50 phonebooks can be stored on the FOMA card (UIM).
*3 : For SMS, up to 20 mails can be additionally stored on the FOMA card (UIM) combining received mails with sent mails. →p.288
*4 : Up to 100 items can be additionally stored on the secret folder.
*5 : Pre-installed data is included.
*6 : Up to 10 items can be additionally stored or registered on the secret folder.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the stored data by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.472) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for data loss. Take notes, save data to the miniSD memory card or use the Data Link Software to save data to your PC just in case.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.353

Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of mobile phones

This model phone FOMA N902iS meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.992 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please visit the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP: http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC: http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html
TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
NTT DoCoMo: http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/ (Japanese only)
NEC: http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/ (Japanese only)
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses: http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html (Japanese only)

* : Ministry of Internet Affairs and Communications
** : The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
*** : International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

Declaration of Conformity

The product "FOMA N902iS" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1 (b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on www.neceurope.com.

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.
Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR* limits** for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.947W/kg. While there may be differences between the SAR* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet*** the EU requirements for RF exposure.

* The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

** The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

*** Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories may be subject to the Japan Export Administration Regulations (the “Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law” and its related regulations). When exporting this product and its accessories, take the required steps at your expense and under your responsibility. For more details, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry (METI).

Index/Quick Manual

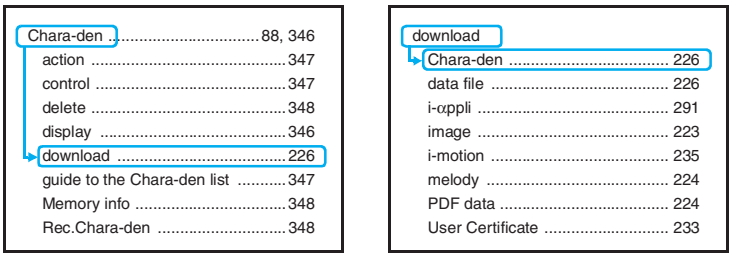
Index 498
Quick Manual 506

Index

Index search

● This Index functions as an alphabetical contents as well. There provides words and terms not only described in this manual, but also summarized for description. If you cannot find the item you looking for, use the other keyword to search.

<Example: To download Chara-den>



● "Function" index is included following "Alphabet/Numeric" section. This helps you to learn the function menu (p.35).
* All menu items of the function menu are not entered in "Alphabet/Numeric" index.

Alphabet/Numeric

A

AC adapter 42
Access reader 201
access site (program) 208
  view site 214
accessories 471
Activate notice call 411
add
  Bookmark 220
  Original menu 144
  PushTalk phonebook 102
  Schedule 390
  To Do list 394
adding items to the original menu 144
Additional service 418
address list 275
adjust volume
  i-αppli vol. 294
  Music player 377
  Ring volume 69
  Volume 69
after-sales service 485
alarm 387
  actions 387
  check 389
  stop 389
Alarm clock 389
Alarm setting 387
Answer hold 70
Answer setting 65
assist key 386
  operate music player 380
  reading out alarm details 387
  reading out mails 386
AT command 424
Attached file 276
Auto Deco-mail 250
Auto dial setting 405
Auto focus 185
Auto redial as voice (videophone) 88
Auto reset total cost 399
Auto start set (i-αppli) 298
Auto start time (i-αppli) 299
Auto timer 198
Automatic answer 405
Automatic display 124

B

Backlight 141
Bar code reader 198
Bar incoming when roam 446
battery 40
  charging 42
  getting the best out of battery pack 41
  life 41
battery level 44
battery pack 40
Bookmark 220
  add 220
  Delete 221
  Edit title 221
  folder 220
  No. of bookmarks 220, 221
  view 220

C

cable connection (data transfer) 365
Calculator 401
Calendar 138
call
  making 50
  receiving 64
Call acceptation 171
Call data 399
Call Forwarding 171, 413
Call rejection 171
Call setting w/o ID 173
Call time display 147
Call Waiting 411
Caller ID Notification 47
Caller ID Request 414
camera 178
  Access reader 201
  Auto timer 198
  Bar code reader 198
  Brightness 186
  front camera 178
  guide to the shooting screen 182
  image shooting 185
  image size 179
  light 198
  movie shooting 192
  number of images 179
  number of movies 180
  rear camera 178
  Shake correction 195
  shooting menu 183
  zoom 197
cancel
  Mail security 170
  Manner mode 133
  Public mode (Driving mode) 71

Public mode (power off) 73
Restrictions 171
Secret data only mode 161
Secret mode 161
Certificate 232
Certificate host 234
Chaku-moji 55
Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta® 209
Chance capture 196
Change CHR code 215
change window 438
changing voice call/
videophone call 52, 85
Character input set 427
Mode 1(5-touch) 427
Mode 2(2-touch) 428
Mode 3(T9 input) 428
Character stamp 337
Chara-den 88, 346
action 347
control 347
delete 348
display 346
download 226
guide to the Chara-den list 347
Memory info 348
Rec.Chara-den 348
select multiple data 363
Set image disp. 348
charge sound 132
charging 42
chat group 283
Chat mail 280
Chat group 283
Chat mail recv. 282
Chat member 280
Chat settings 284
composing chat mail 281
Check messages (Voice Mail) 411
check missed calls 74
Check new messages 258
Check settings 228
Check SMS 287
checkbox 34, 217
CHG input size 427
Clear learned 437
Clock display 147
code number
i-mode password 156, 219
Network security code 156
PIN1 code and PIN2 code 156
Security code 156
Color mode set (camera) 194
Common phrases 434, 435, 464
component Names and Functions 24
components 22
Continuous mode 189
continuous standby time 41
continuous talk time 41
Copy
Copy to miniSD 357
Copy to phone 360
Phonebook 120
SMS 288
Text 436
copyright 20
copy/cut text 436
create/edit/delete folders
bookmark 220
data box 363
mail 268
miniSD 363
ToruCa 311

D

data box 324
data communication 421
data link software 472
Data Security Center 175
Data Security Service 175
image 330
log check 126
mail 273
phonebook 125
data transfer software 380
DC adapter 42
Deactivate
i-αppli standby screen 301
deactivate i-αppli standby screen 301
Deco-mail 247
Decoration 91
Delete
Bookmark 221
Chara-den 348
Desktop icon 149
Dialed calls 59
Draft mail 254
i-αppli 302
Image 328, 330
Melody 352
MessageR/MessageF 232
movie 339
PDF data 374
phonebook 119
PushTalk phonebook 104
Received calls 68
received mail 271, 274
Redial 59
Screen memo 222, 223
sent mail 272, 274
SMS 286
text 433
ToruCa 312
URL 220
description of icon 28
desktop 148
desktop holder 43
Desktop icon 148
access data or function 149
add 148
check 149
notice 149
Dialed calls 58
Dictionary 402
Discern connect 122
Discern group 122
Display
Backlight 141
Call time 147
changing the menu display 142
Clock 147
Color, background 142
Display setting 136
Font 147
Guide 28
Image display 140
image (My picture) 325
Own number 48
phonebook image 139
Style mode 152
website 316
Display design 142
Display home 214
Display setting 91, 136
display software info 292
displaying
Mail 261
ToruCa 261
Disp. PH-book image 139
download
Chara-den 226
data file 226
i-αppli 291
image 223
i-motion 235
melody 224
PDF data 224
user certificate 233
download dictionary 437
DPOF setting 377
Draft(mail) 242, 253
Dual Network 414

E

earphone 133
Earphone/microphone with switch 404
edit
Draft mail 253
image 335
movie 343
phonebook 119
Edit image 335
Brightness 336
Change size 336
Character stamp 336
Clipping area 332
Composite image 333
Correct backlight 336
Frame 336
Marker stamp 336
Positioning 332
Refresh skin tone 336
Retouch 336
Rotate 336
Size for mail 332
Trim away 337

Edit movie 343
Edit ticker 344
Rerecord sound 344
Trim for image 344
Trim for mail 345
Trim i-motion 344
Edit ticker 344
emotion-expressing mail 256
English Guidance 415
enter PIN1 code 158
erase
record message 77
Voice announce 398
voice memo 77
VP message 78
error messages 479
exit standby screen (i-αppli) 301
external keys guard 169
external microphone 404

F

Face authentication 313
Face Mark 432
FeliCa 308
FirstPass 233
flash movies 218
Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) 404
making a call 404
receiving a call 404
folder configuration (list)
data box 324
mail 262
miniSD memory card 355
FOMA card (UIM) 37
Add to UIM phonebook 112
functional differences 39
insert/remove 37
manufacturer number 216
operational restriction function 38
PIN codes 38
settings after exchange 39
types 39
FOMA N902iS CD-ROM 423
Font 147
Font size 227, 276
Forwarding image 364
Frame
edit image 336
full browser 319
image shooting 191
full browser 316
Changing display mode 317
Cookie 321
Frame 319
Multi window 318
Referer 321
Scrolling 318
setting 320
switching from i-mode to full browser 319
TLS/SSL 316
uploading images 319
function menu 35

G

G-GUIDE program guide remote control 369
Group setting 114
guide to the screen 28
Chara-den list 347
folder list screen (mail) 262
Full browser screen 317
mail detail screens 265
mail list screens 263
MessageR/MessageF screen 230
PDF list 370
PushTalk talking screen 98
shooting screen (camera) 182
text entry (edit) screen 426
videophone screen 80

H

handling with care 18
hands-free 63
hands-free switch (videophone) 90
Header/Signature 277
holding 51
holding (while ringing) 70
Home URL 228
Host selection 228

I

i-αppli 290
Auto start 298
Auto start info 299
Auto start set 298
Auto start time 299
Change mld./img. 293
Delete 302
Download 291
Icon info 293
Launch 292
Launch (from another function) 299
mail-connected i-αppli 290
miniSD data 302
Network set 293
Pre-installed programs 295
Quit 292
Security error history 294
See P.book/hist 293
Software info 294
Stand-by net 293
Stored data 290
Trace information 292
Upgrade 301
i-αppli DX 290
i-αppli stand-by display 300
i-αppli standby screen 300
i-αppli standby screen exit information 301
i-αppli To function 299
i-αppli To setting 299
i-αppli vol. 294
IC card 308
IC card content 309
IC card lock 312
Face authentication 313
setting/releasing 312
SimpleLock 313
i-channel 304
set 306
View 305
Icon 28
Desktop icon 148
Discern connect 123
Display 28
emotion-expressing mail 256
full browser 317
i-αppli 294
icons on the standby screen 151
image display 28
image type 326
mail 263, 265
Melody 350
MessageR/MessageF 230
PDF data 370
Received calls 68
Rec.Chara-den screen 348
Redial/Dialed calls 59
shooting screen 182
videophone 80
icons setting 151
Illumination 146
Illumination in talk 146
Image 217, 325
Add folder 363
delete 328, 330
Delete folder 363
display 217, 325
Edit image→refer to Edit image
guide to the picture list 326
guide to the title list 326
Memory info 328
Move 328
Original animation 333
Save to the Data Security Center 330
Select multiple data 363
Viewer settings 328
Image display 30
icon 28
Sample images 30
Setting 140
Image shooting
image size 179
image shooting
AF lock 186
Auto focus 185
Auto timer 198
Continuous mode 189
Framed photography 191
Light 198
Number of images 179
Shoot folded 188
Shoot open 185
Shooting settings 197

Zoom 197
Image tuning 194
i-melody 224
iMenu 208, 213
i-mode 208
Add to phonebook 218
Exit 213
handle Flash movies 218
Host selection 228
Start 213
i-mode FeliCa 308
i-mode mail→refer to mail
i-mode menu 213
i-mode password 156, 219
i-mode settings 227
i-motion 234, 337
Automatic replay 236
Details 236
Guide to preview and title list 338
i-motion type 236
Playback 235, 337
Save 236
Sound effects 130
Standard type 234
Streaming type 235
i-motion mail 252, 260
Inbox(mail) 242, 261
In-call arrival act 416
In-car hands-free 63
Incoming call lamp setting (during a call) 146
Incoming call lamp setting (receiving) 146
Indicate V.phone 92
Info notice setting 74
infrared data exchange 364
data to be transferred 366
infrared data port 365, 369
infrared remote control 369
Receive all 368
Receive one 367
Send all 368
Send one 367
initial setting 46
initialize 407
initialize→refer to Reset
insert 431
intellectual property right 20
international calls 53
international roaming 440
Internet 219
Internet access 219
Int'l dial settings 54, 443
ISP connection 228

J

JAN code 198
Jumping forward/back to a page (site) 217

K

key
key names and functions 24
operation by long press 26
Keypad dial lock 169
Keypad sound 132
Kuten code 436, 465

L

last URL 216
launcher 34
Lock all 160
Release 160
Set 160

M

mail 237
Add folder 268
Add receiver 245
Attach image 252
Attach i-motion 252
Attach melody 252
Attach movie 252
Attach ToruCa 252
Auto-sort 269
broadcast mail 245
Change rcv. type 244
changing the list screen display mode 266, 267
changing the mail character size 266
Check settings 276
composing 243
Copy 273, 274
Data Security Center 273
Decomail-picture 456
Delete folder 268
delete received mail 271, 274
Delete receiver 244
delete sent mail 272, 274
Draft 242, 253
edit 271, 274
Edit folder name 268
emotion-expressing mail 256
emotion/keyword notice 280
filter 272
Forward 259
guide to the folder list screens 262
guide to the mail detail screens 265
guide to the mail list screens 263
header 277
Inbox 242, 261
large image 252
mail menu 242
mail security 170
Mail setting 276
Move trash box 271, 274
No. of messages for draft mail 254, 271
No. of messages for sent mail 272
Open folder 268
Outbox 242, 261
Preview 244
protect ON/OFF for received mail 270, 273
protect ON/OFF for sent mail 272, 274
quotation marks 277
reading mail messages 261
reading out message 262
Receive option 257
receiving 255
receiving image mail 260
receiving ToruCa 261
Reply 258
Reply with quote 259
Resend 274
rules used for reading out 278
save 253
saving address, adding phonebook entry 259
saving images 260
saving i-motion 260
saving melody 260
saving ToruCa 261
Search mail 270, 272
Secret code 119
Secret folder 163
sending 243
Signature 277
Sort 272
Sort folder 268
Speed photo mail 246
Template list 459
Mail list disp. 276
Mail member 254
Mail menu 242
Mail security 170
Mail setting 276
Mail To function 227
Mail/Msg. ring time 133
Main menu 31
Malfunction checklist 474
Manner mode 133
Manner mode set 134
Manufacturer number 216
Marker stamp 336
Melody 350
Add folder 363
Delete 352
Delete folder 363
Download 224
Guide to the melody list 350
Memory info 351
Move 352
Operations during playback 351
Play melody 350
Playlist playback 353
Memory info
Chara-den list 348
i-αppli list 293
image list 328
image shooting, continuous shooting 187
Melody list 351
Movie list 339
Movie shooting 193
PDF list 374

Menu display set 142
Menu function list 450
Message auto-display 228
Message display 276
Message list display 228
Message service 211
Delete 232
Check new messages 231
Delete 232
Filter 231
guide to the screen 230
No. of messages 232
Protect ON/OFF 232
Receive 229
Sort 231
View 229, 231
miniSD memory card 353
Check miniSD 358
Copy 357, 360
Copy image 334, 335
Copy movie 343
Data preview 358
Delete image 328, 330
Delete movie 339
displaying images 326
DPOF setting 377
folder tree 355
format 361
Insert 354
miniSD info 358, 359
number of files 356
number of movies 180
number of still images 179
playing movies 337
Remove 354
miniSD reader/writer 361
Missed calls display 174
mobile phone manufacturer number ...216
movable contents 346
move
move contents 346
SMS (to the FOMA card (UIM)) 288
SMS (to the FOMA terminal (phone)) 288
movie 337
Add folder 363
Delete 339
Delete folder 363
guide to preview 338
guide to the title list 338
Memory info 339
Move 339
operations during playback 340
playing movies 337
playlist playback 342
select multiple data 363
title list 338
Movie mode 192
Shooting settings 192
movie playing software 473
movie shooting
Auto timer 198
Chance capture 196
Image size 180
light 198
number of movies 180
Picture voice 196
shooting settings 197
Voice mode 197
Zoom 197
multi access 384
combination patterns 469
multi Number 417
multi task
combination patterns 470
multitask 385
activate 385
end 386
switch 386
Music 378
Music player 377
Assist key operations 380
Data transfer software (SD-Jukebox) 380
Playback 378
Save music data 377
My document 370
My Menu 218
My picture 325
guide to the picture list and title list 326

N

NEC Mobile PDF 473
network security code 156
network service 410
neuropointer 27, 145
Noise reduction 62
Notice designate calls 400
alarm action 400
check the details 400
No. of memos
Screen memo 222
No. of messages
Mail 254, 271, 272
MessageR/MessageF 232
Template 251
No. of ToruCa
ToruCa 311
Nuisance Call Blk 414
NW search mode 444

O

OBEX 364
OFF
Call acceptation 171
Call Forwarding 171
Call rejection 171
Protect 222
Restrict dialing 171
Voice Mail 171
Omakase Lock 159
Operator name display 445
Options 22, 471
Original animation 333
Original manner 134
Original menu 35, 144, 145
Osaifu-Keitai 308
IC card lock 312
Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli 308
Read/write data 308
use Osaifu-Keitai 309
Outbox(mail) 242, 261
Overwrite 431
Own dictionary 437
Own number 48, 396

P

packet communication 422
password→refer to code number
paste text 436
Pause dial 60
PDF data 224, 370
clip page 373
control 371
delete 374
download 224
guide to the screen 370
i-mode bookmark 373
view 370
Petit message 91
Phone To function 226
phonebook 110
Add to phonebook (from another screen) 113
Add to phonebook (Phone) 111
Add to phonebook (UIM) 112
Delete data 119
Edit phonebook 119
Group setting 114
making a call 115
PushTalk phonebook 102
Search phonebook 115
Secret code 119
storage status 122
store at DSC 125
Photo mode 185, 194
PictBridge print 375
Pictograph 432, 463
Picture voice 196
PIM lock 165
PIN lock 158
PIN setting 157
PIN unlock 158
PIN1/PIN2 codes 156
Change 158
PI · SB input mode 432
Play
Record message 77
Voice memo 77
VP message 78
Playback
i-motion 337
Melody 350
Music data 378
Voice announce 398

Play/Erase msg. 77
PLMN setting 445
portrait right 20
Power saver mode 141
Prediction 429
Prefix setting 61
Pre-installed data
Auto Decomail-pictures 458
Common phrases 464
Decomail-picture 456
Frame 456
i-αppli program 295
Marker stamp 459
PDF data 371
Ring tone, melody, Chaku-motion ...129
Stand-by display 456
Template 459
Print 375
print image 375
Protect ON/OFF
mail 270, 272, 273, 274
MessageR/MessageF 232
Screen memo 222
Public mode (Driving mode) 71
Public mode (power off) 73
Pull-down menu 217
Push signals 60
PushTalk phonebook 102
add 102
delete 105
make a call 104
Push-to-Talk 98
Dial 99
End 101
guide to the talking screen 98
PushTalkPlus 98
Receive (participate) 100
Set 106

Q

QR code 198
Quality alarm 132
quick manual 506
Quick message 77

R

radio button 217
Random melody 128
reading out message 276
rear panel display 30
Receive from R/W 312
Receive option 257
Receive option setting 276
Received address list 275
Received calls 66
Receiving display 276
Reconnect signal 62
Record display set 170
Record message 75, 77
Erase 77
Play 77
Set 75
Record VP messages 78
Redial 58
Registered trademark 20
Reject unknown 174
Release
Discern connect/Discern group 122
IC card lock 312
Keypad dial lock 169
Lock all 159
PIM lock 165
PIN lock 158
Secret data 163
Self mode 175
Reload 217
Remote Control 417
Remote monitoring 94
Reset 228, 280
Auto reset total cost 399
Clear learned 437
Initialize 407
Reset 228, 280, 320, 396
Reset desktop 149
Reset last URL 228
Reset mail address 238
Reset org. menu 145
Reset settings 406
Reset total 399
Reset last URL 228
Reset settings 406
Reset total 399
Restrict dialing 171
Restrictions 171
Ring time(sec.) 174
Ring volume 69
Roam.Guidance 446

S

safety precautions 12
SAR 495
save
content (screen memo) 222
image (site, MessageR/MessageF) 223
images (mail) 260
i-motion (mail) 260
mail 244, 253
melody (mail) 260
music data 377
Template 251
ToruCa (mail) 261
Save image 223
scanning function 491
Schedule 139, 390
changing the display mode 391
User icon settg. 393
Screen memo 222
Add to phonebook 222
Delete 222, 223
Display 222
Edit title 222
No. of memos 222
Protect ON/OFF 222
Save 222
Save image 222
Scroll
i-mode 227
Mail 276
ToruCa 312
Scrolling
full browser 318
i-mode 216
SD-Jukebox 380
SD-PIM 358
Secret data only mode 161, 162
Secret folder 163
Secret mode 161
Security code 156
Change 157
Entering 33
Select image (videophone) 88
Select language 45
Select microphone 406
Select ring tone 128
Self mode 175
Send DTMF tone 83
Sent address list 275
Service available 471
Service Numbers 415
Service(Int.)
Call Forwarding(Int.) 446
Caller ID req.(Int.) 447
Remote access (Int.) 447
Roam.Guidance(Int.) 447
Voice Mail (Int.) 446
Session number 368
Set
Home 214
Set as home URL 214
Set auto-update (Scanning function) 492
Set check new message 278
Set connection timeout 228
Set hold tone 71
Set image disp. 227, 320
Set in-call arrival 416
Set mute seconds 174
Set time 46
Setting when folded 66
Shoot
Chance capture 196
Chara-den 349
Continuous mode 189
Framed photography 191
Movie 192
Picture voice 196
Still image 185
Showing your phone number 47
Silent
Ring volume 70
SimpleLock 313
sliding Menu 35
smiley face symbols 464
SMS center setting 287
SMS input char. 286
SMS report req. 286
SMS valid. per. 286

SMS (Short Message) 285
composing 285
Delete 286
forward 287
Preview 286
receiving 286
reply 287
Save 286
saving SMS to your FOMA card (UIM) 288
Sending 285
SMS report 285
UIM operation 120, 288
software key 26
Software Update 487
Sound effect 130, 228
SRS_WOW 130
Surround 130
3Dsound 130
Sound effect (i-mode) 228
Speed photo auto disp. 276
Speed photo mail 246
SRS_WOW 130
SSL certificate 232
SSL page 210
SSL session 210
Standby screen 138
Start attachment(auto) 228, 276
store
Common phrases 435
Mail member 254
Own data (Own number) 396
Own dictionary 437
phonebook (Phone) 111
phonebook (UIM) 112
storing and showing personal data 396
Style mode 152
Sub-address setting 62
Subtitle 344
Super silent 134
symbols 432
symbols and special characters 462

T

Template 250
text box 217
text entry 426, 430
change window 438
Common phrases 434
Copy 436
Cut 436
Delete 433
Face symbols 432
Guidance 430
Insert 431
Insert/Overwrite 431
Kuten code 436
Line feed 432
Overwrite 431
Paste 436
Pictograph 432
PI•SB input mode 432
quote data 435
single-byte/double-byte 427, 428
Space (blank) 431
Symbols 432
UNDO 434
upper case and lower case 431
Text memo 401
To Do list 394
ToruCa 309
acquire 310
set 312
view 310
trademark 20
traveling with N902iS 439
making a call 443
receiving a call 444
trimming 337
turning a FOMA terminal on/off 44
turning on the light 198
Two-touch dialing 124

U

UIM operation 120
update 492
URL 219
Delete 220
Enter URL 219
URL 215
URL history 219
USB mode setting 362
Use phone information 228, 229
user certificate 233
using menus 32

V

vibration (vibrator) 131
Vibrator (vibration) 131
videophone 80
Auto redial as voice 88
Chara-den 88
Connecting to external device 93
Decoration 91
hands-free 63
Hands-free switch 90
making a call 81
Petit message 91
receiving a call 86
Select image 89
videophone screen 80
Visual check 90
Visual prefer. 83
zoom 90
Remote monitoring 94
view
channel list 305
MessageR/MessageF 231
PDF data 370
site 214
ToruCa 310
website 219
view an SSL page 215
Viewer settings 328
Visual check 90
Visual preference (Videophone) 88
Voice announce 398
Voice clock 75
Voice Mail 171, 410
Voice memo 77, 397
Voice memo (in-call) 397
voice mode 197
Volume 69
VP message 78
Erase 78
Play 78
V-phone while packet 92

W

Wake-up display 136
warranty 485
Web To function 227
website 219
White balance 193
WORLD CALL 53
World watch 47
WORLD WING 39, 440

Y

your phone number 48

Z

zoom 197

Numerals, etc.

186(show)/184(hide) 60
3D animation
Chaku-moji 55
desktop icon 150
emotion-expressing mail 256
3D display setting 150
3D sound 130
64K data communication 422
みんなNらんど 214

Function

This section shows the Function index corresponding to the following screens by indexes on the cover page.

Making/Receiving Phone Calls

Country Code setting 55
Create message 56
Dialed calls (list/details) 59
IDD Prefix setting 54
In-call 51
Pause dial 61
Phone number entry 51
Play/Erase msg. 77
Play/Erase VP msg. 78
Prefix setting 62
Received calls (list/details) 68
Redial calls (list/details) 59
Ringing 64

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

Other ID 95

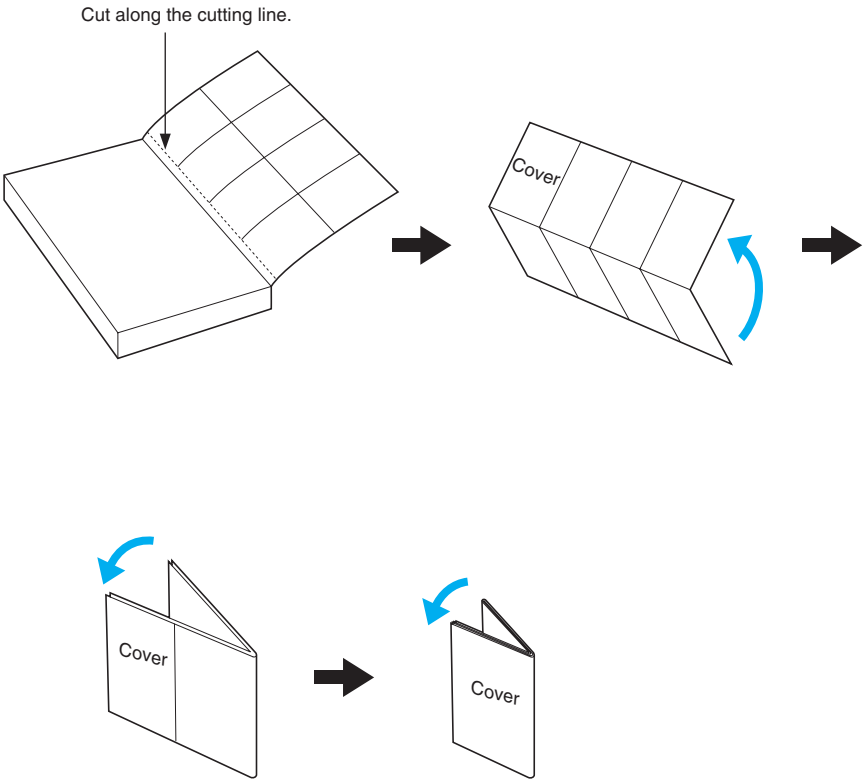
videophone in-call 82
videophone number entry 82
videophone ringing 87
Push-to-Talk
PushTalk phonebook 104
Using the Phonebook
Group setting 114
phonebook 117
phonebook detail 117
Sent/rec'd DataList 126
UIM operation (copy) 121
UIM operation (delete) 121
Tone/Display/Lighting settings
contents checking 153
Desktop icon 149
Original menu 145
Original theme 144
Style mode list 153
Security Settings
group selection 168
item selection 168
Restrictions 172
Camera
Access reader scanning 203
Continuous mode 186
continuous shooting checking 190
Detail checking 190
image checking 187
movie checking 195
Movie mode 192
Photo mode 186
Reading data detail (Access reader) 204
Reading data detail (Bar code reader) 200
Reading data list (Access reader) 203
Reading data list (Bar code reader) 200
recording start (Picture voice) 196
i-mode/i-motion
Bookmark 221
Bookmark folder list 220
Enter URL 220
message detail 232
message list 231
Screen memo detail 222
Screen memo list 222
sites 214
Mail
Address/Subject 245
Chat 281
Chat group list 283
Chat member 280
Draft mail list 253
Emotion/Keyword 280
group member list 283
Inbox folder list 268
Mail member detail 254
Mail member list 254
Message 245
New mail 244
New SMS 286
Outbox folder list 268
Received address list 275
received mail detail 273
received mail list 270
Sent address 275
sent mail detail 274
sent mail list 271
Speed photo mail image 247
Template 251
Template preview 252
i-αppli
End stand-by info 301
miniSD data list 302
Security error history 294
Software list 293
i-channel
Channel list 305
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa
IC card content 309
ToruCa display 312
ToruCa folder list 311
ToruCa list 311
Full Browser
Full Browser 319
Display/Edit/Organization/ Music Playback
Categories (SD-PIM) 358
Chara-den list 347
Chara-den player 348
data detail (SD-PIM) 359
data list (SD-PIM) 359
Edit image 336
edit movie 344
file list (SD-PIM) 359
folder list (i-motion) 363
folder list (Melody) 363
folder list (My document) 363
folder list (My picture) 363
i-motion stopped (pause) 341
image list 328
Melody 352
Melody list 351
miniSD folder list 363
movie list 338
multi-selection (data box) 364
music player 379
My picture 330
Original animation list 333
Original animation playback 334
PDF data 374
PDF list 373
Playlist folder (i-motion) 342
Playlist folder (Melody) 353
Rec.Chara-den 349
track list 379
Other Useful Functions
Alarm clock 390
Dictionary 402
Own number 396
Reference history (dictionary) 403
Reference result (list/detail) 403
Schedule 391
Schedule list 393
Text memo 402
To Do list detail 395
To Do list screen 395
Voice announce 398
Network Services
Additional service/ Additional guidance 419
Check setting 411
Multi Number setting 418
Entering Text
Common phrase list 436
Common phrases folder list 435
Download dictionary 438
Own dictionary 437
Text entry (edit) 434
Traveling with N902iS
PLMN setting 445

This printed document is most concerned about recycling to be bound. Recycle the used printing when you have done with it.

Quick Manual

■ How to use the Quick Manual

- The Quick Manual describes basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal.
- You can tear it out of this manual and fold it for ease of use.
- Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages. Take care not to hurt yourself.



* Fold the second sheet so that the “Menu list” (p.16) becomes the cover page.
* Fold the third sheet (For Overseas Use) as you do for the first sheet.

NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N902iS
Quick Manual

○**For Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>**

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) 151 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

○**For malfunctions**

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) 113 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

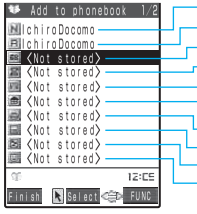
※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
●For details, check the "Service station list" provided with a FOMA terminal.

Add to phonebook



1. Standby screen appears➡ⓘ➡(FUNC)➡"Add to phonebook"

●To add data from the received call record
Standby screen appears➡⊙➡Highlight the received call record➡(FUNC)➡"Add to phonebook"

●To add data from the redial
Standby screen appears➡⊙➡Highlight the redial record➡(FUNC)➡"Add to phonebook"

2. Select "Phone" or "UIM"➡Enter name➡Check the reading
3. Select items and enter them

■ Group (00 to 19)
<Not stored>➡Select group

■ Phone number (up to 4)
<Not stored>➡Enter phone number➡Select icon

■ Mail address (up to 3)
<Not stored>➡Enter mail address➡Select icon

■ Address
<Not stored>➡Enter zip code➡Enter address

■ Birthday
<Not stored>➡Enter birthday

■ Memorandums
<Not stored>➡Enter memorandums

■ Image
<Not stored>➡Select photo mode or image

■ Chara-den
<Not stored>➡Select Chara-den

■ Memory number (000 to 699)
➡Enter memory number

4. (Finish)

Only name, reading, group, phone number, and mail address can be stored to the FOMA card (UIM).

Edit/delete phonebook data

■Edit the phonebook data

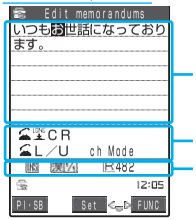
Display the phonebook detail screen➡(FUNC)➡"Edit phonebook"➡Edit the items if necessary➡(Finish)➡"YES" ((for UIM phonebook)➡"Overwrite"➡"YES")

■Delete phonebook data

Display the phonebook list screen➡(FUNC)➡"Delete data"➡"Delete this"➡"YES" (Select another "YES" depending on the phonebook)

Input method and mode

■Character input screen



■Input mode

漢 ... Kanji/hiragana
123 ... Number
カナ ... Katakana
区 ... Kuten input mode
A ... Alphabet

■ Select input method

(MENU)➡(Settings)➡"Other settings"➡"Character input set"➡"Input mode"➡Select any item

■ Switching the text entry method

(PI·SB)(press and hold)(several times)

■ Switching input mode

(Several times)

■ Enter dakuten, hen-dakuten, comma, dot

(Several times)

■ Switching between upper and lower cases

Before entering, (FUNC)➡"Upper case" or "Lower case"
Move the cursor to the input text➡

■ Enter space (blank)

(FUNC)➡"Space"

■ Text line feed

Move the cursor to the end of the sentence followed by no letters➡●

(press and hold)

(FUNC)➡"Line feed"

■ Enter face symbol, symbol or pictograph

(PI·SB)(several times)➡Select symbol or pictograph➡ to end operation

(FUNC)➡"Face Mark", "Symbols" or "Pictograph"➡Select symbols or texts

■ Delete texts

Use to move the cursor to the text to be deleted➡

Cutting Line

Enter Text

Enter “太郎” on Text memo

■ Text entry (edit) screen

(MENU)➔ (LifeKit)➔“Text memo”➔(Edit)➔(Several times)➔“Kanji/hiragana input mode”➔

た ➔ 4	one time
ろ ➔ 5	five times
う ➔ 1	three times

■ Conversion

or (CHG)➔➔Select “太郎” from the conversion candidates

Camera

■ Shoot still image

(MENU)➔ (LifeKit)➔“Camera”➔“Photo mode”➔ or [📷]➔

■ Shoot continuously

(MENU)➔ (LifeKit)➔“Camera”➔“Photo mode”➔ (FUNC)➔“CHG camera-mode”➔“Continuous mode”➔“Auto” or “Manual”➔ or [📷]➔(FUNC)➔Select saving method

■ Shoot movie

(MENU)➔ (LifeKit)➔“Camera”➔“Movie mode”➔ or [📷]➔ or [📷]➔

Display image/play melody

■ Display image

(MENU)➔ (Data box)➔“My picture”➔Select folder➔Select image

■ Play movie

(MENU)➔ (Data box)➔“i-motion”➔Select folder➔Select movie

■ Play melody

(MENU)➔ (Data box)➔“Melody”➔Select folder➔Select melody

Using music player

■ Play music on Music Player

(MENU)➔ (Data box)➔“Music”➔Select playlist➔Select track

■ Operate Music Player with assist key

Press (Assist key) with the FOMA terminal folded (one second or longer)

Make/receive videophone call

■ Make a videophone call

Enter the phone number➔ (V.phone)➔ after talking

■ Receive a videophone call

The phone rings and the incoming call lamp flashes. Press (V.phone), or ➔ after talking

(V.phone) or	: Send your shot to the caller
(Subst.)	: Send your substitute image to the caller

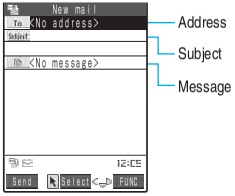
■ During a call

: Switch (ON/OFF) hands-free

: Switch camera (Front camera/rear camera)

i-mode Mail

Compose/send Message



■ New mail screen

(MENU)➔ (Mail)➔“Compose message”

■ Address

To ➔Select how to enter mail address

■ Subject

Subject ➔Enter subject

■ Message

➔Enter message

■ Send mail

(Send)➔ after transmission end

Attach file

■ Attach image

New mail screen➔(FUNC)➔“Attach file”➔“Attach image”➔Select folder➔Select image

■ Attach i-motion

New mail screen➔(FUNC)➔“Attach file”➔“Attach i-motion”➔Select folder➔Select i-motion

■ Attach melody

New mail screen➔(FUNC)➔“Attach file”➔“Attach melody”➔Select folder➔Select melody

■ Attach ToruCa

New mail screen➔(FUNC)➔“Attach file”➔“Attach ToruCa”➔Select folder➔Select ToruCa

Receive mail

“ (White) ” flashes➔“Received results” screen appears➔Select “ New ”

Other functions

■ Reply

Display the mail to reply➔(Reply)➔“ ”➔Enter message➔(Send)➔ after transmission end

■ Forward

Display the mail to forward➔(FUNC)➔“Forward”➔“ To ”➔Specify how to enter address➔(Send)➔ after transmission end

Check new messages

(MENU)➔ (Mail)➔“Check new messages”

Cutting Line

Menu list

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Mail	Inbox	
	Outbox	
	Draft	
	Compose message	
	Chat mail	
	Compose SMS	
	Check new messages	
	Receive option	
	Check new SMS	
	Template	
	Mail settings	
i-mode	iMenu	
	Bookmark	
	Screen memo	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	i-Channel	
	Message	
	Check new messages	
	Client certificate	
	i-mode settings	
	Internet (Full Browser)	
i-αppli	Software list	
	miniSD saved data	
	Auto start set	
	i-αppli action info	

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume (Menu 5 4 0)
		Select ring tone (Menu 1 * 3)
		Sound effect (Menu 6 4)
		Vibrator (Menu 5 4)
		Illumination (Menu 8 9)
		Manner mode set (Menu 2 0)
		Disp.PH-book image
		Answer setting (Menu 5 6)
		Mail/Msg. ring time (Menu 6 6)
		Ring time(sec.) (Menu 9 0)
		Info notice setting (Menu 6 5)
		Record message (Menu 5 5)
	Talk	Noise reduction (Menu 7 6)
		Quality alarm (Menu 7 5)
		Reconnect signal (Menu 7 7)
		Illumination in talk
		Set hold tone
		Setting when folded (Menu 1 * 8)
	Dialing	Pause dial (Menu 8 4)
		Sub-address setting
		Prefix setting
		Auto dial setting
		Int'l dial settings
	Videophone	Visual preference

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Settings	Videophone	Select image
		Auto redial as voice
		Remote monitoring
		Display setting
		Indicate V.phone
		Hands-free switch
		V-phone while packet
	Display	Display setting (Menu 5 6)
		Backlight (Menu 7 0)
		Display design (Menu 8 6)
		Image display (Menu 9 3)
		Font (Menu 6 6)
		Desktop icon (Menu 6 3)
		3D display setting
		Select language (Menu 1 * 5)
		Original menu (Menu 5 2)
		Menu display set (Menu 5 7)
		Viewer settings
		Automatic display (Menu 4 7)
		Icons (Menu 3 6)
		Icons setting
	Call time/ Charge	Call data (Menu 6 1 *)
		Notice designate calls
		Reset total (Menu 6 0)

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Settings	Call time/ Charge	Auto reset total cost
		Call time display (Menu 4 8)
	Clock	Set time (Menu 3 1 *)
		Clock display (Menu 3 9)
		World watch
		Alarm setting
	Lock/Security	Lock all
		PIM lock
		SimpleLock
		IC card lock
		Face authentication
		Self mode
		Keypad dial lock
		Reject unknown
		Call setting w/o ID (Menu 1 * 0)
		Record display set
		Change security code (Menu 2 9)
		PIN setting
		Secret mode (Menu 4 0)
		Secret data only mode (Menu 4 1 *)
		Scanning function
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout
		Set check new messages
		Host selection (Menu 8 1 *)

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Settings	Connection setting	SMS center selection
		Certificate
		Certificate host
	i-αppli settings	Disp. Software info
		End stand-by display
		i-αppli vol.
	ToruCa settings	Receive from R/W
		Scroll
	External connection	USB mode setting
		Earphone (Menu 5 1 *)
		Select microphone
		Automatic answer (Menu 9 4)
	Network setting	PLMN setting
		NW search mode
		Operator name display
	Other settings	Style mode
		Keypad sound (Menu 3 0)
		Charge sound
		Battery level (Menu 7 1 *)
		External keys guard (Menu *(Press and hold))
		Character input set (Menu 3 5)
		Neuropointer
		Reset settings (Menu 2 3)
		Initialize
		Software Update

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Data box	My picture (Menu 4 6)	
	i-motion	
	Melody (Menu 1 *)	
	Chara-den	
	My document	
	Music	
LifeKit	Bar code reader	
	Receive Ir data (Menu 7 9)	
	ToruCa	
	IC card content	
	SD-PIM	
	Camera	
	Data Sec. Service	
	Schedule (Menu 4 5)	
	Alarm clock (Menu 4 4)	
	To Do list (Menu 9 5)	
	Text memo (Menu 4 2)	
	Calculator (Menu 8 5)	
	Play/Erase msg. (Memo/Check))	
	Play/Erase VP msg.	
	Voice memo (Menu 4 3)	
	Voice announce (Menu 9 1 *)	
	UIM operation	
	Forwarding image	

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
LifeKit	Access reader	
	Dictionary	
Network service	Chaku-moji	
	Caller ID Notification (Menu 1 * 7)	
	Voice Mail	
	Call Waiting	
	Call Forwarding	
	Nuisance Call Blk	
	Caller ID Request	
	In-call arrival act	
	Set in-call arrival	
	Remote Control	
	Dual Network	
	English Guidance	
	Additional service	
	Service Numbers	
	Multi Number	
	Roam. Guidance	
	Bar incoming when roam	
	Service (Int.)	
Phonebook	Phonebook	
	PushTalk	
Own data	Own number (Menu 0)	
	Received calls (Menu 2 4)	

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Own data	Dialed calls	
	Mail member (Menu 9 7)	
	Chat group	
	Common phrases (Menu 3 6)	
	Own dictionary (Menu 8 2)	
	DL dictionary	

< Other features >

- Manner mode (#) (Press and hold) (Set/release every pressing)
- Public mode (Driving mode) (*) (Press and hold) (Set/release every pressing)

Cutting Line

Network Services

Voice Mail service

Activate

MENU → Service (Service)→“Voice Mail”→“Activate”→“YES”→“YES”→Enter Ring time (seconds)

Deactivate

MENU → Service (Service)→“Voice Mail”→“Deactivate”→“YES”

Play messages

MENU → Service (Service)→“Voice Mail”→“Play messages”→“YES”→Follow the voice prompts

Call Waiting

Activate

MENU → Service (Service)→“Call Waiting”→“Activate”→“YES”

Deactivate

MENU → Service (Service)→“Call Waiting”→“Deactivate”→“YES”

Receive another incoming call

Press [Talk] or [●] to switch to incoming call.

To switch the calls, press [Talk].

Call Forwarding service

Activate

MENU → Service (Service)→“Call Forwarding”→“Activate”→Set a forwarding number or the ring time, and then select “Activate”→“YES”

Deactivate

MENU → Service (Service)→“Call Forwarding”→“Deactivate”→“YES”

Caller ID Request service

Activate Caller ID Request service

MENU → Service (Service)→“Caller ID Request”→“Activate”→“YES”→”OK”

Deactivate Caller ID Request service

MENU → Service (Service)→“Caller ID Request”→“Deactivate”→“YES”→”OK”

Service available on FOMA Terminal

Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)	(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay)*1	(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay) 8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (pay)	Area code + 117
Police emergency*2	(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency*2	(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call	(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System	(No area code) 171

*1: The phone number cannot be provided if the number is not listed in the directory.

*2: Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.

Icon



Icon display area

: Battery level

: Lock all is set

(White): Unread message

(White): Unread MessageR

(White): Unread MessageF

(White): i-mode mail stored in i-mode Center

: Signal strength

: Using i-mode

: SSL page

: During Communication mode, USB cable unconnected, hands-free device unconnected

: Exchanging infrared data

: miniSD memory card inserted

: During voice call

: IC card lock is set

: Vibrator set

: Ring volume is set to “Silent”

: Manner mode set

: Public mode (Driving mode) set

: Alarm function set

: Record message set

: Voice Mail message

: Backlight is “OFF”

: External keys guard is “ON”

: Record VP message is set

○**For Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>**

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

○**For malfunctions**

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
●For details, check the “Service station list” provided with a FOMA terminal.

Cutting Line

NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N902iS

Quick Manual (For Overseas Use)

○**For lost, stolen, account settlement clearing overseas**

<DoCoMo Information Center> (24 hours) (Only in Japanese)

●**Universal number**

International phone codes for Universal number (Table 1) **-800-0120-0151**

* Local call charges apply in the country or region you stay.

●**Not available for the Universal number**

International access numbers for your staying country (Table 2) **-81-3-5366-3114***

* Long distance call to Japan will be charged.

* When calling from an N902iS, dial +81-3-5366-3144 to contact the DoCoMo Information Center. (Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)
* Refer to p.14 for the international phone codes for Universal number (Table 1) and p.15 for the international access numbers (Table 2).

○**For malfunctions overseas**

<Network Operation Center> (24 hours)

●**Universal number**

International phone codes for Universal number (Table 1) **-800-5931-8600**

* Local call charges apply in the country or region you stay.

●**Not available for the Universal number**

International access numbers for your staying country (Table 2) **-81-3-6718-1414***

* Long distance call to Japan will be charged.
* The numbers may be changed in Tables 1 and 2.

* When calling from an N902iS, dial +81-3-5366-3144 to contact the Network Operation Center. (Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)
* Refer to p.14 for the international phone codes for Universal number (Table 1) and p.15 for the international access numbers (Table 2).

Before traveling

Preparation

· FOMA card (Green)
· FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01

Setup

Setting in the staying country is also available.

■ i-mode

MENU → (i-mode) → "i Menu" → "English" → "Options" → "International Settings" → "Yes" → Enter i-mode password → "Select"

■ Remote operation

MENU → (Service) → "Remote Control" → "Activate" → "YES"

■ World watch

MENU → (Setting) → "Clock" → "World watch" → "Time zone" → Select the time zone

■ Displaying World watch

MENU → (Setting) → "Clock" → "Clock display" → "Display type" → "World watch ON" → "YES"

■ Summer time

MENU → (Setting) → "Clock" → "World watch" → "Summer time" → "ON"

Making a call

Calling outside the country (including Japan)

■ Calling to the country set in "Int'l dial settings"

Enter the phone number → (FUNC) → "Int'l call" → Select the country → or ( )

■ Using the phonebook to make a call to the country set in "Int'l dial settings"

On the standby screen → → Select the phonebook to be called → (FUNC) → "Int'l call" → Select the country → or ( )

■ Making a call from the country number

Enter "+" (1 second or longer) on the standby screen, and dial Country code, Area code and Phone number, then press or ( )

Local calling

Dial the phone number → or ( )

Receiving a call

■ Receiving a voice call

or after phone ring

■ Receiving a videophone call

or ( ) after phone ring

Pressing enables answer with a substitute image.

Calling from the other end

■ From Japan
090 (or 080)-xxxx-xxxx

■ From outside Japan
International access code -81-90 (or 80) -xxxx-xxxx

Operator search mode setting

■ Switching operators to be connected automatically

MENU → (Setting) → "Network setting" → "NW search mode" → "Auto"

■ Switching operators to be connected manually

MENU → (Setting) → "Network setting" → "NW search mode" → "Manual"

■ Re-searching connectable operator

MENU → (Setting) → "Network setting" → "NW search mode" → "New Search"

Setting preferred operator

MENU → (Setting) → "Network setting" → "PLMN setting" → Highlight an operator to be changed on priority → (FUNC) → "Change priority" → Highlight the position to be moved to → → (Finish) → "YES"

Setting operator name display

■ Displaying the operator name

MENU → (Setting) → "Network setting" → "Operator name display" → "Display ON"

■ Not displaying the operator name

MENU → (Setting) → "Network setting" → "Operator name display" → "Display OFF"

Cutting Line

Setting roaming in progress

Setting the roaming guidance

■ Activate

MENU → Service (Service)→"Roam.Guidance"→"Activate"→"YES"

■ Deactivate

MENU → Service (Service)→"Roam.Guidance"→"Deactivate"→"YES"

Incoming call setup

■ Reject all incoming calls

MENU → Service (Service)→"Bar incoming when roam"→"Activate"→"Bar All incoming"→"YES"→Enter Network security code

■ Accept only a voice call

MENU → Service (Service)→"Bar incoming when roam"→"Activate"→"Data calls Barring"→"YES"→Enter Network security code

■ Accept all incoming calls

MENU → Service (Service)→"Bar incoming when roam"→"Deactivate"→"YES"→Enter Network security code

Network service for overseas

Voice Mail service

■ Activate

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Voice Mail (Int.)"→"Activate"→"YES"→Follow a voice guidance

■ Deactivate

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Voice Mail (Int.)"→"Deactivate"→"YES" →Follow a voice guidance

■ Play messages

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Voice Mail (Int.)"→"Play messages"→"YES" →Follow a voice guidance

■ Set ring time

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Voice Mail (Int.)"→"Set ring time"→"YES" →Follow a voice guidance

■ Setting

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Voice Mail (Int.)"→"Setting"→"YES" →Follow a voice guidance

Call Forwarding service

■ Start Call Forwarding service

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Call Forwarding (Int.)"→"Activate"→"YES"→Follow a voice guidance

■ Deactivate

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Call Forwarding (Int.)"→"Deactivate"→"YES" →Follow a voice guidance

■ Setting

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Call Forwarding (Int.)"→"Setting"→"YES" →Follow a voice guidance

Roaming guidance

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Roam. Guidance (Int.)"→"YES"→Follow a voice guidance

Remote control setup

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Remote access (Int.)"→"YES"→Follow a voice guidance

Caller ID Request

MENU → Service (Service)→"Service (Int.)"→"Caller ID req. (Int.)"→"YES"→Follow a voice guidance

Country Codes of Major Countries

(As of April, 2006)

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
United States of America	1	Germany	49
United Kingdom	44	Turkey	90
Italy	39	Japan	81
India	91	New Caledonia	687
Indonesia	62	New Zealand	64
Egypt	20	Norway	47
Australia	61	Hungary	36
Austria	43	Fiji	679
Holland	31	Philippines	63
Canada	1	Finland	358
Korea	82	France	33
Greece	30	Brazil	55
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Switzerland	41	Peru	51
Sweden	46	Belgium	32
Spain	34	Hong Kong	852
Thailand	66	Macao	853
Taiwan	886	Malaysia	60
Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689	Maldives	960
Czech	420	Russia	7
China	86		

* For the other country code or details, check the WORLD WING website.

International Phone Codes for the Universal Number (Table 1)

(As of April, 2006)

Area	Code	Area	Code
Ireland	00	Spain	00
United States of America	011	Thailand	001
Argentina	00	Taiwan	00
United Kingdom	00	China	00
Israel	014	Denmark	00
Italy	00	Germany	00
Australia	0011	New Zealand	00
Austria	00	Norway	00
Holland	00	Philippines	00
Canada	011	France	00
Korea	001	Brazil	0021
Colombia	009	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Hong Kong	001
Switzerland	00	Malaysia	00
Sweden	00	Luxemburg	00

International Access Numbers for Major Countries (Table 2)

(As of April, 2006)

Area	Code	Area	Code
Ireland	00	Denmark	00
United States of America	011	Germany	00
United Arab Emirates	00	Turkey	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
India	00	Hungary	00
Indonesia	001	Philippines	00
Australia	0011	Finland	00/990
Holland	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0041/0021/0023
Korea	001	Vietnam	00
Greece	00	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Poland	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001
Spain	00	Macao	00
Thailand	001	Malaysia	00
Taiwan	002	Monaco	00
Czech	00	Luxemburg	00
China	00	Russia	810

Cutting Line

Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, consider the feelings of others.

Turn off your FOMA terminal when you are:

■ In a place where it is prohibited to use a mobile phone

It is prohibited to use a mobile phone in some places. Turn off your FOMA terminal in:

• An airplane • A hospital

* Turn off your FOMA terminal in a lobby or waiting room as well as in a hospital ward in case that electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.

■ Driving

Using the FOMA terminal prevents you from driving safely.

* Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or set the Public mode (Driving mode).

■ In a crowded place such as rush-hour train, where somebody nearby may be using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator

Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.

■ In a public place such as theater, cinema, or museum

Using the FOMA terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and how loud your voice or the ring tone is

■ If you use your FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as a restaurant or hotel lobby, mind how loud your voice is, etc.

■ Take care not to disturb other people when you use your FOMA terminal in a public place.

Respect privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute all the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original manner mode]→p.133, 134

Manner mode mutes sounds emitting from the FOMA terminal such as keypad sounds and ring tones. You can customize Manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

[Public mode (Driving mode/Power off)]→p.71, 73

The caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you need to refrain from talking or turn the power off.

[Vibrator]→p.131

The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.

[Record message function]→p.75

When you cannot answer a call, the caller leaves a message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail service (p.410) and Call Forwarding service (p.413).

DoCoMo e-site welcomes requests for brochures as well as various procedures such as change of your address or billing plan.

i-mode: i Menu ⇒ 料金&お申込 ⇒ ドコモeサイト Packet communication free

PC: My DoCoMo (https://www.mydocomo.com/) ⇒ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト)

※ To access e-site via i-mode, your "Network security code" is required.
※ The packet communication fee is free when accessing e-site via i-mode. However, accessing from overseas will be charged.
※ To access e-site via PC, "My DoCoMo ID" and "Password" are required.
※ If you have no "Network security code", "My DoCoMo ID" and "Password" with you or unfortunately forgot them, please feel free to contact inquiries shown below.
※ Some contracts may not be available for accessing e-site.
※ You may not be able to access e-site due to system maintenance, etc.

For inquiries
< DoCoMo information Center >

■From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix)151 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※Can be called from mobile phones or PHSs

●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

For technical inquiries

■From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) 113 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※Can be called from mobile phones or PHSs

●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

●For details, check the "Service station list" provided with a FOMA terminal.

For lost, stolen, account settlement clearing overseas

<DoCoMo Information Center> (24 hours) (Only in Japanese)

●Universal number

International phone codes for Universal number (Table1) -800-0120-0151

※Local call charges apply in the country or region you stay.

●Not available for the above Universal number

International access numbers for your staying country (Table2) -81-3-5366-3114※

※Long distance call to Japan will be charged.

※When calling from an N902iS, dial +81-3-5366-3144 to contact the DoCoMo Information Center. (Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)

※Refer to p.442 for the international phone codes for Universal number (Table1) and for the international access numbers of the major countries (Table2).

For malfunctions overseas

<Network Operation Center> (24 hours)

●Universal number

International phone codes for Universal number (Table1) -800-5931-8600

※Local call charges apply in the country or region you stay.

●Not available for the above Universal number

International access numbers for your staying country (Table2) -81-3-6718-1414※

※Long distance call to Japan will be charged.

※The numbers are subject to change in Tables 1 and 2.

※When calling from an N902iS, dial +81-3-6718-1414 to contact the Network Operation Center. (Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)

※Refer to p.442 for the international phone codes for Universal number (Table1) and for the international access numbers of the major countries (Table2).



Don't forget your cellular phone … or your manners!

○When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration to others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation

Li-ion

To protect the enviroment, return used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailers, or a recycling agency.

This manual is made from 100% recycled paper.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK

This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'06.5 (1.1 Edition)
MDT-000063-EAA0

FOMA® N902iS
Manual for Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal 1
Before Using 3
Checking the Procedure 4
Setting the PC 7
About the FOMA PC Setting Software 13
How to Set Various Settings 18
Executing Set Data Communication 24
W-TCP Settings 27
Access Point Name (APN) Settings 29
Setting up Dial-up Network 30
Setting up Dial-up 38
AT Command List 50

About Manual for Data Communication
This manual describes necessary information for data communication using the FOMA N902iS and how to install "N902iS communication setting file (drivers)" and "FOMA PC setting software" provided in the CD-ROM.
Operations on Windows XP
The contents of this manual are based on Windows XP with Service Pack 2. The procedures or screens may vary depending on your environment.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

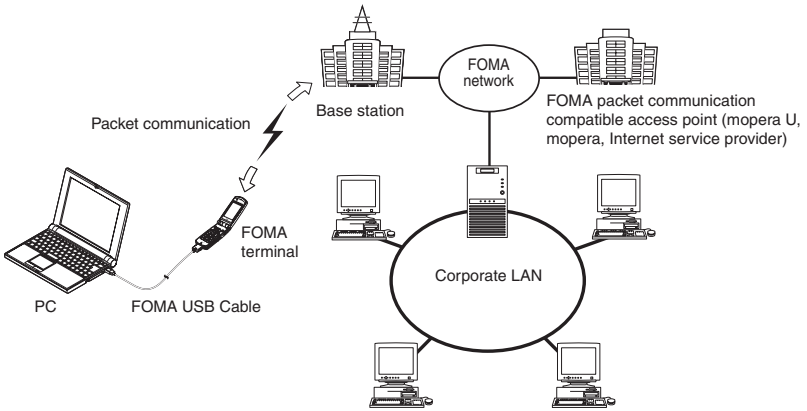
Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

- Packet communication
  The data is received at the maximum speed of 384kbps and sent at the maximum speed of 64kbps. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Note that the communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is also possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.
- 64K data communication
  Data can be sent or received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected regardless of the amount of data.

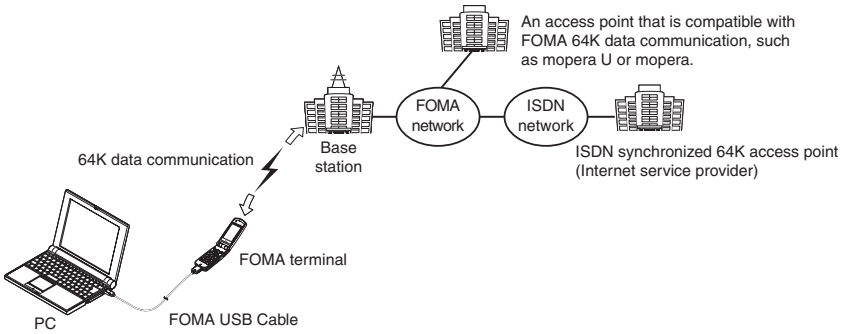
■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.
DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service for which you need to apply. “mopera” is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

To view FirstPass compliant sites on your PC’s browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is needed. Install the FirstPass PC software from the CD-ROM and conduct the setting. For details, refer to “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) stored in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder included on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is in Japanese only.)

Before Using

Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

PC unit	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS*3	• Windows 98*1, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)
Required memory	• Windows 98, Windows Me: 32M bytes or more*2 • Windows 2000: 64M bytes or more*2 • Windows XP: 128M bytes or more*2
Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or more*2

*1 : The FirstPass PC software is not compatible with Windows 98. (However, it is compatible with Windows 98SE.)
*2 : The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.
*3 : The proper operations on the upgraded OS are not guaranteed.

NOTE

- To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ", update "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ". For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup function.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with the FAX communication.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- CD- ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N902iS"

NOTE

- Purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Checking the Procedure

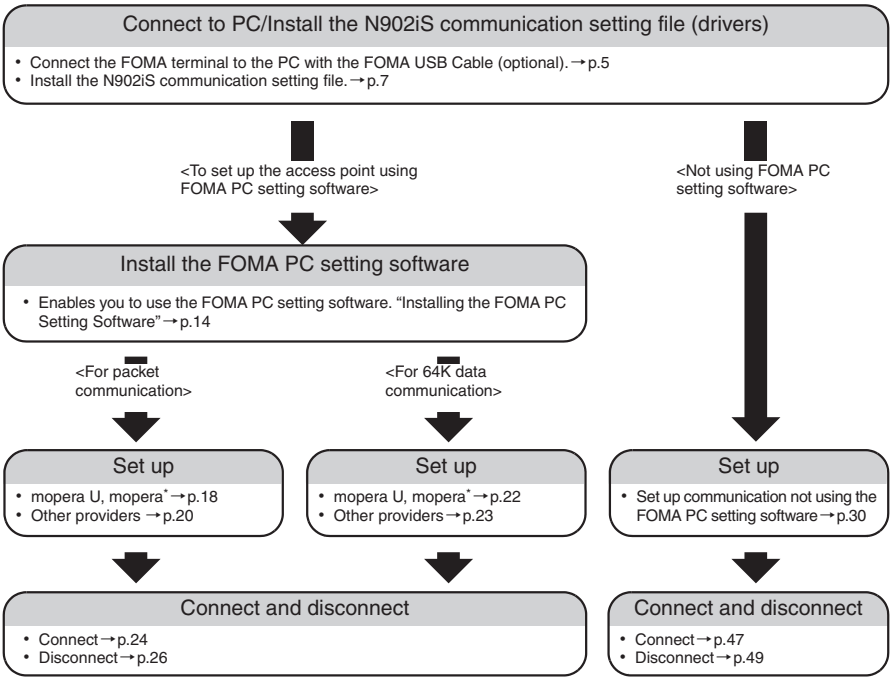
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ **About the "CD-ROM for FOMA N902iS"**

- The CD-ROM contains the N902iS communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N902iS communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N902iS communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.
  Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and create a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use Internet with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, "mopera U" (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use "mopera" for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately.
For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the USB mode setting to “Communication mode”

Set the external connector to be used for the packet communication and 64K data communication.

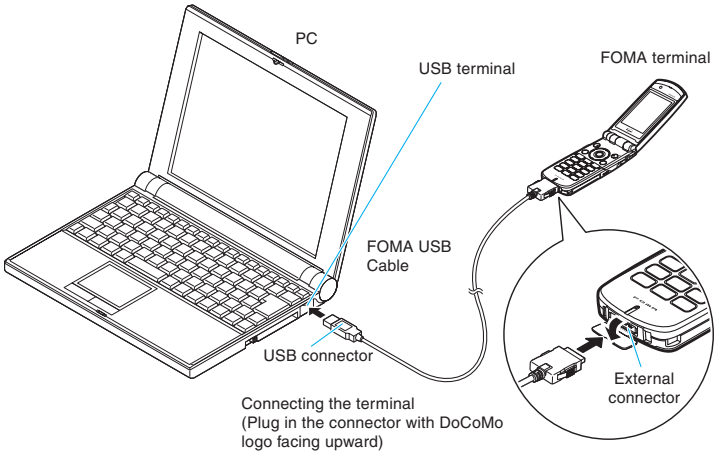
● Before connecting to PC, set “USB mode setting” to “Communication mode”.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“External connection”**

2 **“USB mode setting”▶“Communication mode”**

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



1 **Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal**

2 **Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable horizontally until you hear a click**

3 **Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of your PC**

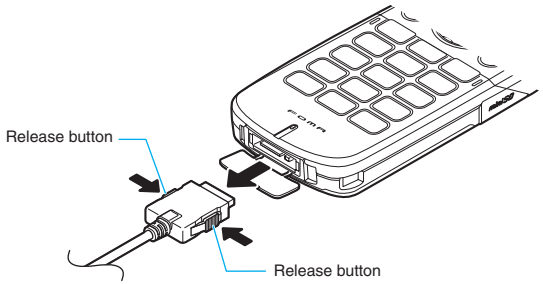
“ ” changes to “ ” on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

NOTE

● “ ” appears on the FOMA terminal display when the N902iS communication setting file is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before the N902iS communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and “ ” appears.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



1 Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC

2 Pull the FOMA USB Cable out horizontally while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB Cable

3 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

NOTE

- When you connect and disconnect the FOMA USB Cable repeatedly, wait for a while in each step because the FOMA terminal may not recognize the PC correctly.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable during data communication because this may cause the disconnection of communication, malfunction or loss of data.

Setting the PC

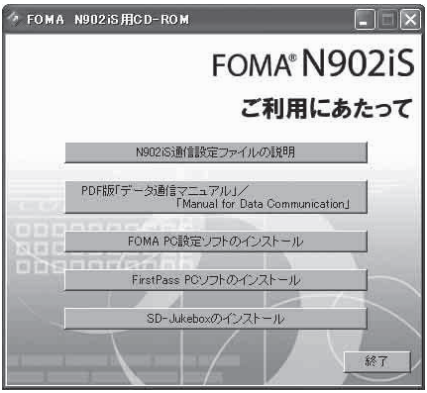
The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA terminal to PC and how to install the N902iS communication setting file (drivers).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

1 Start up Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iS” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC

2 Click “終了” (Exit) to exit from the “FOMA N902iSご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N902iS) screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iS” is inserted in the drive. If it does not appear, simply proceed to Step 4.
If this screen appears while you are installing the N902iS communication setting file, click “終了” (Exit) as well.



3 Click “終了” (Exit) to close “お問い合わせ先” (Inquiries) screen

4 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to your FOMA terminal

5 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC

For Windows 98/Me
“新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) screen appears.

For Windows 2000/XP
“新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

Installing the N902iS communication setting file (drivers)

- When installing N902iS communication setting file in Windows 2000 / Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- The installation procedure for the N902iS communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC.
  For Windows 98 and Windows Me refer to the following.
  For Windows 2000, proceed to p.9. For Windows XP, proceed to p.10.

For Windows 98/Windows Me

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 5 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.7), the screen "新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード" (Add new hardware wizard) is automatically displayed.

For Windows 98

Click "次へ" (Next).

2 Select "ドライバの場所を指定する（詳しい知識のある方向け）" (Specify driver location (for advanced users)), then click "次へ" (Next)



For Windows 98

Select "使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）" (Search for the optimal driver for the device in use (Recommended)) and click "次へ" (Next).

3 Select "使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）" (Search for the optimal driver for the device in use (Recommended)), check the "検索場所の指定" (Specify the search location) box and click "参照" (Reference) to specify the folder to search, and "次へ" (Next)

The folder name is "<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win98".
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC.

For Windows 98

Check the "検索場所の指定" (Specify the search location) box, specify the folder and click "次へ" (Next).
Select "更新されたドライバ（推奨）" (Updated driver (Recommended)) and click "次へ" (Next).

4 Confirm the driver name and click "次へ" (Next)

In this case, the driver's name appears as "FOMA N902iS".

5 When the message "新しいハードウェアのインストールが完了しました。" (Installation of the new hardware is now complete) appears, click "完了" (Finish)

For Windows 98

The message "新しいハードウェアデバイスに必要なソフトウェアがインストールされました。" (The software needed to install a new hardware device is installed) appears.

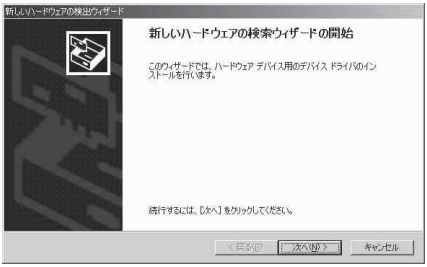
6 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 5 and install all other 6 drivers (p.12). If the "新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード" (Add new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is completed. Proceed to "Checking the installed driver" (p.11).

For Windows 2000

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 5 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）” (Search for the optimal driver for the device (Recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Check the “場所を指定” (Specify the search location) box and click “次へ” (Next)

5 Specify the folder to search and click “OK”

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win2000”.
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC.

6 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next)

In this case, the driver’s name appears as “FOMA N902iS”.

7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

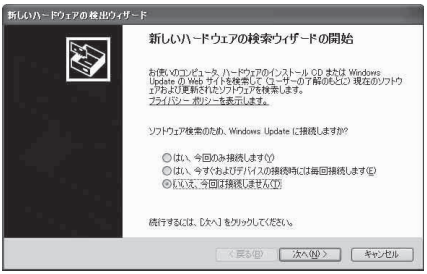
8 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 7 and install all other 3 drivers (p.12). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is completed. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.11).

For Windows XP

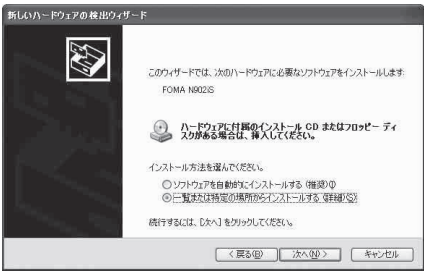
1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 5 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.

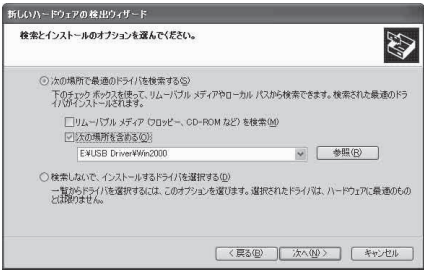


2 Select “いいえ、今回は接続しません” (No, I will access Windows Update later on) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする（詳細）” (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click “次へ” (Next)



4 Select “次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する” (Search for the optimal driver in the next location), uncheck the “リムーバブルメディア（フロッピー、CD-ROMなど）を検索” (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) box, check the “次の場所を含める” (include the next location) box to specify a folder to search, then click “次へ”(Next)



The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win2000”.
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC. In this example, the CD-ROM drive name is “E”.
The driver is common with Windows 2000.

5 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

6 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 5 and install all other 3 drivers (p.12). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is completed.
When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。” (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.11).

Checking the installed driver

Check that the N902iS communication setting file (drivers) has been correctly installed.

1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

Select “スタート” (Start) →“設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

For Windows XP

Select “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Open “システム” (System) in the “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

For Windows Me

If the “システム” (System) icon does not appear in “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel), click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する” (Display all Control Panel options)

For Windows XP

Click the “システム” (System) icon in “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス” (Performance and maintenance)

3 Open the device manager

For Windows 98/Me

Click the “デバイスマネージャ ” (Device manager) tab

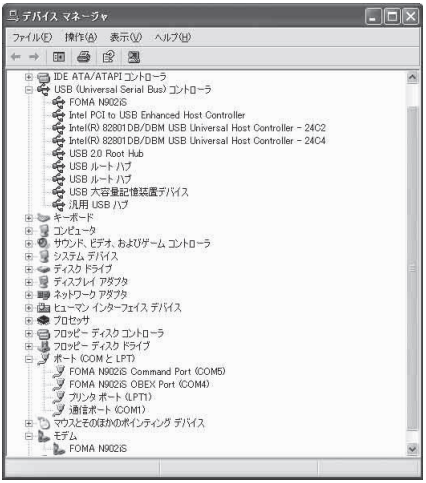
For Windows 2000/XP

Click the “ハードウェア” (Hardware) tab and click “デバイスマネージャ ” (Device manager)

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under “ポート（COMとLPT）” (Ports (COM& LPT)), “USB（Universal Serial Bus）コントローラ” (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller) and “モデム” (Modems).

Check the driver name and proceed to “About the FOMA PC Setting Software” (p.13).



Device name	Driver name
ポート(COMとLPT)	• FOMA N902iS Command Port • FOMA N902iS OBEX Port
モデム	• FOMA N902iS
ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ	• FOMA N902iS • FOMA N902iS Command* • FOMA N902iS Modem* • FOMA N902iS OBEX*

*：Windows 98/Me only

NOTE

● When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear or if you have installed an improper communication setting file for your OS, follow the uninstall instructions (p.12) to delete the N902iS communication setting file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the N902iS communication setting file (drivers)

If necessary (when updating the drivers, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

● If you attempt to execute “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run.

● When uninstalling N902iS communication setting file from Windows 2000 / Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable (optional), remove the FOMA USB Cable

2 Start “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows

Click “スタート” (Start)→“コントロールパネル” (Control panel)→“プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)

3 Select “FOMA N902iS USB” and click “変更と削除” (Change and delete)

4 Click “OK” to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click “キャンセル” (Cancel).

5 Click “はい” (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.
If you click “いいえ” (No), restart Windows manually.

NOTE

● When “FOMA N902iS USB” is not displayed in the “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows, perform the following procedure:
①Insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iS” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
②Open “スタート” (Start) → “マイコンピュータ” (My computer)
③Right-click CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open)
④Open “USB Driver” in the CD-ROM → “Win98” or “Win2000” folder
⑤Double-click “n902isun.exe” *
*：It is displayed as “n902isun” depending on the setting of your PC.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the followings:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. →p.30



See p.5 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The guide walks you through the procedures for “FOMAデータ通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication) and “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) together.

W-TCP設定 (W-TCP settings)

This settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using “FOMA packet communication”. To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP settings.

接続先（APN）の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) settings)

Sets the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.
Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field.
As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.
cid [Context Identifier] ··· a number used to manage the Access Point Name (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

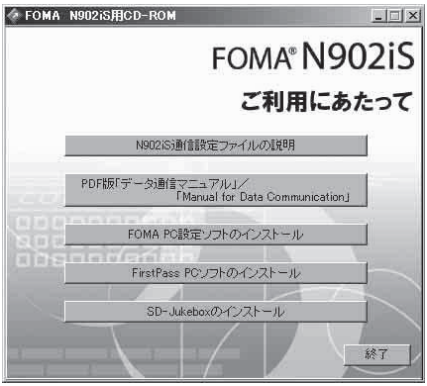
- If the FOMA terminal is recognized as the larger number than COM20 when checking the N902iS communication setting file (drivers), you cannot get APN information or write it during setting APN. In this case, set APN using “Hyper terminal”.
  “Setting up the access point (APN)” →p.34

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check the operating environment prior to the installation of the FOMA PC setting software. →p.3
- When installing the “FOMA PC setting software” in Windows 2000/Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- If you have installed “FOMA PC setting software” provided with the FOMA terminals released before 902i series, uninstall the software before operating.

1 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC

The “FOMA N902iSご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N902iS) screen will automatically appears. If for some reason the CD-ROM is not automatically started, right-click the CD-ROM icon in “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer), select “開く” (Open) and double-click “start.exe”.



2 Click “FOMA PC設定ソフトのインストール” (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software)

3 Click “次へ” (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation. If a message appears indicating that Previous W-TCP setting software or Previous APN setting software is installed, proceed to p.15.

4 Upon confirming the user agreement of “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), click “はい” (Yes) to agree to it

If you click “いいえ” (No) and then click “はい” (Yes), the installation is canceled.

5 Click “次へ” (Next)

Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the task-tray.
This is a function to set up / cancel the optimization of “W-TCP communication”, and we recommend you to let it reside in the task-tray.
If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ” (Next) with “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) checked ☑ to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) here, you can change the settings by selecting “メニュー” (Menu), “W-TCP設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる” (Let W-TCP settings reside in the task-tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.
(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) setting is in effect.



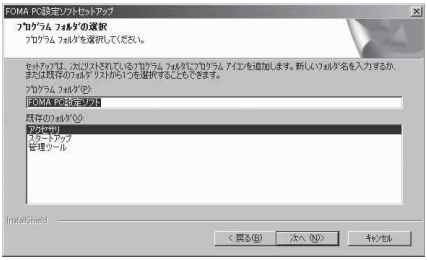
The W-TCP settings icon appears in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop.

6 Select the installation location and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change the location, click “参照” (Reference), specify the location and click “次へ” (Next).

7 Check the name of program folder and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ” (Next).



8 Click “完了” (Finish)

When the setup process is completed, the “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) operation screen appears. You can specify other settings at this point.

Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the Previous W-TCP setting software is installed>



- Open “アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs) and delete the old W-TCP setting software.

<If the Previous APN setting software is installed>



- When you click “OK”, the previous APN setting software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC setting software will be installed.

<If the FOMA PC setting software is already installed>



- Click “OK”, and the install is interrupted. Open “アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed “FOMA PC認定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.
- Perform the same procedure when an old version of “FOMA PC setting software” is installed.

<If the “キャンセル” (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the installation, click “いいえ” (No). When you want to stop the procedure, click “はい” (Yes).

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

If necessary (when upgrading the FOMA PC setting software, etc.), uninstall the software as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows 2000 machine is described as an example.

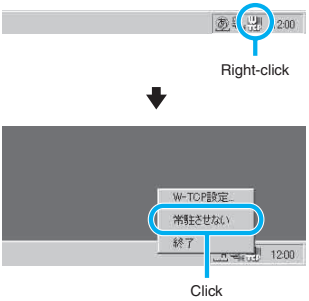
- When uninstalling the “FOMA PC setting software” from Windows 2000/Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Before uninstalling

Before starting the uninstallation process of the “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their default settings.

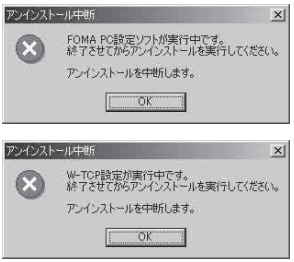
(1) Disable the “W-TCP settings” in the task-tray

Right-click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop and select “常駐させない” (Disable resident).



(2) Exit any running program

If you try to begin uninstallation while the “FOMA PC setting software” or “W-TCP settings” is in operation, this screen appears. Cancel the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.



2 Start “アプリケーションの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows

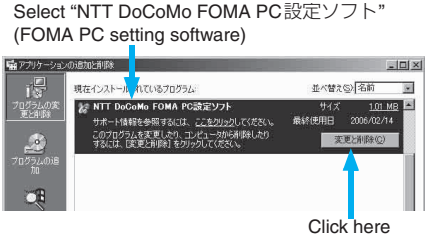
For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

Click “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “アプリケーションの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)
“アプリケーションの追加と削除のプロパティ ” (Property of Add and remove applications) appears for Windows 98 and Windows Me.

For Windows XP

Click “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove programs)

3 Select “NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click “変更と削除” (Change and delete)



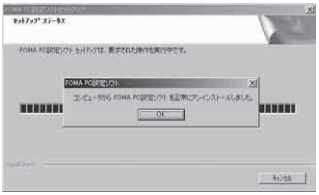
4 Check the program name to be deleted and click “はい” (Yes)

Uninstallation starts.



5 Click “OK”

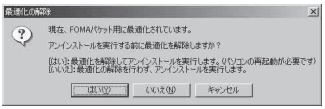
Uninstallation of the “FOMA PC setting software” is completed.



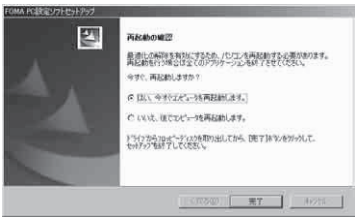
NOTE

● Cancelling “W-TCP最適化” (Optimize W-TCP).

This screen appears when “W-TCP最適化” (Optimize W-TCP) is performed. Usually, click “はい” (Yes) to uninstall and cancel the optimization.



The cancellation of W-TCP optimization is valid after the restart.



How to Set Various Settings

The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and the N902iS communication setting file (drivers) needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC to specify various settings.

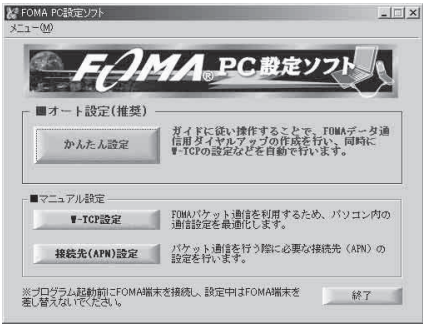
- If the FOMA terminal is recognized as a larger number than COM20, the “FOMA PC setting software” does not run.

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Program) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

This operation screen appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.

For Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)



Easy settings: “Packet communication setting by using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider.
  Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 384kbps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (there are exceptions for some machine types). Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
- DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service for which you need to apply. “mopera” is a free service for which you do not need to apply.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if packet communication is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view sites and websites containing images or to download files.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

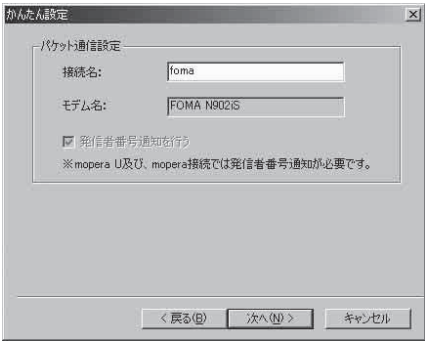
See p.20 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Click “OK”

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC. Wait for a while.

5 Enter the connection name and click “次へ” (Next)

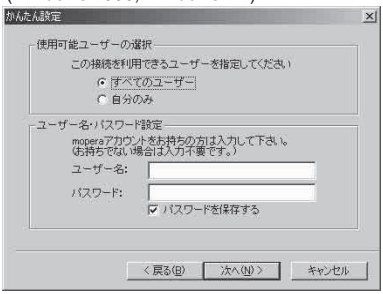
You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).



6 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.
Select the user for Windows 2000/XP.
When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)

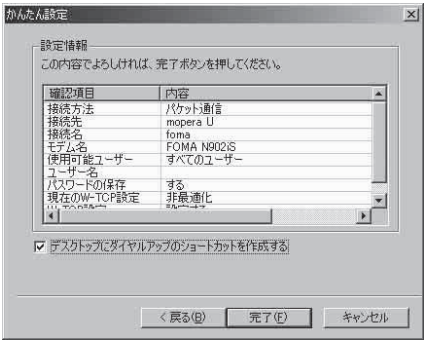


7 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear.

8 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



9 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).
Execute communication. →p.24

Easy settings: “Specifying Packet communication settings using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

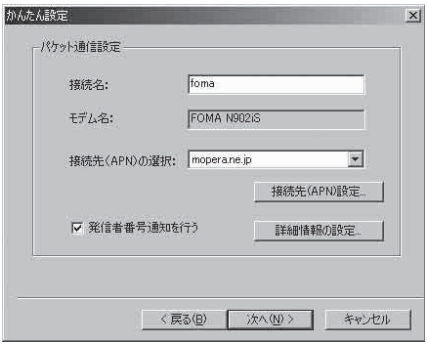
3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Click “OK”

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC.
Wait for a while.

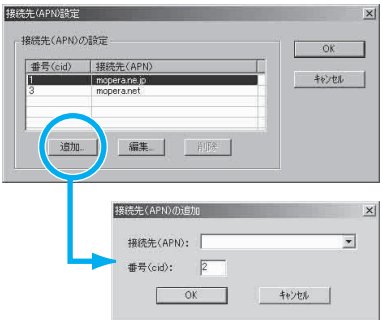
5 Specify the packet communication settings

After the terminal setting is completely acquired, the screen “パケット通信設定” (Packet communication setting) appears.
Enter any name in “接続名” (Connection name).
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: ＊ ?!<> ｜ ” (half-pitch only).
If “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify Caller ID) is checked on, the Caller ID will be notified when communication is carried out.
APN:mopera.net is specified for the mopera U connection and APN:mopera.ne.jp for the mopera connection by default in “接続先（APN）の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).



6 Click “接続先（APN）設定” (Specify the access point (APN))

As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.
Open the “接続先（APN）の追加” (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the “追加” (Add) button, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click “OK”. The “接続先（APN）設定” (Specify the access point (APN)) screen reappears.
Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can only be entered for the access point.



7 Select the Access point (APN) and click “OK”

The screen of Step 5 reappears.
The access point (APN) entered in Step 6 is displayed on “接続先（APN）の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

8 Confirm the Access point (APN) on “接続先（APN）の選択” (Select the access point (APN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

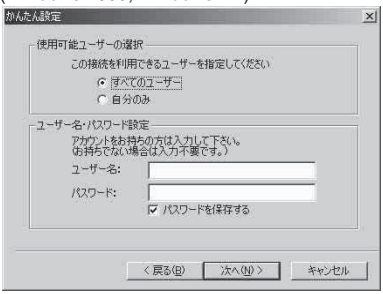
Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

9 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ” (Next)

Select the user for Windows 2000/XP.
When “すべてのユーザー ” (All users) is selected, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)

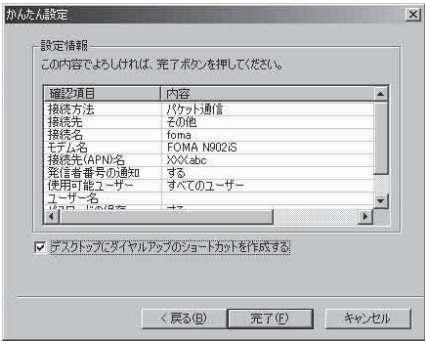


10 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear. Proceed to Step 11.

11 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



12 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).
Execute communication.→p.24

Easy settings: “64K communication setting by using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64kbps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider.
- 64K Data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you connected. With stable 64kbps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized.
- DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service for which you need to apply. “mopera” is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

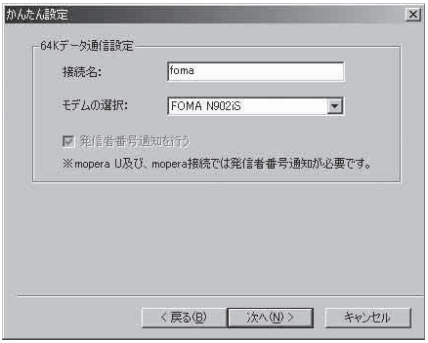
2 Select “64Kデータ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

See p.23 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Enter the access point name and select the modem, and click “次へ” (Next)

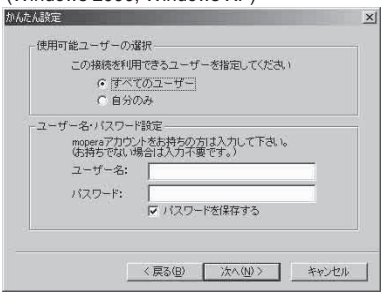
The “64Kデータ通信設定” (64K data communication setting) screen appears. You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).
When using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), confirm that modem name is set to “FOMA N902iS”.



5 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ” (Next)

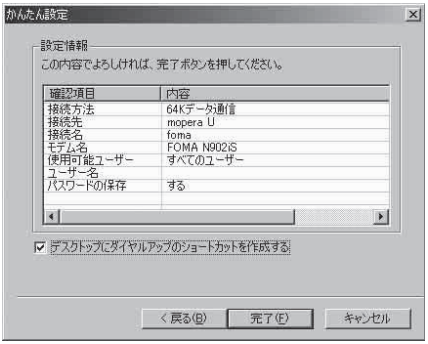
You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.
Select the user for Windows 2000/XP.
When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. →p.24

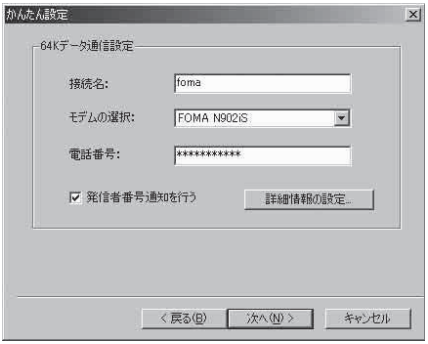
Easy settings: “Specifying 64K communication settings using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64Kデータ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Enter the dial-up information and click “次へ” (Next)



Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than mopera U or mopera when creating a dial-up;

- “接続名” (Connection name) (optional)
- “モデムの選択” (Modem Selection) (FOMA N902iS)
- Phone number

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).

Enter the correct information according to the provider information. Enter the correct, case-sensitive phone number in half-pitch.
If “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify Caller ID) is checked on, the Caller ID will be notified when communication is carried out.

To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

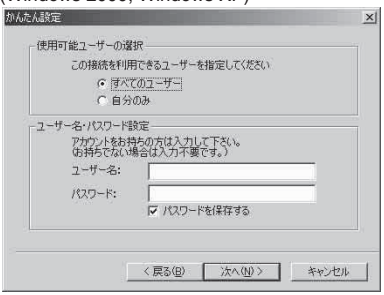
Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

5 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ” (Next)

Select the user for Windows 2000/XP.
When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

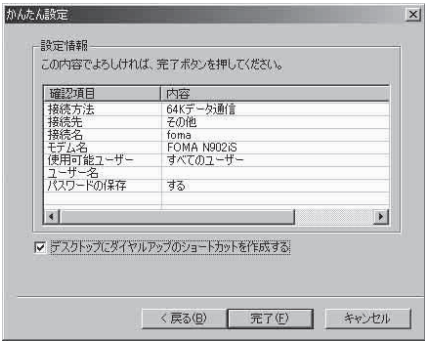
When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. →p.24

Executing Set Data Communication

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

Windows 98/Me

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ”(Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dialup network) →Open the access point

Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and dialup connection) → Open the access point

Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) →“ネットワーク接続” (Network connection) →Open the access point

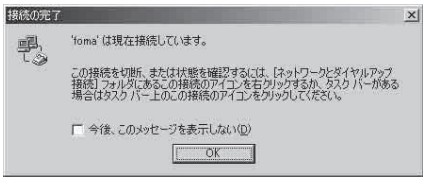
2 Click “ダイヤル” (Dial) and execute access operation

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection. If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera U, mopera or you use dial-up connection, enter the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “ダイヤル” (Dial).
Check “パスワードを保存する” (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at subsequent connections.



3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click “OK”

Normally, this screen appears when the dial-up connection is made.
This “接続” (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.



- During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



(Communicating, sending data)
(Communicating, receiving data)
(Communicating, no data transfer)
(Sending, or disconnecting)
(Receiving, or disconnecting)

- appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.

NOTE

- When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used when the icon is created.
  Therefore, to connect to another FOMA terminal, the communication setting file (drivers) must be installed again.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

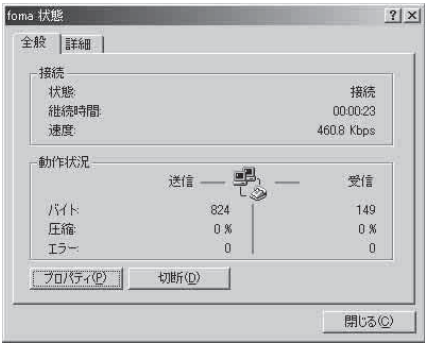
1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connecting screen appears.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)



NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

- Check the followings if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
“FOMA N902iS” is not recognized by the PC.	· Check if your PC satisfies the required operational environment (p.3). · Check if the N902iS communication setting file (drivers) is installed. · Check if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · Check if the USB mode setting (p.5) is set to “Communication mode”.
Unable to connect with the access point.	· Check if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that “184” is not added to the phone number. · Check if the box of “フロー制御を使う” (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked. · Check if the APN is set correctly. · If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

W-TCP Settings

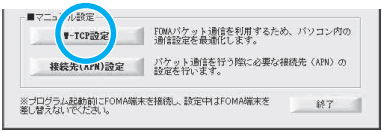
“W-TCP settings” is a “TCP parameter setup tool” to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when “Packet communication” is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>
Optimization settings for each dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

1 Start the program

(1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)
Click “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



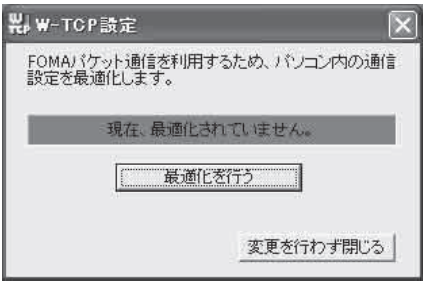
(2) If you are operating from the task-tray
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



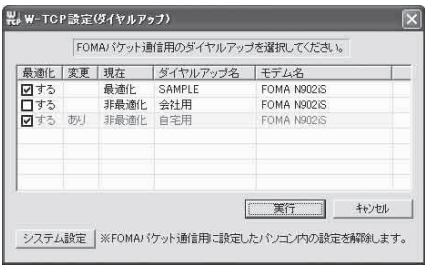
2 Proceed with the following

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to restart the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the restart.

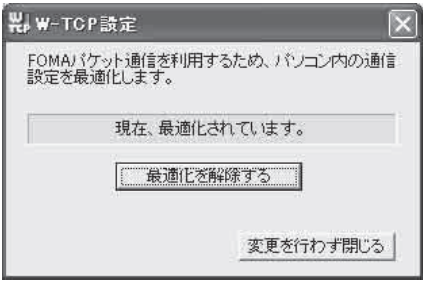
(1) If the system settings have not been optimized
Click “最適化を行う” (Optimize).
“W-TCP設定（ダイヤルアップ）” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click “実行” (Execute), system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.



(2) If the system settings have been optimized
“W-TCP 設定（ダイヤルアップ）” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears.
If there are some changes, make changes to the settings.



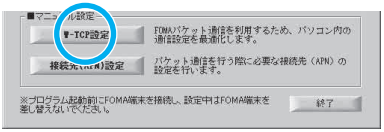
(3) To cancel optimization
Click “システム設定” (System settings).
“W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen appears.
Click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization).



<For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000>

1 Start the program

(1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト”(FOMA PC setting software)
Click “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



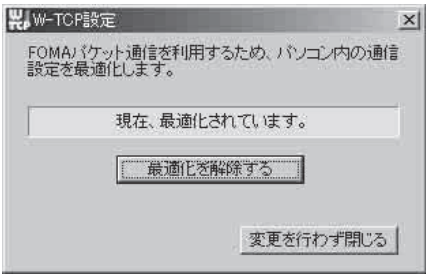
(2) If you are operating from the task-tray
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-traylocated on the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.

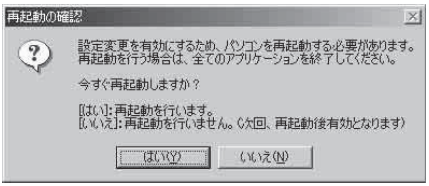


2 Proceed with the following

(1) If the system settings have not been optimized
Click “最適化を行う” (Optimize) on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen, close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the optimized settings.

(2) If the system settings have been optimized
A message saying “現在、最適化されています。” (Already optimized) appears on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen.
To cancel the optimization settings if connecting to a terminal other than a FOMA terminal, click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.



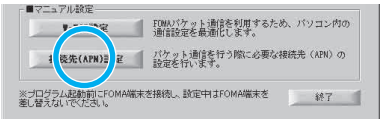


Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and administer them by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

● As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

1 After starting “FOMA PC setting software”, click “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN))



2 Click “OK” on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the connected FOMA terminal and reads the registered Access point (APN) information.
It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the access point (APN)



Adding/Editing/Deleting the Access point (APN)

- **To add an access point (APN)**
  Click “追加” (Add) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To edit a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “編集” (Edit) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To delete a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “削除” (Delete) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
  You cannot delete the access point assigned to cid1 and cid3 (Even if you select cid3 and click “削除” (Delete), the access point is not deleted and remains “mopera.net”).

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click “ダイヤルアップ作成” (Create dial-up).

When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click “はい” (Yes). After finishing writing into the access point (APN), the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.

Enter any connection name you want and click “アカウント･パスワードの設定” (Set up Account/Password). Enter the user name and password (select an available user for Windows 2000/XP), then click “OK”. You can leave the user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) on the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) screen, register necessary information and click “OK”.

After entering the settings, click “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

NOTE

- The APN settings (the access point for FOMA packet communication) are stored in the FOMA terminal. Therefore, the APN must be registered again if you connect to another FOMA terminal.
- When continuously using the dial-up setting created on the PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication / 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The flow of operation is described below.

- It is unnecessary to set up the dial-up network for 64K data communication. Go on to “Setting up Dial-up” (p.38).

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to set or confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the “Data communication” and FOMA terminal.

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to “FOMA N902iS” (Modem) built in after installing the N902iS communication setting file (drivers). This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.34).

Preparation

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to your PC

● To check COM port on Windows 98/Me

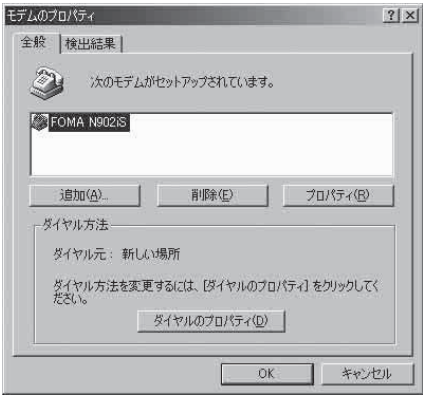
1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Open “モデム” (Modem) in Control Panel

If the “モデム” (Modem) icon does not appear in Control panel, click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する” (Display all Control Panel options).



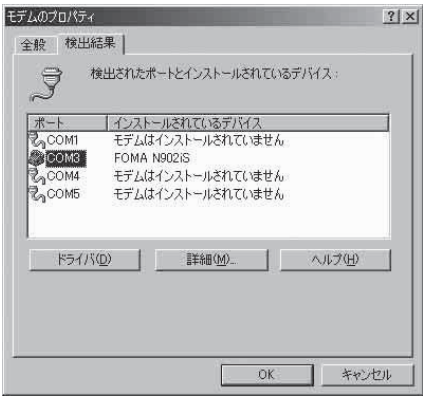
3 Confirm that “FOMA N902iS” has been set and click the “検出結果” (Diagnostics) tab



4 Confirm the COM port for which “FOMA N902iS” is set up and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.34).

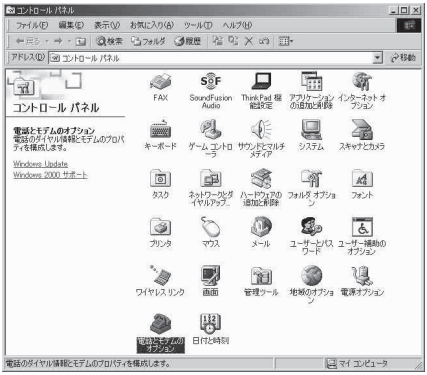
The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



● To check the COM port on Windows 2000

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N902iS” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.34).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.

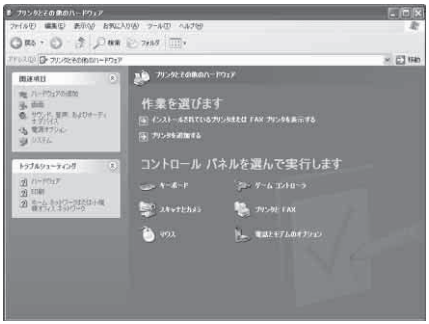


● To check the COM port on Windows XP

1 Open “スタート”(Start)→“コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)



2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア” (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード” (Area code) and click “OK”

4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N902iS” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.34).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1：mopera.ne.jp　cid3：mopera.net　cid2, 4 to 10：not set

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for settings. This section describes how to set it up using “Hyper terminal” that comes with Windows.

Access points <APN/cid>

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN instead of a telephone number for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration number (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which is used as a part of the access point number. As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.*1
- APN is administered by “cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)”. Specifying “＊99＊＊＊<cid number>＃” as the access point number enables the connection to the access point with the cid number.
- Specifying “＊99＊＊＊1＃” as the access point number for the mopera connection or “＊99＊＊＊3＃” for the mopera U connection enables you to use mopera or mopera U easily.*2
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties’ information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party’s name
How to register	Register using PC	○ (FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	○ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	× (Cannot even confirm)	○
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.

*1： Set up the APN setting for the access point (Internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network) for connection.

*2： To connect to other Internet service providers, set the APN and assign it to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to the PC

3 Click “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal

For Windows Me, Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal).

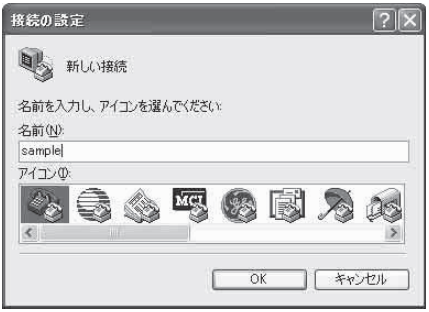
For Windows 98

After opening “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal), double-click “Hypertrm.exe”.

4 Select the “今後、このメッセージを表示しない” (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click “はい” (Yes)

5 Enter any name in the “名前” (Name) column and click “OK”

“sample” is entered here as an example.



6 Select “FOMA N902iS” from “接続方法” (Connection method), and click “OK”

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) after the connection screen appears.



If a COM port of “FOMA N902iS” can be selected

When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click “OK”.
In this example, “COM3” is selected. See “Checking the COM port” (p.30) to confirm the actual COM port number of “FOMA N902iS” to be selected in “接続方法” (Connection method).

If a COM port of “FOMA N902iS” cannot be selected

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to close the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps:

(1) Select “ファイル” (File) menu → “プロパティ” (Properties)
(2) Select “FOMA N902iS” in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column of the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) tab on the “sampleのプロパティ” (sample Properties)
(3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う” (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)
(4) Click “OK”



7 Enter the access point (APN) and press ↵

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, “PPP”, “APN”

<cid>： Enter any number from 2 or between 4 and 10.

Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.

“PPP”： Enter “PPP” as it is.

“APN”： Put “ ” around the access point (APN) to enter.

If “OK” is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2

Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“XXX.abc” ↵.



8 Confirm that “OK” appears and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル” (File) menu

““sample”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか？” (Are you going to save the connection “sample”?) appears, but it is not necessary to save.

NOTE

- The AT commands entered in “Hyper terminal” may not be displayed after Step 7 on p.36. In this case, if you enter ATE1 ↵, AT commands you enter from then on are displayed.
- To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
  - If reset, the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to “mopera.ne.jp” (Default value) and cid=3 to “mopera.net” (Default value), and cid=2, 4 through 10 will be unregistered.

  <How to enter>

  AT+CGDCONT= ↵ (to reset all cid)

  AT+CGDCONT= 〈cid〉 ↵ (to reset a certain cid only)
- To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
  - Display the current settings.

  <How to enter>

  AT+CGDCONT? ↵

Notifying or Not notifying the Caller ID

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when packet communication is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the ＊DGPIR command (p.51) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to “Not set” (Default value).

1 Start “Hyper terminal”

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication

Enter in the format of “AT ＊DGPIR=<*n*>”.

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT ＊DGPIR=1 ↵

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT ＊DGPIR=2 ↵



❸ Confirm that “OK” appears and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point number in the Dial-up network settings as well.
The following table shows what happens if you set 186/184 both for the ＊DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by ＊DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

NOTE

● The Caller ID needs to be set to “Notify” to use DoCoMo’s internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera U by packet communication for example.
- To connect using packet communication, enter “＊99＊＊＊3#” as the number of access point for mopera U or “＊99＊＊＊1#” for mopera. To connect using 64K data communication, enter “＊8701” as the number of access point for mopera U or “＊9601” for mopera.

Setting up dial-up on Windows 98, Windows Me

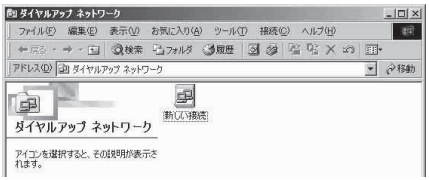
1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network)

2 When the “ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ” (Welcome to Dial-up Network) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)

This screen appears only when the dial-up network is started for the first time. Click “次へ” (Next) to proceed to Step 4.
This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “Dial-up Network” screen in Step 3 does instead.



3 Double-click “新しい接続” (New connection) in the Dial-up Network



4 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection name) and click “次へ” (Next)

Confirm that the “モデムの選択” (Modem selection) column has “FOMA N902iS”. If “FOMA N902iS” is not selected, select “FOMA N902iS”.



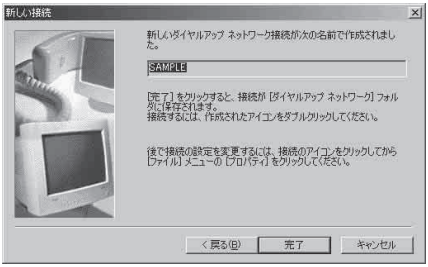
5 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next)

Leave the “市外局番” (Area Code) column blank.

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



6 Confirm the connection name (any name) and click “完了” (Finish)



7 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



8 Confirm “電話番号” (Telephone number) and “接続方法” (Connection method) on the “全般” (General) tab

Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う” (Use the Properties of the Area Code and Dial).

Confirm that the “接続方法” (Connection method) column has “FOMA N902iS”. If “FOMA N902iS” is not selected, select “FOMA N902iS”.



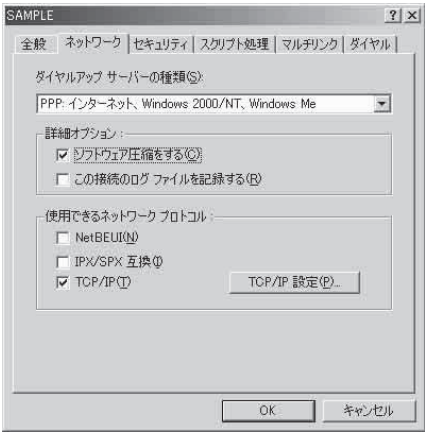
9 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: インターネット、Windows 2000/NT、Windows Me” in the “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).

Check only “TCP/IP” in “使用できるネットワークプロトコル” (Supported network protocols) field.

For Windows 98

Click the “サーバーの種類” (Type of server) tab and set up each setting.
Select “PPP: インターネット、Windows NT Server、Windows 98” in “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).
Check only “TCP/IP” in the “使用できるネットワークプロトコル” (Supported network protocols) field.

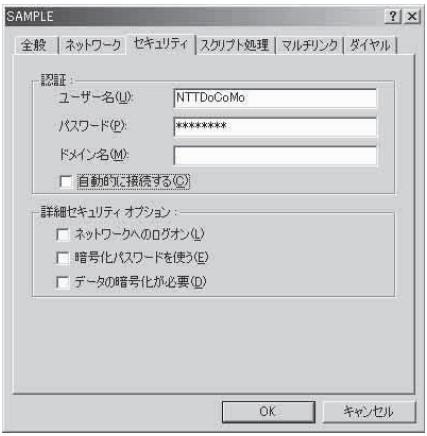


10 Click the “セキュリティ” (Security) tab and click “OK” after checking settings

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns as shown in this screen.

For Windows 98

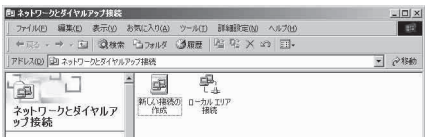
Click “OK”.



Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and Dial-up connections)

2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

The “所在地情報” (Address Information) screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2.
This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 When the “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click “OK”

5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)

6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する” (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click “次へ” (Next)

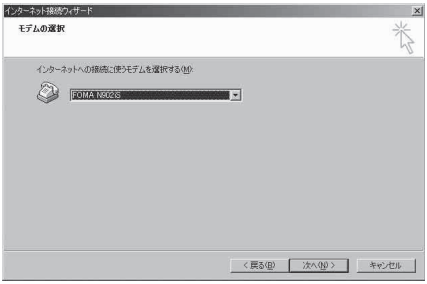
7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します” (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します” (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

9 Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する” (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has “FOMA N902iS” and click “次へ” (Next)

If “FOMA N902iS” is not selected, select “FOMA N902iS”.

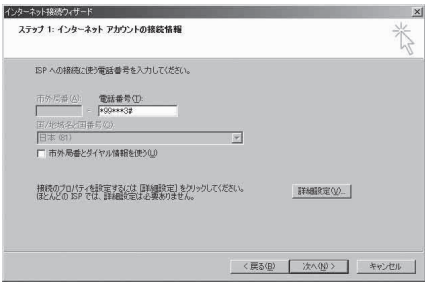
If no other modem than “FOMA N902iS” has been installed, this screen does not appear.



10 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “詳細設定” (Advanced settings)

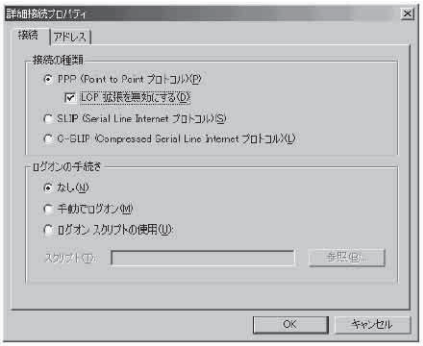
Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Area Code and Dial information).

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



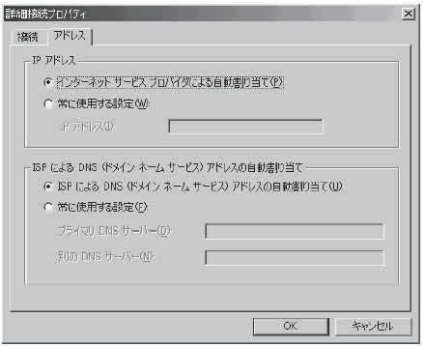
11 Set up the “接続” (Connection) tab as shown on the right and click the “アドレス” (Address) tab

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類” (Connection Type) and “ログオンの手続き” (Logon Procedure).



12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス” (Address) tab as shown on the right and click “OK”

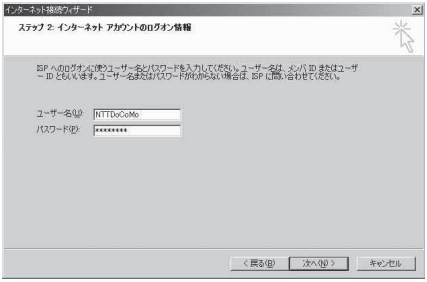
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “IPアドレス” (IP address) and “ISPによるDNS（ドメインネームサービス）アドレスの自動割り当て” (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



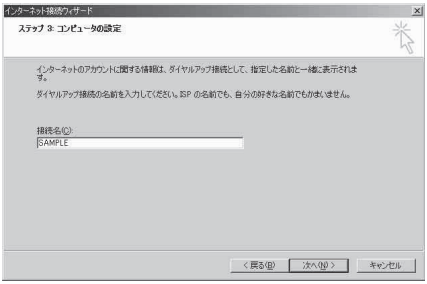
13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ” (Next)

14 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns as this screen.



15 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection name) and click “次へ” (Next)



16 Select “いいえ” (No) and click “次へ” (Next)

17 Click “完了” (Finish)

18 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu

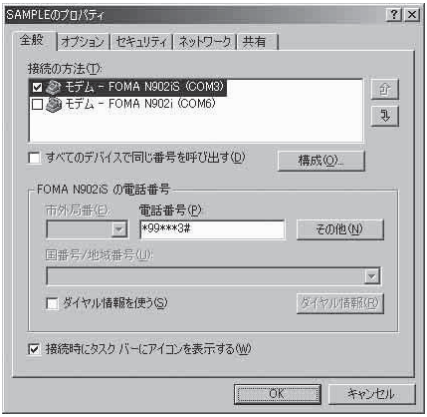


19 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム－FOMA N902iS” (Modem - FOMA N902iS) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

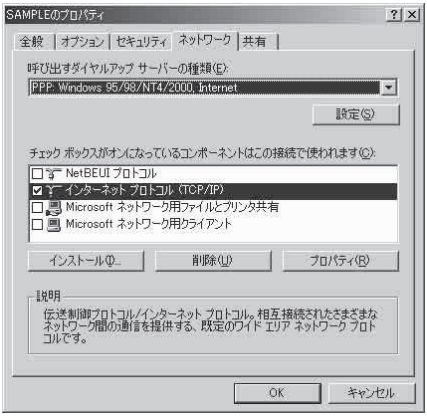
This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



20 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル（TCP/IP）” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



21 Click “設定” (Settings)

22 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”

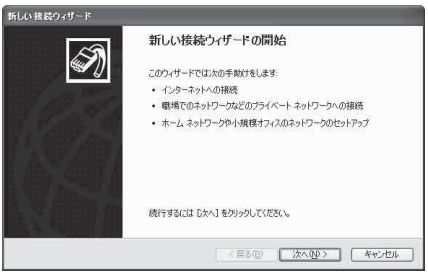


23 When the Step 20 screen reappears, click “OK”

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “新しい接続ウィザード” (New connection wizard)

2 When the “新しい接続ウィザード” (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)



3 Select “インターネットに接続する” (Connect to the Internet) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Select “接続を手動でセットアップする” (Set up the connection manually) and click “次へ” (Next)

5 Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する” (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

6 If the “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears, select only “モデム－FOMA N902iS (COMx)” (Modem－FOMA N902iS (COMx)), and click “次へ” (Next)

The “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems.
(COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in “Checking the COM port” (p.30).



7 Enter any name you want in the “ISP名” (ISP Name) and click “次へ” (Next)



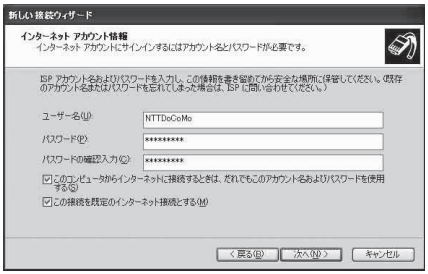
8 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next)

This screen is example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



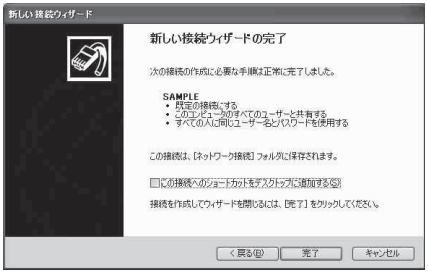
9 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm Password) columns as this screen.



10 Click “完了” (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

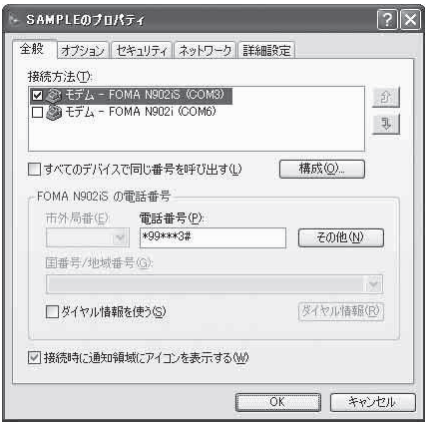
12 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



13 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム－FOMA N902iS” (Modem - FOMA N902iS) is checked in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.
Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If it is checked, uncheck it.

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



14 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Select “インターネットプロトコル（TCP/IP）” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します” (Use the following items for this connection). Since the setting of “QoSパケットスケジューラ” (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



15 Click “設定” (Settings)

16 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



17 When the Step 14 screen reappears, click “OK”

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

<Example: For Windows Me>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional)

“Connecting the devices”→p.5

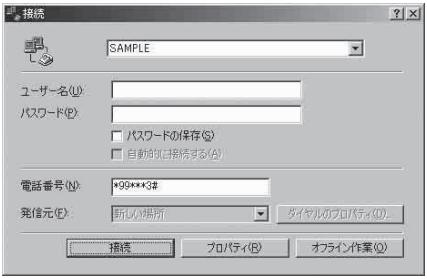
2 Select “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) and open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network)

3 Select the icon of the access point to connect and open “接続” (Connect) in the “接続” (Connect) menu



4 Confirm each item and click “接続” (Connect)

The telephone number of the access point set up in Dial-up Network is displayed in “電話番号” (Telephone number).
You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.



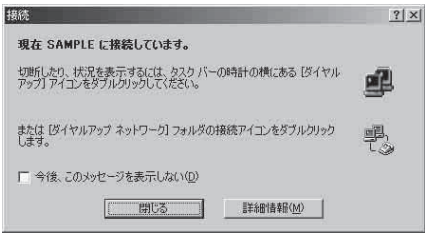
<The Connecting screen appears>

Meanwhile, the user name/password confirmation and logon processes are performed.



<Completion of the connection>

You can start browser software to browse sites and websites, and to use e-mail.



<Example: For Windows XP>

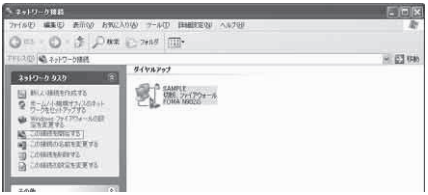
1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional)

“Connecting the devices”→p.5

2 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

3 Open Access point

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on p.45 to select “ネットワークタスク” (Network task) → “この接続を開始する” (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



4 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル” (Dial)

This screen is an example for mopera U connection. You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.



<The Connecting screen appears>

While this screen appears, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message appears from the indicator of the taskbar located on the bottom-right of the desktop for a few seconds.
You can start browser software to browse sites and websites or to use e-mail.
If this messages does not appear, check “Setting up Dial-up Network” (p.30) and “Setting up Dial-up” (p.38).
See p.25 for communication conditions.



How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows XP.

1 Click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connection condition screen for Internet will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)

NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

● The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
[&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
[&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved by ATZ command.

Modem port command list

The followings are the usable commands for “FOMA N902iS (モデム)” (modem):

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
A/	Executes the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	*n*=0 : CD is always ON. *n*=1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	*n*=0 : Ignores ER status (always assumed to be ON). *n*=1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an on-line command status. *n*=2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects how to display the connection speed.	*n*=0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. *n*=1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed (initial value).	AT&E0 OK
AT&F*n*	Restores all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	(At the time of off-line mode) AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F=? ERROR (At the time of on-line command mode) AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line mode)
AT&S*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	*n*=0 : DR is always ON (initial value). *n*=1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK
AT&W*n*	Stores the current settings.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT＊DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0：FOMA terminal signal reception level is displayed as out of area. 1：FOMA terminal signal reception level is 0 or 1 bar. 2：FOMA terminal signal reception level is 2 bars. 3：FOMA terminal signal reception level is 3 bars.	AT＊DANTE ＊DANTE:3 OK AT＊DANTE＝? ＊DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT＊DGANSM=*n*	Sets the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	*n*=0：Disables the incoming call reject (AT＊DGARL)/permit setting (AT＊DGAPL) (initial value). *n*=1：Enables the incoming call reject setting. *n*=2：Enables the incoming call permit setting. AT＊DGANSM? ：Displays the current setting.	AT＊DGANSM=0 OK AT＊DGANSM? ＊DGANSM:0 OK
AT＊DGAPL=*n* [,cid]	Sets APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT	*n*=0：Adds the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call permission list. *n*=1：Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call permission list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGAPL? ：Displays incoming call permission list.	AT＊DGAPL =0,1 OK AT＊DGAPL? ＊DGAPL:1 OK AT＊DGAPL =1 OK AT＊DGAPL? OK
AT＊DGARL=*n* [,cid]	Sets APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT	*n*=0：Adds the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call rejection list. *n*=1：Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call rejection list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGARL? ：Displays incoming call rejection list.	AT＊DGARL =0,1 OK AT＊DGARL? ＊DGARL:1 OK AT＊DGARL =1 OK AT＊DGARL? OK
AT＊DGPIR=*n*	This command validates the setting for notifying Caller ID when sending/ receiving packet communication. Even in the dial up network setting, you can also add 186 (notify) or 184 (not notify) to the access point number. (p.36)	*n*=0：Uses APN as it is (initial value). *n*=1：Uses APN by adding “184”. (Caller ID is always not sent.) *n*=2：Uses APN by adding “186”. (Caller ID is always sent.) AT＊DGPIR? ：Displays the current setting.	AT＊DGPIR =0 OK AT＊DGPIR? ＊DGPIR:0 OK
AT＊DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT＊DRPW ＊DRPW:0 OK AT＊DRPW=? ＊DRPW:(0-75) OK
AT+CAOC	Inquires for the current charge.	—	AT+CAOC +CAOC:"000014" OK
AT+CBC	Displays the battery status of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CBC:<bcs>,<bcl> bcs: 0：FOMA terminal is powered by the battery. 1：FOMA terminal is not powered by the battery. 2：FOMA terminal is not connected to the battery. 3：FOMA terminal is out of transmission due to the power-supply error. bcl: 0：Battery has run out, or battery is not connected. 1-100：Battery remained	AT+CBC +CBC:0,70 OK AT+CBC? ERROR AT+CBC=? +CBC:(0-3),(0-100) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CBST [&F] [&W]	Changes the bearer service type.	Format: AT+CBST=<*n*>,1,0 *n*=116 : 64,000bps (bit transparent) (initial value) *n*=131 : 32,000bps (multimedia) *n*=134 : 64,000bps (multimedia)	AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK AT+CBST? +CBST:134,1,0 OK AT+CBST=? +CBST:(116,131,134), (1),(0) OK
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	<report> List of disconnection reasons (p.63).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	p.59	p.59
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	p.59	p.59
AT+CGEQREQ	Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.	p.60	p.60
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification displays whether you are inside or out of service.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between “Inside the service area” and “Outside the service area” is completed. AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting. +CGREG: <*n*>, <stat> *n*: Set value stat : 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: 1,0 OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from “outside the service area” to “inside the service area”.) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Displays the product number of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP=*n* [&F] [&W]	Displays the other party’s Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	*n*=0 : Not display the result (initial value) *n*=1 : Display the result Result: +CLIP(*n*, *m*) *m*=0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. *m*=1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. *m*=2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: “090XXXXXXXX”,177, “123”,136

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CLIR=*n*	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	*n*=0 : Complies to the CLIR service contract. *n*=1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number. *n*=2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (initial value). Result: +CLIR(*n*, *m*) *m*=0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) *m*=1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) *m*=2 : Unknown *m*=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) *m*=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify)	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK
AT+CMEE=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	*n*=0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value). *n*=1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>. *n*=2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting. The command displayed on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error. +CME ERROR result code is as follows. 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	number: phone number type : 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included. 145 : International access code (+) is included.	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK
AT+COPS	Selects the network operator to connect.	Format : AT+COPS=<mode>,2,<oper> mode=0 : automatic (searches the network and switches the network operator automatically) mode=1 : manual (connects to the network operator specified in <oper>) mode=2 : Disconnects the connection to the network operator mode=3 : Mapping is not performed. mode=4 : manual/automatic (if the connection to the network operator specified in <oper> fails, works as automatic mode.) <oper> is a hexadecimal value which consists of Country code (MCC) and Network code (MNC). The format is as follows: Digit 1 of MCC · · · octet 1 bits 1 to 4 Digit 2 of MCC · · · octet 1 bits 5 to 8 Digit 3 of MCC · · · octet 2 bits 1 to 4 Digit 3 of MNC · · · octet 2 bits 5 to 8 Digit 2 of MNC · · · octet 3 bits 5 to 8	AT+COPS=0 OK AT+COPS? +COPS:0 OK AT+COPS=? +COPS:(2,,,"44F001"),(3,,,"44F002"),,(0,1),(2) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CPAS	Displays whether the control signal to the FOMA terminal is available or not.	Result: +CPAS: <pas> pas: 0 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal. 1 : FOMA terminal can not send/receive control signal. 2 : Unknown (control signal sending/ receiving is not assured). 3 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently receiving. 4 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently communicating.	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0 OK AT+CPAS? ERROR AT+CPAS=? +CPAS:(0-4)
AT+CPIN	Enters the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN="<pin>","<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in " ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN：READY：PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code +CPIN：SIM PIN：PIN1 entry standby +CPIN：SIM PIN2：PIN2 entry standby +CPIN：SIM PUK：PIN1 blocked (Can enter PUK1 code) +CPIN：SIM PUK2 : PIN2 blocked (Can enter PUK2 code) The command displayed on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CR=*n* [&F] [&W]	When the line is connected, displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	*n*=0 : Not display (initial value). *n*=1 : Display. <serv> : Displays only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC", "AV32K" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: ：Displays the current setting.	AT+CR =1 OK ATD＊99＊＊＊1# +CR : GPRS CONNECT

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CRC=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	*n*=0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). *n*=1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING：SYNC +CRING：AV64K ：GPRS “PPP” ,,, “<APN>” AT+CRC? ：Displays the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC ：0 OK (PPPoverUD received) +CRING：SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING：AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING：GPRS “PPP” ,,,” 〈APN〉”
AT+CREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result screen is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between “Inside the service area” and “Outside the service area” is complete. AT+CREG? ：Displays the current setting. +CREG ：<*n*>,<stat> *n*: Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG ：1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area.) +CREG ：1
AT+CUSD [&F] [&W]	Specifies or inquires for the network setting regarding the additional services.	Format: AT+CUSD=<*n*>,"<str>"[,0] *n*=0 : Does not send mid result <m>[<str>,<dcs>] (initial value) *n*=1 : Sends mid result <m>[<str>,<dcs>] Mid result: *m*=0 : The settings completed *m*=1 : The network requires the information. str : Only 0-9, #, ∗ can be entered. Enclose <str> with "" (double quotation mark).	AT+CUSD=0, "xxxxxxxxx" OK AT+CUSD=1," ∗ 148 ∗ 1 ∗ 0000#",0 +CUSD:0,"148 ∗ 7#",0 OK AT+CUSD? +CUSD:0 OK AT+CUSD =? +CUSD:(0,1) OK
AT+FCLASS=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets the communication class supported by the FOMA terminal.	*n*=0 : data is only supported. (initial value)	AT+FCLASS=0 OK
AT+GCAP	Displays the supported area for the AT commands available for the FOMA terminal.	Result: +GCAP:<area>,<area>,<area> area： +CGSM : Some or all GSM commands are supported. +FCLASS : +FCLASS command is supported. +W : +W command is supported.	AT+GCAP +GCAP:+CGSM,+FCLASS,+W OK
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Displays the FOMA terminal product name (FOMAN902iS).	—	AT+GMM FOMAN902iS OK
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+IFC=*n*,*m* [&F] [&W]	Selects the flow control method.	*n* : DCE by DTE *m* : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: *n*,*m* =2, 2 AT+IFC?: Displays the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46=*n* [&F] [&W]	Displays the wireless communication network of the FOMA terminal.	*n*= 22 : Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK
AT¥S	Displays the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the response code specification for connecting the line.	*n*= 0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). *n*= 1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handles the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handles the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD＊99＊＊＊<cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=131,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV32K communication AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD＊99＊＊＊1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV32K communication> AT+CBST=131,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	*n*= 0 : Echo back absent. *n*= 1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH*n*	Performs on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	*n*= 0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ OK ATH NO CARRIER

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATI*n*	Displays the ID code.	*n*=0 : Displays “NTT DoCoMo”. *n*=1 : Displays the product name (same with +GMM). *n*=2 : Displays the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR). *n* =3 : Displays the each element of ACMP signal. *n* =4 : Displays the details of communication functions of the FOMA terminal.	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMAN902iS OK
ATO*n*	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	*n*=0 : Returns from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT
ATQ*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	*n*=0 : Displays the result code (initial value). *n*=1 : Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
ATS0=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	*n*=0 : No automatic answer (initial value). *n*=1- 255: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0?: Displays the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2=*n* [&F]	Sets an escape character.	*n*=43 : Initial value. *n*=127 : Escapes processing is invalid. ATS2? : Displays the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3=*n* [&F]	Sets a carriage return (CR) character.	*n*=13 : Initial value (Only *n*=13 can be specified). ATS3? : Displays the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4=*n* [&F]	Sets a line feed (LF) character.	*n*=10 : Initial value (Only *n*=10 can be specified). ATS4? : Displays the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5=*n* [&F]	Sets a backspace (BS) character.	*n*=8 : Initial value (Only *n*=8 can be specified). ATS5? : Displays the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6=*n* [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS8=*n* [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATS10=*n* [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30=*n* [&F]	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	*n*= 0 : Inactive timer off (initial value) *n*= 0 - 255 Where *n* is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR
ATS103=*n* [&F]	Sets the called subaddress character.	*n*= 0 : * *n*= 1 : / (initial value) *n*= 2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104=*n* [&F]	Sets the calling subaddress character.	*n*= 0 : # *n*= 1 : % (initial value) *n*= 2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result code is returned in numerals or alphabets.	*n*= 0 : Returns the result code in numeral value. *n*= 1 : Returns the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detects a busy tone or a dial tone.	*n*= 0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. *n*= 1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*= 2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*= 3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*= 4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Resets the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

● Supplementary explanation of AT command

■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

· ATT (Tone setting)
· ATP (Pulse setting)

■ Command name: +CGDCONT

- **Outline**

  Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.

  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

  +CGDCONT=[<cid>[,“PPP”[,“<APN>”]]]

- **Explanation of the parameters**

  Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

  <cid>* : 1 ~ 10

  <APN>* : Any value

  * : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.
  <APN> is an arbitrary character string indicating each access point name.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

  +CGDCONT= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

  +CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

  +CGDCONT=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

  +CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.

- **Command execution example**

  Command for registering an APN name of abc (when cid is 2).

  AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“abc”

  OK

■ Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- **Outline**

  Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.

  There are 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example.

  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

  +CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

- **Explanation of the parameters**

  <cid>* : 1～10

  <Maximum bitrate UL>* : None (initial value) or 64

  <Maximum bitrate DL>* : None (initial value) or 384

  * : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to “None” (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 64 or 384, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, and a packet communication may not be connected.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

  +CGEQMIN= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

  +CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

  +CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

  +CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.

・**Command execution example**

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

(1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK

(2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
OK

(3) Command for permitting uplink 64kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 5).
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
OK

(4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 384kbps of downlink (when cid is 6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384
OK

■ **Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]**

・**Outline**

Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.
For setting, only the following pattern in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.
Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

・**Format**

+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

・**Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>* : 1 to 10

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

・**Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQREQ= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.

・**Command execution example**

Only the following 1 pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.
Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 2).
AT+CGEQREQ=2
OK

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (p.34), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject incoming call setting by AT ✻ DGAPL/AT ✻ DGARL/AT ✻ DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT ✻ DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W ↵

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ ↵

even after the power is turned on or off.

Result codes

■ **Result codes related with data communication**

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone.
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected.
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

■ **Extended result codes**

• &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 32,000bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000bps.

• &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps.

■ **Communication protocol result codes**

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPoverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [32K]
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by Packet

NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATV*n* command (p.58) is set to *n*=1, and as number indication when the command is set to *n*=0.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the network is congested. If this is displayed, wait for a while and then try again.

Result code display example

■ **When ATX0 is set**

Regardless of the AT¥V*n* command (p.56) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT

Number indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1

■ **When ATX1 is set**

・ATX1, AT¥V0 are set (default)

Displayed in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800

Number indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21

・ATX1, AT¥V1 are set *

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the FOMA terminal→ Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection is made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 64kbps for sending, and maximum 384kbps for receiving.

Character indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800

PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384

Number indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21 5

＊: If both ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT¥V0 is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

Disconnection reasons regarding the content of requests are as follows:

■ **Packet communication**

Value	Reason
26 27	Missing or incorrect APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.

■ **64K data communication**

Value	Reason
1	The specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service or option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.